










# Signs and symbols

-  Indicates a reference to a section with important information and safety warnings  that should always be heeded.
-  Arrow indicating that the section continues on the next page.
-  Arrow marking the end of a section.
-  The symbol indicates situations in which the vehicle must be stopped as quickly as possible.
-  The symbol indicates registered trademarks. However, the absence of this symbol does not constitute a waiver of any rights associated with intellectual property.
-  Cross-reference to a red, orange, or yellow warning in the same section or on the stated page, pointing out possible risks that can cause serious personal injuries and how to help prevent them.
-  Cross reference to a Notice about possible property damage, in the same section or on the stated page.
-  Used on vehicle labels and indicates the availability of additional important information and warnings in this Owner's Manual.

## DANGER!

Texts with this symbol contain information regarding hazardous situations which will cause death or severe injuries if not avoided.

## WARNING


Texts with this symbol contain information regarding hazardous situations which could cause death or severe injuries if not avoided.


## CAUTION

Texts with this symbol contain information regarding hazardous situations which could cause minor or moderate injuries if not avoided.

## NOTE

Texts with this symbol contain information regarding situations which could cause vehicle damage if not avoided.

 Texts with this symbol contain information about the environment and how you can help to protect it.

 Texts with this symbol contain supplementary information.

# Thank you for your confidence

This Volkswagen vehicle provides advanced technology incorporating many convenience features for you to enjoy in your daily driving.

**Please carefully read and follow the information in this Owner's Manual. It will help you both to become more familiar with your vehicle and to recognize and avoid situations that could endanger you and others.**

If you have questions about your vehicle or if you believe that the manual is not complete, please contact your authorized Volkswagen dealer or your authorized Volkswagen Service Facility. Authorized Volkswagen dealers and authorized Volkswagen Service Facilities always welcome your questions, suggestions and constructive criticism.

We hope you enjoy your vehicle and we wish you many years of safe and enjoyable driving.

**Volkswagen AG**

# Via this Owner's Manual

- At the end of this Manual, you will find an [alphabetical index](#).
- The list of [Abbreviations](#) at the end of the Manual explains the technical abbreviations and designations.
- [Directions](#) (left, right, front, back) refer to the driving direction unless noted otherwise.
- [Illustrations](#) are only for orientation and are merely used to help explain the text descriptions and instructions.
- Any technical modifications to the vehicle that were introduced after the editorial deadline can be found in a [supplement](#) to this Manual.

All options and models are described without identification as optional equipment or model versions. Some of the described equipment may not be installed on your vehicle or may be available at a later time or only in certain markets. Please consult the sales documents regarding your vehicle's equipment and options and contact your authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility for more information.

All information in this Manual corresponds to information available as of the editorial deadline. Due to ongoing vehicle development, there may be differences between your vehicle and the information in this Manual. No legal obligations or commitments can be derived from the information, illustrations or descriptions in this Manual.

If you sell or lend your vehicle, please make sure that the complete Manual set is in the vehicle.

## Standard Manual set includes:

- Warranty and Maintenance booklet
- Owner's Manual including radio system, navigation system, and mobile phone packages

## The Manual set may also include:

- Supplement
- *Other inserts*

# Vehicle overview

## Exterior views

### Side view

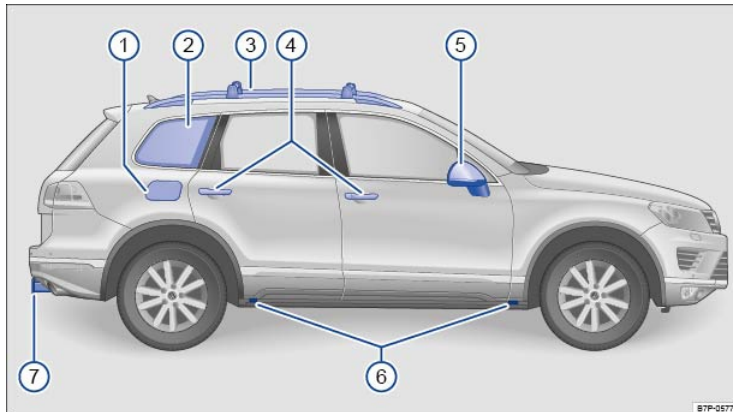


Fig. 1 Vehicle side overview.

#### Key to ⇒ Fig. 1 :

- ① Fuel filler flap ⇒ *Refueling*
- ② Side window with window diversity antenna for: ⇒ *Consumer Information*
  - Radio ⇒ *BookletRadio or Navigation System*,
  - Central locking ⇒ *Power locking system*
- ③ Roof rack ⇒ *Roof rack*
- ④ Outside door handles ⇒ *Doors*
- ⑤ Outside mirror: ⇒ *Mirrors*
  - Additional turn signal light ⇒ *Lights*
  - Area view ⇒ *Area View*
- ⑥ Lift points for the jack ⇒ *Changing a wheel*
- ⑦ Trailer hitch/ball mount receiver ⇒ *Trailer towing*

### Front view

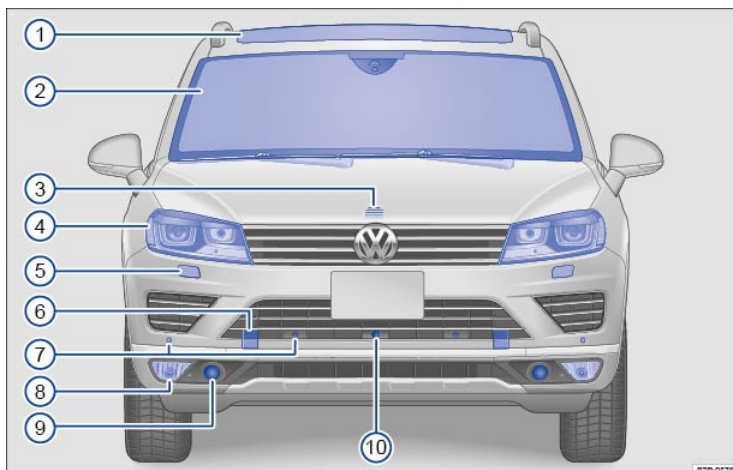


Fig. 2 Vehicle front overview.

#### Key to ⇒ Fig. 2 :

- ① Power sunroof ⇒ *Power sunroof*
- ② Windshield area with:
  - Rain sensor on mirror base ⇒ *Windshield wiper and washer*
  - Low-light sensor on mirror base
  - Dynamic high beam control on mirror base ⇒ *Lights*

- Windshield wipers ⇒ *Windshield wiper and washer*

③ Engine hood release ⇒ *Working in the engine compartment*

④ Headlights (on both left and right) ⇒ *Lights*, ⇒ *Replacing light bulbs*

⑤ Headlight washers (on left and right) ⇒ *Windshield wiper and washer*

⑥ Threaded hole for the front towing eye (on both left and right) behind covers ⇒ *Towing*

⑦ Sensors for front Park Distance Control (on both left and right) ⇒ *Park Distance Control (PDC)*

⑧ Fog lights/static cornering lights (on both left and right) ⇒ *Lights*

⑨ Radar sensors for the adaptive cruise control (ACC) (on both left and right) ⇒ *Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Front Assist*

⑩ Camera for Area View ⇒ *Area View*

## Rear view

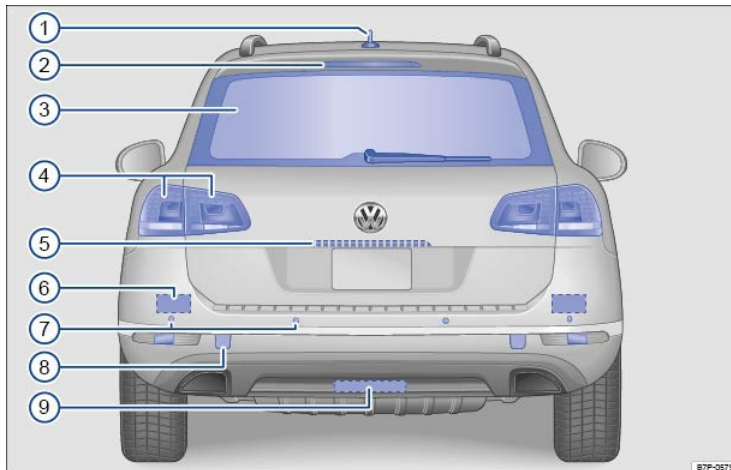


Fig. 3 Vehicle rear overview.

### Key to ⇒ Fig. 3 :

① Roof antenna for: ⇒ *Consumer Information*

- Mobile phone ⇒ *BookletRadio or Navigation System*,

- Navigation ⇒ *BookletRadio or Navigation System*,

② High-mounted brake light ⇒ *Lights and vision*

③ Rear window with:

- Rear window defroster ⇒ *Heating and air conditioning*

- Rear window wiper ⇒ *Windshield wiper and washer*

④ Taillights (on both left and right) ⇒ *Lights*, ⇒ *Replacing light bulbs*

⑤ Area for:

- Button to open the trunk lid ⇒ *Trunk lid*

- Rear View camera ⇒ *Rear View Camera System with dynamic orientation lines* and the Area View camera ⇒ *Area View*

- License plate lighting ⇒ *Replacing light bulbs*

⑥ Radar sensors for Side Assist ⇒ *Lane Change System (Side Assist)*

⑦ Sensors for rear Park Distance Control ⇒ *Park Distance Control (PDC)*

⑧ Threaded hole for the rear towing eye (on both left and right) behind covers ⇒ *Towing*

⑨ Trailer hitch/ball mount receiver ⇒ *Trailer towing*

## Passenger compartment

### Driver door overview

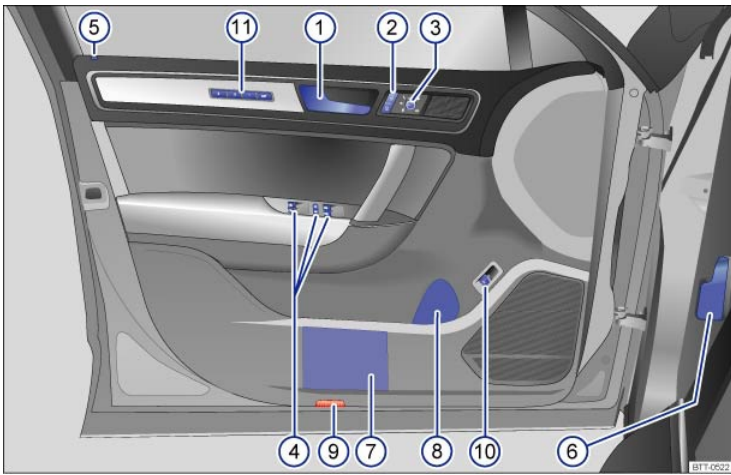


Fig. 4 Overview of controls in the driver door.

**Key to ⇒ Fig. 4 :**

- ① Door handle ⇒ *Doors*
- ② Power locking switch for locking and unlocking the vehicle ⇒ *Power locking system*
- ③ Switch for adjusting the outside mirror: ⇒ *Mirrors*
  - Adjusting outside mirrors **L-R**
  - Outside mirror heating
  - Folding mirror
- ④ Buttons for operating the power windows: ⇒ *Power windows*
  - Power windows
  - Safety switch for rear power windows and electric child safety lock
- ⑤ Indicator for power locking system ⇒ *Power locking system*
- ⑥ Lever for releasing the engine hood ⇒ *Working in the engine compartment*
- ⑦ Storage compartment ⇒ *Storage areas*
- ⑧ Bottle holder ⇒ *Cup holders*
- ⑨ Door light
- ⑩ Switch to unlock the trunk lid ⇒ *Trunk lid*
- ⑪ Memory buttons for storing the driver seat and outside mirror settings **3 - 2 - 1 - SET** ⇒ *Seat functions*

**Driver side overview**

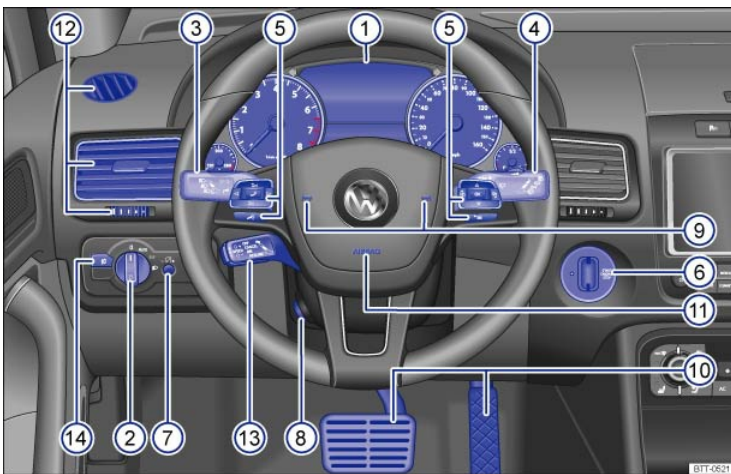









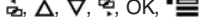




Fig. 5 Driver side overview.

**Key to ⇒ Fig. 5 :**

- ① Instrument cluster:
  - Instruments ⇒ *Instrument Cluster*
  - Display ⇒ *Instrument Cluster*

- Warning and indicator lights ⇒ *Warning and indicator lights*
- ② Headlight switch : ⇒ *Lights*
- Off position 
  - Automatic headlight activation **-AUTO-**
  - Parking lights and low beams 
- ③ Lever for: ⇒ *Lights*
- High beams 
  - Headlight flasher 
  - Turn signals 
- ④ Lever for windshield wiper and washer: ⇒ *Windshield wiper and washer*
- Windshield wiper **HIGH – LOW – OFF**
  - Intermittent operation for windshield wipers 
  - One-tap wiping 
  - Windshield wiper 
  - Automatic wipe/wash for windshield 
  - Rear window wiper 
  - Automatic wipe/wash for rear window 
  - Lever with buttons for the Volkswagen Information System (Basic version) **TRIP-, OK/RESET** ⇒ *Volkswagen Information System*
- ⑤ Multi-function steering wheel controls: ⇒ *Volkswagen Information System*
- Volume setting for radio, navigation system notifications, or telephone calls (if applicable) 
  - Mute switching for radio or activation of voice control (if applicable) 
  - Display Phone main menu or accept telephone calls 
  - Audio, Navigation 
  - Control switches for the Volkswagen Information System (Premium version) 
- ⑥ Ignition switch ⇒ *Starting and stopping the engine*
- ⑦ Dimmer control for the Instrument cluster and switch illumination  ⇒ *Lights*
- ⑧ Switch for adjusting the electric steering column ⇒ *Adjusting the seating position*
- ⑨ Horn (only works when the ignition is switched on)
- ⑩ Pedals ⇒ *Shifting*
- ⑪ Driver front airbag ⇒ *Airbag system*
- ⑫ Air vents  ⇒ *Heating and air conditioning*
- ⑬ Lever for:
- Cruise control **OFF – CANCEL – ON – RESUME / – SPEED +/ SET** ⇒ *Cruise control*
  - Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) **DISTANCE +** ⇒ *Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Front Assist*
- ⑭ Fog light button  ⇒ *Lights*

## Center console overview

### Upper center console

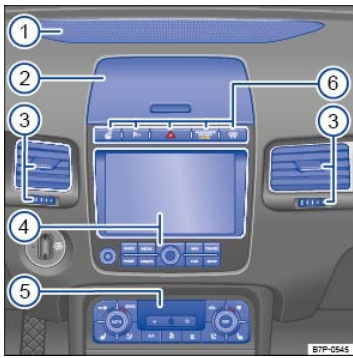


Fig. 6 Overview of upper center console.

**Key to ⇒ Fig. 6 :**

- ① Air vent for indirect ventilation ⇒ *Heating and air conditioning*
- ② Storage compartment ⇒ *Storage areas*
- ③ Air vents ⇒ *Heating and air conditioning*
- ④ Radio or Radio & Navigation system (factory installed) ⇒ *Introduction to the Infotainment System*, ⇒ *Booklet Radio or Navigation System*,
- ⑤ Controls for:
  - Climatronic ⇒ *Heating and air conditioning*
  - Seat heating switch button ⇒ *Seat functions*
- ⑥ Located here:
  - Switch for emergency flashers ⇒ *In an emergency*
  - PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF light (front airbag for front seat passenger) ⇒ *Airbag system*
  - Park Distance Control system button or ⇒ *Park Distance Control (PDC)*
  - Rear View camera ⇒ *Rear View Camera System with dynamic orientation lines*
  - Heated steering wheel ⇒ *Heating and air conditioning*

**Lower center console**

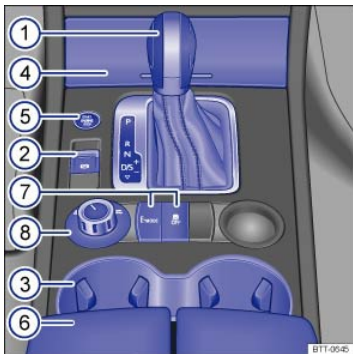


Fig. 7 Overview of lower center console (4MOTION).

**Key to ⇒ Fig. 7 :**

- ① Automatic transmission selector lever ⇒ *Shifting*
- ② Button for the electronic parking brake ⇒ *Braking and parking*
- ③ Cup holders ⇒ *Cup holders*
- ④ Storage compartment ⇒ *Storage areas*
- ⑤ Starter button for Keyless Access locking and starting system **START – STOP** ⇒ *Starting and stopping the engine*
- ⑥ Storage compartment in the center armrest ⇒ *Storage areas*
  - with 12 Volt socket ⇒ *Power outlets*
- ⑦ Button for:
  - Anti-slip regulation (ASR) ⇒ *Braking and parking*
- ⑧ Rotary knob for setting drive mode (On-road / Off-road) ⇒ *Off-road driving*

**Rear center console**



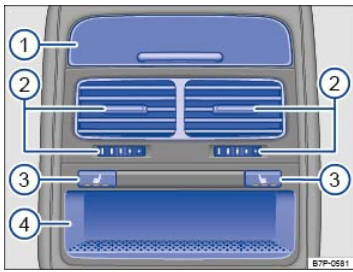




Fig. 8 Overview of rear center console.

Key to ⇒ Fig. 8 :

- ① Cover for:
  - 12 Volt socket ⇒ *Power outlets*
  - 115 Volt outlet ⇒ *Power outlets*
- ② Air vents  ⇒ *Heating and air conditioning*
- ③ Controls for:
  - Seat heating button  ⇒ *Seat functions*
- ④ Storage compartment in the rear center console ⇒ *Storage areas*

### Front passenger side overview

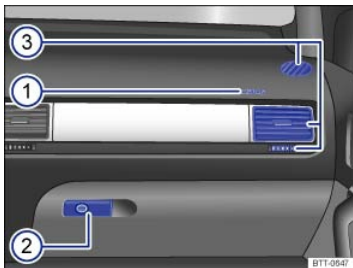



Fig. 9 Overview of the passenger side.

Key to ⇒ Fig. 9 :

- ① Passenger front airbag location in the instrument panel (approximate) ⇒ *Airbag system*
- ② Opening handle for the lockable glove compartment ⇒ *Storage areas*
- ③ Air vents  ⇒ *Heating and air conditioning*

### Roof console overview

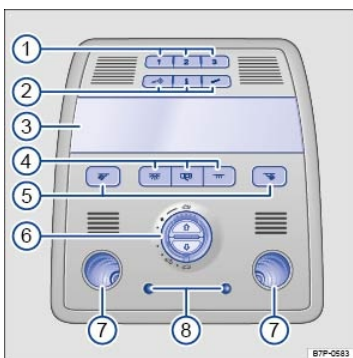






Fig. 10 Overview of the roof console.


Key to ⇒ Fig. 10 :

- ① Buttons for HomeLink® Universal Transmitter 123 ⇒ *HomeLink® Universal Transmitter*
- ② 3 button module ⇒ *Booklet Radio or Navigation System,*
  - Voice operation 
  - Information 
  - Assistance 
- ③ Interior and reading lights ⇒ *Lights.*
- ④ Buttons for interior lights

- Button for Interior lights  ⇒ Lights

- Switch for door contact  ⇒ Lights

- Switch off interior lights  ⇒ Lights

5 Button for reading lights  ⇒ Lights



6 Switch for power sunroof ⇒ Power sunroof

7 Reading lights ⇒ Lights

8 Background lighting ⇒ Lights

## Instrument cluster and instrument panel








### Warning and indicator lights












Warning and indicator lights notify you of warnings ⇒ , malfunctions ⇒  or certain functions. Some warning and indicator lights come on when the ignition is switched on and should go out when the engine is running or when the vehicle is moving.









Additional text messages appear in the instrument cluster of appropriately equipped vehicles to give more information or prompt you to take certain actions.  
⇒ *Instrument Cluster*












Depending on the vehicle options, a symbol may appear in the instrument cluster instead of a warning light.










In addition, a warning chime or other acoustic warning sounds when certain warning and indicator lights go on.










Symbol	Meaning ⇒ 
	 <b>Stop!</b>  Lights up: Electronic parking brake engaged.  ⇒ <i>Braking and parking</i>
<b>PARK</b>	Flashes: Electronic parking brake malfunction.  ⇒ <i>Braking and parking</i>
	 <b>Stop!</b>  Brake fluid level too low or brake system malfunction.  ⇒ <i>Braking and parking</i>
	 <b>Stop!</b>  Engine coolant level too low, engine coolant temperature too high, or engine coolant system malfunction.  ⇒ <i>Engine coolant</i>












Symbol	Meaning ⇒ ⚠
	<p> <b>Stop!</b></p> <p>Engine oil pressure too low.</p> <p>⇒ <i>Engine oil</i></p>
	<p> <b>Stop!</b></p> <p>At least one vehicle door is ajar or not closed properly.</p> <p>⇒ <i>Doors</i></p>
	<p> <b>Stop!</b></p> <p>Engine hood is open or not closed properly.</p> <p>⇒ <i>Working in the engine compartment</i></p>
	<p> <b>Stop!</b></p> <p>trunk lid is open or not closed properly.</p> <p>⇒ <i>Trunk lid</i></p>
	<p> <b>Stop!</b></p> <p>Lights up: Steering system malfunction.</p> <p>Flashes: Electronic steering column lock malfunction.</p> <p>⇒ <i>Steering</i></p>
	<p><b>Brake or take action to avoid the vehicle ahead!</b></p> <p>Front Assist forward collision warning.</p> <p>⇒ <i>Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Front Assist</i></p>

Symbol	Meaning ⇒ ⚠
	<p><b>Brake!</b> Depress brake pedal. ACC driver intervention warning.</p> <p>⇒ <i>Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Front Assist</i></p>
	<p><b>No engine restart possible!</b></p> <p>Not enough AdBlue® or AdBlue® system malfunction</p> <p>⇒ <i>Selective catalytic reduction (AdBlue®)</i></p>
	<p>Driver and/or passenger safety belts not buckled.</p> <p>⇒ <i>Safety belts</i></p>
	<p>Depress brake pedal!</p> <p>Shifting ⇒ <i>Shifting</i>,</p> <p>Braking ⇒ <i>Braking and parking</i></p>
	<p>Alternator malfunction.</p> <p>⇒ <i>12 Volt vehicle battery</i></p>
	<p>Ignition switch malfunction or immobilizer activated.</p> <p>⇒ <i>Starting and stopping the engine</i></p>
<p><b>BRAKEWEAR</b></p>	<p>Brake pads worn.</p> <p>⇒ <i>Braking and parking</i></p>
	<p>Lights up: ESC malfunction or ESC switched off by the system.</p> <p>Flashes: ESC or ASR is working.</p> <p>⇒ <i>Braking and parking</i></p>
	<p>Deactivation of ESC (by the system) or ASR (manually).</p> <p>⇒ <i>Braking and parking</i></p>









Symbol	Meaning ⇒ 
	ABS malfunction.  ⇒ <i>Braking and parking</i>
	Brake pads worn.  ⇒ <i>Braking and parking</i>
	Hill Start Assist (Hill Hold) malfunction.  ⇒ <i>Starting assistance systems</i>
	Electronic parking brake malfunction.  ⇒ <i>Braking and parking</i>
	Automatic transmission malfunction.  ⇒ <i>Shifting</i>
	Adaptive Front Lighting System (AFS) malfunction.  ⇒ <i>Lights</i>
	Headlight range adjustment malfunction.  ⇒ <i>Lights</i>
	Parking lights switched on.  ⇒ <i>Lights</i>
	One or more license plate lights burned out.  ⇒ <i>Replacing light bulbs</i>
	One or more brake lights burned out.  ⇒ <i>Replacing light bulbs</i>











Symbol	Meaning ⇒ 
	Lights up: One or more driving lights burned out.  ⇒ <i>Replacing light bulbs</i>
	Flashes: Driving light system malfunction.  ⇒ <i>Lights,</i>
	Rain sensor malfunction.  ⇒ <i>Windshield wiper and washer</i>
	Windshield and/or rear window wiper malfunction.  ⇒ <i>Windshield wiper and washer</i>
	Windshield and rear window washer fluid level too low.  ⇒ <i>Windshield wiper and washer</i>
	Instrument cluster malfunction.  ⇒ <i>Displays</i>
	Lights up: Engine control malfunction.  Flashes: Misfire.  ⇒ <i>Engine control and emission control system</i>
	Lights up: Glow plug preheating before diesel engine start-up.  Flashes: Engine control malfunction.  ⇒ <i>Engine control and emission control system</i>
	Engine control malfunction.  ⇒ <i>Engine control and emission control system</i>






Symbol	Meaning ⇒ 
	<p>Diesel particulate filter clogged.</p> <p>⇒ <i>Engine control and emission control system</i></p>
	<p>Problem with the steering.</p> <p>⇒ <i>Steering</i></p>
	<p>Lights up: Tire pressure too low.</p> <p>⇒ <i>Tires and wheels</i></p> <hr/> <p>Flashes: Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS) malfunction.</p> <p>⇒ <i>Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS)</i></p>
	<p>Fuel tank almost empty.</p> <p>Fuel tank system malfunction.</p> <p>⇒ <i>Refueling</i></p>
	<p>Fuel filler cap not properly closed.</p> <p>⇒ <i>Refueling</i></p>
	<p>Refill AdBlue® tank or AdBlue® system malfunction</p> <p>⇒ <i>Selective catalytic reduction (AdBlue®)</i></p>
	<p>Lights up: Engine oil level too low.</p> <p>Flashes: Engine oil system malfunction.</p> <p>⇒ <i>Engine oil</i></p>
	<p>Engine oil pressure too low.</p> <p>⇒ <i>Engine oil</i></p>

Symbol	Meaning ⇒ 
	<p>Airbag and safety belt pretensioner system malfunction.</p> <p>⇒ <i>Airbag system</i></p>
	<p>Front passenger frontal airbag turned off (PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF )</p> <p>⇒ <i>Airbag system</i></p>
	<p>Ignition switch or starter button (Keyless Access) malfunction.</p> <p>⇒ <i>Starting and stopping the engine</i></p>
	<p>Battery in remote control vehicle key is dead.</p> <p>⇒ <i>Vehicle key set</i></p>
	<p>Cruise control malfunction.</p> <p>⇒ <i>Cruise control</i></p>
	<p>Lane Assist system malfunction.</p> <p>⇒ <i>Lane Departure Warning (Lane Assist)</i></p>
	<p>Side Assist system malfunction.</p> <p>⇒ <i>Lane Change System (Side Assist)</i></p>
	<p>Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) or Front Assist system malfunction.</p> <p>⇒ <i>Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Front Assist</i></p>
	<p>Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) or Front Assist switched on, but not active. Vehicle detected ahead.</p> <p>⇒ <i>Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Front Assist</i></p>
	<p>Turn signals, left or right.</p> <p>⇒ <i>Lights</i></p>



Symbol	Meaning ⇒ 
	<p>Emergency flashers switched on.</p> <p>⇒ <i>In an emergency</i></p>
	<p>Daytime running lights on.</p> <p>⇒ <i>Lights</i></p>
	<p>Lights up: Depress brake pedal!</p> <p>Flashes: The release button in the selector lever is not engaged.</p> <p>⇒ <i>Starting and stopping the engine</i></p> <p>⇒ <i>Shifting</i></p> <p>⇒ <i>Braking and parking</i></p>
	<p>Cruise control is regulating vehicle speed.</p> <p>⇒ <i>Cruise control</i></p>
	<p>Lights up: Hill Descent Control switched on.</p> <p>Flashes: Hill Descent Control is operating.</p> <p>⇒ <i>Starting assistance systems</i></p>
	<p>Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) and Front Assist switched on and active.</p> <p>⇒ <i>Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Front Assist</i></p>
	<p>Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) and Front Assist switched on and active. Vehicle detected ahead.</p> <p>⇒ <i>Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Front Assist</i></p>
	<p>Lane Assist switched on and active.</p> <p>⇒ <i>Lane Departure Warning (Lane Assist)</i></p>

Symbol	Meaning ⇒ 
	Side Assist switched on and active.  ⇒ <i>Lane Change System (Side Assist)</i>
	High beams switched on or headlight flashers in use.  ⇒ <i>Lights</i>
	No authorized remote control vehicle key found (Keyless Access).  ⇒ <i>Vehicle key set</i>
	Engine cannot be started with starter button (Keyless Access).  ⇒ <i>Starting and stopping the engine</i>
	Service reminder display.  ⇒ <i>Service reminder display</i>
	Deactivation of electrical consumers.  ⇒ <i>12 Volt vehicle battery</i>
	Cruise control is switched on, but <b>not</b> active.  ⇒ <i>Cruise control</i>
	Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) and Front Assist switched on but not active.  ⇒ <i>Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Front Assist</i>
	Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) and Front Assist switched on but not active. Vehicle detected ahead.  ⇒ <i>Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Front Assist</i>
	Lane Assist switched on but not active.  ⇒ <i>Lane Departure Warning (Lane Assist)</i>

Symbol	Meaning ⇒ 
	Side Assist switched on but not active.  ⇒ <i>Lane Change System (Side Assist)</i>
	Mobile phone is connected via Bluetooth to the factory-installed mobile phone package.  ⇒ <i>Booklet Mobile Phone Package,</i>
	Charge level of the mobile phone battery. Applies only to models with a factory-installed mobile phone package.  ⇒ <i>Booklet Mobile Phone Package,</i>
	Icy road warning. Outside temperature colder than +39 °F (+4 °C).  ⇒ <i>Instrument Cluster</i>

### WARNING

Failure to heed warning lights and instrument cluster text messages can cause the vehicle to break down in traffic and result in a collision and serious personal injury.

- Never ignore warning lights or text WARNINGS.
- Always stop the vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so.
- Park the vehicle at a safe distance from moving traffic and where no part of the hot catalytic converter and exhaust system can come into contact with flammable materials under the vehicle, such as dry grass, brush, spilled fuel, etc.
- A broken down vehicle presents a high accident risk for itself and others. Switch on emergency flashers and set up a warning triangle to warn oncoming traffic.
- Before opening the engine hood, always switch off the engine and let the engine cool down.
- Always be very careful when working in the engine compartment, which is a potentially dangerous area in any motor vehicle and can cause serious personal injury ⇒ *Working in the engine compartment* .

### NOTE

Failure to heed warning lights or text WARNINGS can result in vehicle damage.

## Instrument Cluster

### Introduction to the subject

In this chapter you will find information on the following subjects:

⇒ *Instrument overview*

⇒ *Displays*

⇒ *Service reminder display*

### WARNING

Driving on today's roads demands the full attention of the driver at all times. Driver distraction causes accidents, collisions and serious personal injury!

- Never use the buttons in the instrument cluster while driving.

## Instrument overview

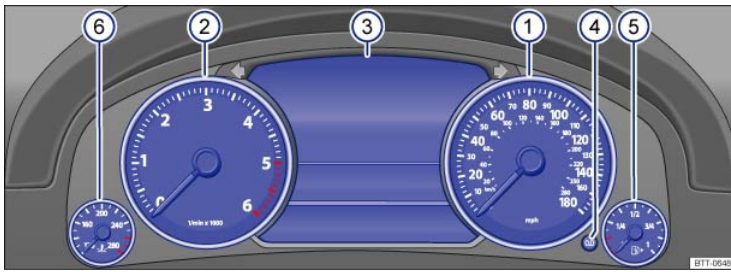


Fig. 11 Instrument cluster in the instrument panel.

📖 Read and follow the introductory information and safety information first ⇒ [Introduction to the subject](#)

Instrument explanations to ⇒ [Fig. 11](#) :

① **Speedometer**

② **Tachometer** (shows engine revolutions per minute in thousands, when the engine is running).

The red zone at the end of the scale indicates maximum permissible engine rpm (revolutions per minute) for all gears after the break-in period. Before reaching this region, select the next higher selector level position (D), or ease your foot off the accelerator ⇒ ①.

③ **Displays** ⇒ [Displays](#).

④ **Reset button** for the trip odometer display (trip) and **button** to display the engine code.

- Push and hold the 0.0 button about 1 second in order to reset to zero.
- Keep the 0.0 button pushed for about 3 seconds to display the previous value.
- Push and hold the 0.0 button for more than 10 seconds to display the vehicle's engine code. You must do this when the ignition is on, but the engine is not running.

⑤ **Fuel gauge** ⇒ [Refueling](#).

⑥ **Engine coolant temperature display** ⇒ [Engine coolant](#).

#### ⚠ NOTE

- To help prevent engine damage, always avoid high engine speeds, full throttle acceleration and heavy engine loads when the engine is cold.
- To help prevent engine damage, the tachometer needle should only enter the red zone (warning zone) briefly.

🌸 Up-shifting early into the next higher gear saves fuel and reduces engine noise.

## Displays

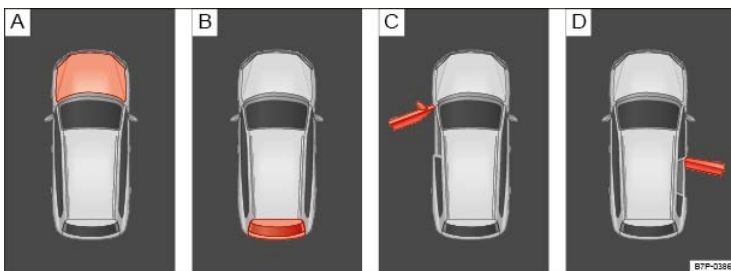


Fig. 12 In the instrument cluster display: A: Open engine hood, B: Open trunk lid, C: Open front driver side door, D: Open rear passenger side door.

📖 Read and follow the introductory information and safety information first ⇒ [Introduction to the subject](#)




Depending on the vehicle model, different information may be shown in the instrument cluster display ⇒ [Fig. 11](#) ③.

- Warning and information texts.
- Odometer displays.
- Time.
- Navigation information ⇒ [Introduction to the Infotainment System](#).
- Outside temperature.
- Open door, engine hood, or trunk lid ⇒ [Fig. 12](#).
- AdBlue information ⇒ [Selective catalytic reduction \(AdBlue®\)](#).
- Selector lever position ⇒ [Shifting](#).
- Multi-Function Indicator (MFI) and menus for different settings ⇒ [Volkswagen Information System](#).

- Service reminder display ⇒ [Service reminder display](#).
- Speed warning ⇒ [Speed warning](#).

### Warning and information texts

The status of various vehicle functions and components is monitored when the ignition is switched on and while driving. Malfunctions are indicated by red and yellow warning symbols with text messages in the instrument cluster display (⇒ [Instrument cluster and instrument panel](#)). In some cases, they may also be signaled acoustically. The display can vary depending on the instrument cluster model.


Type of notification	Symbol color	Explanation
		Symbol flashing or lit – sometimes with acoustic warnings.
		 <b>Stop!</b> ⇒ 
Priority 1 warning message	Red	Check malfunction and take corrective action. Contact an authorized Volkswagen dealer or an authorized Volkswagen Service Facility for assistance if necessary.
		Menus cannot be accessed when a priority 1 warning message is displayed. The warning message will turn off automatically after a few seconds. You can confirm and turn off some warning messages using the OK button.
		Symbol flashing or continuously lit – sometimes with acoustic warnings.
Priority 2 warning message	Yellow	Malfunctions or low operating fluid levels may cause vehicle damage and vehicle breakdown ⇒  .
		Check malfunction as soon as possible. Contact an authorized Volkswagen dealer or an authorized Volkswagen Service Facility for assistance if necessary.
Information text	–	Information about various vehicle situations.

### Odometer displays

The *odometer* indicates the total distance driven by the vehicle.

The *trip odometer (trip)* shows the distance driven since the last time the trip odometer was reset. The last digit indicates 1/10 mile (100 meters).

### Outside temperature display

At outside temperatures below about +39 °F (+4 °C), a snowflake symbol (icy road warning) appears in the display. The symbol flashes at first, then stays on until the outside temperature rises above +43 °F (+6 °C) ⇒ .

When the vehicle is not moving or when you are driving at very low speeds, the temperature displayed may be slightly higher than the actual outside temperature.

The measurement range is from -40 °F (-40 °C) to +122 °F (+50 °C).

### Selector lever positions


The selector lever position is shown both on the side of the selector lever and in the instrument cluster display. The respective gear may also be shown in the instrument cluster display in Drive (**D**) and Sport Drive (**S**), as well as in Tiptronic® mode.

### Speed warning

If you exceed the top speed that has been set, this will be signaled in the instrument cluster display. This feature is useful in various situations, for instance when using winter tires that are not designed for the vehicle's top speed.

The speed warning can be set and switched on and off in the Infotainment System.

- Switch on the ignition.
- Press the [CAR](#) Infotainment button.

- Tap the Settings function key on the screen.
- Tap the Instrument cluster function key on the screen.
- Select Speed warning from the list.
- Place your finger on the touchscreen slider  and, *keeping your finger on the screen*, move your finger to slide it to the desired speed setting.
- **OR:** Tap the - or + function key on the screen to move the slider in steps.
- Tap the Active function key on the screen to switch on the speed warning.

If the check box in the Active function key is checked , the feature is switched on.

### WARNING

Failure to heed warning lights and instrument cluster text messages can cause the vehicle to break down in traffic and result in a collision and serious personal injury.

- Never ignore warning lights or text WARNINGS.
- Always stop the vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so.
- Park the vehicle at a safe distance from moving traffic and where no part of the hot catalytic converter and exhaust system can come into contact with flammable materials under the vehicle, such as dry grass, brush, spilled fuel, etc.
- A broken down vehicle presents a high accident risk for itself and others. Switch on emergency flashers and set up a warning triangle to warn oncoming traffic.

### WARNING

Roads and bridges may be dangerously icy even if the outside air temperature is above freezing.

- If you use the outside temperature display to tell you about frost conditions, remember that roads can even ice over at temperatures above +39 °F (+4 °C). Always remember: even if the snowflake symbol (ice warning) is not displayed, there could still be black ice on the road.
- Never rely exclusively on the outside temperature display.

### NOTE

Failure to heed warning lights or text WARNINGS can result in vehicle damage.





The instrument cluster displays and their arrangement may vary depending on the vehicle model and engine version. For displays without warning and information messages, malfunctions are only signaled with indicator lights.



If there are multiple warning messages, the symbols are displayed for several seconds in order of importance. The symbols are displayed until the cause has been corrected.

## Service reminder display

 Read and follow the introductory information and safety information first ⇒  [Introduction to the subject](#)

The service appointment reminder is shown in the instrument cluster display ⇒ [Fig. 11](#) . For more information, please See ⇒ [Booklet Warranty and Maintenance](#),


Information on maintenance intervals ⇒ [Booklet Warranty and Maintenance](#).

For vehicles with **time- or distance- driven dependent service**, fixed service intervals are displayed.

### Service reminder

If service is due in the near future, a **service reminder** is displayed when the ignition is switched on an **Service in --- mi or --- days (Service in --- km or --- day)** is shown on the instrument cluster display.

### Service event

When **service is due**, an audible signal sounds when the ignition is switched on, and a flashing wrench symbol  is displayed for several seconds. For *vehicle with text messages*, **Service now** is indicated on the instrument cluster display.

### Viewing service messages

Service messages can be viewed in the Infotainment System.

- Switch on the ignition.
- Press the **CAR** Infotainment button.

- Tap the Service function key on the screen.

A **minus sign** in front of the number of miles (kilometers) or days means that **service is overdue**. **Service since --- mi or --- days (Service since --- km or --- days)** is shown on the display ⇒ *Fig. 187*.



The service reminder disappears after a few seconds when the engine is running or the OK button on the multi-function steering wheel has been pushed.

## Volkswagen Information System

### Introduction to the subject

In this chapter you will find information on the following subjects:

⇒ *Menu structure – overview*

⇒ *Using the instrument cluster menus*

⇒ *Main menu*

⇒ *Vehicle menu*

When the ignition is switched on, you can display different types of information in the instrument cluster. The menu options vary depending on whether you have a Basic or Premium version Volkswagen Information System. With the Premium instrument cluster display can also be used to control certain vehicle features.

Buttons on the windshield wiper lever operate the menus for Basic instrument cluster. The Premium version has control buttons on in the right side of the multi-function steering wheel.

The number of menus in the instrument cluster display depends on the electronics and equipment on the vehicle.

An authorized Volkswagen dealer or an authorized Volkswagen Service Facility may be able to add or modify functions depending on your vehicle's equipment

Some menu items can only be accessed when the vehicle is not moving.

As long as a priority 1 warning message is displayed, no menus can be accessed on vehicles with the Premium instrument cluster. In order to display menus, acknowledge the warning by pressing the OK button on the multi-function steering wheel.

### WARNING

Driving on today's roads demands the full attention of the driver at all times. Driver distraction causes accidents, collisions and serious personal injury!

- Never access menus when the vehicle is moving.



Emergency starting and starting the engine with a very weak vehicle battery or after the vehicle battery has been replaced may change or delete system settings (including time, date, personal convenience settings and programming). Check the settings and correct as necessary once the vehicle battery has built up a sufficient charge.

## Menu structure – overview

Read and follow the introductory information and safety information first ⇒ *Introduction to the subject*

- **Vehicle** ⇒ *Vehicle menu*
  - Vehicle status
  - Tire pressure
  - Display since start
  - Display since refuel
  - Display long-term
  - Digital speed (digital speed display).
  - Alt. speed (Alternative speed display)
- **Assistants** ⇒ *Driver assistance systems* .
- **Navigation** ⇒ *Introduction to the Infotainment System* .
- **Audio** ⇒ *Introduction to the Infotainment System* .
  - Source list
    - DAB

- FM
- AM
- SIRIUS
- Radio preset list
- Media hard drive
- SD
- DVD
- MDI
- Bluetooth
- TV tuner
- TV station memory
- External AV source
- **Telephone** ⇒ *Introduction to the Infotainment System*.
  - Directory
  - Dialed numbers
  - Missed calls
  - Received calls

### Using the instrument cluster menus



Fig. 13 Right side of the multi-function steering wheel: Controls for the menus in the instrument cluster.

Read and follow the introductory information and safety information first ⇒ [Introduction to the subject](#)

#### Displaying the main menu

- Switch on the ignition.
- If a message or the vehicle pictograph is displayed, press the OK button ⇒ *Fig. 13*.
- To scroll through the individual main menu items, push keys ◀ or ▶ several times ⇒ *Main menu*.
- To access a menu item, press the OK button.

#### Displaying a sub-menu

- Press the button on the multi-function steering wheel to access a submenu.
- Press the ▲ or ▼ buttons until the menu item you want is highlighted. The highlighted menu item is between the two horizontal lines.
- Highlight or confirm the selection with the OK button.

If you make no selection within about 10 seconds, the screen switches back to the previous menu.

#### Returning to the main menu

- Press the ◀ or ▶ buttons ⇒ *Fig. 13*.

### Main menu


Read and follow the introductory information and safety information first ⇒ [Introduction to the subject](#)

Menu	Function	See
	Information displays from active navigation system:	



Menu	Function	See
Navigation	Turn arrows and proximity bars are shown if route guidance is activated. The design is similar to the symbols used in the Infotainment System.	,Chapter <i>Navigation system</i>
	If route guidance is inactive, the display shows the direction of travel (compass direction) and the name of the road or street you are now on.	
Audio	Display of radio station you are listening to.	⇒ <i>BookletRadio or Navigation System</i> ,
	Display of CD being played.	
	Display of various media sources.	
Telephone	Display of the directory and various calling information.	⇒ <i>BookletRadio or Navigation System</i> ,
	Use of telephone features.	
Vehicle	Display of current warnings or text messages and other system components depending on the equipment level.	⇒ <i>Vehicle menu</i>
	Information and settings for the multi-function indicator (MFI).	
Assistants	Display of assistant systems.	⇒ <i>Driver assistance systems</i>

## Vehicle menu

 Read and follow the introductory information and safety information first ⇒ [Introduction to the subject](#)

Menu	Function
Vehicle status	Display and storage of current warning and information messages.
	This menu item appears only if there are current warnings or text messages. The number of available messages is shown in the display. Example: 1/1 or 2/2.
Tire pressure	Display of current tire pressures in vehicles with direct Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS) ⇒ <i>Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS)</i> .
Display since start	<p>Trip memory: Display and storage of the driving and fuel consumption data compiled from the time the ignition is switched on to the time it is switched off.</p> <p>If the journey is continued within two hours after the ignition is switched off, the information from the new leg of the journey is counted as well. The memory is automatically cleared if the vehicle is not driven for more than two hours.</p>
Display since refuel	Trip memory: Display and storage of driving and fuel consumption data. The memory is automatically cleared when the vehicle is fueled again.



Menu	Function
Display long-term	Trip memory: Display and storage of the accumulated driving and fuel consumption data of any number of single trips up to a total driving time of either 19 hours and 59 minutes or 99 hours and 59 minutes, and up to a total distance of either 1,999.9 miles (1,999.9 km) or 9,999 miles (9,999 km), depending on the instrument cluster version. If one of the stored values is exceeded, then the memory is automatically cleared and starts again from 0.
Digital speed	Switch the digital speed on or off.  Shows the current vehicle speed in digital form.
Alt. speed display	Switch the second speed on or off.  Shows the current vehicle speed in digital form.
Back	The display switches back to the main menu.

#### Possible displays

When selecting 1 of the 3 trip memories **Display since start**, **Display since refuel**, or **Display long-term**, you can access the following submenus:

Submenu	Function
Travel time	Driving time in hours (h) and minutes (min) corresponding to the trip memories <b>Display since start</b> , <b>Display since refuel</b> , or <b>Display long-term</b> (toggle).
Current consumption	Current fuel consumption in miles per gallon (l/100 km) while driving. When units are set to miles, dashes appear instead of a number when the engine is running and the vehicle is standing still. When units are set to kilometers, the display shows liters consumed per hour when the engine is running and the vehicle is standing still.
Average consumption	Average fuel consumption in miles per gallon (l/100 km) on trips per trip memories is displayed once the vehicle has been driven about 330 feet (100 m). Until then, dashes appear instead of a number. The value displayed is updated every 5 seconds.
Range	Estimated distance in miles (km) that the vehicle can go with the fuel left in the tank the way you are currently driving. Takes account of the current fuel consumption, among other things.
Distance	Distance driven in miles (km) from the time the ignition was switched on.
Average speed	The average speed is displayed after the ignition is switched on and the vehicle has been driven about 300 feet (100 m). Up to this point, dashes appear instead of a number. The value displayed is updated every 5 seconds.
AdBlue	This display appears when the AdBlue fuel range falls to about 1000 miles (1600 km) and then provides current information as the range continues to diminish. You must refuel with AdBlue within this range  ⇒ <i>Selective catalytic reduction (AdBlue®)</i> .

#### Switching between the displays

- Press the  or  button on the multi-function steering wheel.

#### Clearing a memory manually

- Select the memory that you want to clear ⇒ *Using the instrument cluster menus*.
- Press and hold the OK button on the multi-function steering wheel for about 2 seconds.

# Before driving

## Some basics

### Driving checklists and warnings

#### Introduction to the subject

In this chapter you will find information on the following subjects:

⇒ *Getting ready and driving safely*

⇒ *Driving in other countries*

⇒ *Driving through water on roads*


Depending on where the vehicle is used, it might be advisable to install drivetrain underbody protection. Drivetrain underbody protection can reduce the risk of damage to the vehicle underbody and engine oil pan when driving over curbs, on rough private roads, or on dirt roads, for example. Volkswagen recommends having the work done by an authorized Volkswagen dealer or an authorized Volkswagen Service Facility.

#### WARNING


Driving under the influence of alcohol, illegal drugs, narcotics and some medications may cause collisions and other accidents, severe personal injuries and even death.

- Alcohol, illegal drugs, narcotics and some medications may severely affect perception, reaction times and safe driving, which may result in the loss of vehicle control.

## Getting ready and driving safely

 Read and follow the introductory information and safety information first ⇒  *Introduction to the subject*

### Checklist

**Observe the following points before and during every drive for your own safety, the safety of all passengers and others** ⇒  :

- ✓ Check proper function of lights and turn signals.
- ✓ Check tire pressure (Tires and wheels) and fuel level (Refueling).
- ✓ Make sure that all windows are clean.
- ✓ Make sure that the engine is not covered by blankets or other materials and that the engine air intake is free of obstacles.
- ✓ Store items and all luggage safely in the storage compartments, in the luggage compartment and, where applicable, on the roof Transporting.
- ✓ Always make sure that nothing keeps the pedals from moving freely.
- ✓ Make sure that children are properly secured by a restraint system appropriate for their size and weight Child safety and child restraints.
- ✓ Properly adjust front seats, all head restraints and mirrors to the correct height Adjusting the seating position.
- ✓ Wear shoes that give your feet a good grip and that give you a feel for the pedals.
- ✓ Make sure that the floormat on the driver side is properly fastened and cannot interfere with the pedals.
- ✓ Assume a proper seating position before the vehicle starts to move and keep this position while driving. Make sure that all passengers do the same Adjusting the seating position.
- ✓ Properly fasten your safety belt before driving the vehicle and wear your safety belt properly at all times while driving. Make sure that all passengers do the same Safety belts.
- ✓ Only transport as many passengers as there are seats and safety belts available.
- ✓ Never drive if your driving ability has been impaired, for example, by medication, alcohol, or illegal drugs.
- ✓ Never let passengers or phone calls distract you while driving and never take your attention off the road while using vehicle software or adjusting vehicle equipment or accessories.
- ✓ Always adapt your speed and driving style to visibility, weather, road, and traffic conditions.
- ✓ Always obey traffic laws and speed limits.
- ✓ On long trips make frequent rest stops – at least once every 2 hours.
- ✓ Secure animals in the vehicle with a system that corresponds to their weight and size.

#### WARNING

Always observe traffic rules and posted speed limits and use common sense. Your good judgment can mean the difference between arriving safely at your

destination and being seriously injured in a crash or other kind of accident.



Regular service and maintenance of your vehicle is important both for operational and driving safety and to help prolong your vehicle's service life. Always follow the scheduled maintenance intervals in the ⇒Booklet *Warranty and Maintenance*., especially for changing the brake fluid. Hard use, frequent stop-and-go driving, driving in very dusty areas, trailer towing, and other factors may make it necessary to have the vehicle serviced more frequently. Ask an authorized Volkswagen dealer or an authorized Volkswagen Service Facility for more information.

## Driving in other countries



Read and follow the introductory information and safety information first ⇒ [Introduction to the subject](#)

### Checklist

**Some countries have special safety standards and emissions requirements that your vehicle may not meet. Before taking your vehicle to another country, Volkswagen therefore recommends that you ask your authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility about the following issues with regard to the country to which you would like to travel:**

- ✓ Should the vehicle be technically prepared for the trip abroad, such as masking or adjusting headlights?
- ✓ Are maintenance, repair facilities, necessary tools and testing equipment as well as spare parts readily available for your vehicle?
- ✓ Are there authorized Volkswagen dealers and authorized Volkswagen Service Facilities in the countries where you will be driving?
- ✓ For gasoline engines: Is unleaded fuel with the right octane rating readily available?
- ✓ For diesel engines: Is ultra low-sulfur diesel fuel and AdBlue readily available?
- ✓ Are engine oil Engine oil and other operating fluids that meet Volkswagen quality and performance requirements available where you will be driving? For more information, please See *Warranty and Maintenance*.
- ✓ Does the factory installed navigation system work in the countries where you will be driving, and is navigation data available?
- ✓ Are special or heavy-duty tires necessary for the kind of driving expected?

#### NOTE

Volkswagen is not responsible for mechanical damage that may result from substandard fuel or service or the unavailability of Genuine Volkswagen parts.

## Driving through water on roads



Read and follow the introductory information and safety information first ⇒ [Introduction to the subject](#)

Note the following to help prevent vehicle damage when driving through water, for example on flooded roads:

- Check the depth of the water before driving through it. The water **must not be any higher than** the bottom of the vehicle body ⇒ [!](#).
- Do not drive faster than walking speed.
- Never stop the vehicle, and do not drive in reverse or switch the engine off when driving through water.
- Oncoming vehicles may create waves that raise the water level and make it too deep for your vehicle to drive through safely.

#### WARNING

After driving through water, mud, sludge, etc., the brakes react slower and need longer stopping distances.

- Always dry the brakes and clean off any ice coatings with a few careful applications of the brake. Make sure not to endanger other motorists or cyclists or disobey legal requirements.
- Avoid abrupt or sudden braking maneuvers immediately after driving through water.

#### NOTE

- Vehicle components such as the engine, transmission, suspension or electrical system may be severely damaged by driving through water. To help prevent damage to these components, have your vehicle inspected by an authorized Volkswagen dealer or an authorized Volkswagen Service Facility after driving through water.
- Never drive through salt water. Salt causes vehicle corrosion. Thoroughly rinse with fresh water all vehicle parts that were exposed to salt water.

## Technical data



[Introduction to the subject](#)

In this chapter you will find information on the following subjects:

⇒ Important vehicle labels

⇒ Engine data

⇒ Dimensions

Your vehicle's engine type is shown on the vehicle label or in the official vehicle documents.

The specifications in this Manual refer to the base model. The stated values may vary, depending upon different equipment or models, as well as with respect to special vehicles and vehicles exported to different countries.

## ⚠ WARNING

Disregarding or exceeding stated values for weights, loads, dimensions and maximum speed may result in accidents and serious personal injuries.

## Important vehicle labels

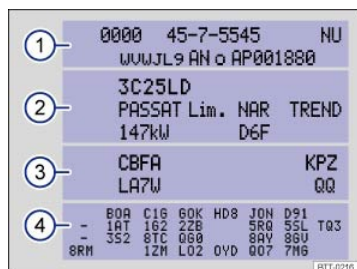


Fig. 14 Vehicle identification label: Shown in the example with engine identification code CBFA ③.

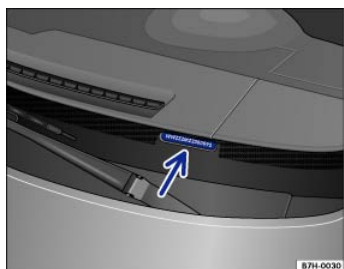


Fig. 15 Vehicle Identification Number (VIN).

📖 Read and follow the introductory information and safety information first ⇒ ⚠ Introduction to the subject

Factory-installed safety certificates, stickers, and signs containing important information regarding vehicle operation can be found in the engine compartment and on certain vehicle components, such as inside the fuel filler flap, on the passenger sun visor, in the driver door jamb, or on the luggage compartment floor.

- Do not remove, alter, or render unusable or illegible any safety certificates, stickers, and labels.
- If vehicle components bearing safety certificates, stickers, or labels are replaced, make certain that the firm doing the work attaches new conforming certificates, stickers, or labels to the same part of the new components.

### Vehicle Identification Number (VIN)

The Vehicle Identification Number (VIN) is on a plate on top of the instrument panel on the driver side, and is visible from the outside through the windshield ⇒ Fig. 15. The view window is on the side at the bottom of the windshield. The vehicle identification number is also stamped into the top of the right drip channel in the engine compartment. The drip channel is between the spring strut tower and the right fender. Open the engine hood to read the vehicle identification number ⚠ ⇒ In the engine compartment.

### Viewing the VIN in the Infotainment System

- Switch on the ignition.
- Press the CAR Infotainment button.
- Tap the Settings function key on the screen.
- Select VIN/Number of keys from the list.

The VIN and the number of programmed remote control vehicle keys are shown in the Infotainment System screen.

### Vehicle identification label

The vehicle identification label is on the left side of the rear panel in the luggage compartment, under the carpet on the luggage compartment floor, or at the rear of the spare wheel/tire compartment. The label contains the following information:

- ① Vehicle Identification Number (VIN)

- ② Vehicle type, engine output, transmission
- ③ Engine and transmission identification code, paint number, interior. In the example, the engine classification code is CBFA
- ④ Optional equipment, part numbers

#### Safety Compliance Certification Label

A safety certificate affixed to the door jamb in the driver door confirms that at time of production all necessary safety standards and requirements of the traffic safety agency of the respective country were met. The month and year of production as well as the vehicle identification number may be listed as well.


#### Radiator fan and high voltage warning sticker

A warning sticker about the radiator fan and the high voltage of the electrical system is located in the engine compartment next to the engine hood release. The vehicle ignition system complies with the Canadian standard ICES-002.

#### Tire inflation pressure label

A tire inflation pressure label is on the driver door jamb ⇒ [Tires and wheels](#).

## Engine data

 Read and follow the introductory information and safety information first ⇒ [Introduction to the subject](#)

#### Gasoline engines

280 hp at 6200 rpm

#### Maximum power output<sup>a)</sup>

206 kW at 6200 rpm

#### Injection technology

FSI®

CGRA

#### Engine code

3.6L

265 ft-lbs at 2900 - 4000 rpm

#### Maximum torque

360 Nm at 2900 - 4000 rpm

6 cylinders

#### No. of cylinders

219.5 CID

#### Displacement

(3597 ccm)

#### Fuel recommendations for gasoline engines

Using gasoline that does not meet minimum octane requirements can cause loss of engine performance, while the use of poor quality gasoline or octane levels below 87 can also cause engine damage. If Regular gasoline is recommended for your engine, you may be able to enhance engine performance by using Premium gasoline.

#### Diesel engines

240 hp at 3500-4000 rpm

Maximum power output  
176 kW at 3500-4000 rpm

Injection technology TDI®  
CNRA

Engine code  
3.0L

406 ft-lbs at 1750-2250 rpm

Maximum torque  
550 Nm at 1750-2250 rpm


6 cylinders

No. of cylinders  
181.1 CID

Displacement  
(2967 ccm)

a) Engine performance data using Premium grade gasoline ⇒ *Fuel*

## Dimensions

 Read and follow the introductory information and safety information first ⇒  *Introduction to the subject*

Length	188.8 inches (4795 mm)
Width	76.4 inches (1940 mm)
Height (unloaded)	68.2 inches (1732 mm)
Wheelbase	113.9 inches (2893 mm)
Minimum turning circle diameter	39 feet (11.9 m)
Track, front	64.9 inches (1650 mm)
Track, rear	65.7 inches (1670 mm)
Ground clearance	7.9 inches (200 mm)



Approach angle – Off-road	25 degrees
Departure angle	26 degrees
Ramp angle	20 degrees
Max. gradient	31 degrees
Fording depth	Maximum 20 inches (500 mm)

#### NOTE

- Please be careful when parking your vehicle in areas with parking barriers or curbs. These vary in height and could damage your bumper and related parts if the front of your vehicle hits a barrier or curb that is too high while you are getting into or out of a parking spot.
- Always be careful when you enter a driveway or drive up or down steep ramps or over curbs or other obstacles. Parts of the vehicle close to the ground may be damaged (such as bumper covers, spoilers, and parts of the engine, suspension, and exhaust systems).

## Opening and closing

### Vehicle key set

#### Introduction to the subject

In this chapter you will find information on the following subjects:

⇒ [Remote control vehicle keys](#)

⇒ [Emergency key](#)

⇒ [Indicator light in the remote control vehicle key](#)

⇒ [Replacing the remote control vehicle key battery](#)

⇒ [Synchronizing the remote control vehicle key](#)

#### DANGER!

20 mm button cells and other lithium batteries will cause serious personal injury and even death within a short time if swallowed.

- Always keep remote control vehicle key fobs with batteries, spare batteries, as well as dead button cells and larger 20 mm batteries out of the reach of children.
- Get medical attention immediately if you suspect that a battery has been swallowed.

#### WARNING

Improper use of remote control vehicle keys can result in serious personal injury.

- Always take the key with you when you leave the vehicle. It can be used to start the engine and operate vehicle systems such as the power windows, leading to serious personal injury. Children or other unauthorized persons could also lock the doors and the luggage compartment.
- Never leave children, disabled persons, or anyone who cannot help themselves in the vehicle. The doors can be locked with the remote control vehicle key. This could result in people being trapped in the vehicle in an emergency. For example, depending on the time of year, people trapped in the vehicle can be exposed to very high or very low temperatures.
- Heat build-up in the passenger and luggage compartment of a parked vehicle can result in temperatures in the vehicle that are much higher than the outside temperatures, particularly in summer. Temperatures can quickly reach levels that can cause unconsciousness and death, particularly to small children.
- Never remove the key from the ignition switch or turn off the ignition with the starter button while the vehicle is moving or rolling to a stop. The electronic steering column could suddenly lock, you would not be able to steer, and you could lose control of the vehicle, crash, and seriously injure yourself and others.

### Remote control vehicle keys

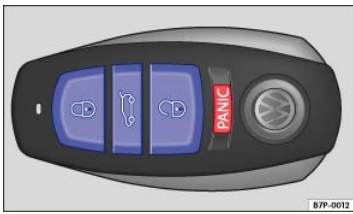


Fig. 16 Remote control vehicle key with panic button.

Read and follow the introductory information and safety information first ⇒ [Introduction to the subject](#)

### Remote control vehicle key

The remote control vehicle key can unlock and lock the vehicle from a distance.

The remote transmitter and battery are inside the remote control vehicle key. The receiver is inside the passenger compartment. The operating range of the remote control vehicle key for a fresh battery is several yards (meters) around the vehicle.

If the remote control vehicle key will not lock or unlock your vehicle, you probably need to replace the battery in the remote control vehicle key ⇒ [Replacing the remote control vehicle key battery](#). If this is not the problem, the key should be resynchronized by an authorized Volkswagen dealer, an authorized Volkswagen Service Facility, or another qualified workshop. See also ⇒ [Synchronizing the remote control vehicle key](#).

### Panic button

Press button ⇒ [Fig. 16](#) only in emergencies! After pressing the button, an alarm signal will sound and the turn signals will flash. Press the button again to switch off the panic feature.

### Replacement vehicle keys

The vehicle identification number is required to get a replacement key or an additional remote control vehicle key.

Up to 8 remote control vehicle keys, each of which must be properly cut, coded, programmed, and synchronized, can be used with your vehicle.

Each new vehicle key contains a microchip and must be coded with the data from the vehicle's electronic immobilizer. A vehicle key will not work if it does not contain a microchip or contains a chip that is not coded, even if the key bit was cut correctly.

You can obtain additional or duplicate remote control vehicle keys from authorized Volkswagen dealers, authorized Volkswagen Service Facilities and from certain independent repair facilities and locksmiths which are qualified to make remote control vehicle keys.

Each vehicle key must be programmed by an authorized Volkswagen dealer, an authorized Volkswagen Service Facility, or another qualified workshop in order for it to work with your vehicle.

To find the nearest qualified independent repair facility, locksmith, or Volkswagen dealer which can cut and code replacement vehicle keys, call the VW Customer Care Hotline at 1-800-822-8987 or visit <http://www.vw.com> and search for replacement keys.

Canadian customers can contact an authorized Volkswagen dealer or Volkswagen Service Facility or call the Volkswagen Canada Customer CARE Center at (1-800-822-8987).

### NOTE

The remote control vehicle keys contain electrical components. Protect them from damage, moisture and rough handling.



Do not press the buttons on the remote control vehicle key unless you actually want to use the function in question. Since terrain and conditions vary, pressing a button on the remote control vehicle key when it is not necessary may unlock the vehicle or set off the panic alarm, even if you think you are out of range.



Remote control vehicle key functions can be temporarily disrupted by interference from transmitters near the vehicle that use the same frequency range (such as radio equipment or mobile phones).



Things between the remote control vehicle key and vehicle, bad weather, as well as a weak battery can reduce the operating range.



If the remote control vehicle key buttons ⇒ [Fig. 16](#) or the power locking buttons ⇒ [Fig. 22](#) are pushed repeatedly in quick succession, the power locking system is switched off for a brief period to help keep it from being overloaded. The vehicle is then unlocked for about 30 seconds. Unless a door or the trunk lid is opened in this span of time, the vehicle is automatically locked afterwards.

## Emergency key

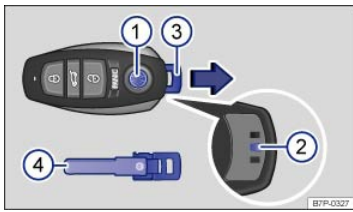


Fig. 17 Releasing the emergency key and removing it from the remote control vehicle key.

Read and follow the introductory information and safety information first ⇒ [Introduction to the subject](#)

There is an emergency key inside the remote control vehicle key fob for manual unlocking and locking the vehicle.

- ① Emergency key release button.
- ② Locking catch in the remote control vehicle key.
- ③ Emergency key in the remote control vehicle key, with eyelet for fastening to a key chain.
- ④ Emergency key removed.

#### Releasing and removing the emergency key

- With one hand, press and hold button ① ⇒ [Fig. 17](#).
- With the other hand, press the locking catch ② under the emergency key ④ while pulling the key out in the direction of the arrow.

#### Using the emergency key

The emergency key can be used for the following:

- Locking and unlocking the glove compartment ⇒ [Storage areas](#).
- Manually locking and unlocking the vehicle ⇒ [Emergency closing and opening](#).

#### Reinserting the emergency key

- Insert the emergency key ④ or into the opening of the key fob.
- Slide the emergency key in the direction opposite to the arrow until it locks into place.

### Indicator light in the remote control vehicle key



Fig. 18 Indicator light in the remote control vehicle key.

Read and follow the introductory information and safety information first ⇒ [Introduction to the subject](#)

If a button in the remote control vehicle key is pressed briefly, the indicator light (arrow) ⇒ [Fig. 18](#) will flash once briefly. If you press and hold a button, it flashes repeatedly.

If the indicator light in the remote control vehicle key does not come on when the button is pressed, the battery inside the key must be replaced ⇒ [Replacing the remote control vehicle key battery](#).

A Declaration of Compliance with the United States FCC and Industry Canada regulations is found in the Consumer Information section of this Manual ⇒ [Declaration of Compliance, Telecommunications and Electronic Systems](#).

### Replacing the remote control vehicle key battery

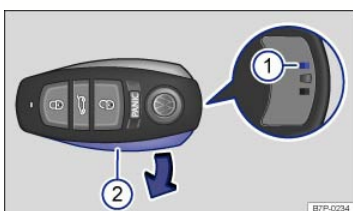


Fig. 19 Removing battery cover from the remote control vehicle key.

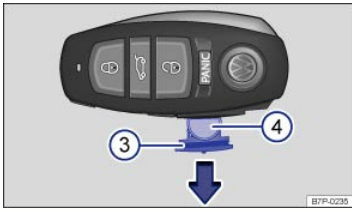


Fig. 20 Opening battery compartment of the remote control vehicle key.

Read and follow the introductory information and safety information first ⇒ [Introduction to the subject](#)

Volkswagen recommends having the battery in the remote control vehicle key changed by an authorized Volkswagen dealer or an authorized Volkswagen Service Facility.

The battery is in the remote control vehicle key under a cover ⇒ Fig. 19. When changing the battery, pay attention to the correct polarity and use the same type of battery ⇒ ①.

#### Removing the cover

- Take the emergency key out of the remote control vehicle key fob ⇒ [Emergency key](#).
- Insert the end of a bent paper clip (or other suitable object) into the opening ⇒ Fig. 19① on the back of the remote control vehicle key as far as it will go. Then press it down and towards the outer edge of the remote control vehicle key fob.
- Remove the paper clip and remove the cover ② in the direction of the arrow.

#### Replacing the battery

- Hold the key so that the VW emblem points up.
- Pull the battery compartment out ⇒ Fig. 20③ in the direction of the arrow and remove the battery ④.
- Carefully place the new battery into the battery compartment slot with the flat side down.
- Push the cover as shown ⇒ Fig. 20 and press it down (opposite to direction of the arrow) until you hear it click into place.
- Push the battery compartment in the direction opposite to the arrow ⇒ Fig. 20 back into the remote control vehicle key fob.

#### Replacing the cover

- Insert the thin left side of the cover ⇒ Fig. 19② in the remote control vehicle key and press the thick right side down until the cover locks into place.
- Reinsert the emergency key into the remote control vehicle key ⇒ [Emergency key](#).

#### NOTE

- Changing the battery improperly can damage the remote control vehicle key.
- Using the wrong battery can damage the remote control vehicle key. Replace a dead battery with a new one that has the same voltage, size, and specifications.
- Make sure the plus and minus poles of the battery are correctly positioned.

Dispose of old batteries in an environmentally responsible manner and keep them out of the reach of children.

Batteries of the type used in your remote control vehicle key may contain **Perchlorate Material**. Special handling may apply – see <http://www.dtsc.ca.gov/hazardouswaste/perchlorate>. Obey all legal requirements regarding handling and disposal of these batteries. Authorized Volkswagen dealers and authorized Volkswagen Service Facilities are familiar with the requirements, and we recommend that you have them perform this service for you.

## Synchronizing the remote control vehicle key

Read and follow the introductory information and safety information first ⇒ [Introduction to the subject](#)

If the button is pressed often while outside the operating range, it is possible that the vehicle cannot be locked or unlocked anymore with the remote control vehicle key. Synchronize the vehicle key as follows:

#### Synchronizing the remote control vehicle key when the vehicle is closed

- Take the emergency key out of the remote control vehicle key fob ⇒ [Emergency key](#).
- Remove the cap from the door handle on the driver door ⇒ [Emergency closing and opening](#).
- Manually unlock the vehicle with the emergency key within 1 minute.
- Switch the ignition on with the remote control vehicle key fob. The synchronization is complete.
- Put the emergency key in the remote control vehicle key fob and reinstall the cap.

Synchronizing the remote control vehicle key when the vehicle is open

Turn the ignition on with the remote control vehicle key fob. The synchronization is complete.

## Power locking system

### Introduction to the subject

In this chapter you will find information on the following subjects:

⇒ *Indicator light in the driver door*

⇒ *Description of the power locking system*

⇒ *Unlocking or locking the vehicle from the outside*

⇒ *Unlocking or locking the vehicle from the inside*

⇒ *Unlocking or locking vehicles with Keyless Access*

⇒ *Anti-theft alarm system*

The power locking system works properly only when all doors and the trunk lid are completely closed. When the driver door is open, the vehicle *cannot* be locked with the remote control vehicle key.

For vehicles equipped with the Keyless Access locking and starting system, the vehicle can be locked *only* if the ignition is switched off and the driver door is closed.


Leaving the vehicle unlocked for longer periods of non-use (for example, in your garage) can cause the vehicle battery to drain so that the engine can no longer be started.

### WARNING

Improper use of power locks can result in serious personal injury.

- The power locking button locks all doors. Locking the doors from the inside can help prevent unintended door opening during a collision and can also prevent unwanted entry from the outside. Locked doors can, however, delay assistance to vehicle occupants and rescue from the outside in an accident or other emergency.
- Never leave children or anyone who cannot help themselves behind in the vehicle. All doors can be locked from the inside with the power lock button. This could leave people trapped in the vehicle in an emergency. Depending on the time of year, people trapped in the vehicle can be exposed to very high or very low temperatures.
- A closed vehicle can become very hot or very cold, depending on the season. Particularly in the summer, heat buildup in the passenger and luggage compartment of a parked vehicle can result in temperatures in the vehicle that are much higher than the outside temperatures. Temperatures can quickly reach levels that can cause unconsciousness and death, particularly to small children.
- Never allow passengers to remain in a locked vehicle. In an emergency any person still inside the vehicle might not be able to get out.

## Indicator light in the driver door

 Read and follow the introductory information and safety information first ⇒  *Introduction to the subject*



The indicator light for the power locking system is in the driver door ⇒ *Passenger compartment*.

After the vehicle is locked	Meaning
The red LED light flashes for about 2 seconds in short intervals, then slower.	The vehicle is locked.
Red LED light flashes for about 2 seconds in short intervals, then lights up continuously for about 30 seconds.	Locking system malfunction. See an authorized Volkswagen dealer or an authorized Volkswagen Service Facility.

### NOTE

Failure to heed warning lights or text WARNINGS can result in vehicle damage.

## Description of the power locking system

 Read and follow the introductory information and safety information first ⇒  *Introduction to the subject*

The power locking system lets you unlock and lock all doors and the trunk lid.


- From the outside with the vehicle key.
- From the outside with Keyless Access ⇒ [Unlocking or locking vehicles with Keyless Access](#) .
- From the inside with the power locking switch ⇒ [Unlocking or locking the vehicle from the inside](#) .

The doors and the trunk lid can be locked manually if the remote control vehicle key is not working.

#### Automatic locking (Auto lock)

The vehicle will lock automatically when it reaches a speed of about 10 mph (15 km/h). When the vehicle is locked, the indicator light  comes on in the power locking button ⇒ [Fig. 22](#).

#### Automatic unlocking (Auto unlock)

All doors automatically unlock when you switch off the ignition and open a door from inside the vehicle. On vehicles with automatic transmission, the doors will also unlock when the selector lever is in Park (P) and the ignition is switched off. Auto unlock works only if the vehicle has been automatically locked with the Auto lock feature. The indicator light  goes out in the power locking button when the doors unlock ⇒ [Fig. 22](#).

#### Switching functions on and off in the Infotainment System

Certain power locking features can be turned on and off in the Infotainment System.

- Switch on the ignition.
- Press the **CAR** Infotainment button.
- Tap the Settings function key on the screen.
- Select Central locking from the list.



If the check box in the function key is checked , the feature is switched on.

#### Function key: supplementary information


Lock automatically: Automatically locks all doors and the trunk lid at a speed of about 9 mph (15 km/h). To unlock when the vehicle is not moving, press the power locking switch or take the key out of the ignition. Tap the function key to deactivate the feature.


Confirmation tone: The horn beeps once to confirm that the vehicle is locked. Tap the function key to deactivate the feature.

Fold in mirrors: Automatically folds in the outside mirrors when the vehicle is locked. Tap the function key to deactivate the feature.

Unlock doors: Controls options for unlocking doors with the  button in the remote control vehicle key. Tap the function key Unlock doors or  and select the desired option in the pop-up window.

All: All doors and (possibly) the trunk lid are unlocked when the vehicle is unlocked with the remote control vehicle key.

Driver only: Only the driver door is unlocked when the vehicle is unlocked with the remote control vehicle key. All doors and (possibly) the trunk lid open only if the  button is pushed a second time.


Unlock trunk separately: The trunk lid remains locked when the vehicle is unlocked. Pressing the  button

unlocks the trunk lid. Tap the function key to deactivate the feature.

#### Locking the vehicle after airbag inflation

If the airbags are activated during a collision, the entire vehicle is unlocked. Depending on the severity of the damage, the vehicle can be locked after a collision when the airbags have deployed as follows:

Function	Action
	– Switch the ignition off.

Function	Action
Locking the vehicle <b>with the power locking switch:</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>– Open a door once.</li> <li>– Press power locking switch .</li> </ul>
Locking the vehicle <b>with the remote control vehicle key:</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>– Switch the ignition off and on again.</li> <li><b>OR:</b> Remove the remote control vehicle key from the ignition.</li> <li>– Open a door once.</li> <li>– Lock the vehicle with the remote control vehicle key.</li> </ul>







If the remote control vehicle key buttons ⇒ *Remote control vehicle keys* or one of the power locking buttons ⇒ *Unlocking or locking the vehicle from the inside* are pushed repeatedly in quick succession, the power locking system is switched off for a brief period to help keep it from being overloaded. The vehicle is then unlocked for about 30 seconds. Unless a door or the trunk lid is opened during this time, the vehicle is automatically locked afterwards.


## Unlocking or locking the vehicle from the outside



Fig. 21 Buttons in the remote control vehicle key.

 Read and follow the introductory information and safety information first ⇒  *Introduction to the subject*

Function	Using the buttons on the remote control vehicle key ⇒ Fig. 21	Using the emergency key
Unlock the vehicle.	Press the  button twice to open all doors and the trunk lid.	Insert the emergency key into the driver door lock and turn counterclockwise.
Lock the vehicle.	Press the  button.	Insert the emergency key into the driver door lock and turn clockwise.
Unlock the trunk lid.	Press the  button.	

**Note:** Depending on the settings for the power locking system in the Central locking sub-menu, it may be necessary to press the  button twice to unlock all doors and the trunk lid ⇒ *Switching functions on and off in the Infotainment System* .

The remote control vehicle key unlocks and locks the vehicle only when the battery in the remote control vehicle key have enough power, and the remote control vehicle key is within a few yards/meters of the vehicle.

- All turn signals flash once and the horn beeps once to confirm that the vehicle has been locked. The horn beep can be disabled by deactivating the Confirmation tone feature in the Central locking sub-menu ⇒ *Switching functions on and off in the Infotainment System* .
- All turn signals flash *twice* to confirm that the vehicle has been unlocked.

If the turn signals *do not* flash to confirm locking, one or more doors, the trunk lid or the engine hood is not locked.

If the driver door is open, the vehicle cannot be locked with the remote control vehicle key.

If the vehicle was unlocked with the remote control vehicle key and the door or the trunk lid has not been opened in about 30 seconds, the vehicle is automatically locked again. This feature helps prevent the vehicle from staying unlocked unintentionally.

## Unlocking or locking the vehicle from the inside



Fig. 22 On all 4 doors: Power locking switch.

Read and follow the introductory information and safety information first ⇒ [Introduction to the subject](#)

Press button ⇒ Fig. 22:

Unlock the vehicle.

Lock the vehicle.

The power locking switch works whether the ignition is switched on or off, but only when all doors are closed.

If the vehicle is locked with the remote control vehicle key, the power locking switch is deactivated.

If the vehicle is locked with the power locking switch:

The indicator light in the power locking switch comes on ⇒ Fig. 22 to indicate that all doors and the trunk lid are locked.

- The anti-theft alarm system is **not** turned on.
- Opening doors or the trunk lid from the *outside* is not possible, at a traffic light, for example.
- Doors can be unlocked and opened separately from inside the vehicle by pulling the door handle to open the door. The indicator light goes out. The unopened doors and trunk lid remain locked and cannot be opened from the outside.
- An open driver door will not be locked. This helps keep the driver from being locked out of the vehicle.

The vehicle is unlocked if you push the button while the vehicle is standing still. Depending on the settings in the Central locking sub-menu ⇒ [Switching function on and off in the Infotainment System](#), it may also be unlocked when you take the vehicle key out of the ignition or, on vehicles with Keyless Access, when you open the driver door (**Auto. open**).

## Unlocking or locking vehicles with Keyless Access

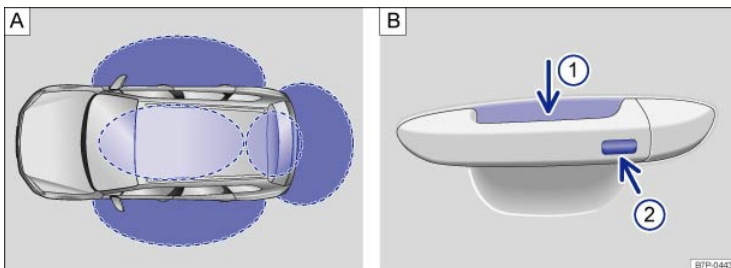


Fig. 23 A: Ranges of the Keyless Access locking and starting system. Outside the vehicle: Unlocking range. Inside the vehicle: starting range. B: Keyless Access locking and starting system: Sensor ① for unlocking on the inside of the front door handles. Sensor for locking on the outside of the door handles ②.

Read and follow the introductory information and safety information first ⇒ [Introduction to the subject](#)

Keyless Access is a keyless starting and locking system that unlocks and locks the vehicle without active use of a remote control vehicle key. All you have to do is have a valid vehicle key within range ⇒ Fig. 23A and touch a sensor surface on one of the front door handles ⇒ Fig. 23B or push the button on the trunk lid ⇒ [Trunk lid](#) when a valid vehicle key is within range ⇒ ①.

### General information

When a valid vehicle key comes within range ⇒ Fig. 23A, the Keyless Access locking and starting system recognizes a valid vehicle entry request as soon as a door handle sensor is touched on the driver or front passenger door or the button on the trunk lid is pressed. The following functions are then enabled without active



use of the vehicle key:

- Keyless Entry: Unlocking the vehicle with the sensor surfaces on the door handles of the driver or front passenger door ⇒ Fig. 23① is pressed or by using the button on the trunk lid.
- Keyless Go: Start engine and drive. For this, you just have to press the starter button and have a valid remote control vehicle key inside the vehicle.
- Keyless Exit: Locking the vehicle via the door handle of the driver or front passenger door.
- Easy Open: Opening the trunk lid by moving your foot below the rear bumper ⇒ *Sensor-controlled luggage compartment opener (Easy Open)*

The power locking and closing system works like the *standard* unlocking and locking system. Only the way that the systems are operated is different.

All turn signals flash twice to confirm that the vehicle has been unlocked and once to confirm that it has been locked.

If the vehicle was unlocked and within the next few seconds no door or the trunk lid has been opened, the vehicle is automatically locked again.

#### Unlocking and opening doors (Keyless Entry)

- Grasp the door handle of the driver or front passenger door so that you touch the unlocking sensor surface ⇒ Fig. 23①B. When doing so, **do not** contact the sensor on the door handle ② B.
- Open the door.

#### Closing and locking doors (Keyless Exit)

- Always switch off the engine and ignition and take the vehicle key with you.
- Close the driver door.
- Touch the sensor surface in the door handle on the driver or front passenger door ⇒ Fig. 23 ② **B**once. The vehicle is locked. The door being locked must be closed.

#### Unlocking and locking the trunk lid (Keyless Entry for the trunk lid)

If the vehicle is locked and a valid vehicle key is within range ⇒ Fig. 23A of the trunk lid, it unlocks automatically when opened.

- Open and close the trunk lid as you would a standard trunk lid ⇒ *Trunk lid*.

The trunk lid locks automatically when it is closed except in the following situations:

- The vehicle is completely unlocked.
- When an authorized vehicle key is inside the vehicle.

#### Locking with a second vehicle key

If a remote control vehicle key is inside the passenger compartment, the vehicle can be locked from the outside only if a second valid key is within range.

When the vehicle is locked from the outside, the keyless go (starting) function of any keys left in the passenger compartment will be deactivated. All other functions (remote central locking and unlocking as well as emergency starting) remain active and unchanged.

A key that was inside the vehicle when it was locked from the outside is reactivated:

- By pressing a button on the deactivated key.
- By pressing a door handle sensor when the deactivated key is outside of the vehicle, but within range.
- By starting the engine with the starter button on the front center console.


#### Automatic deactivation of sensors

If the vehicle has not been unlocked or locked for a longer period of time, the sensors in the passenger door are automatically deactivated.

If a sensor on the door handle of a locked vehicle is activated too often, for instance by a bush or hedge that rubs against the vehicle, the sensors in the door handle on that side of the vehicle are switched off for 30 minutes.

The sensors become active again when the vehicle is locked with the vehicle key and the ignition is switched on one time.

The sensors become active again if one of the following events occurs:

- 30 minutes have passed.
- **OR:** The vehicle is unlocked using the  button in the remote control vehicle key.
- **OR:** The trunk lid is opened.
- **OR:** The vehicle is mechanically unlocked using the emergency vehicle key.

#### Convenience features

To use the convenience closing feature to close all power windows, hold your finger on the lock sensor surface ⇒ [Fig. 23②](#) on the outside of the door handle for a few seconds until the windows close.

Remove your finger from the lock sensor surface ⇒ [Fig. 23②](#) to stop the function. If you touch the unlock sensor surface 1 on the inside of the door handle immediately after releasing the lock sensor surface 1 (arrow), all of the windows will open (safety function). Pinch protection is active during convenience closing of the windows.

The settings in the **Settings – Convenience** menu ⇒ [Volkswagen Information System](#) determine which doors open when the door handle sensor surface is touched.

#### NOTE

The door handle sensor surfaces can be activated by a strong stream of water or steam if a valid vehicle key is within range of the vehicle. All windows may open if you turn the spray of water or steam away from and then back onto the door handle sensor surface in quick succession.



The door may not open if the outside and inside door handles are used at the same time.



If the automatic transmission is **not** in Park (P) position, the electronic steering column lock will not lock and the vehicle will not lock via sensors in the front door handles or the remote control vehicle key.



If the vehicle battery or the battery in the remote control vehicle key is weak or dead, it might not be possible to unlock and lock the vehicle using Keyless Access. The vehicle can still be manually locked or unlocked with the emergency key ⇒ [Opening and closing](#).



A driver information message appears in the instrument cluster display if there is no remote control vehicle key inside the vehicle or if the system does not recognize the remote control vehicle key. The key may not be recognized, for example, if it is covered by something that interferes with the signal (such as a briefcase), or if the remote control vehicle key battery is weak. Electronic devices such as mobile phones can also interfere with the signal.



Dirt on the door handles that contains a lot of salt (especially in winter) can affect the way the door handle sensors work. Cleaning the door handles can help with this problem ⇒ [Exterior care and cleaning](#).

## Anti-theft alarm system

Read and follow the introductory information and safety information first ⇒ [Introduction to the subject](#)

Your vehicle is either equipped with an anti-theft alarm system or pre-equipped for anti-theft alarm system installation. If the vehicle is pre-equipped for installation of the anti-theft alarm system, the alarm system can be retrofitted by an authorized Volkswagen dealer or an authorized Volkswagen Service Facility.

The anti-theft alarm system makes it more difficult for someone to break into or steal the vehicle.

The anti-theft alarm system is automatically activated when the vehicle is locked by pressing the lock button on the remote control vehicle key.

### When is the alarm triggered?

The anti-theft alarm system sounds for about 30 seconds and flashes the turn signals for up to 5 minutes, if the following occurs with respect to the locked vehicle:

- Opening a door that has been mechanically unlocked.
- Forcibly opening a door.
- Forcibly opening the engine hood.
- Forcibly opening the trunk lid.
- Switching on the ignition with an invalid key.
- Disconnecting the vehicle battery.
- Disconnecting an anti-theft system integrated trailer ⇒ [Trailer towing](#).

### Deactivating the alarm


Unlock the vehicle with the unlock button on the remote control vehicle key and switch on the ignition with a valid remote control vehicle key.

For vehicles with Keyless Access, the alarm can be deactivated by grasping one of the door handles when a valid vehicle key is in range or by holding the remote control vehicle key to the right of the steering column trim and pressing the starter button ⇒ [Unlocking or locking vehicles with Keyless Access](#).



After the alarm has stopped and the vehicle is opened again in the same or a different area that is protected by the alarm, the alarm is triggered again. For example, the alarm will sound again if the trunk lid is opened after one of the doors has been opened.



The anti-theft alarm system is **not** activated when the vehicle is locked with the power lock switch  on the inside of the driver or front passenger doors.



If the driver door is mechanically unlocked with the emergency key, only the driver door is unlocked, but not the entire vehicle. Switching on the ignition deactivates the anti-theft alarm system and activates the central locking button. To unlock the doors, use the central locking button or remote control vehicle key.



If the vehicle battery is dead or weak, the anti-theft alarm system will not work properly.

## Doors

### Introduction to the subject

In this chapter you will find information on the following subjects:

⇒ *Warning light*

⇒ *Electric child safety locks*

#### WARNING

A door that is not closed properly may open suddenly when the vehicle is moving and cause severe injuries.



- Stop immediately and close the door.
- Make sure that the door is safely and completely latched when closed. The closed door must be flush with the surrounding auto body parts.
- Open or close doors only if no one is in the way.

#### WARNING

A door kept open with the door stop may close in strong winds or on inclines and cause injuries.

- Always hold doors by the door handle while opening and closing.

## Warning light

 Read and follow the introductory information and safety information first ⇒  *Introduction to the subject*


Lights up	Possible cause
-----------	----------------

At least one vehicle door is open or improperly closed.



Open and close the door again.

When the ignition is switched on, several warning and indicator lights come on briefly for a function check. They go out after a few seconds.

If a door is not closed properly, the  warning light in the instrument cluster comes on showing an open door.

Depending on vehicle options, a symbol may be displayed in the instrument cluster instead of the warning light. The symbol will still be displayed even after the ignition is switched off. The instrument cluster display goes out about 15 seconds after the vehicle has been locked.

## Electric child safety locks

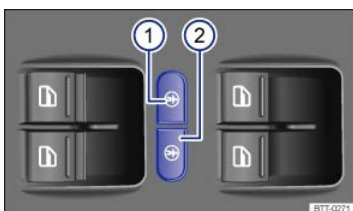


Fig. 24 In the driver door: Buttons for the electric child safety locks.

The electric child safety locks keep the rear doors from being opened from the inside, so that children cannot open them accidentally. The rear power window switch for the selected side is also disabled. The controls for the power windows and door locks can be operated separately (left or right) to prevent restrictions being placed on an adult passenger seated in the back with a child. The left button ⇒ [Fig. 24](#)① and the right button ② switch the child safety lock on for either the left or right side, respectively.

A yellow indicator light in the button comes on to indicate activation.

#### Activating or deactivating electric child safety locks

Function	Response
Activate:	Press the left button or the right button, light comes on ⇒ <a href="#">Fig. 24</a> .
Deactivate:	Press the respective button again, light goes out.

#### WARNING

When the electric child safety lock is engaged, that rear door cannot be opened from the inside.

- Never leave children, disabled persons, or anyone who cannot help themselves, in the vehicle when locking the doors. This could result in people being locked in the vehicle. This could result in people being trapped in the vehicle in an emergency. Depending on the time of year, people trapped in the vehicle can be exposed to very high or very low temperatures.
- A closed vehicle can become very hot or very cold, depending on the season. Particularly in the summer, heat build-up in the passenger and luggage compartment of a parked vehicle can result in temperatures in the vehicle that are much higher than the outside temperatures. Temperatures can quickly reach levels that can cause unconsciousness and death, particularly to small children.

## Trunk lid

### Introduction to the subject

In this chapter you will find information on the following subjects:

⇒ [Warning light](#)

⇒ [Opening the trunk lid](#)

⇒ [Power operation of the trunk lid](#)

⇒ [Sensor-controlled luggage compartment opener \(Easy Open\)](#)

#### WARNING

Accidents and severe personal injuries can result if you unlock, open, or close the trunk lid when someone is in the way.

- Only open or close the trunk lid if no one is in the way.
- After closing the trunk lid, always make sure that it is properly closed and locked so that it cannot open suddenly when the vehicle is moving. The closed trunk lid must be flush with the surrounding auto body parts.
- Always keep the trunk lid closed while driving to help keep poisonous exhaust gas from being drawn into the vehicle.
- Never open the trunk lid when a luggage rack is installed and loaded. If, for example, there are bicycles on a carrier on the trunk lid, it is possible that the lid will not be able to open automatically. An open trunk lid may fall on its own because of the additional weight. The open trunk lid must be supported or the weight must be removed from the luggage rack first.
- Close and lock the trunk lid and all doors when the vehicle is not in use. First, make sure that no one is left inside the vehicle.
- Never leave your vehicle unattended or let children play around your vehicle, especially when the trunk lid is open. A child could crawl into the vehicle and pull the trunk lid shut, becoming trapped and unable to get out. A closed vehicle can become very hot or very cold, depending on the season. Particularly in the summer, heat build-up in the passenger and luggage compartment of a parked vehicle can result in temperatures in the vehicle that are much higher than the outside temperatures. Temperatures can quickly reach levels that can cause unconsciousness and death, particularly to small children.
- Never leave children or anyone who cannot help themselves behind in the vehicle. They may lock the vehicle with the vehicle key or the power locking switch and lock themselves in.

#### NOTE



Before opening or closing the trunk lid, make sure there is enough room to do so, as for example when the vehicle has a trailer or is in a garage.

## NOTE

Never use the gas strut or the power trunk lid to hold or clamp a load in place. This can damage the trunk lid and make it impossible to close.

## Warning light


Read and follow the introductory information and safety information first ⇒ [Introduction to the subject](#)

Lights up	Possible cause
	Trunk lid open or improperly closed.
<b>OR</b>	
	 <b>Stop!</b>

icon appears in the display

Open the trunk lid and then close it again.

When the ignition is switched on, several warning and indicator lights come on briefly for a function check. They go out after a few seconds.

If the trunk lid is not closed properly, the red  warning light comes on in the instrument cluster display or the vehicle icon appears in the instrument cluster showing an open trunk lid.

Depending on vehicle options, a symbol may be displayed in the instrument cluster instead of the warning light. The symbol will still be displayed even after the ignition is switched off. The Premium instrument cluster display goes out about 15 seconds after the vehicle has been locked.

## WARNING

If the trunk lid is not closed properly, it may open suddenly when the vehicle is moving and cause severe injuries.

- Stop immediately and close the trunk lid.
- Always make sure the trunk lid is securely latched after you close it.

## Opening the trunk lid



Fig. 25 In the driver door: Power button to unlock the trunk lid.



Fig. 26 Opening trunk lid from the outside.

Read and follow the introductory information and safety information first ⇒ [Introduction to the subject](#)

If there are bicycles on a mounted luggage rack, it may not be possible to open the trunk lid ⇒ [Warning](#). Remove items from the luggage rack and support the open trunk lid.

Unlocking and opening with the remote control vehicle key

Press and hold the  button on the remote control vehicle key to automatically open the trunk lid.

Unlocking and opening with the unlock switch on the driver door

Pull up the  switch on the driver door until the trunk lid opens automatically ⇒ [Fig. 25](#).

The switch in the driver door also works when the ignition is switched off.

## Opening with the button on the trunk lid

- Unlock the vehicle or the trunk lid, or open a door.
- Lift the trunk lid slightly while standing near the button ⇒ *Fig. 26* (arrow). The trunk lid opens automatically.

### ⚠ WARNING

Improper and unsupervised unlocking or opening of the trunk lid can cause severe injuries. Never open the trunk lid when someone is in the way.

- If a bicycle or luggage rack is installed on the trunk lid, it may be hard to see that the trunk lid is unlatched. An unlatched trunk lid may open suddenly when the vehicle is moving.

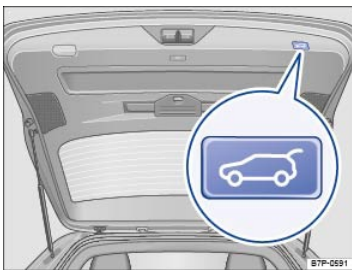
### ℹ NOTE

Before opening or closing the trunk lid, make sure there is enough room to do so, as for example when the vehicle has a trailer or is in a garage.



At temperatures below +32 °F (0 °C), the trunk lid may not open automatically after you unlock it. It will be necessary to lift it by hand.

## Power operation of the trunk lid



*Fig. 27* Button in the open trunk lid.

📖 Read and follow the introductory information and safety information first ⇒ *Introduction to the subject*

### More information:

- Sensor-controlled luggage compartment opener (Easy Open) ⇒ *Sensor-controlled luggage compartment opener (Easy Open)*.

### Opening trunk lid (Comfort opening)

- Press the button on the remote control vehicle key for about a second until the trunk lid automatically opens.
- **OR:** Pull the switch in the driver door up ⇒ *Fig. 25*.
- **OR:** Operate the switch ⇒ *Fig. 26* (arrow) on the outside of the trunk lid.

If, while opening automatically, the trunk lid encounters resistance or becomes blocked by an obstacle, it will immediately stop opening.

The trunk lid cannot be opened automatically via its power feature if the factory-installed trailer hitch is electrically connected with the trailer.

The trunk lid can be opened by hand with some force.

### Closing the trunk lid (Comfort closing)

- Press the button in the remote control vehicle key for about a second.
- **OR:** Pull the switch in the driver door up ⇒ *Fig. 25*.
- **OR:** Operate the switch ⇒ *Fig. 26* (arrow) on the outside of the trunk lid.
- **OR:** Press the button in the open trunk lid ⇒ *Fig. 27* ⇒ .
- **OR:** Move by hand the trunk lid toward the closed position.

The trunk lid will then move into closing position by itself and will be closed by the soft-close feature ⇒ .

If, while closing automatically, the trunk lid meets resistance or becomes blocked by an obstacle, it will reopen slightly.

Check to see why the trunk lid could not close.

Try again to close the trunk lid.

### Canceling the opening or closing feature

You can stop the opening or closing of the trunk lid by pressing one of the buttons a second time. Pressing one of the buttons again makes the hatch move back to its original position.

You can then open the hatch further by hand. This requires some strength.

### Saving the opening angle

The trunk lid must be at least half way open to be able to save the opening angle.

- Stop the opening process at the desired opening angle ⇒ *Canceling the opening or closing feature*.
- Press the ⇒ Fig. 27 button in the open trunk lid ⇒ ▲ for at least 3 seconds. This saves the opening angle.

The warning flashers will blink and a chime will sound to confirm that the angle has been saved.

To completely open the trunk lid again you must first save a new opening angle.

- Unlock the trunk lid and open it to the saved position.
- Manually push open the trunk lid as far as it will go. This requires some strength.
- Press the ⇒ Fig. 27 button in the open trunk lid for at least 3 seconds.
- The opening angle has been reset to the factory setting.

### ⚠ WARNING

Improper or unsupervised closing of the trunk lid can cause severe injuries.

- Never leave your vehicle unattended or let children play around your vehicle, especially with the trunk lid left open. A child could crawl into the vehicle and pull the trunk lid shut, becoming trapped and unable to get out. A closed vehicle can become very hot or very cold depending on the season. Temperatures can quickly levels that can cause unconsciousness or death, particularly to small children.

### ⚠ WARNING

A closed trunk lid cannot open completely and an open trunk lid cannot close automatically if a luggage rack is installed on it or if it is covered by a heavy layer of snow. In this case, you will have to hold the trunk lid or prop it up to keep it open.

### ⓘ NOTE

Before opening or closing the trunk lid, make sure there is enough room to do so, as for example when the vehicle has a trailer or is in a garage.

### ⓘ NOTE

- Remove any luggage or bicycle rack mounted on the trunk lid before opening the hatch.

### ⓘ NOTE

If the system is operated too often in succession, it will shut itself off to help prevent overheating.

- The feature can be used again as soon as the system has cooled down. In the meantime, the trunk lid can be opened or closed by hand, though this requires some strength.
- If the vehicle battery or the fuse is blown when the trunk lid is open, the trunk lid system must be reset. To reset the trunk lid, it must be closed once.



Make sure that the remote control vehicle key is not in the luggage compartment before closing the trunk lid.

## Sensor-controlled luggage compartment opener (Easy Open)

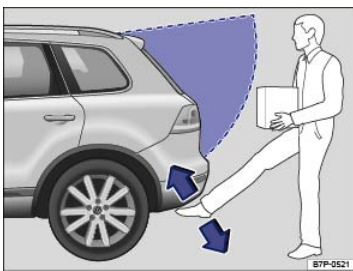


Fig. 28 Keyless Access locking and starting system: Opening the sensor-controlled luggage compartment (Easy Open).

📖 Read and follow the introductory information and safety information first ⇒ ▲ *Introduction to the subject*

If your vehicle has Keyless Access, it may also be equipped with the Easy Open feature.

When a valid vehicle key is within range of the trunk lid ⇒ Fig. 23A, the trunk lid can be unlocked and opened by moving your foot within the sensor's range ⇒ Fig. 28 below the rear bumper.

- Switch off the ignition and remove any vehicle key from the ignition.
- Stand about 2 ft. (60 cm) behind the middle of the rear bumper.
- Quickly move your foot under the middle of the rear bumper in a kicking motion.
- Move your foot back so that you are standing firmly on both feet again. It is not necessary to contact the vehicle when you make this kicking motion.
- The high-mounted brake light and the turn signals flash once to show that the Easy Open feature is opening the trunk lid.
- The trunk lid opens in about 2 seconds.

If the trunk lid does not open, wait a few seconds and try again.

The trunk lid locks automatically after closing if the vehicle was locked before and a valid vehicle key is not inside the vehicle.

Easy Open may not work properly or at all in the following situations (examples):

- If the rear bumper is very dirty.
- If the rear bumper has salty water on it after driving on salted roads.
- If a trailer hitch/ball mount has been installed on the vehicle.

Easy Open may be automatically deactivated in heavy rain to help prevent unintentional deployment caused by water running down the vehicle, for example.

#### WARNING

Careless use of the Easy Open feature can cause falls and serious personal injury

- Always make sure you have firm footing when using the Easy Open feature, and that the surface you are standing on is not uneven or slippery.
- Always remember that it will be necessary for you to move backwards to let the trunk lid open. Be careful not to lose your balance, particularly when holding things in your hands.
- Never use Easy Open feature unless you can use it safely.

#### CAUTION

If a valid vehicle key is within range of the trunk lid, the Easy Open feature can deploy unintentionally in some cases and open the trunk lid: for example, when sweeping the ground or floor below the rear bumper, if there is a strong stream of water or steam or when carrying out maintenance or repairs around the rear bumper. If the trunk lid opens unintentionally, it can injure anyone or damage anything in its way.

- Never leave a valid vehicle key within range of the trunk lid unattended.

## Power windows

### Introduction to the subject

In this chapter you will find information on the following subjects:

⇒ *Opening or closing power windows*

⇒ *Power windows – features*

⇒ *Power window pinch protection*

#### WARNING

Improper use of power windows can result in serious personal injury.

- Never let anyone get in the way of a power window when closing it.
- When locking the vehicle from the outside, make sure that no one, especially children, remains in the vehicle. The windows will not open in case of an emergency.
- Always switch off the engine and the ignition and take the key with you when you leave the vehicle. You can still use the power windows for several minutes after the ignition is switched off as long as the driver or front passenger door has not been opened.
- Always use the safety switch when children are in the back seat to disable the rear power windows and keep them from being opened and closed.

#### NOTE

If you leave the windows open, rain or other precipitation may enter the vehicle from outside and can damage the vehicle interior.

## Opening or closing power windows



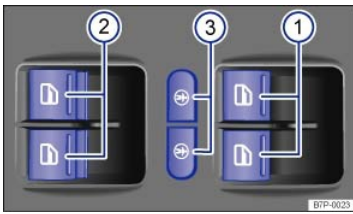


Fig. 29 In driver door: Safety control switches for front and rear power windows.

Read and follow the introductory information and safety information first ⇒ [Introduction to the subject](#)

#### Switches in the driver door

Key to ⇒ Fig. 29 :

- ① For the windows in the front doors.
- ② For the windows in the rear doors.
- ③ Electric child safety locks.

#### Opening or closing windows

Function	Action
Opening:	Press the  switch.
Closing:	Pull the  switch.
Stopping automatic movement:	Press/pull the switch again.
ⓘ	The electric child safety switch (left/right) ⇒ Fig. 29③ deactivate the driver side and passenger side power windows in the rear doors. The yellow indicator light in the switch lights up when activated. The electric child safety locks also prevent the rear doors from being opened from the inside.

The power windows operate only when the ignition is switched on.

You can still use the power windows for several minutes after the ignition is switched off as long as the driver or front passenger door has not been opened. When the vehicle key has been removed from the ignition and the driver door has been opened, the power windows cannot be opened or closed.

A separate button for controlling the window is located in the front passenger door.

### Power windows – features

Read and follow the introductory information and safety information first ⇒ [Introduction to the subject](#)

#### One-touch opening and closing

The one-touch feature automatically opens/closes a power window all the way. The window switch does not have to be held down/up.

**For one-touch opening:** Press the switch for the window down briefly as far as it goes.

**For one-touch closing:** Pull the switch for the window up briefly as far as it goes.

**Stopping automatic movement:** Pull/press the switch again.

#### Reactivating the one-touch feature

If the vehicle battery is disconnected or dead and the windows are not completely closed, the one-touch feature will not work and must be reactivated:

- Close all windows and doors.
- Pull the switch for the respective window up and hold it for at least 2 seconds in this position.
- Release the switch, pull up and hold again. The one-touch feature is now reactivated.

The one-touch feature can be reactivated for one or more windows at the same time.

#### Convenience closing

Your vehicle may be equipped with the convenience closing feature.

The convenience closing feature lets you close the windows and the power sunroof when the ignition is switched off:

*Vehicles with Keyless Access:* Hold your finger on the lock sensor surface on the outside of the door handle for a few seconds until the windows and power sunroof close ⇒ [Unlocking or locking vehicles with Keyless Access](#) .

Convenience closing closes the windows first and then the power sunroof.

#### WARNING


Improper use of power windows can result in serious personal injury.


- Never let anyone get in the way of a power window when closing it.
- When locking the vehicle from the outside, make sure that no one, especially children, remains in the vehicle. The windows will not open in case of an emergency.
- Always switch off the engine and the ignition and take the key with you when you leave the vehicle. You can still use the power windows for several minutes after the ignition is switched off as long as the driver or front passenger door has not been opened.
- Always use the safety switch when children are in the back seat to disable the rear power windows and keep them from being opened and closed.




If the power windows malfunction, the one-touch feature, as well as pinch protection will not work properly. See an authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility right away.

## Power window pinch protection

 Read and follow the introductory information and safety information first ⇒ [Introduction to the subject](#)

Pinch protection can help reduce the risk of pinching injuries when closing a power window ⇒ . If one-touch window closing meets resistance or there is something in the way, the window will stop and go down again.

- Check why the window did not close.
- Try one-touch window closing again.
- If the window meets resistance a second time, so that it stops and goes back down, one-touch closing is deactivated for about 10 seconds.
- If you pull the power window button up all the way and hold it during this 10 second interval, the window will close **without pinch protection** ⇒ .

Closing the window without pinch protection

- Try to close the window again within 10 seconds by holding the switch. **Pinch protection is turned off for a short distance in the window track!**
- If closing takes longer than about 10 seconds, pinch protection is turned on again. The window stops again if there is resistance.
- If the window still will not close, please see an authorized Volkswagen dealer or an authorized Volkswagen Service Facility.

#### WARNING

Without pinch protection, power windows will close with enough force to cause serious personal injury.

- Always be careful when closing power windows.
- Always make sure that no one is in the way when overriding pinch protection to close power windows!
- Pinch protection cannot prevent fingers or other parts of the body from being pressed against the window frame; injuries may result.



Pinch protection is also active during convenience closing of the windows and the power sunroof ⇒ [Power windows – features](#).

## Power sunroof

 [Introduction to the subject](#)

In this chapter you will find information on the following subjects:

⇒ [Opening or closing the power sunroof](#)

⇒ [Opening or closing the power sunshade](#)

⇒ [Power sunroof – features](#)

⇒ [Pinch protection for the power sunroof and sunshade](#)

**⚠ WARNING**

Improper use of the power sunroof can result in serious personal injury.

- Always make sure that no one is in the way of the power sunroof when it is closing.
- Always take the key with you when you leave the vehicle.
- Never leave children or disabled persons in the vehicle – particularly if they have access to the vehicle key. Unsupervised use of the remote control vehicle key makes it possible to lock the vehicle, start the engine, turn on the ignition and operate the sunroof.
- You can still open or close the power sunroof for several minutes after you switch off the ignition, as long as the driver or front passenger door has not been opened.

**! NOTE**

- To help prevent damage, remove ice and snow from the sunroof before opening it in winter weather.
- Always close the sunroof before leaving the vehicle or if it begins raining. If the sunroof is open, rain could enter the vehicle interior and cause extensive damage to the electrical system. This could result in further vehicle damage.



Remove leaves and other objects from the sunroof guide rails regularly either by hand or using a vacuum cleaner.



If the power sunroof malfunctions, pinch protection may not function properly. See an authorized Volkswagen dealer or an authorized Volkswagen Service Facility.

**Opening or closing the power sunroof**

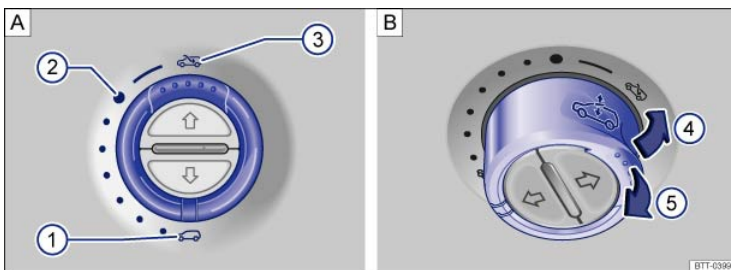


Fig. 30 In the headliner: Rotary switch for the power sunroof.

Read and follow the introductory information and safety information first ⇒ [Introduction to the subject](#)

The rotary switch must be turned to its home position ① in order to tilt the power sunroof.

Function	Switch position	Action
	⇒ Fig. 30A	
To open sliding sunroof fully:	③	Turn the switch past position ② and hold it there until the glass roof moves to the desired position.
To open the sliding sunroof to comfort position:	②	
To set an intermediate position:	① to ②	Turn the switch to the desired position.
To close the sliding sunroof fully:	①	
	⇒ Fig. 30B	
To tilt open the tilting roof fully:	④	Push the rear part of the switch briefly (arrow).
To stop the one-touch feature:	④ or ⑤	Push or pull the rear part of the switch again briefly.

Function	Switch position	Action
To set an intermediate position:	④ or ⑤	Pull or push the rear part of the switch briefly until the desired position is reached.
To close fully:	⑤	Pull the rear part of the switch briefly (arrow).

You must switch on the ignition to operate the power sunroof. After switching off the ignition, you can still open or close the power sunroof for several minutes as long as the driver or front passenger door has not been opened.

All procedures are interrupted as soon as the rotary switch is operated.

The sunshade opens automatically when the power sunroof opens if the shade was previously completely closed or in front of the glass roof. The sunshade remain in the previous position and does not close automatically with the sunroof. The sunshade cannot be closed completely until the power sunroof is closed.

#### Emergency closing of the power sunroof

If your power sunroof will not close properly, do not try to close it yourself, doing so can cause serious and expensive damage that will not be covered by any Volkswagen Limited Warranty. Special knowledge and tools are required to close the power sunroof if it will not close on its own. To help prevent damage to the sunroof, have an authorized Volkswagen dealer or an authorized Volkswagen Service Facility help you close and repair the power sunroof.



The comfort position → Fig. 30② provides sufficient ventilation without loud wind noise.

### Opening or closing the power sunshade

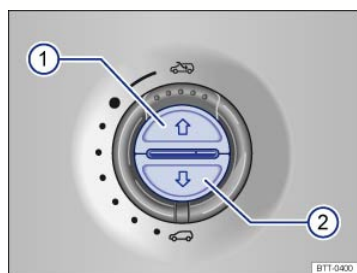


Fig. 31 In the headliner: Buttons for power sunshade.

Read and follow the introductory information and safety information first → [Introduction to the subject](#)

Function	Response
To open fully (one-touch feature):	Briefly press the → Fig. 31 ① button.
To stop the one-touch feature:	Briefly press the → Fig. 31 ① button or the ② button.
To set an intermediate position:	Keep the → Fig. 31 ① button or ② button pressed until the position has been reached.
To close fully (one-touch feature):	Briefly press the → Fig. 31 ② button.

You can still use the sunshade for several minutes after the ignition is switched off as long as the driver or passenger door has not been opened.

When the power sunroof is completely open the sunshade is automatically moved to a ventilation position.

When the power sunroof is in the tilt position the sunshade will also open a small gap.



When the power sunroof is open, the electrical sunshade can only be closed up to the front edge of the glass roof.

### Power sunroof – features

Read and follow the introductory information and safety information first → [Introduction to the subject](#)

#### Convenience closing


On vehicles with Keyless Access the convenience closing feature lets you close the power sunroof as follows:

- Hold your finger on the lock sensor surface on the outside of the door handle for a few seconds until the windows and power sunroof close ⇒ *Unlocking or locking vehicles with Keyless Access.*

Convenience closing first closes the windows and then the power sunroof.

#### Initializing the power sunroof

If the vehicle battery has been disconnected or is dead, the sunroof must be initialized.

- The switch ⇒ *Fig. 30* must be rotated to the Closed position  ①.
- Pull the switch at the rear until the sunroof is fully closed.
- **The power sunroof or sunshade will now close without pinch protection!**
- Release the switch.
- Pull and hold the switch at the rear. The sunroof will open and close on its own.
- When the sunroof is closed once again, release the switch.
- If the sunroof still will not close, contact an authorized Volkswagen dealer or an authorized Volkswagen Service Facility.

#### WARNING

Careless or unsupervised use of the sunroof can cause serious injuries.

- Always make sure that no one is in the way of the power sunroof when it is closing.
- Always take all vehicle keys with you when leaving the vehicle.
- Never leave children or persons requiring assistance unattended in the vehicle, especially if they have access to the vehicle key. Unsupervised use of the remote control vehicle key can lock the vehicle, start the engine, switch on the ignition and operate the sunroof.
- The sunroof can still be opened or closed for a short period after the ignition has been switched off, as long as the driver or passenger door is not opened.

#### WARNING

Closing the sunroof without pinch protection can cause severe injuries.

- Always be careful when closing the sunroof.
- Always make sure that no one is in the way when overriding pinch protection to close the sunroof.
- Pinch protection does not prevent fingers or other body parts from being pressed against the roof frame, thereby causing injury.






If the power sunroof malfunctions, pinch protection may not function properly. See an authorized Volkswagen dealer or an authorized Volkswagen Service Facility for assistance.



Convenience closing of the power sunroof from the outside leaves the rotary switch in the last selected position. The switch must be newly positioned when starting to drive again.




## Pinch protection for the power sunroof and sunshade

 Read and follow the introductory information and safety information first ⇒  *Introduction to the subject*

Pinch protection can help reduce the risk of pinching injuries when closing the power sunroof or sunshade ⇒ . If the power sunroof or the sunshade closing meets resistance or there is something in the way, the sunroof and sunshade open again immediately.

- Check why the power sunroof or the sunshade did not close.
- Try to close the power sunroof or the sunshade again.
- If the power sunroof or the sunshade still cannot close, the sunroof or sunshade will stop where the resistance is located. The power sunroof or the sunshade will close the next time without pinch protection.

#### Opening and closing the power sunroof without pinch protection

- The switch ⇒ *Fig. 30* must be rotated to the Closed position ① .
- *Power sunroof:* Within 5 seconds after the pinch protection was triggered, pull the rear part of the switch ⇒ *Fig. 30*  until the sunroof is fully closed.
- *Sunshade:* Within 5 seconds after the pinch protection was triggered, press the ⇒ *Fig. 31*  switch until the sunshade is fully closed.
- **The power sunroof or sunshade will now close without pinch protection!**
- If the power sunroof still will not close, please see an authorized Volkswagen dealer or an authorized Volkswagen Service Facility.

If you let go of the switch while the roof is closing, the power sunroof opens automatically.

## ⚠ WARNING

Without pinch protection, the power sunroof and sunshade will close with enough force to cause serious personal injury.

- Always be careful when closing the power sunroof or sunshade.
- Always make sure that no one is in the way when overriding the pinch protection to close the power sunroof or the sunshade!
- Pinch protection cannot prevent fingers or other parts of the body from being pressed against the edge of the roof; injuries may result.



Pinch protection is also active during convenience closing of the windows and the power sunroof ⇒ [Convenience closing](#).



If the power sunroof malfunctions, pinch protection may not function properly. See an authorized Volkswagen dealer or an authorized Volkswagen Service Facility for assistance.

## HomeLink® Universal Transmitter

### Introduction to the subject

In this chapter you will find information on the following subjects:

⇒ [Programming the HomeLink® Universal Transmitter](#)

⇒ [Operating the HomeLink® Universal Transmitter](#)

The HomeLink Universal Transmitter in your vehicle can be used to open/close an automatic garage door or gate, activate a house alarm, or control a lighting system or other devices. Such devices usually come with a hand-held remote control that sends a signal to a controller to operate the device.

These instructions will help you program the HomeLink® Universal Transmitter in your vehicle so that you will not have to use the hand-held remote control that was supplied with the garage door opener or other device, inside your vehicle.

#### Fixed code or rolling code

The garage door opener or other device may work with either a fixed or rolling code. For garage door openers or other devices with rolling codes, the HomeLink® Universal Transmitter must be synchronized *after* programming the device ⇒ [Programming the HomeLink® Universal Transmitter](#).

#### Compatibility

Volkswagen recommends that you consult an authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility about compatible devices **before you buy** garage door opener or other device that you want to control with the HomeLink Universal Transmitter.

The HomeLink Universal Transmitter can be programmed to the radio frequency codes of most current hand-held remote controls.

Safety switches are mandatory for garage door openers.

A Declaration of Compliance with the United States FCC and Industry Canada regulations is found in the Consumer Information section of this Manual

⇒ [Declaration of Compliance, Telecommunications and Electronic Systems](#).

## ⚠ DANGER!

20 mm button cells and other lithium batteries will cause serious personal injury and even death within a short time if swallowed.

- Always keep hand-held remote control devices with batteries, spare batteries, as well as dead button cell and larger 20 mm batteries out of the reach of children.
- Get medical attention immediately if you suspect that a battery has been swallowed.

## ⚠ WARNING

Improper use of the HomeLink Universal Transmitter can cause serious or even fatal personal injury.

- Garage doors operate with enough force to cause serious personal injury.
- Never let anyone get in the way of a garage door when it is opening or closing.
- When programming the HomeLink Universal Transmitter, you may be operating a garage door or estate gate. Always make sure that people and objects are out of the way to help prevent serious personal injury or property damage.
- When operating the training button on a garage door opener with a rolling code, you will need to stand on a ladder or step stool. Always take extra precautions to prevent falls and serious injury.
- Never use the HomeLink Universal Transmitter with any garage door opener that does not have the safety stop-and-reverse feature, as required by federal safety standards. This includes any garage door opener model manufactured before April 1, 1982.
- A garage door opener that cannot detect an object, signaling the door to stop and reverse, does not meet current federal safety standards. Using a garage

door opener without these features increases the risk of serious injury or death.

- Follow the installation manual and the included safety information from the manufacturer when using the remote controlled garage door opener or electrical drive.

## Programming the HomeLink® Universal Transmitter



Fig. 32 Roof keypad: Buttons for the HomeLink Universal Transmitter.

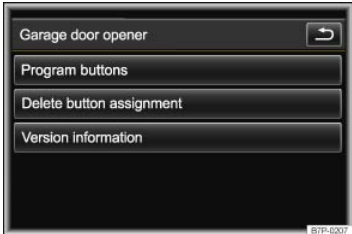



Fig. 33 Infotainment System: HomeLink Universal Transmitter menu.

 Read and follow the introductory information and safety information first ⇒ [Introduction to the subject](#)

The buttons 1, 2, and 3 on the roof keypad ⇒ [Fig. 32](#) between the sun visors can operate up to 3 separate remote control devices (for example, a gate and garage door, a house alarm, or a lighting system).

### Getting ready to program

- Please read the product manufacturer's instructions **before** programming the garage door opener or other device.
- Safely park the vehicle within range of the device to be programmed.
- Switch the ignition on, but do not start the engine.

### Menu Garage door opener in the Infotainment System

Call up the Garage door opener menu in the Infotainment System ⇒ [Fig. 33](#).

- Press the [CAR](#) Infotainment button.
- Tap the Settings function key on the screen.
- Select Garage door opener from the list.

Function key: Effect

Program buttons: Buttons 1, 2 or 3 can be programmed after you tap the function key. Follow the instructions on the Infotainment System screen.

Delete button assignment: Deletes the programming of buttons 1, 2, and 3 ⇒ [Fig. 32](#).

Version information: Most recent programming information for your authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility.

### Programming information

You must complete the programming process within 5 minutes. If you exceed this time limit, the programming is cancelled.

If programming is cancelled, a red LED lights up in the keypad and the turn signals flash once.

### Programming unassigned buttons

- Complete the programming preparation steps described above ⇒ [Getting ready to program](#).
- Press unassigned button in the roof keypad ⇒ [Fig. 32](#).
- Follow the instructions on the Infotainment System screen.

The orange LED in the keypad also blinks to indicate that programming is in progress.

If programming is successful, a green LED in the keypad will light up and the turn signals will flash 3 times.

Repeat these steps with another unassigned garage door opener button to use that button to control another device.

### Programming previously assigned buttons

- Complete the programming preparation steps described above ⇒ *Getting ready to program*.
- Press the **CAR** Infotainment button.
- Tap the Settings function key on the screen.
- Select Garage door opener from the list.
- Tap the Program button function key and follow the instructions on the Infotainment System screen.

The orange LED in the keypad also blinks to indicate that programming is in progress.

If programming is successful, a green LED in the keypad will light up and the turn signals will flash 3 times.

Repeat these steps with another previously assigned garage door opener button to use that button to control another device.

### Deleting programming for all buttons

Be sure to delete the programming on all buttons on the sun visor keypad before selling the vehicle or turning it over to people you do not know.



- Switch on the ignition.
- Press the **CAR** Infotainment button.
- Tap the Settings function key on the screen.
- Select Garage door opener from the list.
- Tap the delete button assignment function key and confirm.


The green LED in the keypad will light up to confirm that the programming has been successfully deleted.

### After programming

Test the garage door opener ⇒ *Operating the HomeLink® Universal Transmitter*.

## Operating the HomeLink® Universal Transmitter

 Read and follow the introductory information and safety information first ⇒  *Introduction to the subject*

- The vehicle must be in operating range of the garage or outer gate drives.
- With ignition turned on or engine running, press the appropriate button on the sun visor ⇒ .

The range of the HomeLink® Universal Transmitter roughly corresponds to the range of the original remote control of the device or the electrical drive. If the garage door or the electrical drive does not work, this could be for one of the following reasons:

Malfunction	Possible cause	Possible remedy
Garage door or electrical drive does not work.	Distance or transmission angle too great.	Try different distances and angles to the receiver.
	Garage door or electrical drive not compatible.	May not comply with legal requirements and may have to be replaced.
	Incorrect programming.	Reprogram the garage door opener.

### DANGER!

20 mm button cells and other lithium batteries will cause serious personal injury and even death within a short time if swallowed.

- Always keep hand-held remote control devices with batteries, spare batteries, as well as dead button cell and larger 20 mm batteries out of the reach of children.
- Get medical attention immediately if you suspect that a battery has been swallowed.

### WARNING

Improper use of the HomeLink® Universal Transmitter can cause serious or even fatal personal injury.

- Garage doors operate with enough force to cause serious personal injury.
- Never let anyone get in the way of a garage door when it is opening or closing.
- When programming the HomeLink® Universal Transmitter, you may be operating a garage door or estate gate. Always make sure that people and objects are out of the way to help prevent serious personal injury or property damage.



- When operating the training button on a garage door opener with a rolling code, you will need to stand on a ladder or step-stool. Always take extra precautions to prevent falls and serious injury.
- Never use the HomeLink® Universal Transmitter with any garage door opener that does not have the safety stop-and-reverse feature, as required by federal safety standards. This includes any garage door opener model manufactured before April 1, 1982.
- A garage door opener that cannot detect an object, signaling the door to stop and reverse, does not meet current federal safety standards. Using a garage door opener without these features increases the risk of serious injury or death.
- Follow the installation manual and the included safety information from the manufacturer when using the remote-controlled garage door opener or electrical drive.

#### NOTE

The wrong batteries can damage the hand-held remote control. Replace a dead battery with one that has the same voltage, size, and specifications.

✿ Please dispose of old batteries properly and in an environmentally responsible manner. Always keep them out of the reach of children.

✿ Certain batteries used in hand-held remote controls are classified as **Perchlorate Material**. Special handling may apply – see <http://www.dtsc.ca.gov/hazardouswaste/perchlorate>. Obey all legal requirements regarding proper disposal. Authorized Volkswagen dealers and authorized Volkswagen Service Facilities are familiar with the requirements, and we recommend that you have them perform this service for you.

## Sitting properly and safely

### Adjusting the seating position

#### Introduction to the subject

In this chapter you will find information on the following subjects:

⇒ *Examples of improper seating positions*

⇒ *Proper seating position*

⇒ *Electrical controls on the driver and passenger seats*

⇒ *Adjusting the front seats in the Volkswagen Information System*

⇒ *Adjusting the rear seat*

⇒ *Adjusting the front and rear head restraints*

⇒ *Removing and reinstalling the head restraints*

⇒ *Adjusting the steering wheel position*

⇒ *Center armrest*

### Number of seats

The vehicle has a total of **5** seating positions: 2 in front and 3 in the rear. Each seating position has a safety belt.

#### WARNING

Improper seating positions increase the risk of severe or fatal injuries in a crash or other accidents, especially when the airbag deploys.

- All occupants must sit properly and properly restrained at all times.
- Never let more people ride in the vehicle than there are seating positions with safety belts available.
- Always secure children in the vehicle with an approved and suitable restraint system appropriate for their age, weight, and height ⇒ *Child safety and child restraints*, ⇒ *Airbag system*.
- Always keep your feet on the floor in front of the seat. Never rest them on the seat, instrument panel, out of the window, etc. The airbag system and safety belt will not be able to protect you properly and can even increase the risk of injury in a crash.

#### WARNING

Always adjust seat, safety belts and head restraints properly before driving and make sure that all passengers are properly restrained.

- Push the passenger seat as far back as possible. Always be sure that there are at least 10 inches (25 cm) between the front passenger's breastbone and the instrument panel.
- Always adjust the driver's seat and the steering wheel so that there are a distance of 10 inches (25 cm) between your breastbone and the center of the

steering wheel.

- Adjust the driver's seat so that you can easily push the pedals all the way to the floor while keeping your knee(s) slightly bent. The distance to the instrument panel in the knee area must be at least 4 inches (10 cm).
- If these requirements cannot be met for physical reasons, contact an authorized Volkswagen dealer or an authorized Volkswagen Service Facility to see whether adaptive equipment is available.
- Always hold the steering wheel on the outside of the steering wheel rim with your hands at the 9 o'clock and 3 o'clock positions to help reduce the risk of personal injury if the driver's airbag inflates.
- Never hold the steering wheel at the 12 o'clock position or with your hands at other places inside the steering wheel rim or on the steering wheel hub. Holding the steering wheel the wrong way can cause serious injuries to the hands, arms, and head if the driver's airbag inflates.
- Pointing the steering wheel toward your face decreases the ability of the driver's airbag to help protect you in a collision.
- Never drive with backrests reclined or tilted back farther than necessary to drive comfortably. The farther back the backrests are tilted the greater the risk of injury caused by incorrect positioning of the safety belts and improper seating position.
- Never drive with the front seat passengers backrest tilted forward. If the front airbag deploys, the front backrest can be forced backward and injure passengers on the rear seat.
- Sit as far back as possible from the steering wheel and the instrument panel.
- Always sit upright with your back against the backrest with the front seats properly adjusted. Never lean against or place any part of your body too close to the area where the airbags are located.
- Rear seat passengers who are not properly seated and restrained are more likely to be seriously injured in a crash.

#### WARNING

Improper adjustment of the seats can cause accidents and severe injuries.



- Never adjust the seats while the vehicle is moving. Your seat may move unexpectedly and you could lose control of the vehicle. In addition, you will not be in the correct seating position while adjusting the seat.
- Adjust the front seat height, angle and longitudinal direction only if the seat adjustment area is clear.
- The adjustment of the front seats must not be restricted by things in the footwell in front of or behind the seats.

#### WARNING

Some kinds of cigarette lighters can be lit unintentionally, or crushed causing a fire that can result in serious burns and vehicle damage.

- Always make sure that there are no lighters in the seat tracks or near other moving parts before adjusting the seats.
- Before closing a storage compartment, always make sure that no cigarette lighter can be activated, crushed, or otherwise damaged.
- Never leave a cigarette lighter in a storage compartment, on the instrument panel or in other places in the vehicle. Heat buildup in the passenger and luggage compartment of a parked vehicle can result in temperatures in the vehicle that are much higher than the outside temperatures, particularly in summer. High temperatures could cause the cigarette lighter to catch fire.

## Examples of improper seating positions

 Read and follow the introductory information and safety information first ⇒  *Introduction to the subject*

Not wearing or improperly fastening safety belts increases the risk of severe or fatal injuries. Safety belts can work only when they are properly positioned on the body. An improper seating position significantly impairs the protection provided by safety belts. This can cause severe or even fatal injuries. Improper seating positions also increase the risk of serious injury or death when an airbag deploys and strikes an occupant who is not in the proper seating position. The driver is responsible for all passengers and especially children riding in the vehicle.

The following are only some examples of seating positions that will increase the risk of serious injury or death.

Therefore, whenever the vehicle is moving:

- Never stand up in the vehicle.
- Never stand on the seats.
- Never kneel on the seats.
- Never ride with the seat backrest reclined.
- Never lean up against the instrument panel.
- Never lie down on the rear seat.
- Never sit on the edge of the seat.
- Never sit sideways.

- Never lean out the window.
- Never put your feet out the window.
- Never put feet on the instrument panel.
- Never rest your feet on the seat cushion or back of the seat.
- Never ride in the footwell.
- Never sit or stand on an armrest.
- Never ride without your safety belt properly fastened.
- Never ride in the luggage compartment.

## ⚠ WARNING

Contact with parts of the vehicle interior can cause serious personal injury in a crash.

- Always make sure that all vehicle occupants stay in a proper seating position and are properly restrained whenever the vehicle is moving.
- Improper seating positions increase the risk of serious and fatal injury, especially when an airbag deploys and strikes a passenger in an improper seating position.

## Proper seating position

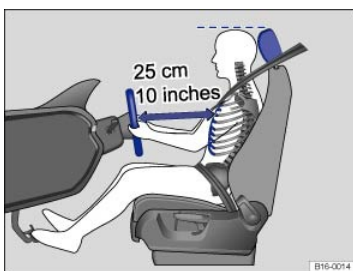


Fig. 34 The driver should never sit closer than 10 inches (25 cm) from the steering wheel.

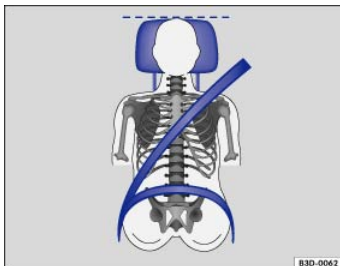


Fig. 35 Proper safety belt positioning and head restraint adjustment.

📖 Read and follow the introductory information and safety information first ⇒ [Introduction to the subject](#)

The following describes the proper seating positions for the driver and passengers.

If you have a physical impairment or condition that prevents you from sitting properly on the driver seat with the safety belt properly fastened and reaching the pedals, special modifications to your vehicle may be necessary. Only the proper seating position ensures optimum protection by the safety belt and airbag.

Contact your authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility or call the Volkswagen Customer CARE Center at 1-800-822-8987 for information about possible modifications to your vehicle.

For your own safety and to reduce injuries in the event of sudden braking maneuvers or accidents, Volkswagen recommends the following seating positions:

### Applies to all vehicle occupants:

- Adjust head restraints so that the upper edge of the head restraint is at least at eye level or higher. Position the back of your head as close as possible to the head restraint ⇒ [Fig. 34](#) and ⇒ [Fig. 35](#).
- Push the head restraint completely down for short people, even if the top of the head is then below the upper edge of the head restraint.
- Tall people should pull the head restraint all the way up.
- Adjust the seat backrest angle to an upright position so that your back is in full contact with it when the vehicle is moving.
- Always keep both feet on the floor and in the footwell whenever the vehicle is moving.
- Always adjust and fasten safety belts properly ⇒ [Safety belts](#).

Driver - seat and steering wheel adjustment:

- Adjust the steering wheel so that there are at least 10 inches (25 cm) between the steering wheel and your breast bone ⇒ Fig. 34. When adjusting the proper distance to the steering wheel, grasp the top of the steering wheel with your elbows slightly bent.
- Always hold the steering wheel on the outside of the steering wheel rim with your hands at the 9 o'clock and 3 o'clock positions to help reduce the risk of personal injury if the driver's airbag inflates.
- Never hold the steering wheel at the 12 o'clock position or with your hands at other places inside the steering wheel rim or on the steering wheel hub. Holding the steering wheel the wrong way can cause serious injuries to the hands, arms, and head if the driver's airbag inflates.
- Adjust the steering wheel so that the steering wheel cover points at your chest and not at your face. Pointing the steering wheel toward your face decreases the ability of the driver's airbag to help protect you in a collision.
- Adjust the driver's seat so that you can easily push the pedals all the way to the floor while keeping your knee(s) slightly bent.
- Adjust the seat height so that the top point of the steering wheel can be reached.
- Always keep both feet in the footwell so that you are in control of the vehicle at all times.

Passenger - front seat adjustment:

- Push the passenger seat as far back as possible in order to ensure optimum protection if the airbag is deployed.

Electrical controls on the driver and passenger seats

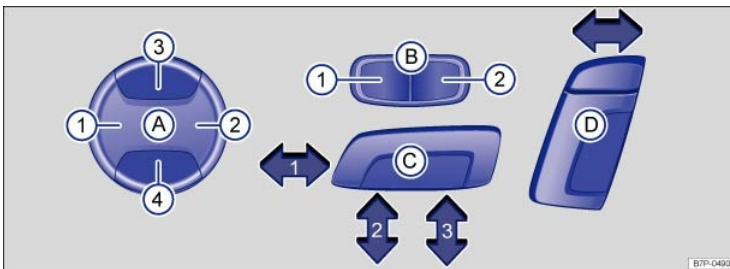


Fig. 36 Driver seat: controls to adjust lumbar support (A), side bolster (B), seat cushion (C), and seat back rest angle (D).

Read and follow the introductory information and safety information first ⇒ Introduction to the subject

The controls on the front passenger seat mirror those on the driver seat.

There may be manual and electrical controls on the same seat.

Key to ⇒ Fig. 36 Press or move the control in the direction of the arrow or in the area shown.

- ① or ② Adjust lumbar support. ① inflates, ② deflates.
- Ⓐ
  - ③ or ④ Adjust lumbar support height. ③ moves the lumbar support up, ④ moves the lumbar support down.
- Ⓑ ① or ② Adjust side bolsters.
- ① Slide the seat backward or forward.
- Ⓒ ② and ③ Raise or lower the seat cushion.
- ② or ③ Adjust seat cushion angle.
- Ⓓ Forward or backwards. Adjust backrest angle.

**⚠ WARNING**

Improper use of electrical seat controls can cause serious personal injuries.

- The front seats in your vehicle can be electrically adjusted even when the vehicle key has been removed from the ignition or, on a vehicle with Keyless Access, even if there is no key in the vehicle.
- Never leave children and persons who need help in the vehicle alone because the unsupervised use of the electric seat adjustments can result in serious personal injury.
- Always make sure that no one is in the way while the front seats are being adjusted, or while calling up the stored memory settings for the front seats. In an emergency, stop automatic seat adjustment by pressing a seat adjustment switch.

## NOTE

To help prevent damage to electrical parts in the seats, do not kneel on the front seats or apply concentrated pressure to a small area of the seat or backrest.



If the vehicle battery is too weak, the electrical seat adjustment controls may not work.



When entering and exiting the vehicle, be careful not to come into contact with any switches that could change the seat adjustment.



Starting the engine stops seat adjustment.

## Adjusting the front seats in the Volkswagen Information System



Fig. 37 Infotainment system: Menu seat settings for the driver and passenger seat with memory feature.

Read and follow the introductory information and safety information first ⇒ [Introduction to the subject](#)

### Seat settings menu in the Infotainment System

- Press the **CAR** Infotainment button.
- Tap the Settings function key on the screen.
- Select Seat settings from the selection list.

### Menu seat settings for the driver and front passenger seat with memory feature

Function key: supplementary information

Driver seat remote control key : When the check box on the display screen is activated , the remote control vehicle key that is in use is activated for the memory feature.

Adjust front passenger seat : After tapping the function key, the front passenger seat can be adjusted using the driver seat controls.

Front passenger seat aligned to driver seat : After tapping the function key, driver seat adjustment can be applied to the front passenger seat. To do this, press and hold the Adjust front passenger seat function key.

## WARNING

Improper use of electrical seat controls can cause serious personal injuries.

- The front seats in your vehicle can be electrically adjusted even when the vehicle key has been removed from the ignition or, on a vehicle with Keyless Access, even if there is no key in the vehicle.
- Never leave children and persons who need help in the vehicle alone because the unsupervised use of the electric seat adjustments can result in serious personal injury.
- Always make sure that no one is in the way while the front seats are being adjusted, or while calling up the stored memory settings for the front seats. In an emergency, stop automatic seat adjustment by pressing a seat adjustment switch.

## NOTE

To help prevent damage to electrical and pneumatic parts in the seats, do not kneel on the front seats or apply concentrated pressure to a small area of the seat or backrest.



If the vehicle battery is too weak, the electrical seat adjustment controls may not work.



Starting the engine stops seat adjustment.



When entering and exiting the vehicle, be careful not to come into contact with any switches that could change the seat adjustment.

## Adjusting the rear seat

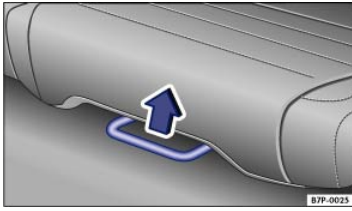


Fig. 38 Moving the left rear seat forwards and backwards.



Fig. 39 Adjusting angle of left rear seat backrest.



Read and follow the introductory information and safety information first ⇒ [Introduction to the subject](#)

The rear seat is divided asymmetrically into 2 sections. Each section can be adjusted separately.

You can slide the rear seat backwards and forwards and adjust the angle of the rear seat backrest.

### Moving the rear seat backwards and forwards

- Pull the adjuster lever up in the direction of the arrow ⇒ [Fig. 38](#).
- Slide the rear seat backwards or forwards ⇒ [!](#).
- Release the adjuster lever and move the rear seat slightly backwards or forwards until it locks into place.

### Adjusting rear seat backrest angle

- Pull the adjuster lever up in the direction of the arrow ⇒ [Fig. 39](#).
- Fold the rear seat back into the loading position and then backwards into the desired position (2 positions to choose from).
- Release the adjuster lever and move the rear seat forwards or backwards slightly until it locks into place.

## ⚠ WARNING

Improper adjustment of the rear seats can cause severe personal injury.

- Adjust the rear seat only when the vehicle is stopped, since the seat could otherwise move unexpectedly when the vehicle is moving.
- Adjust the rear seat only if no one is in the way.
- Always guide the backrest down by hand and never let it fall into place on its own.

## ! NOTE

- Items in the luggage compartment could be damaged or cause damage when the rear seat is adjusted in the fore and aft direction.
- If the rear seat is in a forward position, items can get into the area between the seat and the luggage compartment floor. When you slide the rear seat back again, make sure that the area behind the seat is clear of objects.

## Adjusting the front and rear head restraints

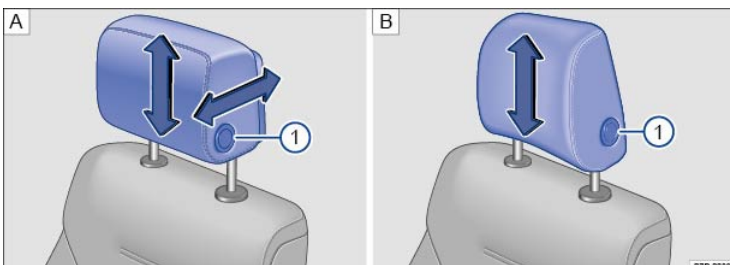


Fig. 40 Adjusting the front head restraints: Version and .

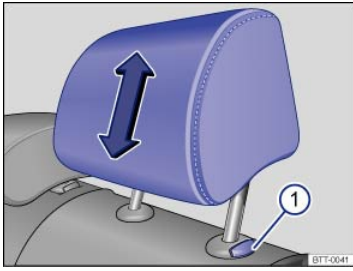


Fig. 41 Adjusting the rear head restraints.

Read and follow the introductory information and safety information first ⇒ *Introduction to the subject*

All seats are equipped with head restraints. The rear center head restraint is designed only for the center seat on the rear bench. Therefore, only install the center head restraint in the center position.

There are notches in the head restraint guide rods so that the head restraint can lock into place. Only properly installed head restraints can lock into place at the adjustment range notches. In order to prevent inadvertent removal of the head restraints after installation, there are stops at the top and bottom of the adjustment range.

#### Adjusting the height

- Push the head restraint up in the direction of the arrow or down when the button ⇒ Fig. 40① or ⇒ Fig. 41① is pressed ⇒ .
- The head restraint must lock securely in the position selected.

#### Front to back adjustment of the front head restraints

You can move the head restraint forwards and backwards by pushing and holding the button ⇒ Fig. 40A①. The head restraint must lock securely in the position selected.

#### Proper head restraint adjustment

Adjust head restraints so that the upper edge of the head restraint is at least at eye level or higher. Position the back of the head as close as possible to the head restraint.

#### Adjusting the head restraint for short people

Push the head restraint down as far as it will go, even if this means the person's head is still below the top edge of the head restraint. A small gap may remain between the head restraint and the backrest when the head restraint is all the way down.

#### Adjusting the head restraint for tall people

Pull the head restraint up as far as it will go.

### WARNING

Driving without head restraints or with improperly adjusted head restraints increases the risk of serious injuries in a collision.

- Always drive with the head restraints in place and properly adjusted to help minimize the risk of neck injury in a crash.
- Every person in the vehicle must have a properly adjusted head restraint to minimize the risk of neck injury in a crash. Each head restraint must be adjusted according to the occupants' size so that the upper edge is even with the top of the person's head, but no lower than eye level. Always sit so that the back of your head is as close as possible to the head restraint.
- Never adjust head restraint while driving.

### Removing and reinstalling the head restraints

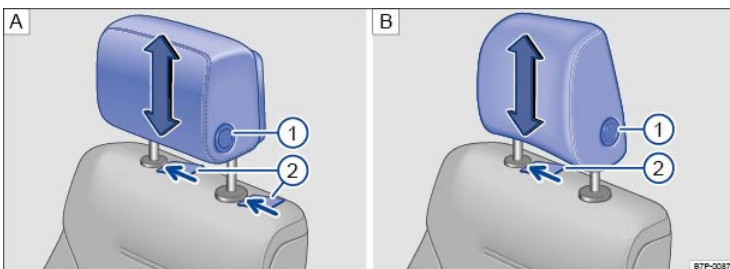


Fig. 42 Removing the front head restraints: Version and .

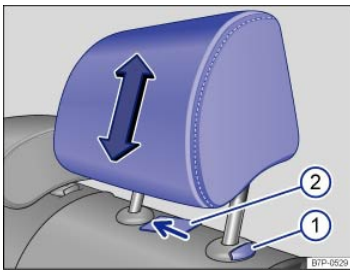


Fig. 43 Removing the rear head restraints.

Read and follow the introductory information and safety information first ⇒ [Introduction to the subject](#)

All seats are equipped with head restraints. The rear center head restraint is designed only for the center seat on the rear bench. Therefore, only install the center head restraint in the center position.

#### Removing the front head restraints

- Sit in the back seat behind the head restraint you want to remove. Pull the head restraint all the way up ⇒ . Recline the backrest with the head restraint so that there is enough overhead clearance to remove it.
- Slide a flat object, such as a plastic credit card, underneath the right side of the cap on the right-hand seat guide rod ⇒ [Fig. 42②](#) to unlock the head restraint.
- Push the flat object (plastic card) in against the guide rod to depress a release button located under the cap (not visible).
- Use one hand to hold the release button in with the flat object. With your other hand, lift the same guide rod slightly to expose a notch in the rod at the bottom (can be seen and felt with fingers). The right-hand guide rod is now released.
- To release the left-hand guide rod, press button ⇒ [Fig. 42①](#) in (towards guide rod) and hold.
- Pull the head restraint out completely while holding button ⇒ [Fig. 42①](#).

#### Installing the front head restraints

- Position head restraint properly over the head restraint guides of the respective seat backrest and insert the head restraint into the guides until it clicks.
- Guide the rods of the head restraint into the corresponding guides on the backrest.
- Push the head restraint down while pressing button ⇒ [Fig. 42①](#).
- Adjust the head restraint according to the occupant's size ⇒ [Adjusting the front and rear head restraints](#) .

#### Removing the rear head restraints

- Unlock the rear bench and fold forward ⇒ [Luggage compartment](#).
- Pull the head restraint all the way up ⇒ .
- Slide a flat object, such as a plastic credit card, underneath the right side of the cap on the right-hand seat guide rod ⇒ [Fig. 43②](#) to unlock the head restraint.
- At the same time press button ⇒ [Fig. 43①](#) while a second person pulls out the head restraint completely.
- Fold the backrest of the rear seat bench back so that it locks securely.

#### Installing the rear head restraints

- Unlock the backrest of the rear seat bench and fold it forward ⇒ [Luggage compartment](#).
- Position head restraint properly over the head restraint guides of the respective seat backrest and insert the head restraint into the guides.
- Push the head restraint down while pressing the button ⇒ [Fig. 43①](#).
- Fold the backrest of the rear bench back so that it locks securely.
- Adjust the head restraint according to the occupant's size ⇒ [Adjusting the front and rear head restraints](#) .

### WARNING

Driving without head restraints or with improperly adjusted head restraints increases the risk of serious injuries in a collision.

- Always drive with the head restraints in place and properly adjusted to help minimize the risk of neck injury in crash.
- Always reinstall head restraints as soon as possible so that vehicle occupants are properly protected.

### NOTE

When removing or reinstalling the head restraint, take care that the head restraint does not strike the headliner or the back of the front seat. The headliner or other parts of the vehicle could otherwise be damaged.

## Adjusting the steering wheel position



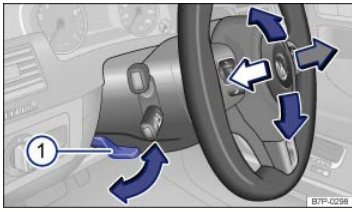


Fig. 44 Manual adjustment for the steering wheel position.

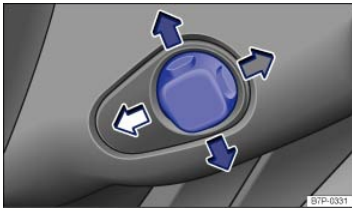


Fig. 45 Behind the steering wheel on the steering column: electrical adjustment for steering wheel.

Read and follow the introductory information and safety information first ⇒ *Introduction to the subject*

Adjust the steering wheel only when the vehicle is not moving.

Adjust the steering wheel so that it can be held with hands at the 9 o'clock and 3 o'clock positions on the outside of the steering wheel rim and with the arms slightly bent at the elbow.

#### Manual adjustment

- Push down on the lever ⇒ Fig. 44①.
- Position the steering wheel as desired.
- Pull the lever up firmly until it is flush with the steering column ⇒ .

#### Electrical adjustment

The switch ⇒ Fig. 45 for electrical adjustment is on the left side of the steering column.

- Push the switch in the direction you want the steering wheel to move until it is in the desired position.

#### Convenience entry function

The steering column automatically moves to the top front position when the key is removed from the ignition.

When the ignition is switched off using the Keyless Access when the driver door is opened, the steering column automatically moves to the top front position.

When the ignition is switched on and the driver door is closed, the steering column automatically moves back into the last stored position assigned to the key in use ⇒ .

### WARNING

Improper use of the steering column adjustment feature can result in serious personal injury and even death.

- Always pull the lever ⇒ Fig. 44① firmly upward after adjusting the steering column so that the steering wheel does not change position suddenly while the vehicle is moving.
- Never adjust the steering column while the vehicle is moving. If you find that you need to adjust the steering wheel while driving, stop the vehicle in a safe place and make the proper adjustment.
- Never adjust the steering wheel so that it points toward your face. Always make sure that the steering wheel points toward your chest. Otherwise, the airbag system cannot protect you properly in the event of a crash.
- Always hold the steering wheel on the outside of the steering wheel rim with your hands at the 9 o'clock and 3 o'clock positions to help reduce the risk of serious personal injury if the driver's airbag inflates.
- Never hold the steering wheel at the 12 o'clock position or with your hands anywhere inside the steering wheel or on the steering wheel hub. Holding the steering wheel the wrong way increases the risk of severe injury to the arms, hands, and head if the driver front airbag deploys.

#### Center armrest

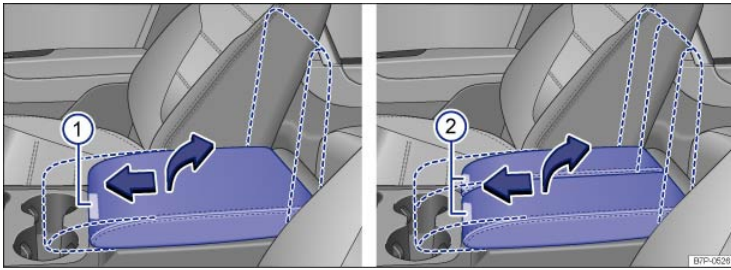


Fig. 46 Between the front seats: 1 part and 2 part front center armrest.

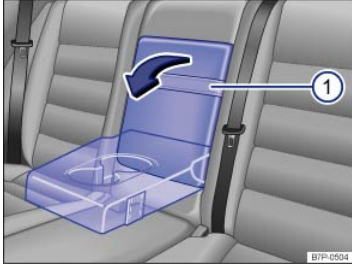


Fig. 47 Rear center armrest.

Read and follow the introductory information and safety information first ⇒ [Introduction to the subject](#)

#### Front center armrest

There is a storage compartment under the front center armrest ⇒ [Storage compartment in the front center armrest](#) .

To *slide* (if applicable), press ⇒ [Fig. 46①](#) or ⇒ [Fig. 46②](#) move the center armrest in the direction of the arrow ⇒ [Fig. 46](#).

To *open*, press button ⇒ [Fig. 46①](#) or ⇒ [Fig. 46②](#) and lift the center armrest section up completely in the direction of the arrow ⇒ [Fig. 46](#).

To *close*, push the center armrest down until it latches in place.

#### Rear center armrest

There may be a fold-down armrest with a small storage compartment in the backrest of the center rear seat ⇒ [Fig. 47](#).

To *fold down*, pull the loop in the direction of the arrow ⇒ [Fig. 47①](#).

To *fold up*, push the center armrest up as far as it will go.

### WARNING

The center armrest can restrict the driver's arm movement and cause crashes and serious personal injury.

- Always keep storage compartments in the center armrest closed while driving.
- Never let a passenger, especially a child, ride on the center armrest. Improper seating position can increase the risk of serious personal injury in a crash.
- Never put hot drinks or other liquids in the cup holder. Hot liquids can spill when the vehicle is moving as well as during braking or other sudden maneuvers.

## Seat functions

### Introduction to the subject

In this chapter you will find information on the following subjects:

⇒ [Seat heating](#)

⇒ [Ventilated seats](#)

⇒ [Memory seats](#)

⇒ [Assigning memory seat settings to the remote control vehicle keys](#)

### WARNING

Improper use of seat adjustment controls can cause severe personal injuries.

- Always sit properly at all times before starting to drive and while the vehicle is moving. Make sure all passengers, especially children, are properly seated whenever the vehicle is moving.
- Keep hands, fingers, feet and other body parts away from moving parts and adjustment areas of the seats.

## Seat heating

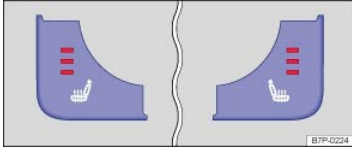


Fig. 48 In the upper front center console: Seat heating control for the front seats.

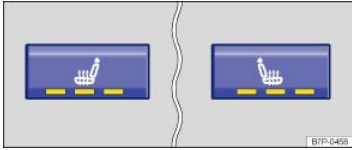


Fig. 49 In the rear center console: Seat heating control for the rear seats.

Read and follow the introductory information and safety information first ⇒ [Introduction to the subject](#)

When the ignition is switched on, the seat can be electrically heated by heating elements that warm the seat backrest and cushion.

Do not use the seat heating if any of the following conditions apply:

- If the seat is not being used.
- If there is a child restraint installed on the front passenger seat.
- If there is a blanket or seat cover on the front passenger seat.
- If the seat is damp or wet.
- If the outside temperature or the temperature inside the passenger compartment is +77 °F (+25 °C) or more.

Function	Action ⇒ Fig. 48 or ⇒ Fig. 49
Switch on:	Press the  or  button. Seat heating is switched on to maximum. All indicator lights light up.
Adjusting heating level:	Press the  or  button repeatedly until the desired heating level is set.
Switch off:	Press the  or  button repeatedly until all indicator lights are off ⇒ Fig. 49.

### WARNING

Certain medical conditions, such as paralysis and diabetes, and certain medications can increase the risk of serious burns when the seat heating feature is switched on.

- Vehicle occupants who have a low level of perceived pain or a lowered awareness of pain can receive serious burns to the back, buttocks, and legs that take a long time to heal or may never heal completely.
- Never use the seat heating feature if you or your passengers are at risk of being burned because of a medical condition. Take regular breaks and get out of the vehicle, particularly on long trips. Consult your doctor for advice regarding your specific condition.
- Never let exposed skin remain in contact with the seat upholstery when the seat heating is being used.

### WARNING

- A wet seat can cause the seat heating to malfunction and increase the risk of serious burns.
- Always make sure the seats are dry before using the seat heating.
- Never sit on the seat with wet clothes.
- Never put damp or wet things including clothes on the seat.
- Never spill liquids on the seats.

### NOTE

- To help prevent damage to electrical and other parts in the seat, do not kneel on the front seats or apply concentrated pressure to a small area of the seat or backrest.
- Liquids, sharp objects and things that do not let the heat in the seat escape into the air, including, for example, a child restraint, a blanket or seat covers on the seat can damage seat heating.
- If you smell an odor, immediately shut off seat heating and have it checked by an authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility.

- Never install leather upholstery on a vehicle with seat heating that originally had cloth upholstery. The seat heating elements for seats with cloth seats will overheat if the cloth upholstery is replaced with leather upholstery.

🌸 Switch off seat heating when it is not needed to help reduce unnecessary fuel consumption.

## Ventilated seats

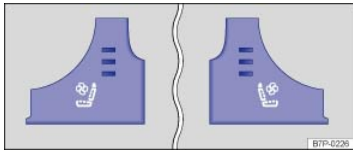


Fig. 50 In the upper front center console: Controls for the ventilated front seats.

📖 Read and follow the introductory information and safety information first ⇒ [Introduction to the subject](#)

The seat base and backrest as well as the seat and backrest sides of the front seats can be ventilated from the inside at 3 ventilation levels ( **low**, **medium** and **high**).

The seat is ventilated with air from the vehicle interior. This helps body moisture to be wicked away, although the seat is not directly cooled. This feature does not thermally cool the seat like an air conditioner.

For long trips, Volkswagen recommends setting the seat ventilation level to **low**.

Function	Action ⇒ Fig. 50
Switch on:	Press the  or  button. The ventilation is switched on to maximum. All indicator lights light up.
Adjust ventilation level:	Press the  or  button repeatedly until the desired ventilation level is set.
Switch off:	Press the  or  button repeatedly until all the indicator lights ⇒ Fig. 50 are off.

🌸 Switch off the ventilated seat feature when it is not needed to help reduce unnecessary fuel consumption.



You may hear the sound of the seat ventilation when the feature is switched on. The sound is part of normal operation and not a cause for concern.

## Memory seats



Fig. 51 Memory buttons in the upper part of the driver and front passenger doors.

📖 Read and follow the introductory information and safety information first ⇒ [Introduction to the subject](#)

Depending on vehicle equipment, the vehicle may be equipped with seat memory functions for the driver seat or for the driver and front passenger seats.

### Memory buttons

Personal settings for the front seats, steering wheel position (if electrically adjustable), and the outside mirrors can be assigned to the memory buttons in the front vehicle doors and to every remote control vehicle key.

Personal settings for the front passenger seat can be assigned to the memory buttons in the front passenger door.

Depending on the vehicle equipment level a vehicle can be equipped with driver seat or driver and front passenger seat with memory functions.

### Storing driver seat settings and forward driving settings for outside mirrors

Switch on the ignition.

- Adjust the driver seat and outside mirrors.
- Adjust the steering wheel position.
- Press the **SET** button until the LED lights up ⇒ Fig. 51 (arrow).

- Within about 10 seconds press the desired memory button 1, 2 or 3 ⇒ [Fig. 51](#). The LED will extinguish and a chime signal will confirm the memory storage.

#### Storing front passenger seat settings to the front passenger door memory buttons

- Switch on the ignition.
- Sit on the front passenger seat and adjust it to the desired position.
- Press the SET button until the LED lights up (arrow).
- Within about 10 seconds press the desired memory button 1, 2 or 3 ⇒ [Fig. 51](#). The LED will go out and a chime sounds to confirm that settings have been stored.

#### Recalling stored memory settings

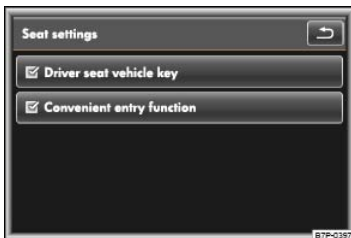
- With the vehicle door open and the *ignition off*, the stored seating positions can be recalled and set automatically. For this, tap the corresponding memory button 1, 2 or 3 in the respective vehicle door *briefly*.
- **OR:** With the vehicle door *closed* press and hold the corresponding memory button on the vehicle door until the stored positions are reached.

#### Cancellation conditions when storing settings for the memory buttons

When one of the following conditions is met, the storing process will be cancelled:

- Charging condition of the vehicle battery is weak.
- Repeated pressing of the SET button within about 10 seconds.
- Readjustment of the seat position within about 10 seconds after pressing the SET button.

### Assigning memory seat settings to the remote control vehicle keys



[Fig. 52](#) Infotainment system: Menu seat settings for the driver seat with memory feature.

Read and follow the introductory information and safety information first ⇒ [Introduction to the subject](#)

When enabled, every time you exit and lock the vehicle, your remote control vehicle key will remember the current seat position, steering wheel position (when electrically adjustable), and the outside mirrors settings. These settings will be stored and assigned to the *active* remote control vehicle key. The new stored setting will be automatically set after the vehicle is unlocked and the driver door is opened. When 2 or more people use the vehicle, it is recommended that every person use their own remote control vehicle key.

The condition for the automatic storage on the personal remote control vehicle key is that the same remote control vehicle key that triggered the unlocking of the vehicle is also used for locking.

#### Assigning settings to a vehicle key

The memory function of all vehicle keys is disabled when the vehicle is first delivered from the factory.

To enable vehicle key memory function:

- Unlock the driver door.
- Press and hold a memory button ⇒ [Fig. 51](#) until memory position is reached.
- Press and hold the unlock button on the vehicle key and then press the desired memory button at the same time within about 3 seconds. A chime sounds to confirm activation.

To disable vehicle key memory function:

- Press and hold the **SET** button.
- Press and hold the unlock button on the vehicle key and the desired memory button at the same time within about 10 seconds. A chime sounds to confirm deactivation.

#### Activating the Key Fob Recall feature over the Infotainment system:

- Switch on the ignition.
- Press the **CAR** Infotainment button.
- Tap the Settings function key on the screen.

- Select Seat settings from the selection list.
- Check the check box by the Driver seat remote control key  function key ⇒ Fig. 52.
- The settings are stored when the vehicle is locked with the remote control vehicle key.

If automatic storage has already been activated on the driver door memory buttons, a check will be automatically set in the check box .

This feature works differently than your memory seat buttons.

Your memory seat positions can always be recalled using the buttons on the door.

If you prefer to not have it do this, just enter your “seat settings” again, and unmark the “Driver seat remote – control key” box.



If the stored position settings have not been completed, there will not be any changed positions stored on the remote control vehicle key.



If your seat moved to an odd position, DON'T WORRY! You must have simply grabbed the other remote control vehicle key than you normally do. Remember, if two drivers have this activated, then both keys might remember different positions.

## Safety belts

### Introduction to the subject

In this chapter you will find information on the following subjects:

⇒ *Warning light*

⇒ *Frontal collisions and laws of physics*

⇒ *What happens to passengers not wearing a safety belt*

⇒ *Safety belts protect*

⇒ *Using safety belts*

⇒ *Fastening and unfastening safety belts*

⇒ *Safety belt position*

⇒ *Safety belt height adjusters*

⇒ *Safety belt extender*

⇒ *Safety belt retractor, pretensioner, load limiter*

⇒ *Service and disposal of belt pretensioners*

Properly worn safety belts are the single most effective means of reducing the risk of serious injury and death in a collision or other accident.

Damage to safety belts reduces their overall effectiveness and increases the risk of serious personal injury and death whenever the vehicle is being used.

Check the condition of all safety belts regularly.

If a safety belt shows damage to webbing, bindings, retractors or buckles, have the safety belt replaced by an authorized Volkswagen dealer or an authorized Volkswagen Service Facility ⇒ .

### WARNING

Not wearing a safety belt or wearing an improperly positioned safety belt increases the risk of severe personal injury or death. Safety belts offer optimum protection only when they are used properly.

- Properly worn safety belts are the single most effective means of reducing the risk of serious injury and death in a collision or other accident. For this reason, always wear your safety belt properly and make sure all passengers wear their safety belts properly as well whenever the vehicle is moving.
- The driver must always make sure that every person in the vehicle is properly seated on a seat of his or her own, properly fastens the safety belts belonging to that seat before the vehicle starts to move, and keeps the belts properly fastened while riding in the vehicle. This applies even when just driving around town. Therefore, always wear your safety belts and make sure that everybody in your vehicle is properly restrained.
- Always secure children in the vehicle with a restraint system appropriate for their age, weight and height ⇒ *Child safety and child restraints* .
- Always fasten safety belts correctly before driving off and make sure that all passengers are properly restrained.
- Never attach the safety belt to the buckle of another seat. Attaching the safety belt to the wrong buckle will reduce safety belt effectiveness and can cause serious personal injury.

- Never let any objects or liquids get into the safety belt latch and prevent it from working properly.
- Never remove a safety belt while the vehicle is moving. Doing so will increase your risk of being injured or killed.
- Never strap more than one person, including small children, into any single safety belt.
- Never let children or babies ride sitting on your lap, and never place a safety belt over a child sitting on your lap.
- Never wear belts over rigid or breakable objects in or on your clothing, such as eye glasses, pens, keys, etc., as these may cause injury.
- Several layers of heavy clothing (such as a coat worn over top of a sports jacket) may interfere with proper positioning of the belt and reduce the overall effectiveness of the system.
- Never use comfort clips or devices that create slack in the shoulder belt. However, special clips may be required for the correct use of some child restraint systems.
- Safety belts offer optimum protection only when the seat backrest is upright and belts are correctly positioned on the body.

## ⚠ WARNING

Damage to safety belts reduces their overall effectiveness and increases the risk of serious personal injury and death whenever the vehicle is being used.

- Never let safety belts become damaged by being caught in the door or seat hardware.
- Torn or frayed safety belts can tear, and damaged safety belt hardware can break in an accident.
- Inspect belts regularly for damage. If webbing, bindings, buckles, or retractors are damaged, have the belts replaced immediately with the correct replacement belts approved by Volkswagen for your vehicle, model, and model year.
- Safety belts that were subject to stress in an accident and stretched must be replaced with a correct, new safety belt, preferably by an authorized Volkswagen dealer or an authorized Volkswagen Service Facility.
- Replacement after a crash may be necessary even if a safety belt shows no visible damage. Anchorages that have been loaded must also be inspected.
- Damaged safety belts must be replaced; they cannot be repaired.
- Never try to repair a damaged safety belt yourself. Never remove or modify the safety belts in any way.
- Have safety belts, bindings, retractors and buckles replaced by an authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility.
- Always keep the belts clean. Dirty belts may not work correctly and can impair the function of the inertia reel.

## Warning light



Fig. 53 Warning light in the instrument cluster.

📖 Read and follow the introductory information and safety information first ⇒ ⚠ *Introduction to the subject*

Lights up or flashes	Possible cause	Proper response
⚠	Driver and/or passenger safety belts not buckled.	Fasten safety belts.
⚠	Heavy items on the front passenger seat.	Remove items from front passenger seat and stow them safely.

When the ignition is switched on, several warning and indicator lights come on briefly for a function check. They go out after a few seconds.

A warning chime also sounds.

The safety belt warning light ⚠ comes on for 6 seconds when the ignition is switched on. A warning chime also sounds for up to six seconds if the driver's safety belt is not buckled. The chime stops sooner if the driver buckles his or her safety belt. The warning light and the chime also go out when both driver and front passenger have buckled their safety belts.

If the driver and front seat passenger do not both fasten their safety belts within about 24 seconds after the chime stops and the vehicle is moving at a speed of more than about 15 mph (25 km/h), the chime will again sound for about 6 seconds, then go off for about 24 seconds, then sound again for about another 6 seconds. The same thing happens if one of the safety belts is first fastened and then unfastened while the vehicle is moving. The safety belt warning light also flashes ⚠. The warning chime continues to sound at 24 second intervals for up to 2 minutes. No chime sounds at speeds of less than about 5 mph (8 km/h).

If the ignition is switched on, the safety belt warning light ⚠ stays on until the driver and front passenger have both buckled their safety belts.

Not wearing a safety belt or wearing an improperly positioned safety belt increases the risk of severe personal injury or death. Safety belts offer optimum protection only when used correctly.

### Frontal collisions and laws of physics

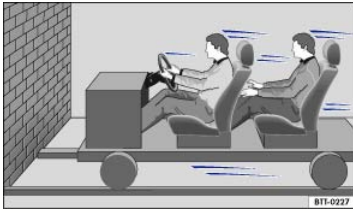


Fig. 54 A vehicle with passengers not wearing safety belts approaches a wall.

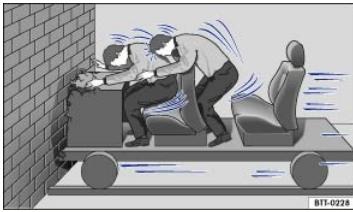



Fig. 55 A vehicle with passengers not wearing safety belts hits a wall.

 Read and follow the introductory information and safety information first ⇒ [Introduction to the subject](#)

The physical principles of a frontal collision are simple. Both the moving vehicle and the passenger possess energy ⇒ Fig. 54, which varies with vehicle speed and body weight. Engineers call this energy kinetic energy.

The higher the speed of the vehicle and the greater the vehicle's weight, the more energy has to be absorbed in a crash.

Vehicle speed is the most significant factor. If your speed doubles (for example, from 15 mph to 30 mph – 25 km/h to 50 km/h), the energy increases 4 times!

Because the occupants of the vehicle in the above example are not using safety belts, they are not attached to the vehicle. In a frontal collision, they will keep moving at the same speed the vehicle was moving just before the crash, until something stops them - here, the inside of the passenger compartment. Because the occupants of the vehicle in the example are not wearing safety belts, their entire kinetic energy will be absorbed by impact with the wall ⇒ Fig. 55.

The same principles apply to people in a vehicle that is in a frontal collision on the highway. Even at city speeds of 20–30 mph (30–50 km/h), the forces acting on the body can reach one ton (2,000 lbs or 1,000 kg) or more. At greater speeds, these forces are even higher.

Of course, the laws of physics don't apply just to frontal collisions; they determine what happens in all kinds of accidents and collisions.

### What happens to passengers not wearing a safety belt



Fig. 56 The unbelted driver is thrown forward.



Fig. 57 Unbelted passengers in the rear seats are thrown forward on top of the belted driver.

 Read and follow the introductory information and safety information first ⇒ [Introduction to the subject](#)

Many people believe that it is possible to resist the forces of an impact by holding tight or bracing themselves. That is simply not true!



Even at low collision speeds, the forces acting on the body are too much for the body to be held in the seat with the arms and hands. In a frontal collision, unrestrained occupants will slam violently into the steering wheel, instrument panel, windshield or anything else in the way ⇒ Fig. 56.

Never rely on airbags alone for protection. Even when they deploy, airbags provide only additional protection. Airbags are not supposed to deploy in all kinds of accidents. Even if your vehicle is equipped with airbags, all vehicle occupants, including the driver, must wear safety belts correctly in order to minimize the risk of severe injury or death in a crash, regardless of whether a seating position has an airbag or not.

An airbag will deploy only once. Safety belts are always there to offer protection in those accidents in which airbags are not supposed to deploy or when they have already deployed. Unbelted occupants can also be thrown out of the vehicle, causing even more severe injuries or death.

It is also important for occupants in the rear seats to wear their safety belts properly since they can be thrown violently forward through the vehicle in the event of an accident. Unbelted passengers in the rear seats endanger not only themselves but also the driver and other passengers in the vehicle ⇒ Fig. 57.

## Safety belts protect



Fig. 58 Belted driver secured by the correctly worn safety belt in the event of a sudden braking maneuver.

 Read and follow the introductory information and safety information first ⇒ [Introduction to the subject](#)

Used properly, safety belts can make a big difference. Safety belts help to keep passengers in their seats, gradually reduce energy levels applied to the body in a collision, and help prevent the uncontrolled movement that can cause serious injuries. In addition, safety belts reduce the danger of being thrown out of the vehicle ⇒ Fig. 58.

Safety belts attach passengers to the car and give them the benefit of being slowed down more gently or softly through the give in the safety belts, crumple zones, and other safety features (such as airbags) engineered into today's vehicles. The front crumple zones and other passive safety features (such as the airbag system) are also designed to absorb kinetic energy. By absorbing the kinetic energy over a longer period of time, the forces on the body become more tolerable and less likely to cause injury.


Although these examples are based on a frontal collision, safety belts can also substantially reduce the risk of injury in other kinds of crashes. So, whether you're on a long trip or just going to the corner store, always buckle up and make sure that others do, too.

Accident statistics show that vehicle occupants properly wearing safety belts have a lower risk of being injured and a much better chance of surviving a collision. Properly using safety belts also greatly increases the ability of the supplemental airbags to do their job in a collision. For this reason, wearing a safety belt is required by law in most countries including the United States and Canada.

Although your Volkswagen is equipped with airbags, you still have to wear the safety belts provided. Front airbags, for example, are activated only in some frontal collisions. The front airbags are not activated in all frontal collisions, in side and rear collisions, in rollovers, or in cases when the conditions for deployment stored in the electronic control unit are not met. The same goes for the other airbag systems on your Volkswagen.

So always wear your safety belt and make sure that everybody in your vehicle is properly restrained!

## Using safety belts

 Read and follow the introductory information and safety information first ⇒ [Introduction to the subject](#)

### Checklist

#### Using safety belts ⇒

- ✓ Damage to safety belts reduces their overall effectiveness and increases the risk of serious personal injury and death whenever the vehicle is being used.
- ✓ Check the condition of all safety belts regularly.
- ✓ Keep safety belts clean.
- ✓ Keep objects and liquids away from safety belt webbing, the safety belt buckle tongue, and the safety belt buckle latch and opening.
- ✓ Do not pinch or damage the safety belt or buckle tongue (for instance, when closing a door).
- ✓ Never modify, disassemble or try to repair safety belts and safety belt anchorages.
- ✓ Always fasten your safety belt properly before driving and keep it fastened whenever the vehicle is moving.

## Twisted safety belt

If it is difficult to pull the safety belt out of the belt guide, the belt may be twisted inside the side trim because the belt retracted too quickly when it was taken off.

- Hold the safety belt tongue, slowly and carefully pull safety belt all the way out.
- Untwist the safety belt and slowly return the belt by hand.

If you cannot untwist the safety belt, wear it anyway. Make sure that the safety belt is twisted in a spot where it does not come in direct contact with your body. Have the safety belt untwisted immediately by an authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility.

## Lockable safety belt

The retractors for the rear seat safety belts and the front passenger safety belt have a switchable locking feature for child restraints in addition to the emergency locking feature. Whenever a child restraint is installed with a safety belt, the safety belt must be locked so that the safety belt webbing cannot unreel. The switchable locking feature lets you lock the belt so that a child restraint can be properly installed and, for example, so that it can't tip to the side when the vehicle goes around a corner ⇒ *Child safety and child restraints* .

To see whether a safety belt is lockable, pull the safety belt *all the way* out of the safety belt retractor. You should then hear a clicking sound as the belt winds back into the retractor reel. Test the switchable locking feature by pulling on the belt. When the switchable locking feature is active, you should no longer be able to pull the belt out of the retractor.

The locking feature must be deactivated when a vehicle occupant uses the safety belt.

### ⚠ WARNING

Improper use and care of safety belts increases the risk of severe personal injury or death.

- Regularly check safety belts and related parts for damage.
- Damaged safety belts must be replaced; they cannot be repaired.
- Always keep safety belts clean.
- Never catch, damage or chafe safety belt webbing on sharp edges.
- Always keep objects and liquids away from the belt buckle and buckle opening.

## Fastening and unfastening safety belts

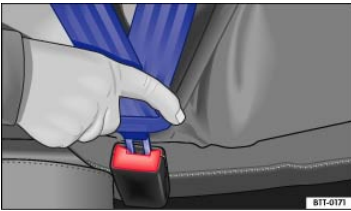


Fig. 59 Inserting the buckle tongue into the belt buckle.



Fig. 60 Releasing the buckle tongue from the belt buckle.

📖 Read and follow the introductory information and safety information first ⇒ ⚠ *Introduction to the subject*

Properly worn safety belts help to hold occupants in their seats and provide optimum protection during braking or in a collision or other accident ⇒ ⚠.

The switchable locking feature makes a clicking sound when the safety belt is winding back onto the safety belt retractor wheel after being pulled *all the way* out. Whenever a child restraint is installed with a safety belt, the safety belt must be locked so that the safety belt webbing cannot unreel ⇒ *Child safety and child restraints*. If active, deactivate the locking feature before using the safety belt to restrain a person without a child restraint system.

## Fastening safety belts

Always buckle your safety belt before driving.

- Adjust the front seat and head restraint correctly ⇒ *Adjusting the seating position*.
- Make sure the seat backrest of the rear seat bench is in an upright position and securely latched in place before using the safety belt ⇒ ⚠.
- Hold the safety belt by the tongue and pull it slowly and evenly across the chest and pelvis. Do **not** twist the safety belt webbing ⇒ ⚠.
- Insert the tongue into the correct buckle for your seat until you hear it latch securely ⇒ Fig. 59.

- Pull on the safety belt to make sure that it is securely latched in the buckle.

### Unfastening safety belts

Unfasten safety belts only when the vehicle is not moving ⇒ ▲.

- Press the red button on the buckle ⇒ Fig. 60. The buckle tongue is ejected.
- Let the belt wind up on the retractor as you guide the belt tongue to its stowed position to help prevent the safety belt from twisting and to help avoid damage to the interior trim.

### ⚠ WARNING

Improperly positioned safety belts can cause serious personal injury or death in an accident.

- Safety belts offer optimum protection only when the seat backrest is upright and belts are correctly positioned on the body.
- A person who is not properly restrained can be seriously injured by the safety belt itself if it slips from the stronger parts of the body into sensitive areas like the abdomen.
- Unfastening safety belts while the vehicle is in motion can cause severe personal injury or death in the event of an accident or braking maneuver!

### Safety belt position

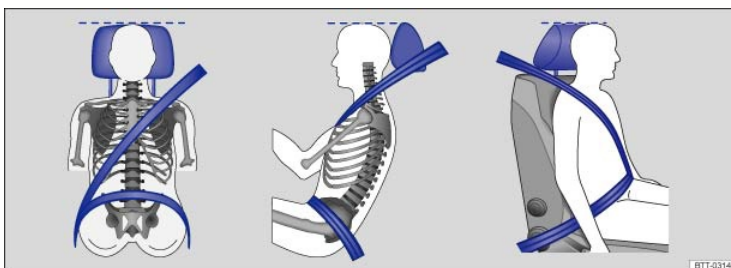


Fig. 61 Proper safety belt positioning and head restraint adjustment.



Fig. 62 Proper safety belt positioning for expectant mothers.

📖 Read and follow the introductory information and safety information first ⇒ ▲ *Introduction to the subject*

Wearing safety belts improperly can cause serious injury or death. Safety belts can only work when they are correctly positioned on the body. A properly worn safety belt also helps to position the occupant so that an airbag can provide maximum protection when deployed. Therefore, always fasten your safety belt and make sure that it is properly positioned over your body.

Improper seating positions reduce the effectiveness of safety belts and even increase the risk of injury or death by moving the safety belt to critical areas of the body. Improper seating positions also increase the risk of severe injury or death when an airbag deploys and strikes an occupant who is not seated properly ⇒ *Adjusting the seating position*.

#### Proper safety belt position

- The shoulder portion of the safety belt must always run over the center of the shoulder and never over the throat, over the arm, under the arm or behind the back ⇒ Fig. 61.
- The lap portion of the safety belt must always run as low as possible over the pelvis and never over the abdomen.
- Always wear the safety belt flat and snug against the body. Pull on the safety belt to tighten if necessary.

**Expectant mothers** must always wear the lap portion of the safety belt as low as possible across the pelvis and below the rounding of the abdomen – throughout the pregnancy. The safety belt must lie flat against the body to avoid pressure against the abdomen ⇒ Fig. 62.

#### Adjusting safety belt height

The safety belt position can be adjusted using the following features:

- Safety belt height adjusters for the front seats.
- Front seats with height adjustment.

## ⚠ WARNING

Improperly positioned safety belts can cause serious personal injury in an accident or a sudden braking maneuver.

- Always make sure that all vehicle occupants are correctly restrained and stay in a correct seating position whenever the vehicle is being used.
- Safety belts offer optimum protection only when the seat backrest is upright and belts are correctly positioned on the body.
- A loose fitting safety belt can cause serious injuries by shifting its position on your body from the strong bones to more vulnerable soft tissue and cause serious injury.
- The shoulder belt portion of the safety belt must be positioned over the middle of the occupant's shoulder and never across the neck or throat.
- The safety belt must lie flat and snug on the occupant's upper body.
- Never wear the shoulder part of the safety belt under your arm or otherwise out of position.
- The lap portion of the safety belt must be positioned as low as possible across the pelvis and never over the abdomen. Make sure the belt lies flat and snug against the pelvis. Pull on the safety belt to tighten if necessary.
- Expectant mothers must always wear the lap portion of the safety belt as low as possible across the pelvis and below the rounding of the abdomen.
- Do not twist the belt when attaching it. If you cannot untwist a twisted safety belt, wear it anyway, but make sure the twisted part is not in contact with your body. Have the problem corrected right away by an authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility.
- Never hold the safety belt away from your body with your hand.
- Never wear belts over rigid or breakable objects, such as eye glasses, pens or keys.
- Never modify the position of the belt using comfort clips, loops or similar devices.



If you have a physical impairment or condition that prevents you from sitting properly on the seat with the safety belt properly fastened, special modifications to your vehicle may be necessary.

- Contact your authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility or call the Volkswagen Customer CARE Center at 1-800-822-8987 for information about possible modifications to your vehicle.

## Safety belt height adjusters

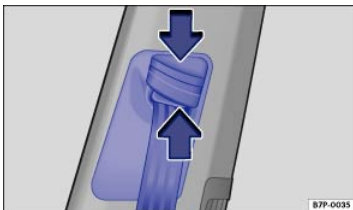


Fig. 63 Next to the front seats: Manual safety belt height adjuster.



Read and follow the introductory information and safety information first ⇒ [Introduction to the subject](#)

Safety belt height adjusters for the front seats can be used to adjust the height of the shoulder portion of the safety belt so that it is positioned correctly:

- Press and hold the safety belt attachment ⇒ [Fig. 63](#).
- Pinch the safety belt attachment together as indicated by the arrows and slide the seat belt attachment to the desired position ⇒ [Fig. 63](#).
- Slide the belt and upper attachment up or down until the safety belt is positioned over the center of the shoulder ⇒ [Safety belt position](#).
- Release the safety belt attachment.
- Pull on the safety belt to make sure that the upper attachment is securely locked in place.

## ⚠ WARNING

Never adjust the height of the safety belt while driving.

## Safety belt extender

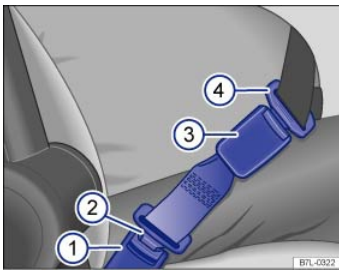


Fig. 64 A safety belt extender properly attached to the factory-installed safety belt.

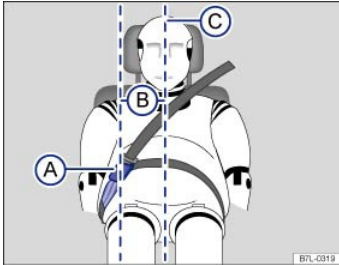


Fig. 65 Positioning of the safety belt extender.

📖 Read and follow the introductory information and safety information first ⇒ [Introduction to the subject](#)

If a safety belt is too short to correctly fit you or one of your passengers, even when the safety belt is pulled out all the way, you can use a safety belt extender.

Never use the safety belt extender for any other purpose – including the attachment of a child restraint.

The extender adds about 8 inches (20 cm) to the safety belt. Always remove the safety belt extender when it is not needed and stow it safely. Contact an authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility if you believe you may need an extender.

**Key to ⇒ Fig. 64 :**

- ① Vehicle safety belt buckle.
- ② Buckle tongue on the safety belt extender.
- ③ Safety belt buckle on the safety belt extender.
- ④ Safety belt buckle tongue on the factory-installed safety belt.

**Key to ⇒ Fig. 65 :**

- Ⓐ Safety belt buckle on the safety belt extender.
- Ⓑ Distance between the safety belt buckle on the safety belt extender and the centerline of the person using the safety belt extender. **The distance must be more than 6 inches (15 cm)!**
- Ⓒ Centerline of the person using the safety belt extender.

Using a safety belt extender

- Adjust both the seat and the head restraint properly ⇒ [Adjusting the seating position](#).
- Insert the buckle tongue on the safety belt extender ⇒ [Fig. 64②](#) into the vehicle belt buckle for the seat where the safety belt extender is being used ⇒ [Fig. 64①](#).
- Fastening or unfastening the vehicle safety belt ⇒ [Fastening and unfastening safety belts](#).
- Pull the belt to make sure that the tongues are securely locked in the buckles.
- Make sure that the safety belt is positioned properly ⇒ [Safety belt position](#).

Properly using safety belt extenders:

- Use a safety belt extender only when the factory installed safety belt is too short when worn properly by a person in proper seating position.
- Only use 1 safety belt extender per seat and vehicle safety belt.
- Always remove the safety belt extender when it is not needed.
- Never leave a safety belt extender attached to the vehicle safety belt buckle when the extender is not needed and being used with the safety belt. Otherwise, the airbag control module will receive an incorrect signal from the safety belt buckle and this will prevent the airbag from working properly for a person who is not using the safety belt. Leaving the extender attached to the safety belt buckle when the front seat is occupied and the safety belt is not being used will signal the airbag control unit during a collision that the front passenger seat is occupied and that the safety belt is being used. The electronic control unit for the airbag system will then receive incorrect information that will cause the safety belt pretensioner to deploy unnecessarily and the front passenger airbag to deploy later in collisions that would normally trigger the front airbag earlier in the collision to help protect an unrestrained front seat occupant. The airbag will not be able to provide enough protection for an occupant not wearing a safety belt.

- Only use the safety belt extender approved by Volkswagen for your vehicle.

## ⚠ WARNING

Improper use or positioning of a safety belt extender increases the risk of serious personal injury and death.

- A driver or passenger who is not properly restrained can be seriously injured by striking the interior of the passenger compartment or by the safety belt itself, which can be displaced from stronger parts of the body into sensitive areas like the abdomen.
- Safety belt extenders offer optimum protection only when they are properly used.
- Only use the extender when the belt is not long enough to be worn low and snug and the person is in the correct seating position. Remove and stow extender safely when not needed.
- Always make sure the safety belt tongue of the safety belt extender is securely inserted into the buckle for the seating position that belongs to the seat where the safety belt extender is being used. Attaching the safety belt to the wrong buckle will reduce safety belt effectiveness and can cause serious personal injury.
- Never use the safety belt extender if you can properly attach the safety belt without it. Using a safety belt extender when not needed can increase the risk of injury, especially in a collision.
- Never use a safety belt extender if the distance (B) between the front edge of the safety belt extender buckle (A) and the centerline of the person using the safety belt extender ⇒ *Fig. 65* is less than 6 inches (15 cm).
- Never leave a safety belt extender attached to the vehicle safety belt buckle when the extender is not needed and being used with the safety belt. Otherwise, the airbag control module will receive an incorrect signal from the safety belt buckle and this will prevent the airbag from working properly for a person who is not using the safety belt.
- Never use more than 1 extender with a safety belt. Using more than 1 extender can change the way the safety belt passes over the body and can cause serious injury.
- Never use the safety belt extender to secure a child restraint.
- Never use a safety belt extender on your Volkswagen that you got from another automobile manufacturer or from an automotive parts store.
- Never use the safety belt extender you got for your vehicle for any other vehicle, regardless of make, model, or model year.

## ⓘ NOTE

- Leaving the extender attached to the safety belt buckle when the front seat is occupied and the safety belt is not being used will signal to the airbag control unit that the front passenger seat is occupied and that the safety belt is being used. The electronic control unit for the airbag system will then receive incorrect information that will
  - **cause the safety belt pretensioner to deploy unnecessarily in collisions.**
  - **cause the front passenger airbag to deploy later in collisions in which the front airbag would otherwise be triggered earlier to help protect an unrestrained front seat passenger.**
- A pretensioner that has deployed cannot be repaired. The entire safety belt must be replaced.

## ⓘ NOTE

If the safety belt extender is left attached to the safety belt buckle, the safety belt warning system will sense that the safety belt for that seat is being used. The warning light will not come on and the warning chime will not sound even though the seat is occupied and the safety belt is not being used.

## Safety belt retractor, pretensioner, load limiter

📖 Read and follow the introductory information and safety information first ⇒ [Introduction to the subject](#)

The safety belts in the vehicle are part of the vehicle's safety concept ⇒ [Safety equipment](#) and consist of the following important features:

### Automatic safety belt retractors

Every safety belt is equipped with an automatic belt retractor on the shoulder belt. As long as the safety belt is pulled out slowly, the shoulder belt will extend to let you move freely under normal driving conditions. The automatic safety belt retractor locks the belt when the belt is pulled out fast, during hard braking and in a collision. The belt may also lock when you drive up or down a steep hill or through a sharp curve.

### Safety belt pretensioner

The safety belts on the front seats and the rear outboard seats have a pretensioner that helps take the slack out of the safety belt and tighten it when the pretensioner is activated.

The pretensioners are activated by the electronic control unit for the airbag system in front, side, and rear collisions. By tightening the safety belt, the pretensioner helps to reduce the occupant's forward movement. The belt pretensioner works together with the airbag system; its function is monitored by the airbag system indicator light. The belt pretensioner will not deploy in a rollover if the side airbags are not activated.

A fine dust may be released upon activation. This is normal and is not caused by a fire in the vehicle.

### Safety belt load limiter

All safety belts for outboard seating positions also have load limiters to help reduce the forces applied to the human body in a crash.



Heed all safety regulations if the vehicle or individual components of the system have to be scrapped. Your authorized Volkswagen dealer and authorized Volkswagen Service Facility are familiar with these regulations ⇒ *Service and disposal of belt pretensioners*.

## Service and disposal of belt pretensioners

Read and follow the introductory information and safety information first ⇒ *Introduction to the subject*

The pretensioners are part of the safety belts installed in your vehicle. Installing, removing, servicing, or repairing safety belt pretensioners can damage the safety belt system and prevent it from working correctly in a collision. The pretensioners themselves may then also not work in the event of an accident, or not work properly.

There are some important things you have to know to make sure that the effectiveness of the system will not be impaired and that discarded components do not cause injury or pollute the environment. Undeployed safety belt pretensioners and airbag modules contain explosive materials that can cause serious injuries to the general public and to people who work at dealerships and workshops, scrap yards, and recycling facilities. For this reason, the systems must be properly handled when they or the vehicles they are installed in are scrapped.

Undeployed safety belt pretensioners and airbag modules can also pollute the environment. Never abandon vehicles or vehicle parts. If your vehicle must be scrapped, please make sure that it is done safely, responsibly, and in compliance with all applicable environmental regulations. Take it to a licensed facility that has the knowledge and experience to properly dispose of the vehicle and its safety belt system. Your authorized Volkswagen dealer and authorized Volkswagen Service Facility are familiar with these regulations.

### WARNING

Improper handling, care, servicing, and repair procedures can increase the risk of personal injury and death by preventing a belt pretensioner from activating when needed or by causing it to activate unexpectedly.

- The pretensioner can be activated only once. If a pretensioner has been activated, the safety belt must be replaced.
- Safety belt systems including the pretensioners cannot be repaired. Special procedures are required to remove, install, and dispose of this system.
- Never repair, adjust, or change pretensioners or any other part of the safety belt system yourself. We strongly recommend that you have any work on the safety belt system performed by an authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility. They have the necessary technical information, training, and special equipment ⇒ *Parts, accessories, repairs and modifications*.

### WARNING

Undeployed safety belt pretensioners and airbag modules contain explosive materials that can cause serious personal injuries if they are not properly handled when they or the vehicles they are installed in are scrapped.

- Never abandon vehicles or vehicle parts.
- Always scrap vehicles and vehicle parts, especially those containing undeployed airbag modules and undeployed safety belt pretensioners, at a licensed facility that has the knowledge and experience to properly dispose of the vehicle and its safety belt and airbag systems.



Undeployed airbag modules and safety belt pretensioners are classified as **Perchlorate Material**. Special handling may apply – See <http://www.dtsc.ca.gov/hazardouswaste/perchlorate>. Obey all applicable legal requirements regarding handling and disposal of the vehicle or parts of its restraint system, including airbag modules and safety belts with pretensioners. Authorized Volkswagen dealers and authorized Volkswagen Service Facilities are familiar with the requirements, and we recommend that you have them perform this service for you.

## Airbag system

### Introduction to the subject

In this chapter you will find information on the following subjects:

⇒ *Advanced Airbag System, infants, child restraints and children on the front seat*

⇒ *Monitoring the Advanced Airbag System*

⇒ *PASSENGER AIR BAG light*

⇒ *Airbags and how they work*

⇒ *The dangers of using child restraints on the front seat*

⇒ *Front airbags*

⇒ *Advanced Airbag System components*

⇒ *How to tell if the front passenger front airbag is on or off*

⇒ *Side airbags*

⇒ *Side Curtain Protection® airbags*

Your vehicle is equipped with a front airbag for the driver and front seat passenger. The front airbags can provide additional protection for the chest and head of the driver and the front seat passenger when seats, safety belts, head restraints and, for the driver, the steering wheel, are properly used and have been properly adjusted. Airbags are only supplemental restraints. They are not a substitute for safety belts that must be worn even though the front seating positions are equipped with front airbags.

 **WARNING**

Never rely on airbags alone for protection.

- Even when they deploy, airbags provide only supplemental protection.
- Airbags work most effectively when used with properly worn safety belts ⇒ *Safety belts*.
- The driver must always make sure that every person in the vehicle is properly seated on a seat of his or her own, properly fastens the safety belts belonging to that seat before the vehicle starts to move, and keeps the belts properly fastened while riding in the vehicle. This applies even when just driving around town. Therefore, always wear your safety belts and make sure that everybody in your vehicle is properly restrained.

 **WARNING**

Sitting too close to the steering wheel or instrument panel will decrease the effectiveness of the airbags and will increase the risk of personal injury in a collision.

- Never sit closer than 10 inches (25 cm) to the steering wheel or instrument panel.
- If you cannot sit upright more than 10 inches (25 cm) from the steering wheel and with your back against the backrest, investigate whether adaptive equipment may be available to help you reach the pedals and increase your seating distance from the steering wheel.
- If you are unrestrained, leaning forward, sitting sideways or out of position in any way, your risk of injury is much higher.
- You will also receive serious injuries and could even be killed if you are up against the airbag or too close to it when it inflates.
- To reduce the risk of injury when an airbag inflates, always wear safety belts properly. See Safety belts ⇒ *Safety belts*.
- An infant in a rearward-facing child seat installed on the front passenger seat will be seriously injured and can be killed if the front airbag inflates.
- Always make certain that children age 12 or younger always ride in the rear seat. If children are not properly restrained, they may be severely injured or killed when an airbag inflates.
- Never let children ride unrestrained or improperly restrained in the vehicle.
- Never put your feet on the instrument panel or on the seat. Always keep both feet on the floor in front of the seat to help prevent serious injuries to the head, legs and hips if the airbag inflates.

 **WARNING**

Objects between you and the airbag will increase the risk of injury in a crash by interfering with the way the airbag unfolds or by being pushed into you as the airbag inflates.

- Never hold things in your hands or on your lap when the vehicle is in use.
- Never transport items on or in the area of the front passenger seat. Objects could move into the area of the front airbags during braking or other sudden maneuvers and fly dangerously through the passenger compartment when an airbag inflates.
- Always make sure that the airbag deployment zones are clear at all times. Never let anything, or object, a pet, or a person, including an infant or small child, be in the space between any vehicle occupant and any airbag at any time.

 **WARNING**

An airbag works only once. Airbags that have deployed in a crash must be replaced.

- Deployed airbags and the related system parts must be replaced immediately with new parts approved by Volkswagen for the vehicle model and model year.
- Have repairs and vehicle modifications performed by an authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility. Authorized Volkswagen dealers and authorized Volkswagen Service Facilities have the required tools, diagnostic equipment, repair information, and trained personnel to properly replace any airbag in your vehicle and assure system effectiveness in a crash.
- Never permit salvaged or recycled airbags to be installed in your vehicle.



- Never modify any components of the airbag system.

#### WARNING

Fine dust released when airbags deploy can irritate the skin, eyes, and mucous membranes as well as cause breathing problems for people who suffer from asthma or other respiratory conditions.


- The fine dust can irritate the skin and eye mucous membranes and cause breathing problems for people who suffer from asthma or other breathing conditions. To reduce the risk of breathing problems, those with asthma or other respiratory conditions should get fresh air right away by getting out of the vehicle or opening windows or doors.
- If you are in a collision in which airbags deploy, wash your hands and face with mild soap and water before eating.
- Be careful not to get the dust into your eyes or into any cuts, scratches, or open wounds.
- If the residue should get into your eyes, flush them with water.

#### WARNING

Using solvents or other improper cleaning products on surfaces where airbags are located can change the way airbags deploy in a crash.

- Products containing solvents will change the properties of the plastics and may cause plastic parts to break and fly around when the airbag deploys in a crash, causing injury.
- Never use solvents or cleaners on the steering wheel horn pad or on the instrument panel because they can damage the airbag cover or change the stiffness or strength of the material so that the airbag cannot deploy and protect properly.
- When cleaning the horn pad and instrument panel, use only a soft, dry cloth or a cloth moistened with plain water.

## Advanced Airbag System, infants, child restraints and children on the front seat

 Read and follow the introductory information and safety information first ⇒ [Introduction to the subject](#)

Be sure to read the important information and the WARNINGS for important details about children and Advanced Airbags ⇒ [Child safety and child restraints](#) .

The Advanced Airbag System in your vehicle has been certified to comply with the requirements of the United States Federal Motor Vehicle Safety Standard (FMVSS) 208, as well as Canada Motor Vehicle Safety Standard (CMVSS) 208 as applicable at the time your vehicle was manufactured. According to requirements, the front Advanced Airbag System on the passenger side has been certified for suppression for infants of about 12 months old and younger and for low risk deployment for children aged 3 to 6 years old (as defined in the standard).


Even though your vehicle is equipped with an Advanced Airbag System, make certain that all children, especially 12 years and younger, always ride on the back seat properly restrained for their age and size. The airbag on the front passenger side makes the front seat a potentially dangerous place for a child to ride. The front seat is not the safest place for a child in a forward-facing child seat. It is a very dangerous place for an infant or a child in a rearward-facing seat.


#### DANGER!

The front seat of any vehicle can be a dangerous place for a child - even with an Advanced Airbag System.

- If the front airbag inflates, a child or infant who
  - is unrestrained on the front seat,
  - is in an improperly installed forward-facing child restraint on the front seat, or
  - is in any rearward-facing child restraint on the front seat will be seriously injured and can be killed.
- Even though your vehicle is equipped with an Advanced Airbag System, make certain that all children, especially 12 years and younger, always ride on the back seat properly restrained for their age and size.
- Always properly install rearward-facing child seats or infant carriers and forward-facing child seats on the rear seat - even with an Advanced Airbag System.

## Monitoring the Advanced Airbag System

 Read and follow the introductory information and safety information first ⇒ [Introduction to the subject](#)

The Advanced Airbag System (including the electronic control unit, sensors and system wiring) is monitored continuously to make sure that it is functioning properly whenever the ignition is on. Every time you turn on the ignition, the airbag system indicator light  will come on for a few seconds (function check).

The airbag system must be inspected if the airbag indicator light 

- does not come on when the ignition is switched on,

- does not go out a few seconds after you have switched on the ignition,
- goes out and then comes on again or blinks after the ignition is switched on,
- or if it comes on or blinks while driving.

If an airbag system malfunction is detected, the airbag indicator light comes on and stays on to warn the driver of the problem. It also reminds you to have the airbag system checked immediately by an authorized Volkswagen dealer or an authorized Volkswagen Service Facility. If a malfunction occurs that turns the front airbag on the passenger side off, the PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF light ⇒ PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF light will come on and stay on when the ignition is on.

**⚠ WARNING**

An airbag system and safety belt pretensioner that are not working properly cannot provide supplemental protection in a frontal crash.

- If the airbag indicator light comes on, it means that there may be something wrong with the Advanced Airbag System. It is possible that the airbag will inflate when it is not supposed to, or will not inflate when it should.
- Have the airbag system inspected immediately by your authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility.

**PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF light**



Fig. 66 PASSENGER AIR BAG light on the instrument panel.

Read and follow the introductory information and safety information first ⇒ [Introduction to the subject](#)

On	Location	Possible cause	Solution
	Instrument cluster	Airbag and safety belt pretensioner system malfunction.	See your authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility immediately to have the system checked.
	Instrument panel	Airbag system malfunction.	See your authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility immediately to have the system checked.
	Instrument panel	Front passenger airbag turned off by Advanced Airbag System.	Check if the airbag must stay turned off.

The PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF light will come on and stay on to tell you when the front Advanced Airbag System on the passenger side has been turned off by the electronic control unit.

If the bulb for the PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF light burns out, the airbag monitoring indicator light ⇒ [Monitoring the Advanced Airbag System](#) will come on and signal a malfunction in the Advanced Airbag System. Although the burned-out bulb will not change the way the front airbag on the passenger side works, it will no longer be possible to use the PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF light to make sure that the airbag on/off status is correct for the occupant on the front passenger seat. Have the airbag system inspected immediately by your authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility.

The PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF light will blink for about 5 seconds when:

- the ignition is switched on **and**
- the weight-sensing mat, which switches the front seat passenger's front Advanced Airbag System on and off, detects a change in the status of the front passenger seat.

After the PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF light stops blinking, always make sure that the airbag status (on or off) as shown by the PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF light is proper for the size, age, and weight of the occupant on the front passenger seat. Always make sure that the safety belt for the front passenger seat is properly fastened.

The PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF light will show the status of the front seat passenger's front Advanced Airbag System a few seconds after the ignition has been switched on and the airbag monitoring light goes off. The PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF light:

- will stay on if the front passenger seat is not occupied,
- will stay on if the combined weight of an infant up to about 1 year of age and one of the rearward-facing or forward-facing child restraints listed in Federal Motor Vehicle Safety Standard 208 with which the Advanced Airbag System in your vehicle was certified, is detected by the weight-sensing mat in the front passenger seat. For a listing of the child restraints that were used to certify your vehicle's compliance with the US Safety Standard ⇒ [Child restraints and the Advanced Airbag System](#).
- will go out if the front passenger seat is occupied by an adult as registered by the weight-sensing mat.

The PASSENGER AIR BAG **OFF** light must come on and stay on if the ignition is on and...

- a car bed has been installed on the front passenger seat, or
- a rearward-facing child restraint has been installed on the front passenger seat, or
- a forward-facing child restraint has been installed on the front passenger seat,
- and if the weight registered on the front passenger seat is equal to or less than the combined weight of a typical 1-year-old infant and one of the rearward-facing or forward-facing child restraints listed in Federal Motor Vehicle Safety Standard 208 with which the Advanced Airbag System in your vehicle was certified.

If the front passenger seat is not occupied, the front passenger airbag will not deploy, and the PASSENGER AIR BAG **OFF** light will stay on.

Never install a rearward-facing child restraint on the front passenger seat. The safest places for a child in any kind of child restraint is the seating positions on the rear seat ⇒ [Advanced Airbag System, infants, child restraints and children on the front seat](#) and ⇒ [Child safety and child restraints](#) .

If the PASSENGER AIR BAG **OFF** light comes on...

If the PASSENGER AIR BAG **OFF** light comes on when one of the conditions listed above is met, be sure to check the light regularly to make certain that the PASSENGER AIR BAG **OFF** light stays on continuously whenever the ignition is on. If the PASSENGER AIR BAG **OFF** light does not come on and stay on all the time, stop as soon as it is safe to do so **AND**

- reactivate the airbag system by turning the ignition off for more than 4 seconds and then turning it on again;
- remove and reinstall the child restraint. Make sure that the child restraint is properly installed and that the safety belt for the front passenger seat has been correctly routed around or through the child restraint as described in the child restraint manufacturer's instructions;
- make sure that the switchable locking feature on the safety belt for the front passenger seat has been activated and that the safety belt has been pulled tight;
- make sure that items that may increase the weight of the child and child seat are not being transported on the front passenger seat;
- make sure that the safety belt tension sensor is not blocked. Shake the safety belt buckle on the front passenger seat back and forth;
- make sure that nothing can interfere with the safety belt buckles and that they are not obstructed;
- if a strap is being used to tie the child seat to the front passenger seat, make sure that it is not so tight that it causes the weight-sensing mat to measure more weight than is actually on the seat.

If the PASSENGER AIR BAG **OFF** light still does not come on...

If the PASSENGER AIR BAG **OFF** light still does not come on and does not stay on continuously (when the ignition is switched on), take the child restraint off the front passenger seat and install it properly at one of the rear seat positions. Have the airbag system inspected immediately by your authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility.

The PASSENGER AIR BAG **OFF** light should NOT come on...

The PASSENGER AIR BAG **OFF** light should NOT come on when the ignition is on and an adult is sitting in a proper seating position on the front passenger seat. If the PASSENGER AIR BAG **OFF** light comes on and stays on under these circumstances, make sure that:

- the adult on the front passenger seat is properly seated on the center of the seat cushion with his or her back up against the backrest and the backrest is not reclined;
- the adult is not taking weight off the seat by holding onto the passenger assist handle above the front passenger door or supporting their weight on the armrest or holding onto the assist handle on the instrument panel;
- the safety belt is being properly worn and that there is not a lot of slack in the safety belt webbing;
- accessory seat covers or cushions or other things that may cause an incorrect reading or impression on the weight-sensing mat under the upholstery of the seat have been taken off the front passenger seat;
- the optional safety belt extender has not been left in the safety belt latch for the front passenger seat.

#### WARNING

If the status of the Advanced Airbag System has changed while the vehicle is moving, the PASSENGER AIR BAG **OFF** light blinks for about 5 seconds to catch the driver's attention. If this happens, always stop as soon as it is safe to do so and check the steps described above.

#### WARNING

If the PASSENGER AIR BAG **OFF** light does not go off when an adult who is not very small is sitting on the front passenger seat after taking the steps

described above, make sure the adult is properly seated and restrained at one of the rear seating positions.

- Have the airbag system inspected by your authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility before transporting anyone on the front passenger seat.



If the weight-sensing mat in the front passenger seat detects an empty seat, the front airbag on the passenger side will be turned off, and the PASSENGER AIR BAG **OFF** light will stay on.



If the optional safety belt extender is left in the buckle for the front safety belt, or the front passenger safety belt itself is buckled and the front passenger seat is not occupied, the PASSENGER AIR BAG **OFF** light will come on.

## Airbags and how they work



Read and follow the introductory information and safety information first ⇒ [Introduction to the subject](#)

### Front airbags and how they work

Airbags are only supplemental restraints. They are not a substitute for safety belts that must be worn even though the front seating positions are equipped with front airbags. The front airbags can provide additional protection for the chest and head of the driver and the front seat passenger when seats, safety belts, head restraints and, for the driver, the steering wheel, are properly used and have been properly adjusted.

When the airbag system deploys in a collision, a gas generator fills the airbags that break open the padded covers on the steering wheel and the instrument panel. The front airbags inflate between the steering wheel and the driver and between the instrument panel and the front passenger.

Front airbags in combination with properly worn safety belts slow down and limit the occupant's forward movement. Together they help to prevent the driver and front seat passenger from hitting parts of the vehicle interior, thereby reducing the forces acting on the occupants during a crash. In this way, they help to reduce the risk of injury to the head and upper body during a crash. Airbags do not provide protection for the arms and lower body parts. It is important to remember that the supplemental airbag system is designed to reduce the likelihood of serious injuries. However, it is possible that a deployed airbag may cause other injuries such as swelling, bruising, friction burns, and abrasions.

Airbags inflate in the blink of an eye, so fast that many people don't even realize that the airbags have deployed. The airbags will deflate immediately after deployment so that the front occupants can see through the windshield again without interruption.

Airbags inflate with a great deal of force. Airbags can cause serious injuries when they inflate and hit those who are sitting too close, are out of position, or are not properly restrained. By keeping room between your body and the steering wheel and the front of the passenger compartment, the airbag can inflate fully and completely and provide supplemental protection during certain frontal collisions ⇒ [Safety belts](#).

Make sure that nothing is in the way of the airbags when they deploy. For example, things on your lap or on the seat could be pushed into your body or fly dangerously through the passenger compartment when the airbag inflates and cause serious personal injury.

The areas outlined in red (dotted lines) ⇒ [Fig. 67](#), ⇒ [Fig. 68](#), ⇒ [Fig. 69](#), ⇒ [Fig. 70](#) indicate the airbag deployment zone. Never place or attach accessories or other objects (such as cup holders, telephone brackets, note pads, large, heavy or bulky objects) on the doors, on the windshield, over or near the area marked in red (dotted lines).

### Physical impairments and airbags

If you have a physical impairment or condition that prevents you from sitting properly on the driver seat with the safety belt properly fastened and reaching the pedals, special modifications to your vehicle may be necessary. The safety belt and airbag can only provide optimum protection if you are seated correctly and can reach the pedals.

Contact your authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility or call the Volkswagen Customer CARE Center at 1-800-822-8987 for information about possible modifications to your vehicle.

### When airbags deploy



Deployment of the front airbags and the activation of the safety belt pretensioners depend on the deceleration measured by the crash sensors and registered by the electronic control unit. Crash severity depends on speed and deceleration as well as the mass and stiffness of the vehicle or object involved in the crash.

The front airbags will not inflate in side or rear collisions, in rollovers or if the ignition is switched off. The front airbags will not inflate in all frontal collisions. The triggering of the airbag system depends on the vehicle deceleration rate caused by the collision and registered by the electronic control unit. If this rate is below the reference value programmed into the control unit, the airbags will not be triggered, even though the vehicle may be badly damaged as a result of the collision. Vehicle damage, repair costs or even the lack of vehicle damage is not necessarily an indication of whether an airbag should inflate or not. It is not possible to define a range of vehicle speeds that will cover every possible kind and angle of impact that will always trigger the airbags, since the circumstances will vary considerably between one collision and another. Important factors include, for example, the nature (hard or soft) of the object that the vehicle hits, the angle of impact, vehicle speed, etc.

When an airbag deploys, fine dust is released. This is normal and is not caused by a fire in the vehicle. This dust is made up mostly of a powder used to lubricate the airbags as they deploy. This dust could irritate skin and eyes and cause breathing problems for people with asthma or other respiratory conditions.



**Always remember:** Front airbags only supplement the 3 point safety belts in some frontal collisions only when the vehicle deceleration is high enough to deploy the airbags. Airbags only deploy once, and only in certain kinds of collisions. The safety belts are always there to offer protection in situations in which airbags should not deploy or when they have already deployed for example, when your vehicle strikes or is struck by another vehicle after an initial collision.

This is just one of the reasons why an airbag is a supplementary restraint and is not a substitute for a safety belt. The airbag system works most effectively when used with the safety belts. Therefore, always buckle up properly and wear your safety belts.

The airbags are part of the overall passive vehicle safety system. The airbag system works most efficiently when used with properly worn safety belts and a proper seating position   ⇒ *Adjusting the seating position*.



### Safety equipment

Your safety and the safety of your passengers shouldn't be left to chance. Advances in technology have made a number of features available to help reduce the risk of injury in a collision. The following are just a few of the safety features for your Volkswagen:

- Sophisticated safety belts for all seating positions.
- Safety belt pretensioners for driver and front passenger.
- Safety belt load limiters for the front and rear outboard seats.
- Safety belt height adjusters for the front seats.
- Safety belt warning light.
- Advanced Airbag System for driver and front passenger.
- Side airbags for driver and front seat passenger.
- Side Curtain Protection® airbags.
- Airbag indicator light .
- PASSENGER AIR BAG **OFF** , light.
- Electronic control unit and associated sensors.
- Head restraints with height adjustment optimized for rear-end collisions.
- Adjustable steering column.
- LATCH/UCRA lower universal and top tether anchorages for child safety seats at the rear outboard seating positions.

These individual safety features can work together as a system to help protect you and your passengers in a wide range of collisions. These features can't work as a system if they are not always correctly adjusted and properly used!

### How the Advanced Airbag System components work together...

On the passenger side, regardless of safety belt use, the front passenger front airbag will be turned off if the weight on the front passenger seat is less than the amount programmed in the electronic control unit. The front airbag on the passenger side will also be turned off if the combined weight of an infant of about one year of age in one of the child seats that was used to certify the Advanced Airbag System under Federal Motor Vehicle Safety Standard 208 has been registered on the seat. The PASSENGER AIR BAG **OFF** , light comes on and stays on to tell you when the front Advanced Airbag System on the passenger side has been turned off ⇒ *PASSENGER AIR BAG **OFF** , light*.

### WARNING

Never rely on airbags alone for protection.

- Even when they deploy, airbags provide only supplemental protection.
- Airbags work most effectively when used with properly worn safety belts ⇒ *Safety belts*.
- The driver must always make sure that every person in the vehicle is properly seated on a seat of his or her own, properly fastens the safety belts belonging to that seat before the vehicle starts to move, and keeps the belts properly fastened while riding in the vehicle. This applies even when just driving around town. Therefore, always wear your safety belts and make sure that everybody in your vehicle is properly restrained.

### WARNING


Sitting too close to the steering wheel or instrument panel will decrease the effectiveness of the airbags and will increase the risk of personal injury in a collision.

- Never sit less than 10 inches (25 cm) from the steering wheel or instrument panel.
- If you cannot sit upright more than 10 inches (25 cm) from the steering wheel, investigate whether adaptive equipment may be available to help you reach the pedals and increase your seating distance from the steering wheel.
- If you are unrestrained, leaning forward, sitting sideways, or out of position in any way, your risk of injury is much higher.
- You can also be seriously injured and even be killed if you are sitting too close to the airbag when it inflates.
- To reduce the risk of injury when an airbag inflates, always wear safety belts properly.

- An infant in a rearward-facing child seat installed on the front passenger seat will be seriously injured and can be killed if the front airbag inflates – even with an Advanced Airbag System.
- Always make certain that children age 12 or younger always ride in the rear seat. If children are not properly restrained, they may be severely injured or killed when the airbag inflates.
- Never let children ride unrestrained or improperly restrained in the vehicle.
- Adjust the front seats properly.
- Never ride with the backrest reclined.
- Always sit as far as possible from the steering wheel or the instrument panel.
- Always sit upright with your back against the backrest of your seat.
- Never put your feet on the instrument panel or on the seat.
- Always keep both feet on the floor in front of the seat to help prevent serious injuries to the head, legs and hips if the airbag inflates.

**⚠ WARNING**


Objects between you and the airbag will increase the risk of injury in a crash by interfering with the way the airbag unfolds and/or by being pushed into you as the airbag inflates.



- Never hold things in your hands or on your lap when the vehicle is in use.
- Never place accessories or other objects (such as a cup holders, telephone brackets, or things that are large, heavy, or bulky) on the doors or attach them to the doors; never place them over or near the area marked AIRBAG on the steering wheel, instrument panel, or seat backrests or between those areas and someone in the vehicle. These objects could cause injury in a crash, especially if an airbags inflates.
- Never recline the front passenger seat to transport objects. Items can also move into the deployment area of the side airbags or the front airbag during braking or in a sudden maneuver. Objects near the airbags can fly dangerously through the passenger compartment and cause injury, particularly when the seat is reclined and the airbags inflate.
- Never place or transport objects on the front passenger seat. Always make sure that there is nothing on the front passenger seat that will cause the weight-sensing mat in the seat to signal the airbag system that the seat is occupied by a person when it in fact not, or to signal that the person on the seat is heavier than he or she actually is. The weight of such objects can cause the passenger side airbag to be turned on when it should be off, or can cause the airbag to work in a way that is different from the way it would have worked without objects on the seat.
- Always make sure that nothing is on the front passenger seat when the backrest is folded forward. Even light objects could be pushed into the seat cushion and cause the weight-sensing mat in the seat to register enough weight to turn the airbag on.
- Always make sure that the status signaled by the PASSENGER AIR BAG **OFF**  light is correct for the way that the front passenger seat is being used.

**⚠ WARNING**

- The fine dust created when airbags deploy can cause breathing problems for people with asthma or other breathing conditions.
- To reduce the risk of breathing problems, those with asthma or other respiratory conditions should get fresh air right away by getting out of the vehicle or opening windows or doors.
- If you are in a collision in which airbags deploy, wash your hands and face with mild soap and water before eating.
- Be careful not to get the dust into your eyes, or into any cuts, scratches or open wounds.
- If the residue should get into your eyes, flush them with water.

**⚠ WARNING**


To reduce the risk of serious injury, make sure that the PASSENGER AIR BAG **OFF**  light is on and stays on whenever a child restraint is installed on the front passenger seat and the ignition is switched on.

- If the PASSENGER AIR BAG **OFF**  light does not stay on, take the child restraint off the front passenger seat and install it properly at one of the rear seating positions.
- Always make sure that the child restraint is correctly registered by the weight-sensing mat.
- Have the airbag system inspected immediately by your authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility if the PASSENGER AIR BAG **OFF**  light does not come on and stay on whenever a child restraint is installed on the front passenger seat and the ignition is switched on.

**⚠ WARNING**

- Airbags that have deployed in a crash must be replaced.
- Use only original equipment airbags approved by Volkswagen and installed by a trained technician who has the necessary tools and diagnostic equipment to properly replace any airbag on your vehicle and assure system effectiveness in a crash.
- Never permit salvaged or recycled airbags to be installed in your vehicle.

## The dangers of using child restraints on the front seat

 Read and follow the introductory information and safety information first ⇒ [Introduction to the subject](#)

The airbag on the front passenger side makes the front seat a potentially dangerous place for a child to ride, even if the vehicle is equipped with the Advanced Airbag System. The front seat is a very dangerous place for an infant or small child in a rearward-facing child restraint. The front seat is also not the safest place for a child in a forward-facing child restraint. All children, especially 12 years and younger, must always ride on the back seat and be properly restrained for their age and size.

During a frontal collision, a child seat or infant carrier on the front seat could be hit and knocked out of position by the inflating front passenger airbag. The airbag could significantly reduce the effectiveness of the child restraint and even seriously injure a child while deploying.

Because of this danger, and because children are generally better protected on the rear seat when properly restrained for their age and size, we strongly urge you to always make sure that children ride on the rear seat ⇒ [Child safety and child restraints](#) and ⇒ [Advanced Airbag System, infants, child restraints and children on the front seat](#).


### DANGER!

A front seat passenger, especially an infant or small child, will be seriously injured and can even be killed if he or she is sitting too close to an airbag when it deploys – even an Advanced Airbag.

- All vehicle occupants and especially children must be restrained properly whenever riding in a vehicle. An unrestrained or improperly restrained child could be injured by striking the interior or by being ejected from the vehicle during a sudden maneuver or impact. An unrestrained or improperly restrained child is also at greater risk of injury or death through contact with an inflating airbag.
- Accident statistics show that children are safer on the rear seat than on the front seat.
- A suitable child restraint properly installed and used at one of the rear seating positions provides the highest degree of protection for infants and small children in most accident situations.
- Although the Advanced Airbag System has been designed to switch off when an infant or small child is on the front passenger seat in a child seat that was used during the certification process for the Advanced Airbag System, no one can guarantee with absolute certainty that the airbag will never deploy under these particular conditions in all conceivable situations for the duration of your vehicle's use.
- According to US federal standards, an Advanced Airbag System can deploy with the low risk option for 3- to 6-year-old children under the U.S. Federal Standard if a child who is heavier than the combined weight of a typical 1-year-old infant restraint in one of the forward facing or rearward-facing seats with which your vehicle was certified is on the front passenger seat and the other conditions for airbag deployment are met.
- For their own safety, all children, especially 12 years and younger, must always ride on the back seat properly restrained for their age and size.
- When installing a child restraint, always carefully follow the manufacturer's instructions.

### DANGER!

Children on the front seat of any vehicle, even one with Advanced Airbags, can be seriously injured or even killed when an airbag inflates.



- A child in a rearward-facing child seat installed on the front passenger seat will be seriously injured and can be killed if the front airbag inflates.
- The inflating airbag will hit the child seat or infant carrier with great force and will smash the child seat and the child against the seat backrest, center armrest, door, or roof.
- Always install rearward-facing child seats on the rear seat.
- Although the Advanced Airbag System in your vehicle is designed to turn off the front airbag when a rearward-facing child restraint has been installed on the front passenger seat, nobody can absolutely guarantee that deployment is impossible in all conceivable situations that may happen during the useful life of your vehicle.
- If you have, in exceptional circumstances, nevertheless decided to install a rearward-facing child seat on the front passenger seat and the PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF  light does not come on and stay on whenever the ignition is on, immediately install the rearward-facing seat in a rear seating position and have the airbag system inspected immediately by an authorized Volkswagen dealer or an authorized Volkswagen Service Facility.

### WARNING

Forward-facing child restraints installed on the front passenger seat may interfere with the deployment of the airbag and cause serious personal injury to the child.

- If exceptional circumstances require the use of a forward-facing child restraint on the front passenger seat, the following special precautions must be taken for the safety and well-being of the child:
  - Always make sure that the forward-facing child restraint has been designed and certified for use on a front passenger seat with a frontal airbag and a side airbag.
  - Always carefully follow the manufacturer's instructions provided for the child seat or infant carrier.
  - Never install a child safety seat without a properly attached top tether strap if the child restraint manufacturer's instructions require the top tether strap

to be used.

- Never put the forward-facing child restraint up against or very near the instrument panel.
- Always set the safety belt upper anchorages to the adjustment position that permits proper installation in accordance with the child restraint manufacturer's instructions.
- Always move the front passenger seat to the highest position in the up and down adjustment range and move it back to the rearmost position in the seat's fore and aft adjustment range, as far away from the airbag as possible, before installing the forward-facing child restraint.
- Always make sure that the safety belt upper anchorage is behind the child restraint and not next to or in front of the child restraint so that the safety belt will be properly positioned.
- Always make sure that nothing is in the way that prevents the front passenger seat from being moved all the way back to the rearmost position in its fore and aft adjustment range.
- Always make sure that the backrest is in the upright position.
- Never place additional items on the seat that can increase the total weight registered by the weight-sensing mat and can cause injury in a crash.
- Always make sure that the PASSENGER AIR BAG **OFF**  light comes on and stays on all the time whenever the ignition is switched on.
- If the PASSENGER AIR BAG **OFF**  light does not come on and stay on, immediately install the forward-facing child seat in a seating position on the rear seat and have the airbag system inspected by an authorized Volkswagen dealer or an authorized Volkswagen Service Facility.
- Always buckle the child seat firmly in place even when no child is sitting in it. A loose child seat can fly around the vehicle during a sudden stop or in a collision.
- Always read and heed all WARNINGS whenever using a child restraint in the vehicle: Safety belts ⇒ [Safety belts](#), Airbag system ⇒ [Airbag system](#), Child safety and child restraints ⇒ [Child safety and child restraints](#).

## Front airbags

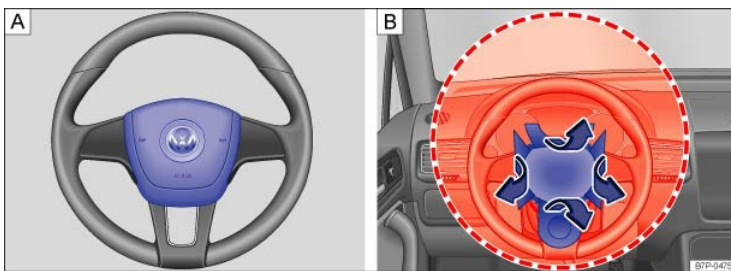


Fig. 67 Location and deployment zone of the driver front airbag.

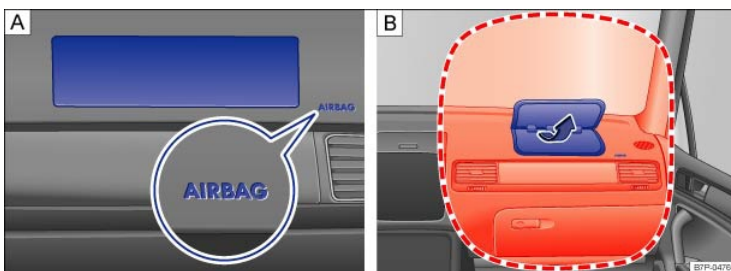



Fig. 68 Location and deployment zone of the front passenger front airbag.

 Read and follow the introductory information and safety information first ⇒ [Introduction to the subject](#)

The vehicle is equipped with an Advanced Airbag System in compliance with the United States Federal Motor Vehicle Safety Standard (FMVSS) 208 or the Canada Motor Vehicle Safety Standard (CMVSS) 208 applicable at the time your vehicle was manufactured. The airbag for the driver is in the steering wheel hub ⇒ [Fig. 67A](#) and the airbag for the front passenger is in the instrument panel ⇒ [Fig. 68A](#). The general location of the airbags is marked AIRBAG.

The safety belts for the front seating positions and the rear outboard seating positions have safety belt pretensioners which help take up slack in the belts. The airbag control unit also activates the belt pretensioners.

The safety belts for the front seating positions and the rear outboard seating positions also have belt load limiters to reduce the forces acting on a body during an accident.


The areas marked in red (dotted lines) ⇒ [Fig. 67B](#) and ⇒ [Fig. 68B](#) indicate the airbag deployment zone. Never place or attach accessories or other objects (such as cup holders, telephone brackets, note pads, navigation systems, large, heavy or bulky objects) on the doors, on the windshield, over or near the area marked in red (dotted lines).



Front airbags will not deploy:


- if the ignition is switched off when a crash occurs,
- in side collisions,
- in rear-end collisions,
- rollovers,
- when the crash deceleration measured by the airbag system is less than the minimum threshold needed for airbag deployment as registered by the electronic control unit.

The front passenger front airbag will also not deploy:

- when the front passenger seat is not occupied,
- when the weight on the front passenger seat as sensed by the Advanced Airbag System indicates that the passenger side front airbag must be switched off by the electronic control unit (the PASSENGER AIR BAG  light → *Airbags and how they work* comes on and stays on).


 **DANGER!**

Children on the front seat of any vehicle, even one with Advanced Airbags, can be seriously injured or even killed when an airbag inflates.

- A child in a rearward-facing child seat installed on the front passenger seat will be seriously injured and can be killed if the front airbag inflates.
- The inflating airbag will hit the child seat or infant carrier with great force and will smash the child seat and the child against the seat backrest, center armrest, door, or roof.
- Always install rearward-facing child seats on the rear seat.
- Although the Advanced Airbag System in your vehicle is designed to turn off the front airbag when a rearward-facing child restraint has been installed on the front passenger seat, nobody can absolutely guarantee that deployment is impossible in all conceivable situations that may happen during the useful life of your vehicle.
- If you have, in exceptional circumstances, decided to install a rearward-facing child seat on the front passenger seat and the PASSENGER AIR BAG **OFF**  light does not come on and stay on whenever the ignition is on, immediately install the rearward-facing seat in a rear seating position and have the airbag system inspected immediately by an authorized Volkswagen dealer or an authorized Volkswagen Service Facility.

 **DANGER!**


A front seat passenger, especially an infant or small child, will be seriously injured and can even be killed if too close to the airbag when it deploys – even an Advanced Airbag.

- All vehicle occupants and especially children must be restrained properly whenever riding in a vehicle. An unrestrained or improperly restrained child could be injured by striking the interior or by being ejected from the vehicle during a sudden maneuver or impact. An unrestrained or improperly restrained child is also at greater risk of injury or death through contact with an inflating airbag.
- Accident statistics show that children are safer on the rear seat than on the front seat.
- A suitable child restraint properly installed and used at one of the rear seating positions provides the highest degree of protection for infants and small children in most accident situations.
- An Advanced Airbag System can deploy with the low risk option for 3- to 6-year-old children when a child who is heavier than the combined weight of a typical 1-year-old child plus child seat is secured on the passenger seat in a forward-facing or rear-facing child restraint that was used to certify your vehicle, and when the other conditions for airbag deployment are met.
- For their own safety, all children, especially those 12 years and younger, must always sit on the back seat, properly restrained for their age and size.
- When installing a child restraint, always carefully follow the manufacturer's instructions.
- If the airbag indicator light goes on while driving, have the system inspected immediately by your authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility. A lit indicator light means the airbags may not work properly if activated in a crash.
- Always make sure that the status signaled by the PASSENGER AIR BAG **OFF**  light is correct for the way that the front passenger seat is being used.

 **WARNING**

Objects between you and the airbag will increase the risk of injury in a crash by interfering with the way the airbag unfolds and/or by being pushed into you as the airbag inflates.

- Never hold things in your hands or on your lap when the vehicle is in use.
- Never place accessories or other objects (such as cup holders, telephone brackets, notepads, navigation systems, or things that are large, heavy, or bulky) on the doors or attach them to the doors; never place them over or near the area marked AIRBAG on the steering wheel, instrument panel or seat backrests or between those areas and someone in the vehicle → *Fig. 68*. Such objects could cause serious injury in a collision, especially if an airbag inflates.
- Never attach accessories to the windshield above the passenger front airbag, such as GPS navigation units or music players. Such objects could cause serious injury in a collision, especially if an airbag inflates.

- Never recline the front passenger seat to transport objects. Items can also move into the deployment area of the side airbags or the front airbag during braking or in a sudden maneuver. Objects near the airbags can fly dangerously through the passenger compartment and cause injury, particularly when the seat is reclined and the airbags inflate.
- Always make sure that there is nothing on the front passenger seat that will cause the weight-sensing mat in the seat to sense that the seat is occupied by a person when it is not, or to signal that it is occupied by someone who is heavier than the person actually sitting on the seat. The weight of an object could cause the passenger front airbag to be turned on when it should be off, or could cause the airbag to work in a way that is different from the way it would have worked without the added weight.
- Always make sure that nothing is on the front passenger seat when the backrest is folded forward. Even light objects could be pushed into the seat cushion and cause the weight-sensing mat in the seat to register enough weight to turn the airbag on.
- Always make sure that the status signaled by the PASSENGER AIR BAG **OFF**  light is correct for the way that the front passenger seat is being used.

#### WARNING

Holding the steering wheel the wrong way can cause serious injuries to the hands, arms, and head if the driver's airbag inflates.


- Always hold the steering wheel with both hands on the outside of the steering wheel rim at the 9:00 o'clock and 3:00 o'clock positions to help reduce the risk of personal injury if the driver's airbag inflates.
- Never hold the steering wheel at the 12 o'clock position or with your hands anywhere inside the steering wheel or on the steering wheel hub. Holding the steering wheel the wrong way increases the risk of severe injury to the arms, hands, and head if the driver airbag deploys.

#### WARNING


- The fine dust created when airbags deploy can cause breathing problems for people with asthma or other breathing conditions.
- To reduce the risk of breathing problems, those with asthma or other respiratory conditions should get fresh air right away by getting out of the vehicle or opening windows or doors.
- If you are in a collision in which airbags deploy, wash your hands and face with mild soap and water before eating.
- Be careful not to get the dust into your eyes, or into any cuts, scratches or open wounds.
- If the residue should get into your eyes, flush them with water.


#### WARNING

- Airbags that have deployed in a crash must be replaced.
- Use only original equipment airbags approved by Volkswagen and installed by a trained technician who has the necessary tools and diagnostic equipment to properly replace any airbag on your vehicle and assure system effectiveness in a crash.
- Never permit salvaged or recycled airbags to be installed in your vehicle.

 Undeployed airbag modules and safety belt pretensioners are classified as **Perchlorate Material**. Special handling may apply – See <http://www.dtsc.ca.gov/hazardouswaste/perchlorate>. Obey all applicable legal requirements regarding handling and disposal of the vehicle or parts of its restraint system, including airbag modules and safety belts with pretensioners. Authorized Volkswagen dealers and authorized Volkswagen Service Facilities are familiar with the requirements, and we recommend that you have them perform this service for you.

## Advanced Airbag System components

 Read and follow the introductory information and safety information first ⇒  [Introduction to the subject](#)

The front passenger seat in your vehicle has a lot of very important parts of the Advanced Airbag System in it ⇒ [How the Advanced Airbag System components work together...](#) These parts include the weight-sensing mat, sensors, wiring, brackets, and more. The control unit monitors the system on the front passenger seat when the ignition is switched on and turns the airbag indicator light on when a malfunction in the one of the system components is detected ⇒ [PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF](#)  [light](#). Because the front passenger seat contains important parts of the Advanced Airbag System, you must take care to prevent it from being damaged. Damage to the seat may prevent the Advanced Airbag System for the front passenger seat from doing its job in a crash.

The front Advanced Airbag System also includes:

- Crash sensors in the front of the vehicle that measure vehicle acceleration/deceleration to provide information to the Advanced Airbag System about the severity of the crash.
- An electronic control unit, with integrated crash sensors for front and side impacts. The control unit decides whether to fire just front airbags based on the information received from the crash sensors. The control unit also decides whether the safety belt pretensioners should be activated.
- An Advanced Airbag with gas generator for the driver inside the steering wheel hub.
- An Advanced Airbag and gas generator inside the instrument panel for the front passenger.
- A weight-sensing mat under upholstery padding of the front passenger seat cushion that measures the total weight on the seat. The information registered is sent continuously to the electronic control unit to regulate deployment of the front Advanced Airbag on the passenger side.

- An airbag system monitoring system and indicator light in the instrument cluster ⇒ **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light.
- The **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light in the center of the instrument panel that tells you when the front Advanced Airbag System on the passenger side has been turned off ⇒ **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light.
- A sensor inside the safety belt buckle for the front seat passenger to measure the tension on the safety belt. This tension on the safety belt and the weight registered by the weight sensing-mat help the control unit decide whether the passenger front airbag should be turned off or not.
- A switch in the safety belt buckle for the driver and for the front seat passenger that senses whether that safety belt is latched or not and transmits this information to the electronic control unit.

#### WARNING

An airbag system and safety belt pretensioner that are not working properly cannot provide supplemental protection in a frontal crash.

- If the airbag indicator light comes on, it means that there may be something wrong with the airbag system. It is possible that the airbag will inflate when it is not supposed to, or will not inflate when it should.
- Have the airbag system inspected immediately by your authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility.
- Use only original equipment airbags approved by Volkswagen. Have them installed by a trained technician who has the necessary tools and diagnostic equipment to properly replace any airbag in your vehicle and assure system effectiveness in a crash.
- Never permit salvaged or recycled airbags to be installed in your vehicle.

#### WARNING


Damage to the front passenger seat can prevent the front airbag from working properly.

- Improper repair or disassembly of the front passenger and driver seat can prevent the Advanced Airbag System from working properly.
- Repairs to the front passenger seat should be performed by an authorized Volkswagen dealer or an authorized Volkswagen Service Facility.
- Never remove the front passenger seat or driver seat from the vehicle.
- Never remove the upholstery from the front passenger seat.
- Never disassemble or take parts off the seat or disconnect wires from it.
- Never carry sharp objects in your pockets or put them on the seat. If the weight-sensing mat in the passenger seat is punctured it cannot work properly.
- Never carry things on your lap or carry objects on the front passenger seat. Things on the passenger seat can increase the weight registered by the weight-sensing mat, so that incorrect information is provided to the airbag control unit. These things can also cause serious personal injury if the airbag inflates.
- Never store items under the front seats. Parts of the Advanced Airbag System under the front seats could be damaged, preventing them and the airbag system from working properly.
- Never put seat covers or replacement upholstery on the front seats that have not been approved by Volkswagen for your specific vehicle.
- Seat covers can prevent the Advanced Airbag System from recognizing child restraints or occupants on the passenger seat and prevent the side airbag in the seat backrest from deploying properly.
- Never use cushions, pillows, blankets, or similar items on the front passenger seat. The additional layers prevent the weight-sensing mat in the seat from accurately registering the child safety seat and/or the person on the seat and thus prevent the Advanced Airbag System from working properly.
- If you must use a child restraint on the front passenger seat and the child restraint manufacturer's instructions require the use of a towel, foam cushion or something similar to properly position the child restraint, make certain that the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light comes on and stays on whenever the child restraint is installed on the front passenger seat.
- If the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light does not come on and stay on, immediately install the child the restraint at a seating position on the rear seat and have the airbag system inspected by your authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility.

#### NOTE

- To help prevent damage to electrical and other parts in the seat, do not kneel on the front seats or apply concentrated pressure to a small area of the seat or backrest.
- Never install leather upholstery on a vehicle that originally had cloth upholstery. Never install cloth upholstery on a vehicle that originally had leather upholstery. The weight-sensing mat for the Advanced Airbag system will not work properly if different upholstery is installed on the passenger seat than the upholstery originally installed on the vehicle when it was originally manufactured.

## How to tell if the front passenger front airbag is on or off


 Read and follow the introductory information and safety information first ⇒  [Introduction to the subject](#)

### Passenger front airbag


Regardless of safety belt use, the airbag in front of the front passenger seat will be switched off if the weight on the seat is less than the value programmed in the electronic control unit.

The front airbag on the passenger side of the front seat will also be turned off if the weight registered on the seat (by the weight-sensing mat) is less than or equal to the combined weight of:

- a typical 1-year-old infant and
- any of the child restraints listed in Federal Motor Vehicle Safety Standard 208 for which the Advanced Airbag System in your vehicle is certified.

For a listing of the child restraints that were used to certify your vehicle's compliance with U.S. Safety Standard 208 ⇒ [Child restraints and the Advanced Airbag System](#). The **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF**  light comes on and stays on to tell you when the front Advanced Airbag on the passenger side has been turned off.

#### Passenger front airbag active




- Switch on the ignition.
- The weight-sensing mat registers the weight on the front passenger seat. If that weight is above the reference value, the front passenger front airbag will be switched on by the Advanced Airbag control unit.
- If the ignition is on, and the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF**  light in the instrument panel does not come on the passenger front airbag is generally active. If the OFF light has burned out (see below), you will be unable to tell whether the passenger front airbag is active or not.





#### Using child restraints on the front passenger seat

The airbag on the front passenger side makes the front seat a potentially dangerous place for a child to ride. Because of this danger, and because children are generally better protected on the rear seat when properly restrained for their age and size, we strongly advise that you always place children on the rear seat ⇒ [Child safety and child restraints](#). For a list of the child restraints used to certify compliance of the Advanced Airbag System in your vehicle with the suppression requirements of FMVSS 208, See ⇒ [Child restraints and the Advanced Airbag System](#).

For more information, See Child safety and child restraints ⇒ [Child safety and child restraints](#); note ⇒ .

#### How do I know when the passenger front airbag has been turned off by the control unit?

The **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF**  light in the instrument panel will come on and stay on to tell you when the front Advanced Airbag on the passenger side has been turned off by the electronic control unit. Unless the yellow light (**OFF** ) comes on and stays on, the passenger front airbag is still active ⇒ [PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF](#)  light.



**For safety reasons, you must never** use a child restraint system on the front passenger seat **unless** the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF**  comes on and stays on perhaps in combination with the  indicator light in the instrument cluster. If the passenger front airbag deployed in an accident, it would severely injure and possibly kill the child in the restraint system. If the bulb for the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF**  light burns out, the airbag indicator light will come on and signal a malfunction of the Advanced Airbag System. Although the burned-out bulb will not change the way the front airbag on the passenger side works, it will no longer be possible to use the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF**  light to make sure that the airbag on/off status is correct for the occupant on the front passenger seat. Have the airbag system inspected immediately by your authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility.


### DANGER!

A front seat passenger, especially an infant or small child, will be seriously injured and can even be killed if sitting too close to the airbag when it deploys.

- All vehicle occupants and especially children must be restrained properly whenever riding in a vehicle. An unrestrained or improperly restrained child could be injured by striking the interior or by being ejected from the vehicle during a sudden maneuver or impact. An unrestrained or improperly restrained child is also at greater risk of injury or death through contact with an inflating airbag.
- A child in a rearward-facing child seat installed on the front passenger seat will be seriously injured and can be killed if the front airbag inflates.
- The inflating airbag will hit the child seat or infant carrier with great force and will smash the child seat and the child against the seat backrest, center armrest, door, or roof.
- Accident statistics show that children are safer on the rear seat than on the front seat.
- A suitable child restraint properly installed and used at one of the rear seating positions provides the highest degree of protection for infants and small children in most accident situations.
- For their own safety, all children, especially 12 years and younger, must always ride on the back seat properly restrained for their age and size.
- When installing a child restraint, always carefully follow the manufacturer's instructions.


### WARNING

To reduce the risk of serious injury, make sure that the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF**  light comes on and stays on whenever a child restraint is installed on the front passenger seat and the ignition is switched on. Take the child restraint off the front passenger seat and install it properly at one of the seating positions on the rear seat if the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF**  light does not stay on. Have the airbag system inspected immediately by an authorized Volkswagen dealer or an authorized Volkswagen Service Facility.

- If you must use a child restraint on the front passenger seat and the child restraint manufacturer's instructions require the use of a towel, foam cushion or something similar to properly position the child restraint, make certain that the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF**  light comes on and stays on whenever the child restraint is installed on the front passenger seat.
- Otherwise, install the child restraint system on the rear seat!

## ⚠ WARNING

Changes in weight on the passenger seat while driving can switch the passenger front airbag on or off so that it does not deploy when it should or deploys when it should not, resulting in an increased risk of serious personal injury.

- Do not carry anything on your lap or transport things on the passenger seat. Things on the passenger seat can increase the weight registered by the weight-sensing mat, sending the wrong information to the airbag control unit. These things can also cause serious personal injury if the airbag inflates.
- Never reduce weight on the passenger seat by holding the handle above the passenger door, supporting body weight on the armrest, or by holding the grab handle.
- Always make sure that a child restraints have been correctly registered by the weight-sensing mat. If the status of the Advanced Airbag System changes while the vehicle is moving, the PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF  light blinks for about 5 seconds to catch the driver's attention. If this happens, always stop as soon as it is safe to do so and check to make sure that the airbag on/off status is correct for the passenger riding on the front passenger seat.

## Side airbags

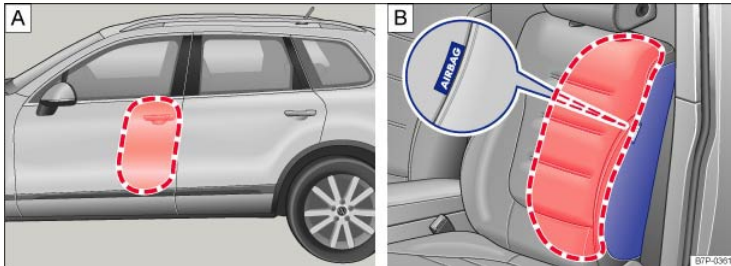





Fig. 69 A: On the driver side: Deployment zone of the side airbags. B: In the padding on the outboard side of the front seat backrests: Location and deployment zone of the side airbags.

 Read and follow the introductory information and safety information first ⇒  [Introduction to the subject](#)

The side airbags are in the backrest padding of the driver and passenger seats ⇒ Fig. 69B. The general location is shown by the word AIRBAG. The area marked red (dotted lines) ⇒ Fig. 69 indicates the deployment zone of the side airbags.

In a side collision, the side airbag in the seat backrest can deploy and help reduce the risk of injury to the driver or the front seat passenger.

The side airbags installed for the front seating positions have been designed and certified to help reduce the risk of injury that can be caused by airbags when they inflate, particularly when the occupant sitting next to it is not seated properly.


The side airbag for the front passenger seat can be used with properly installed child restraints. Always read and heed all important information and warnings whenever using a child restraint in a vehicle: Always read and heed all important information and WARNINGS whenever using a child restraint in the vehicle: ⇒ [Safety belts](#), ⇒ [Airbag system](#), ⇒ [Child safety and child restraints](#), ⇒ .

The side airbag system includes:

- An electronic control module and side impact sensors.
- Side airbags in the front seat backrests.
- An airbag system monitoring indicator light in the instrument cluster ⇒ [PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF !\[\]\(4695f05050b0d393767d0512587d4e50\_img.jpg\) light](#).

When a side airbag deploys in a collision, a gas generator fills the side airbag between the vehicle occupant and the door. The side airbag system supplements the safety belts and can help to reduce the risk of injury to the occupants' upper torso.

In order to help provide this additional protection, the side airbag must inflate within the blink of an eye at very high speed and with great force. The supplemental side airbag could injure you if your seating position is not proper or upright or if items are in the area where the supplemental side airbag inflates. This applies especially to children ⇒ [Child safety and child restraints](#).

The airbag system is monitored electronically to make sure it is working properly at all times. Every time you turn on the ignition, the airbag system indicator light  will come on for a few seconds (function-check).

The airbag system is not a substitute for your safety belt. Rather, it is part of the overall occupant restraint system in your vehicle ⇒ [Adjusting the seating position](#) ⇒ [Safety belts](#).

It is important to remember that the side airbag system is designed to help reduce the likelihood of serious injury. However, it is important to remember that a deploying airbag may also cause other injuries, such as swelling, bruising, friction burns, and abrasions. Also remember that side airbags will deploy only once and only in certain kinds of accidents. After the side airbag inflates, the system must be replaced. Your safety belts are always there to offer protection in those accident in which side airbags are not supposed to deploy or when they have already deployed.

The side airbag system will not inflate:

- if the ignition is switched off when a crash occurs,
- in side collisions when the acceleration measured by the sensor is too low,

- in front-end collisions,
- in rear-end collisions,
- in rollovers, unless the deployment threshold for deployment stored in the control unit is met.

In some types of accidents the front airbags, Side Curtain Protection® airbags and side airbags may be triggered together.

#### ⚠ WARNING

An inflating side airbag can cause serious or even fatal injury. Improperly wearing safety belts and improper seating positions increase the risk of serious personal injury and death whenever a vehicle is being used.

- To help reduce the risk of injury when the supplemental side airbag inflates,
  - Always sit in an upright position and do not lean against the area where the side airbag is located.
  - Never let a child or anyone else rest their head against the side trim panel in the area where the side airbag inflates.
  - Always make sure that safety belts are worn correctly.
  - Never let anyone sitting in the front seat put their hand out of the window.
- Objects between you and the airbag can increase the risk of injury in a collision by interfering with the way the airbag unfolds or by being pushed into you as the airbag inflates.
- Never place or attach accessories or other objects (such as cup holders, telephone brackets, or even large, bulky objects) on the doors or over or near the area marked AIRBAG on the seat backrests ⇒ Fig. 69B.
- Accessories or other objects can fly dangerously through the passenger compartment and cause serious injury if the supplemental side airbag inflates.
- Never position or hold any objects or pets in the area where an airbag inflates or allow any children or other passengers to ride in that space.
- Never use the built-in coat hooks for anything but lightweight clothing. Never leave any heavy or sharp-edged objects in the pockets. Such objects may interfere with side airbag deployment and cause serious personal injury in a collision.

#### ⚠ WARNING

Improper use, repair, or disassembly of the driver and front passenger seats can prevent side airbags from working properly and result in severe injuries.

- Always make sure that the side airbag can inflate without interference:
  - Never install seat covers or replacement upholstery over the front seat backrest that have not been specifically approved by Volkswagen. Otherwise, the side airbag may not be able to deploy properly.
  - Never put seat cushions, blankets, or other coverings over the areas where the side airbags inflate.
  - Damage to the original seat covers or to the seam in the area of the side airbag module must always be repaired immediately by an authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility.
- Always prevent the side airbags from being damaged by heavy objects hitting the sides of the seat backrest or force being put on the seat backs, especially in the area where the side airbag module is located.
- The airbag system can only be triggered once. If the airbag has been triggered, the system must be replaced.
- Always have work involving the side airbag system, including removal, replacement, and installation of airbag components, or other repairs performed by an authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility. Otherwise, the airbag system may not work correctly.
- Never remove the front seats from the vehicle or modify parts of the front seats.
- Never attempt to modify any components of the airbag system in any way.
- If too much force is exerted on the seat backrest bolsters, the side airbags may deploy improperly, not at all or when they should not.

### Side Curtain Protection® airbags

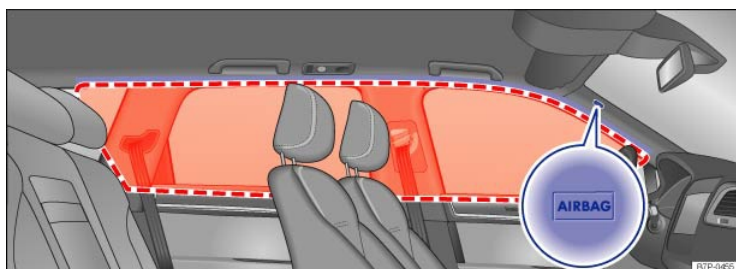


Fig. 70 On the left vehicle side: Installation location and deployment zone of the Side Curtain Protection® airbag.

📖 Read and follow the introductory information and safety information first ⇒ ⚠ *Introduction to the subject*

The Side Curtain Protection® airbags are in the header area on both sides of the vehicle ⇒ [Fig. 70](#). The general location is identified by the word AIRBAG. The red lines show the deployment zone of the Side Curtain Protection® airbags.

The Side Curtain Protection® airbag system includes:

- An electronic control module and side impact sensors.
- The Side Curtain Protection® airbags above the front and rear side windows.
- An airbag system monitoring indicator light in the instrument cluster ⇒ [PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF](#) light.

The Side Curtain Protection® airbags inflate downwards between the occupant and the side window on that side of the vehicle that is struck in certain side collision ⇒ [Fig. 70](#). The Side Curtain Protection® airbag system supplements the safety belts and can help to reduce the risk of injury for occupants' heads and upper torso on the side of the vehicle that is struck in a side collision.

In order to help provide this additional protection, the Side Curtain Protection® airbag must inflate within the blink of an eye at very high speed and with great force. The Side Curtain Protection® airbag could injure you if your seating position is not proper or upright or if items are located in the area where the supplemental Side Curtain Protection® airbag inflates. This applies especially to children ⇒ [Child safety and child restraints](#).

The airbag system is monitored electronically to make sure it is working properly at all times. Every time you turn on the ignition, the airbag system indicator light will come on for a few seconds (function check).

The airbag system is not a substitute for your safety belt. Rather, it is part of the overall occupant restraint system in your vehicle ⇒ [Adjusting the seating position](#) ⇒ [Safety belts](#).

It is important to remember that the Side Curtain Protection® airbag system is designed to help reduce the likelihood of serious injury. However, it is possible that a deployed Side Curtain Protection® airbag may cause other injuries such as swelling, bruising, friction burns and abrasions. Remember too, Side Curtain Protection® airbags will deploy only once and only in certain kinds of accidents. Side Curtain Protection® airbags that have deployed in a crash must be replaced. Your safety belts are always there to offer protection in those accidents in which Side Curtain Protection® airbags are not supposed to deploy or when they have already deployed.

The Side Curtain Protection® airbag will not inflate:

- if the ignition is switched off when a crash occurs.
- in side collisions when the acceleration measured by the sensor is too low.
- in front-end collisions,
- in rear-end collisions,
- in rollovers, unless the deployment threshold for deployment stored in the control unit is met.

In some types of accidents the front, Side Curtain Protection® and side airbags may be triggered together.

#### WARNING

An inflating Side Curtain Protection® airbag can cause serious or even fatal injury. Improperly wearing safety belts and improper seating positions increase the risk of serious personal injury and death whenever a vehicle is being used.

- A deploying airbag inflates within a fraction of a second with a lot of force and at very high speed.
- Always make sure that the Side Curtain Protection® airbag can inflate without interference.
- Always sit in proper seating position and wear safety belts while traveling so that the Side Curtain Protection® airbags can help provide protection.
- Never let occupants place any parts of their bodies in the area where the Side Curtain Protection® airbag inflates.
- Always keep the area where the Side Curtain Protection® airbag inflates clear. Never carry any objects or pets in the area between them and where the airbags inflate and never let children or other passengers ride in this area.
- Never use hangers to hang clothes on the hooks.
- Never use the built-in coat hooks for anything but lightweight clothing. Never leave any heavy or sharp-edged objects in the pockets that may interfere with airbag deployment and can cause personal injury in a collision.
- Only use factory-installed sunshades or, if shades installed after the vehicle leaves the factory, use only genuine Volkswagen sunshades.
- Never swing the sun visors over to the side windows if things such as pens, garage door openers, hands-free speakers, etc. are attached to the sun visors. They could come loose and cause serious injury if the Side Curtain Protection® airbag inflates.

#### WARNING

The airbag system can only be triggered once.

- If the airbag has been triggered, the system must be replaced by an authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility.
- Always have work involving the curtain airbag system, removal and installation of the airbag components, or other repairs performed by your authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility. Otherwise the airbag system may not work correctly.
- Never attempt to modify any components of the airbag system in any way.

- Never attach objects to the cover or in the deployment zone of a Side Curtain Protection ® airbag.
- Always make sure that the airbag deployment zones are clear at all times. Never let anything or object, a pet, or a person, including an infant or small child, be in the space between any vehicle occupant and any airbag.
- Do not attach any accessories to the doors.

## Child safety and child restraints

### Introduction to the subject

In this chapter you will find information on the following subjects:

⇒ *Child restraints – Overview*

⇒ *Child restraints and the Advanced Airbag System*

⇒ *Important safety instructions for using child restraints*

⇒ *Using a child restraint on the rear seat*

⇒ *Infant seats*

⇒ *Convertible child restraints*

⇒ *Booster seats and safety belts*

⇒ *Installing child restraints with a safety belt*

⇒ *Securing the child restraint with LATCH/UCRA lower universal anchorages*

⇒ *Securing a child restraint with the Top Tether strap*

⇒ *Sources of information about child restraints and their use*

The physical principles of what happens when your vehicle is in a collision or other accident also apply to children ⇒ *Safety belts*. But unlike adults and teenagers their muscles and bones are not fully developed. In many respects children are at greater risk of serious injury in accidents than are adults.

Because children's bodies are not fully developed, they must use restraint systems especially designed for their size, weight, and body structure. Many countries and all states of the United States and provinces of Canada have laws requiring the use of approved child restraint systems for infants and small children.

In a frontal crash at a speed of 20 - 35 mph (30 - 56 km/h), the forces acting on a 13-pound (6 kg) infant will be more than 20 times the weight of the child. This means the effective weight of the child would suddenly increase to more than 260 pounds (120 kg). Under these conditions, only an appropriate child restraint properly used can reduce the risk of serious injury. Child restraints, like adult safety belts, must be used properly to be effective. Used improperly, they can increase the risk of serious injury in an accident.

All children, especially those 12 years and younger, must always ride in the back seat properly restrained for their age and size. If you must install a child restraint on the front passenger seat in exceptional circumstances, be sure to read and heed the important information and warnings in the section of this Manual that begin on ⇒ *Child restraints and the Advanced Airbag System*. Infants and other children who are properly restrained in an appropriate child restraint that is for their size and age can benefit from the protection that supplemental side airbags provide in some kinds of crashes.

For more information, please see information provided by the:

- National Highway Traffic Safety Administration (NHTSA), currently at: <http://www.safercar.gov> (for the USA)
- Transport Canada Information Centre, currently at: <http://www.tc.gc.ca> (for Canada)

Consult the child restraint manufacturer's instructions to be sure the seat is right for your child's size ⇒ *Sources of information about child restraints and their use*. Please be sure to read and heed all of the important information and WARNINGS about child safety, Advanced Airbags, and the installation of child restraints in this Manual.

There is a lot you need to know about the Advanced Airbags in your vehicle and how they work when infants and children in child restraints are on the front passenger seat. Because of the large amount of important information, we cannot repeat it all here. We urge you to read the detailed information in this Manual about airbags and the Advanced Airbag System in your vehicle and the very important information about transporting children on the front passenger seat. Please be sure to heed the WARNINGS - they are extremely important for your safety and the safety of your passengers, especially infants and small children.

### DANGER!

Children on the front seat of any car, even with Advanced Airbags, can be seriously injured or even killed when an airbag inflates.

- A child in a rearward-facing child seat installed on the front passenger seat will be seriously injured and can be killed if the front airbag inflates.
- The inflating airbag will hit the child seat or infant carrier with great force and will smash the child seat and child against the backrest, center armrest, door



or roof.

- Always install rearward-facing child seats on the rear seat.
- If you have, in exceptional circumstances, nevertheless decided to install a rearward-facing child seat on the front passenger seat and the PASSENGER AIR BAG **OFF** light does not come on and stay on whenever the ignition is on, immediately install the rearward-facing child seat on the rear seat and have the airbag system inspected right away by your authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility.

#### WARNING

Accident statistics have shown that children are generally safer in the rear seat area than in the front seating position. Always restrain any child age 12 and under in the rear.

- All vehicle occupants and especially children must be restrained properly whenever riding in a vehicle. An unrestrained or improperly restrained child could be injured by striking the interior or by being ejected from the vehicle during a sudden maneuver or impact. An unrestrained or improperly restrained child is also at greater risk of injury or death through contact with an inflating airbag.
- A suitable child restraint properly installed and used at one of the rear seating positions provides the highest degree of protection for infants and small children in most accident situations.

#### WARNING


Forward-facing child seats installed on the front passenger seat may interfere with the deployment of the airbag and cause serious personal injury to the child.

- If exceptional circumstances require the use of a forward-facing child restraint on the front passenger's seat, the child's safety and well-being require the following special precautions to be taken:
  - Always make sure that the forward-facing seat has been designed and certified by its manufacturer for use on a front passenger seat with a front and side airbag.
  - Always carefully follow the manufacturer's instructions provided with the child seat or infant carrier.
  - Never install a child restraint without a properly attached top tether strap if the child restraint manufacturer's instructions require the top tether strap to be used.
  - Never put the forward-facing child restraint up against or very near the instrument panel.
  - Always set the safety belt upper anchorage to the adjustment position that permits proper installation in accordance with the child restraint manufacturer's instructions.
  - Always move the front passenger seat to the highest position in the up and down adjustment range and move it back to the rearmost position in the seat's fore and aft adjustment range, as far away from the airbag as possible, before installing the forward-facing child restraint.
  - Always make sure that the safety belt upper anchorage is behind the child restraint and not next to or in front of the child restraint so that the safety belt will be properly positioned.
  - Always make sure that is in the way nothing that prevents the front passenger's seat from being moved to the rearmost position in its fore and aft adjustment range.
  - Always make sure that the backrest is in the upright position.
  - Never place objects on the seat that can increase the total weight registered by the weight-sensing mat and can also fly around in an accident and cause serious personal injury.
  - Always make sure that the PASSENGER AIR BAG **OFF** light comes on and stays on all the time whenever the ignition is switched on.
  - If the PASSENGER AIR BAG **OFF** light does not come on and stay on, immediately install the forward-facing child seat in a rear seating position and have the airbag system inspected by your authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility.
- Always buckle the child seat firmly in place even if a child is not sitting in it. A loose child seat can fly around during a sudden stop or in a collision.
- Always read and heed all WARNINGS whenever using a child restraint in a vehicle. See [⇒ Safety belts](#), [⇒ Airbag system](#) and [⇒ Child safety and child restraints](#).



Always replace child restraints that were installed in a vehicle during a crash. Damage to a child restraint that is not visible could cause it to fail in another collision situation.

## Child restraints – Overview

 Read and follow the introductory information and safety information first [⇒ Introduction to the subject](#)

Type of child restraint	Applies to:
Rear-facing child restraint	<p><b>Birth to 12 months:</b> Your child under age 1 should always ride in a rear-facing car seat. There are different types of rear-facing car seats:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>– Infant-only seats can only be used rear-facing.</li> <li>– Convertible and all-in-one car seats typically have higher height and weight limits for the rear-facing position, allowing you to keep your child rear-facing for a longer period of time.</li> </ul>
Rear-facing child restraint before moving to a forward-facing child restraint	<p><b>1–3 years:</b> Keep your child rear-facing as long as possible. It's the best way to keep him or her safe. Your child should remain in a rear-facing car seat until he or she reaches the top height or weight limit allowed by the car seat's manufacturer. Once your child outgrows the rear-facing car seat, your child is ready to travel in a forward-facing car seat with a harness and tether.</p>
Forward-facing child restraint	<p><b>4–7 years:</b> Keep your child in a forward-facing car seat with a harness and tether until he or she reaches the top height or weight limit allowed by the car seat's manufacturer. Once your child outgrows the forward-facing car seat with a harness, it's time to travel in a booster seat, but still in the back seat.</p>
Booster seat	<p><b>7–12 years:</b> Keep your child in a booster seat until he or she is big enough to fit in a seat belt properly. For a seat belt to fit properly, the lap belt must lie snugly across the upper thighs, not the stomach. The shoulder belt should lie snugly across the shoulder and chest and not cross the neck or face. Remember: your child should still ride in the back seat because it's safer there.</p>

Child restraints are designed to be secured to the vehicle with the lap belt portion of the 3 point lap and shoulder belt installed for the passenger seats. The outboard rear seating positions also have special fixtures for child restraints that can be used with LATCH/UCRA lower universal anchorages. Many child restraints use also require the use of a top tether strap. The top tether strap reduces the forward movement of the child restraint in a crash, to help reduce the risk of head injury if the child hits the vehicle interior.


**The LATCH/UCRA lower universal anchorage attachment points are on the lower part of the rear seat backrest for the 2 outboard seating positions. The circular markings on the rear seat backrests help you to locate the lower anchorages** ⇒ [Securing the child restraint with LATCH/UCRA lower universal anchorages](#) ⇒ [Fig. 76](#).

**The top tether anchorages are behind each of the rear seating positions** ⇒ [Securing a child restraint with the Top Tether strap](#) ⇒ [Fig. 79](#).

#### More information:

- Important safety instructions for using child restraints ⇒ [Important safety instructions for using child restraints](#)
- Using a child restraint on the rear seat ⇒ [Using a child restraint on the rear seat](#)
- Infant seats ⇒ [Infant seats](#)
- Convertible child restraints ⇒ [Convertible child restraints](#)
- Booster seats and safety belts ⇒ [Booster seats and safety belts](#)
- Installing child restraints with a safety belt ⇒ [Installing child restraints with a safety belt](#)

## Child restraints and the Advanced Airbag System

 Read and follow the introductory information and safety information first ⇒ [Introduction to the subject](#)

### Advanced Airbag System and children

Your vehicle is equipped with a front Advanced Airbag System that complies with United States Federal Motor Vehicle Safety Standard (FMVSS) 208 and with Canada Motor Vehicle Safety Standard (CMVSS) 208 as applicable at the time your vehicle was manufactured.

The Advanced Airbag System in your vehicle has been certified to meet the low risk requirements for 3 and 6 year-old children (as defined in the standard) on the passenger side and small adults on the driver side. Low risk deployment occurs in those crashes that take place at lower decelerations as defined in the electronic control unit. The low risk deployment criteria are intended to reduce the risk of injury through interaction with the airbag that can occur in these collisions, for example, by being too close to the steering wheel and instrument panel when the airbag inflates.

In addition, the system has been certified to comply with the suppression requirements of the Safety Standard, to turn off the front airbag automatically for infants up to 12 months who are restrained on the front passenger seat in child restraints that are listed in the Standard.

Even though your vehicle is equipped with an Advanced Airbag System, all children, especially those 12 years and younger, must always ride in the back seat properly restrained for their age and size. The airbag on the passenger side makes the front seat a potentially dangerous place for a child to ride. The front seat is not the safest place for a child in a forward-facing child seat. It is a very dangerous place for an infant or a larger child in a rearward-facing seat.

The Advanced Airbag System in your vehicle detects the presence of an infant or child in a child restraint on the front passenger seat using the weight-sensing mat in the seat cushion and the sensor in the safety belt buckle on the front passenger seat that measures the tension on the safety belt.

The weight-sensing mat measures total weight of the child and the child seat and a child blanket on the front passenger seat. The weight registered on the front passenger seat is related to the design of the child restraint and its footprint, i.e. the size and shape of the bottom of the child restraint as it sits on the seat. The weight of a child restraint and its footprint vary for different kinds of child restraints and for the different models of the same kind of child restraint offered by child restraint manufacturers.

The weight ranges for the individual types, makes and models of child restraints that the NHTSA has specified in the Safety Standard together with the weight ranges of typical infants and typical 1-year-old children have been stored in the control unit of the Advanced Airbag System. When a child restraint is being used on the front passenger seat with a typical 1-year-old infant, the Advanced Airbag System compares the weight measured by the weight-sensing mat with the information stored in the electronic control unit.

A sensor in the safety belt buckle for the front seat passenger measures the tension on the belt and sends this information to the electronic control module for the airbag system. The tension on the safety belt for the front passenger seat will be different for an adult, who is properly using the safety belt, as compared to the tension on the belt when it is used to attach a child restraint to the seat. The input from this sensor is then used with the weight to decide whether there is a child restraint with a typical 1-year-old child on the front passenger seat and whether or not the airbag must be turned off.

#### Child restraints and Advanced Airbags

No matter what child restraint that you use, make sure that it has been certified to meet U.S. Federal Motor Vehicle Safety Standard 213 (FMVSS 213) or, if you live in Canada, Canada Motor Vehicle Safety Standard 213 (CMVSS 213). Also make sure that the child restraint you are using has been certified by its manufacturer for use with an airbag. Always be sure that the child restraint is properly installed at one of the rear seating positions. If in exceptional circumstances you must use it on the front passenger seat, carefully read all of the information on child safety and Advanced Airbags and heed all of the applicable WARNINGS. Make certain that the child restraint is correctly recognized by the weight-sensing mat inside the front passenger seat, that the passenger front airbag is switched off and that the airbag status is always correctly signaled by the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light.

Many types and models of child restraints have been available over the years, new models are introduced regularly incorporating new and improved designs and older models are taken out of production. Child restraints are not standardized. Child restraints of the same type typically have different weights and sizes and different footprints, the size and shape of the bottom of the child restraint that sits on the seat, when they are installed on a vehicle seat. These differences make it virtually impossible to certify compliance with the requirements for Advanced Airbags with each and every child restraint that has ever been sold in the past or will be sold over the course of the useful life of your vehicle.

For this reason, the United States National Highway Traffic Safety Administration has published a list of specific types, makes and models of child restraints that must be used to certify compliance of the Advanced Airbag System in your vehicle with the suppression requirements of Federal Motor Vehicle Safety Standard 208. These child restraints are:

#### Subpart A. Car bed child restraints

Model	Manufactured on or after
Angel Guard Angel Ride AA2403FOF	September 25, 2007

#### Subpart B. Rear-facing child restraints

Model	Manufactured on or after
Century Smart Fit 4543	December 1, 1999
Cosco Arriva 22-013 PAW and base 22-999 WHO	September 25, 2007
Evenflo Discovery Adjust Right 212	December 1, 1999
Graco Infant 8457	December 1, 1999

Model	Manufactured on or after
Graco Snugride	September 25, 2007
Peg Perego Primo Viaggio SIP IMUN00US	September 25, 2007

#### Subpart C. Forward-facing and convertible child restraints

Model	Manufactured on or after
Britax Roundabout E9L02xx	September 25, 2007
Cosco Touriva 02519	December 1, 1999
Cosco Summit Deluxe High Back Booster 22-262	September 25, 2007
Cosco High Back Booster 22-209	September 25, 2007
Evenflo Tribute V 379xxxx	September 25, 2007
Evenflo Medallion 254	December 1, 1999
Evenflo Generations 352xxxx	September 25, 2007
Graco ComfortSport	September 25, 2007
Graco Toddler SafeSeat Step 2	September 25, 2007
Graco Platinum Cargo	September 25, 2007

#### **⚠ WARNING**


To reduce the risk of serious injury, always make sure that the PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF 9 light comes on and stays on whenever a child restraint is installed on the front passenger seat and the ignition is switched on.

- Take the child restraint off the front passenger seat and install it properly at one of the rear seat positions if the PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF 9 light does not come on and stay on.
- Have the airbag system inspected immediately by your authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility.

#### Important safety instructions for using child restraints



Fig. 71 Never let babies or older children ride in a vehicle while sitting on the lap of another passenger.

 Read and follow the introductory information and safety information first ⇒  *Introduction to the subject*

#### **Proper use of child seats greatly reduces the risk of injury in collision or other kind of accident!**

All children, especially those 12 years and younger, must always ride in the back seat properly restrained for their age and size.

Always use the right child seat for each child and always use it properly.

Always carefully follow the child seat manufacturer's instructions on how to route the safety belt properly through the child seat and how to restrain the child in the child seat.


When using the vehicle safety belt to install a child seat, you must first activate the switchable locking feature on the safety belt to help prevent the child seat from moving ⇒ [Installing child restraints with a safety belt](#) .


Push the child seat down with your full weight to get the safety belt really tight so that the seat cannot move forward or sideways more than about 1-inch (2.5 cm).

**Important additional information about installing a child restraint system on the front passenger seat:**

If you must install a child restraint on the front passenger seat in exceptional circumstances, be sure to read and heed the important information and warnings in the section of this manual that begins on ⇒ [Child restraints and the Advanced Airbag System](#) .

There are also additional adjustments that must be made in order to be able to properly install a child restraint on the front seat:

Set the safety belt upper anchorage for the front passenger seat so that the available safety belt is long enough to properly install the child restraint. Always follow the child restraint manufacturer's installation instructions ⇒  .

Move the front passenger seat to the highest position in the seat's up and down adjustment range and to rearmost position in the seat's fore and aft adjustment range, as far away from the airbag as possible before installing the forward-facing child restraint and make sure the backrest is in the upright position ⇒  .

If a strap is being used to tie the child seat to the front passenger seat, make sure that it is not so tight that it causes the weight-sensing mat to measure more weight than is actually on the seat.

When using the vehicle safety belt to install a child restraint, you must activate the switchable locking feature on the safety belt to help prevent the child restraint from moving ⇒ [Using a child restraint on the rear seat](#) . Always follow the child restraint manufacturer's instructions when installing a child restraint.

Do not use the switchable locking feature when using the vehicle's safety belt to restrain a child on a booster seat.

Always remember: Even though your vehicle is equipped with an Advanced Airbag System, all children, especially those 12 years and younger, must always ride in the back seat properly restrained for their age and size.

## DANGER!

Never install rearward-facing child seats or infant carriers on the front passenger seat.

- A child will be seriously injured and can be killed when the passenger airbag inflates – even with an Advanced Airbag System.
- The inflating airbag will hit the child seat or infant carrier with great force and will smash the child seat and child against the backrest, center armrest, door or roof.
- Always install rearward-facing child seats and infant carriers on the rear seat.



## WARNING

Not using a child seat, using the wrong child seat or improperly installing a child restraint increases the risk of serious personal injury and death in a collision or other emergency situation.


- All vehicle occupants and especially children must always be restrained properly whenever riding in a vehicle.
  - An unrestrained or improperly restrained child can be injured or killed by being thrown against the inside of the vehicle or by being ejected from it during a sudden maneuver or impact.
  - An unrestrained or improperly restrained child is at much greater risk of injury or death by being struck by an inflating airbag.
- Commercially available child seats are required to comply with U.S. Federal Motor Vehicle Safety Standard (FMVSS 213) (in Canada CMVSS 213).
  - When buying a child restraint, select one that fits your child and the vehicle.
  - Only use child restraint systems that fully contact the flat portion of the seat cushion. The child restraint must not tip or lean to either side. Volkswagen does not recommend using child seats that rest on legs or tubular frames. They do not provide adequate contact with the seat.
  - Always heed all legal requirements pertaining to the installation and use of child seats and carefully follow the instructions provided by the manufacturer of the seat you are using.
- For safety reasons, children under 4 ft. 9 in (57 inches / 1.45 meters) may not wear safety belts. Children must always be restrained by a proper child restraint system. Otherwise, they could sustain injuries to the abdomen and neck areas during sudden braking maneuvers or accidents.
- Never let more than one child occupy a child seat.
- Never let babies or older children ride in a vehicle while sitting on the lap of another passenger.
  - Holding a child in your arms is never a substitute for a child restraint system.
  - The strongest person could not hold the child with the forces that exist in an accident. The child will strike the interior of the vehicle and can also be struck by another passenger.
  - The child and the passenger can also injure each other in an accident.



## ⚠ WARNING

Forward-facing child seats installed on the front passenger's seat can interfere with the airbag when it inflates and cause serious injury to the child.

- Always install child seats on the rear seat.
- If exceptional circumstances require the use of a forward-facing child restraint on the front passenger's seat, the child's safety and well-being require the following special precautions to be taken:
  - Always make sure that the forward-facing seat has been designed and certified by its manufacturer for use on a front passenger seat with a front and side airbag.
  - Always carefully follow the manufacturer's instructions provided with the child seat or carrier.
  - Never install a child restraint without a properly attached top tether strap if the child restraint manufacturer's instructions require the top tether strap to be used.
  - Never put the forward-facing child restraint up against or very near the instrument panel.
  - Always set the safety belt upper anchorage to the adjustment position that permits proper installation in accordance with the child restraint manufacturer's instructions.
  - Always move the front passenger seat to the highest position in the up and down adjustment range and move it back to the rearmost position in the seat's fore and aft adjustment range, as far away from the airbag as possible before installing the forward-facing child restraint.
  - Always make sure that the safety belt upper anchorage is behind the child restraint and not next to or in front of the child restraint so that the safety belt will be properly positioned.
  - Always make sure that nothing is in the way that prevents the front passenger's seat from being moved to the rearmost position in its fore and aft adjustment range.
  - Always make sure that the backrest is in the upright position.
  - Never place additional items on the seat that can increase the weight-sensing mat and can cause injury in a crash.
  - Always make sure that the PASSENGER AIR BAG **OFF**  light comes on and stays on all the time whenever the ignition is switched on.
  - If the PASSENGER AIR BAG **OFF**  light does not come on and stay on, immediately install the forward-facing child seat in a rear seating position and have the airbag system inspected by your authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility.
- Always buckle the child seat firmly in place even if a child is not sitting in it. A loose child seat can fly around during a sudden stop or in a collision.
- Always read and heed all WARNINGS whenever using a child restraint in a vehicle. See → [Safety belts](#), → [Airbag system](#), and → [Child safety and child restraints](#).

## ⚠ WARNING


To reduce the risk of serious injury, always make sure that the PASSENGER AIR BAG **OFF**  light comes on and stays on whenever a child restraint is installed on the front passenger seat and the ignition is switched on.

- If the PASSENGER AIR BAG **OFF**  light does not stay on, perform the checks described → [PASSENGER AIR BAG \*\*OFF\*\* !\[\]\(51d3868eac81c232f6ef399d2bd16077\_img.jpg\) light](#).
- Take the child restraint off the front passenger seat and install it properly at one of the rear seat positions if the PASSENGER AIR BAG **OFF**  light does not stay on.
- Have the airbag system inspected immediately by an authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility.

## Using a child restraint on the rear seat



Fig. 72 Keep unused safety belts away from children in child restraints.

 Read and follow the introductory information and safety information first → [Introduction to the subject](#)

Important special steps when installing a child restraint with LATCH/UCRA lower universal anchorages or with the vehicle safety belt.

You must take special precautions when installing a LATCH/UCRA child restraint behind the front passenger or driver seats. Always route the center safety belt and the unused safety belt for the seating position where the child restraint is being installed securely out of the child's reach. Securing the safety belts will help prevent a child from playing with an unused safety belt and becoming entangled with it ⇒ [Fig. 72](#).

#### Securing a safety belt for an outboard seating position

When routing a safety belt for an outboard seating position, do not activate the switchable locking feature, otherwise it will be very difficult to wind the safety belt back into its normal position. You should not hear a clicking sound when the safety belt retracts.

- Route the safety belt around the head restraint for the center seating position.
- Make sure the safety belt is out of the child's reach, so that the child cannot grab and play with it.

#### Securing the center seat safety belt

When routing a center seat safety belt, you must activate the switchable locking feature. When the safety belt retracts, a clicking sound indicates that the switchable locking feature is active.

- Buckle the safety belt ⇒ [Fig. 72](#).
- Pull the shoulder belt portion of the safety belt all the way out of the retractor to activate the switchable locking feature. You should hear a clicking noise as the belt winds back into the retractor.
- Let the safety belt fully retract and then pull on it to make sure the switchable locking feature is active and the safety belt is properly fastened and tight so that the child cannot grab and play with the safety belt.

When a child safety seat is secured on the rear bench, adjust the position of the front seat to provide the child with sufficient space. Therefore, adjust the front seat the size of the child safety seat and the child. Consider the proper seating position of the passenger ⇒ [▲](#).

When child restraints are not needed, be sure to remove the safety belt(s) from around the head restraint(s), unbuckle the center safety belt, and return all safety belts to their normal stored positions so that they will be available for regular use.

#### **⚠ WARNING**

A child in a child restraint installed with the LATCH/UCRA lower universal anchorages or with the standard safety belt on the rear seat may play with unused rear seat safety belts and become entangled, resulting in serious personal injury and even death.

- Always secure unused rear seat safety belts out of the reach of children in child restraints such as by properly routing them around the head restraint adjacent to the seating position where the child restraint is installed.

#### **ⓘ NOTE**

- Be careful not to activate the switchable locking retractor when routing the unused safety belt around the head restraint adjacent to the seat where a child restraint has been installed.
- Only pull the unused safety belt out far enough to allow you to route the belt around the head restraint.
- When installing a child restraint, be careful not to get the belt caught in the structure of the child restraint and become damaged, especially when the switchable locking feature has been activated.

## Infant seats



Fig. 73 Rearward-facing infant seat properly installed on the rear seat.

**📖** Read and follow the introductory information and safety information first ⇒ [▲ Introduction to the subject](#)

The American Academy of Pediatrics (AAP) recommends that all infants should ride in rear-facing car safety seats (in which the child faces the back of the vehicle) starting with their first ride home from the hospital. All infants and toddlers (generally up to age 3) should ride in a rear-facing car safety seat as long as possible - o until they reach the highest weight or height allowed by their child restraint's manufacturer. These infant seats support the baby's back, neck and head in a collision. Rear-facing child seats can be used safely only on the rear seat of the vehicle ⇒ [Fig. 73](#).

Before installing a child restraint on the front passenger seat, be sure to follow the special instructions and heed the warnings ⇒ [The dangers of using child restraints on the front seat](#).

- When using the vehicle safety belt to install a child seat, you must activate the switchable locking feature on the safety belt to help prevent the child seat from

moving ⇒ *Using a child restraint on the rear seat* . Always follow the child restraint manufacturer's instructions when installing a child restraint.

- Attach the tether strap to the tether anchorage for the seating position where the child restraint is being installed ⇒ *Securing a child restraint with the Top Tether strap*.
- If a strap is being used to tie the child seat to the front passenger seat, make sure that it is not so tight that it causes the weight-sensing mat to measure more weight than is actually on the seat and turn the front passenger airbag on when it must be off (suppressed).

The airbag on the passenger side makes the front seat a potentially dangerous place for a child to ride. The front seat is not the safest place for a child in a forward facing child seat. It is a very dangerous place for an infant or a larger child in a rearward-facing seat.

You must take special precautions when installing a child restraint with the vehicle safety belt or with LATCH/UCRA lower universal anchorages behind the front passenger seat or behind the driver seat. Always route the unused center seat safety belt for the seating position where the LATCH/UCRA child restraint is being installed around the rear head restraint behind the child restraint to help prevent a child from playing with the unused belt and becoming entangled in it.

### **⚠ DANGER!**

Not using a child seat, using the wrong child seat or improperly installing a child restraint increases the risk of serious personal injury and death in a collision or other emergency situation.

- Never install rearward-facing child seats or infant carriers on the front passenger seat, even with an Advanced Airbag System. A child will be seriously injured and can be killed when the inflating airbag hits the child seat or infant carrier with great force and smashes the child seat and child against the backrest, center armrest, door or roof.
- Always install rearward-facing child seats and infant carriers on the rear seat.
- Never install a rearward-facing child restraint in the forward-facing direction. These restraints are designed for the special needs of infants and very small children and cannot protect them properly if the seat is forward-facing.
- If you must install a rearward-facing child seat on the front passenger seat because of exceptional circumstances, but the PASSENGER AIR BAG **OFF** light does not come on and stay on, immediately install the rearward-facing child seat at a seating position on the rear seat and have the airbag system inspected right away by your authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility.
- Always read and heed all WARNINGS whenever using a child restraint in a vehicle. See ⇒ *Safety belts*, ⇒ *Airbag system* and ⇒ *Child safety and child restraints*.

### **⚠ WARNING**

A child in a child restraint installed with the LATCH/UCRA lower universal anchorages or with the standard safety belt on the rear seat may play with unused rear seat safety belts and become entangled resulting in serious personal injury and even death.

- Always secure unused rear seat safety belts out of reach of children in child seats such as by properly routing them around the head restraint for the seating position where the child restraint is installed.
- Never activate the switchable locking retractor when routing the safety belts around the head restraints.
- Never let anyone sit at the center rear seating position if the center rear safety belt has been routed around a rear head restraint.

### **ⓘ NOTE**

Be careful not to activate the switchable locking retractor when routing the center safety belt around the head restraint.

- Only pull the unused center safety belt out far enough to allow you to route the belt around the head restraint.
- When installing a child restraint, be careful not to get the belt caught in the structure of the child seat and become damaged, especially when the switchable locking feature has been activated.

## Convertible child restraints

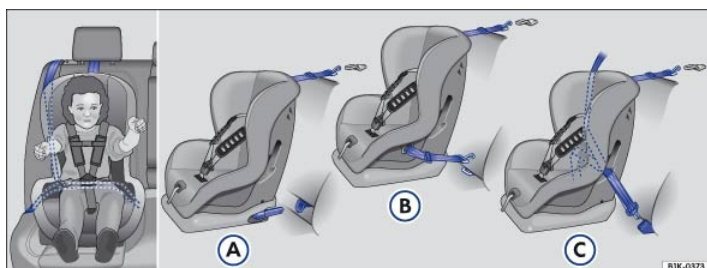


Fig. 74 Some child restraints are equipped with lower anchors and a top tether, illustration (A) and (B) show the correct installation of the attachments applicable to a LATCH/UCRA seat. Figure (C) shows the installation of the seat using the vehicle's safety belt system.

**📖** Read and follow the introductory information and safety information first ⇒ **⚠ Introduction to the subject**

Children between 1 and about 4 years old must always be properly restrained in a child seat certified for their size and weight ⇒ Fig. 74.



Once your child outgrows the rear-facing car seat, your child is ready to travel in a forward-facing car seat with a harness. Keep your child in a forward-facing car seat with a harness until he or she reaches the top height or weight limit allowed by your car seat's manufacturer.

Before installing a child restraint on the front passenger seat, be sure to follow the special instructions and heed the warnings and ⇒ [The dangers of using child restraints on the front seat](#).

- When using the vehicle safety belt to install a child seat, you must first activate the switchable locking feature on the safety belt to help prevent the child seat from moving ⇒ [Using a child restraint on the rear seat](#).
- Push the child seat down with your full weight to get the safety belt really tight so that the seat cannot move forward or sideways more than about 1 inch (2.5 cm).
- Fasten the harness webbing that is part of the child restraint system securely and pull it tight so that you can only slip one finger underneath the shoulder belt portion at the child's chest.
- Attach the tether strap to the tether anchorage for the seating position where the child restraint is being installed ⇒ [Securing a child restraint with the Top Tether strap](#).
- If a strap is being used to tie the child restraint to the front passenger seat, make sure that it is not so tight that it causes the weight-sensing mat to measure more weight than is actually on the seat.

The airbag on the passenger side makes the front seat a potentially dangerous place for a child to ride. The front seat is not the safest place for a child in a forward-facing child seat. It is a very dangerous place for an infant or a larger child in a rearward-facing seat.

You must take special precautions when installing a child restraint with the vehicle safety belt or with LATCH/UCRA lower universal anchorages behind the front passenger seat or behind the driver seat. Always route the unused center seat safety belt and the unused safety belt for the seating position where the LATCH/UCRA child restraint is being installed around the rear head restraint behind the child restraint to help prevent a child from playing with the unused belt and becoming entangled in it.

#### DANGER!

Not using a child seat, using the wrong child seat or improperly installing a child restraint increases the risk of serious personal injury and death in a collision or other emergency situation.

- Children on the front seat of any car, even with Advanced Airbags, can be seriously injured or even killed when an airbag inflates.
- A child in a rearward-facing child seat installed on the front passenger seat will be seriously injured and can be killed if the front airbag inflates – even with an Advanced Airbag System.
- The inflating airbag will hit the child seat or infant carrier with great force and will smash the child seat and child against the backrest, center armrest, door or roof.
- Always install rearward-facing child seats on the rear seat.
- If you must install a rearward facing child seat on the front passenger seat because of exceptional circumstances, but the PASSENGER AIR BAG **OFF** light does not come on and stay on, immediately install the rearward-facing child seat at a seating position on the rear seat and have the airbag system inspected right away by your authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility.
- Always read and heed all WARNINGS whenever using a child restraint in a vehicle. See ⇒ [Safety belts](#), ⇒ [Airbag system](#), and ⇒ [Child safety and child restraints](#).

#### WARNING

An improperly installed child restraint can interfere with the airbag as it deploys and seriously injure or even kill the child – even with an Advanced Airbag System.

- If exceptional circumstances require the use of a forward-facing child restraint on the front passenger's seat, the child's safety and well-being require the following special precautions to be taken:
  - Forward-facing child seats installed on the front passenger seat may interfere with the deployment of the airbag and cause serious personal injury to the child.
  - Always make sure that the forward-facing seat has been designed and certified by its manufacturer for use on a front passenger seat with a front and side airbag.
  - Always carefully follow the manufacturer's instructions provided with the child seat or carrier.
  - Never install a child restraint without a properly attached top tether strap if the child restraint manufacturer's instructions require the top tether strap to be used.
  - Never put the forward-facing child restraint up against or very near the instrument panel.
  - Always set the safety belt upper anchorage to the adjustment position that permits proper installation in accordance with the child restraint manufacturer's instructions.
  - Always move the front passenger seat to the highest position in the up and down adjustment range and move it back to the rearmost position in the

seat's fore and aft adjustment range, as far away from the airbag as possible before installing the forward-facing child restraint.

- Always make sure that the safety belt upper anchorage is behind the child restraint and not next to or in front of the child restraint so that the safety belt will be properly positioned.
- Always make sure that nothing is in the way that prevents the front passenger's seat from being moved to the rearmost position in its fore and aft adjustment range.
- Always make sure that the backrest is in the upright position.
- Never place additional items on the seat that can increase the total weight registered by the weight-sensing mat and can cause injury in a crash.
- Make sure that the PASSENGER AIR BAG **OFF** light comes on and stays on all the time whenever the ignition is switched on.
- If the PASSENGER AIR BAG **OFF** light does not come on and stay on, immediately install the forward-facing child seat in at a seating position on the rear seat and have the airbag system inspected by your authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility.
- Always buckle the child seat firmly in place even if a child is not sitting in it. A loose child seat can fly around during a sudden stop or in a collision.

#### **⚠ WARNING**

A child in a child restraint installed with the LATCH/UCRA lower universal anchorages or with the standard safety belt on the rear seat may play with unused rear seat safety belts and become entangled resulting in serious personal injury and even death.

- Always secure unused rear seat safety belts out of reach of children in child seats such as by properly routing them around the head restraint for the seating position where the child restraint is installed.
- Never activate the switchable locking retractor when routing the safety belts around the head restraints.
- Never let anyone sit at the center rear seating position if the center rear safety belt has been routed around a rear head restraint.

#### **! NOTE**

- When installing a child restraint, be careful not to get the belt caught in the structure of the child seat and become damaged, especially when the switchable locking feature has been activated.
- Be careful not to activate the switchable locking retractor when routing the safety belts around the head restraints. Only pull the safety belt out far enough to allow you to route the belt around the head restraint.

## Booster seats and safety belts



Fig. 75 Child properly restrained in a booster seat on the rear seat.

 Read and follow the introductory information and safety information first ⇒ [Introduction to the subject](#)

Children between about 8 to 12 years old are best protected in child safety seats designed for their age and weight ⇒ Fig. 75. Experts say that the skeletal structure particularly the pelvis, of these children is not fully developed, and they must not use the vehicle safety belts without a suitable child restraint.

The vehicle's safety belts alone will not fit most children until they are at least 4 ft. 9 in. (57 inches / 1.45 meters) tall. Booster seats raise these children up so that the safety belt will pass properly over the strong parts of their bodies and the safety belt can help protect them in a collision.

- Do not use the switchable locking feature when using the vehicle's safety belt to restrain a child on a booster seat.
- Always position the shoulder portion of the safety belt midway over the child's shoulder. If you must transport an older child in a booster seat on the front passenger seat, you can use the safety belt height adjustment to help adjust the shoulder portion properly.
- Always make sure that the shoulder portion is snug across the shoulder and chest and never rests against or across the child's neck or face.
- Always make sure that the child can wear the lap belt portion across the upper thighs and never over the stomach or abdomen.

Children who are at least 4 ft. 9 in. (57 inches / 1.45 meters) tall can generally use the vehicle's 3 point lap and shoulder belts. Never use the lap belt portion of the vehicle's safety belt alone to restrain any child, regardless of how big the child is. Always remember that children do not have the pronounced pelvic structure required for the proper function of lap belt portion of the vehicle's 3 point lap and shoulder belts. The child's safety absolutely requires that a lap belt portion of the safety belt be fastened snugly across the upper thighs. Never let the lap belt portion of the safety belt pass over the child's stomach or abdomen.

It is usually best to put these children in appropriate booster seats and keep them in a booster seat until they are big enough to fit in a safety belt properly. Be sure

the booster seat meets all applicable safety standards.

Booster seats raise the seating position of the child and reposition both the lap and shoulder parts of the safety belt so that they pass across the child's body in the right places. The routing of the belt over the child's body is very important for the child's protection, whether or not a booster seat is used. Children age 12 and under must always ride in the rear seat.

Keep your child in a booster seat until he or she is at least 4 ft. 9 in. (57 inches / 1.45 meters) tall AND your child is:

- tall enough to sit without slouching; and
- able to keep his or her back against the vehicle seat; and
- able to keep his or her knees naturally bent over the edge of the vehicle seat; and
- able to keep his or her feet flat on the floor; and
- able to sit in that position during the entire trip.

The way the safety belt passes over the child's body is important for their safety and protection in a crash. Always make sure your child can wear the safety belt properly:

- The lap belt must lie snugly across the upper thighs, not the stomach.
- The shoulder belt must lie snugly across the shoulder and chest, and never cross the neck or face.
- Never let a child put the shoulder belt under the arm or behind the back, because it could cause severe injuries in a crash.

Always check belt fit on the child in every vehicle. A booster seat may be needed in some vehicles and not in others. If the seat belt does not fit properly, the child must continue to use a booster seat. Regardless of whether the child is using a booster or is able to properly wear the standard safety belt properly without a booster seat, keep your child in the back seat. Accident statistics show that children are safer on the rear seat than on the front seat.

In a collision, airbags must inflate within a blink of an eye and with considerable force. In order to do its job, the airbag needs room to inflate so that it will be there to protect the occupant as the occupant moves forward into the airbag.

Even Advanced Airbags can injure children when they inflate. A vehicle occupant who is out of position and too close to the airbag gets in the way of an inflating airbag. When an occupant is too close, he or she will be struck violently and will receive serious or possibly even fatal injuries.

In order for the airbag to offer protection, it is important that all vehicle occupants, especially children, who must be in the front seat under exceptional circumstances, be properly restrained and as far away from the airbag as possible. By keeping room between the child's body and the front of the passenger compartment, the airbag can inflate completely and provide supplemental protection in certain frontal collisions.

You must take special precautions when installing a child restraint with the vehicle safety belt or with LATCH/UCRA lower universal anchorages behind the front passenger seat or behind the driver seat. Always route the unused center seat safety belts around the rear head restraint behind the child restraint to help prevent a child from playing with the unused belt and becoming entangled in it.

#### WARNING

Not using a booster seat, using the booster seat improperly, incorrectly installing a booster seat or using the vehicle safety belt improperly increases the risk of serious personal injury and death in a collision or other emergency situation. To help reduce the risk of serious personal injury and/or death:

- Always make sure to position the shoulder portion of the 3 point belt over the middle of the child's shoulder.
- Never let the shoulder portion of the safety belt rest against or across the neck, face, chin, or throat of the child.
- Always make sure the lap belt portion of the 3 point belt is worn snugly across the child's upper thighs. Never let the lap belt portion of the safety belt pass over the child's stomach or abdomen.
- Never let a child put the shoulder belt under the arm or behind the back, because it could cause severe injuries in a crash.
- Failure to properly route safety belts over a child's body will cause severe injuries in a collision or other emergency situation.
- Children on the front seat of any car, even with Advanced Airbags, can be seriously injured or even killed when an airbag inflates.
- Never let a child stand or kneel on any seat, for example the front seat.
- Never let a child ride in the cargo area of your vehicle.
- Always remember that a child leaning forward, sitting sideways or out of position in any way during a collision can be struck by a deploying airbag. This will result in serious personal injury or death.
- If you must install a booster seat on the front passenger seat because of exceptional circumstances, the PASSENGER AIR BAG **OFF** light must come on and stay on, whenever the ignition is switched on.
- If the PASSENGER AIR BAG **OFF** light does not come on and stay on, perform the checks described ⇒ [PASSENGER AIR BAG \*\*OFF\*\* light](#).
- Take the child restraint off the front passenger seat and install it properly at one of the seating positions on the rear seat if the PASSENGER AIR BAG **OFF** light does not stay on whenever the ignition is switched on.
- Always read and heed all WARNINGS whenever using a child restraint in a vehicle. See ⇒ [Safety belts](#), ⇒ [Airbag system](#) and ⇒ [Child safety and child restraints](#).

## ⚠ WARNING

A child in a booster seat installed with the standard safety belt on the rear seat may play with unused rear seat safety belts and become entangled resulting in serious personal injury and even death.

- Always secure unused rear seat safety belts out of the reach of children in child seats such as by properly routing them around the head restraint for the seating position where the booster seat is not installed.
- Never activate the switchable locking feature when routing the safety belts around the head restraints.
- Never let anyone sit at the center rear seating position if the center rear safety belt has been routed around a rear head restraint.

## Installing child restraints with a safety belt

📖 Read and follow the introductory information and safety information first ⇒ [Introduction to the subject](#)

Safety belts for the rear seats and the front passenger seat must be locked with the switchable locking feature to properly secure child restraints.

Child restraints are designed to be secured to the vehicle with the lap belt portion of the 3 point lap and shoulder belt installed for the passenger seats. The outboard rear seating positions also have special fixtures for child restraints that can be used with LATCH/UCRA lower universal anchorages.

Regardless of the kind of child restraint that you use, always make sure that the child restraint is properly secured in the vehicle; otherwise the child could be seriously injured in a crash. Always follow legal requirements regarding the installation of child restraints.

Whenever a child restraint (except a booster seat) is installed with a safety belt, the safety belt must be locked so that the safety belt webbing cannot unreel. The switchable locking feature lets you lock the belt so that a child restraint can be properly installed and, for example, so that it cannot tip to the side when the vehicle goes around a corner.

**Place the child restraint on a seat, preferably on a rear seat** ⇒ [▲](#).

Installing the child restraint on a rear seat

Always carefully follow the child seat manufacturer's instructions when installing a child restraint in your vehicle ⇒ [▲](#).



- Route the safety belt around or through the child restraint using the proper path for the safety belt as specified by the child restraint manufacturer.
- Insert the belt tongue into the buckle for that seating position.
- Make sure that the red release button faces away from the child restraint so that it can be unbuckled quickly.
- Remove all slack from the lap belt portion of the safety belt and hold it tightly against the child restraint.
- Push the child restraint down with your full weight to make sure that the child restraint will be properly installed with the safety belt really tight.
- Activate the belt's switchable locking feature ⇒ [Activating the switchable locking feature](#).
- Pull on the safety belt to make sure the safety belt is properly fastened and tight.
- Check the child seat for proper installation by pulling on the child restraint at the place where the vehicle's safety belt goes into the child restraint. The child seat should not move forward or sideways by more than about 1 inch (2.5 cm).

Special instructions for installing child restraints if the child restraint must be installed on the front seat

Always carefully follow the child seat manufacturer's instructions when installing a child restraint in your vehicle ⇒ [▲](#).



**Place the child restraint on a seat, preferably on a rear seat** ⇒ [▲](#). If in **exceptional circumstances** you must install the child restraint on the front seat, be sure to follow the special instructions and heed the WARNINGS below.

- Make sure the backrest is in the upright position.
- Move the front passenger seat to the rearmost position in the seat's fore and aft adjustment range, as far away from the airbag as possible.
- Set the front passenger's safety belt height adjuster so that available safety belt length is sufficient to properly install the child restraint.
- Route the safety belt around or through the child restraint using the proper path for the safety belt as specified by the child restraint manufacturer.
- Insert the belt tongue into the buckle for that seating position.
- Make sure that the red release button faces away from the child restraint so that it can be unbuckled quickly.
- Remove all slack from the lap belt portion of the safety belt and hold it tightly against the child restraint.
- Push the child restraint down with your full weight to make sure that the child restraint will be properly installed with the safety belt really tight.
- Make sure that the safety belt is not so tight that it causes the weight-sensing mat to measure more weight than is actually on the seat.
- Activate the belt's switchable locking feature ⇒ [Activating the switchable locking feature](#).
- Pull on the safety belt to make sure the safety belt is properly fastened and tight.
- Check the child seat for proper installation by pulling on the child restraint at the place where the vehicle's safety belt goes into the child restraint. The child seat should not move forward or sideways by more than about 1 inch (2.5 cm).

- After checking to make sure that the child restraint is properly installed, make certain that the child restraint is correctly recognized by the weight-sensing mat inside the front passenger seat so that front passenger airbag status is always correctly signaled by the PASSENGER AIR BAG **OFF**  light. Please be sure to read the additional important information and heed the WARNINGS about the Advanced Airbag System and the function of the PASSENGER AIR BAG **OFF**  light in this Manual.

Always remember: Even though your vehicle is equipped with an Advanced Airbag System, all children, especially those 12 years and younger, must always ride in the back seat properly restrained for their age and size.

#### Activating the switchable locking feature

- Slowly pull the shoulder belt portion of the safety belt **all the way** out of the retractor.
- While keeping your weight on the child restraint, guide the shoulder belt portion of the safety belt back into the retractor until the belt lies flat and is tightened against the child restraint.
- You should hear a clicking noise as the belt winds back into the inertia reel of the safety belt retractor. Test the switchable locking feature by pulling on the belt. You should no longer be able to pull the belt out of the retractor. The switchable locking feature is now active.
- Pull on the safety belt to make sure the safety belt is properly fastened and tight.
- Check the child seat for proper installation by pulling on the child restraint at the place where the vehicle's safety belt goes into the child restraint. The child seat should not move forward or sideways by more than about 1 inch (2.5 cm).
- After checking to make sure that the child restraint is properly installed make certain that the child restraint is correctly recognized by the weight-sensing mat inside the front passenger seat, so that the front passenger airbag status is always correctly signaled by the PASSENGER AIR BAG **OFF**  light. Please be sure to read the additional important information and heed the WARNINGS about the Advanced Airbag System and the function of the PASSENGER AIR BAG **OFF**  light in this Manual.

Always remember: Even though your vehicle is equipped with an Advanced Airbag System, all children, especially those 12 years and younger, must always ride in the back seat properly restrained for their age and size.

#### Deactivating the switchable locking feature

The switchable locking feature for child restraints will be deactivated automatically when the belt is wound all the way back into the retractor.

- Press the red button on the safety belt buckle. The belt tongue will pop out of the buckle
- Guide the safety belt back by hand so that it rolls easily onto the retractor and the trim around the retractor will not be damaged.

Always let the safety belt retract completely into its stowed position. The safety belt can now be used as an ordinary safety belt without the switchable locking feature for child restraints.

If the switchable locking feature should be activated inadvertently, the safety belt must be unfastened and guided completely back into its stowed position to deactivate this feature. If the switchable locking feature is not deactivated, the safety belt will gradually become tighter and uncomfortable to wear.

#### WARNING

Using the wrong child restraint or an improperly installed child restraint can cause serious personal injury or death in an accident.

- Always make sure that the safety belt retractor is locked when installing a child seat, except a booster seat. An unlocked safety belt retractor cannot hold the child seat in place during normal driving or in a crash.
- Always buckle the child restraint firmly in place even if a child is not sitting in it. A loose child restraint can fly around during a sudden stop or in a collision.
- Always make sure the seat backrest to which the child restraint is installed is in an upright position and securely latched into place and cannot fold forward. Otherwise, the seat backrest with the child restraint attached to it could fly forward in a collision or other emergency situation.
- Always read and heed all WARNINGS whenever using a child restraint in a vehicle → *Child safety and child restraints* . Special precautions apply when installing a child seat on the front passenger seat → *Child restraints and the Advanced Airbag System* .

#### WARNING

Improperly installed child restraints increase the risk of serious personal injury and death in a collision.

- Never unfasten the safety belt to deactivate the switchable locking feature for child restraints while the vehicle is moving. You would not be restrained and could be seriously injured in an accident.

#### NOTE

When installing a child restraint, be careful not to get the belt caught in the structure of the child seat and become damaged, especially when the switchable locking feature has been activated.

## Securing the child restraint with LATCH/UCRA lower universal anchorages

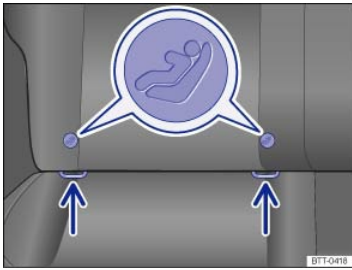


Fig. 76 Markings for the LATCH/UCRA lower universal anchorages on the seat.

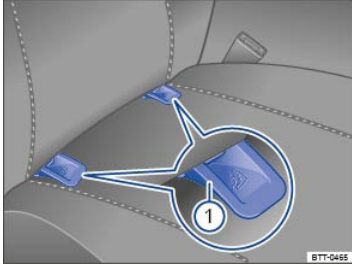


Fig. 77 Example of guidance fixtures installed.

Read and follow the introductory information and safety information first ⇒ [Introduction to the subject](#)

LATCH is used in the United States for Lower Anchors and Tethers for Children. In Canada, Universal Child Restraint Anchorages (UCRA) is used to describe the combination of top tether straps and the lower anchorages.

All child restraints manufactured after September 1, 1999, must have LATCH/UCRA lower universal anchorages.

The circular markings on the rear seat backrest help you to locate lower anchorages for the 2 outboard seating positions ⇒ [Fig. 76](#).

The LATCH/UCRA lower universal anchorage attachment points are between the rear seat backrest and rear seat cushion.

LATCH/UCRA lower universal anchorages secure the child restraint system in the seat without using the vehicle's safety belts. Anchorages provide a secure and easy-to-use attachment and minimize the possibility of improper child restraint installation.

Remember that the LATCH/UCRA lower universal anchorage points are only intended for installation and attachment of child restraints specifically certified for use with these lower universal anchorages. Child restraints that are not equipped with the LATCH/UCRA lower universal anchorage attachments can still be installed with vehicle safety belts according to the child restraint manufacturer's instructions. You must never mount 2 child restraint systems to one LATCH/UCRA lower universal anchorage point at the same time. For instance, you must not install a child restraint with LATCH/UCRA lower universal anchorage points on one of the outboard seating positions and then use the inboard anchorage to also install a child restraint in the center of the rear seat that itself is not equipped with LATCH/UCRA lower universal anchorage points.

There are 2 ways to attach an appropriate child restraint to the LATCH/UCRA lower universal anchorages:

**Rigid connectors on bars at the back of the child restraint:**

Depending on your vehicle's seats, you may want to use guidance fixtures ⇒ [Fig. 77](#) when installing a child restraint that has rigid mountings. Installation with guidance fixtures is easier and protects the upholstery. Guidance fixtures may be supplied by the seat manufacturer, with your vehicle, or can be purchased from an authorized Volkswagen dealer or an authorized Volkswagen Service Facility. The guidance fixtures must be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions at the anchorage points between the seat cushion and the seat backrest. If the instructions are not provided, please see an Volkswagen dealer or an authorized Volkswagen Service Facility for assistance.

When using the guidance fixtures, always install them in pairs on the rigid mountings. Remove the guidance fixtures when no child seat is secured to the vehicle anchorage points ⇒ .

- Make sure the seat backrest of the rear seat bench is in the upright position and securely latched in place.
- Release or deploy the top tether strap (if one is required by the child restraint manufacturer) to secure the seat ⇒ [Securing a child restraint with the Top Tether strap](#).
- Guide the upper tether strap under the outer rear head restraint (raise the head restraint if necessary).
- Attach the tether strap anchorage hook into the opening of the tether anchorage.
- Attach the connectors onto the LATCH/UCRA lower universal anchorages.
- Make sure you hear the child restraint click securely into place.
- Tighten the top tether strap (if there is one) to secure the seat ⇒ [Securing a child restraint with the Top Tether strap](#) .
- Pull on both sides of the child restraint once you've installed it to make certain it is secure and properly attached.

Releasing

- Release the top tether strap (if one is required by the child restraint manufacturer).
- Release the lower latch from the LATCH/UCRA lower universal anchorages following the child restraint manufacturer's instructions.

#### Hooks attached to adjustable straps (hook-on connectors)

- Make sure the seat backrest of the rear seat bench is in the upright position and securely latched in place.
- Attach the hook-on connectors with the spring catch release onto the LATCH/UCRA lower universal anchorage so that the connectors lock into place.
- Pull on the connector attachments to make sure that it is properly attached to the LATCH/UCRA lower universal anchorage.
- Pull straps tight following the child restraint manufacturer's instructions.
- Release or deploy the top tether strap (if one is required by the child restraint manufacturer) to secure the seat → [Securing a child restraint with the Top Tether strap](#).
- Guide the upper tether strap under the rear head restraint (raise the head restraint if necessary).
- Attach the tether strap anchorage hook into the opening of the tether anchorage and pull the top tether strap tight.
- After you have installed the child seat, pull on both of the adjustable straps on the child seat and pull also on the tether strap to make certain the seat is secure and properly attached.

#### Releasing

- Loosen the tension on the hook-on connector straps following the child restraint manufacturer's instructions.
- Release the top tether strap (if one is required by the child restraint manufacturer).
- Depress the spring catch on the hook.
- Hold the spring catch in the depressed position.
- Move the hook in the direction of the vehicle floor so that there is enough space to release the connector from the lower anchorage.
- Release the tether strap.

You must take special precautions when installing a child restraint with the vehicle safety belt or with LATCH/UCRA lower universal anchorages behind the front passenger seat or behind the driver seat. Always route the unused center seat safety belt and the unused safety belt for the seating position where the LATCH/UCRA child restraint is being installed around the rear head restraint behind the child restraint to help prevent a child from playing with the unused belt and becoming entangled in it.

#### WARNING

Improper use of the LATCH/UCRA system can increase the risk of serious personal injury and death in an accident.

- Always carefully follow the child restraint manufacturer's instructions for proper installation of the child restraints and proper use of tether straps as well as the LATCH/UCRA lower universal anchorages or safety belts in your vehicle.
- Never mount 2 child restraint systems on one LATCH/UCRA lower universal anchorage point.
- These anchors were developed only for child seats using the LATCH/UCRA system.
- Never attach other child seats, belts, luggage or other things to the LATCH/UCRA anchorages.
- Always make sure that you hear a click when latching the seat in place. If you do not hear a click, the seat is not secure and could fly forward and hit the interior of the vehicle or be ejected from the vehicle.

#### NOTE

- To help prevent permanent indentations from forming in the cushion, remove the guidance fixtures when no child seat secured to the vehicle anchorage points.
- To help prevent damage to the seat upholstery, always remove the guidance fixtures from the anchorage points before folding the backrest on the rear bench seat forward.



Be careful not to activate the switchable locking retractor when routing the safety belts around the head restraints. Only pull the safety belt out far enough to allow you to route the belt around the head restraint.

### Securing a child restraint with the Top Tether strap

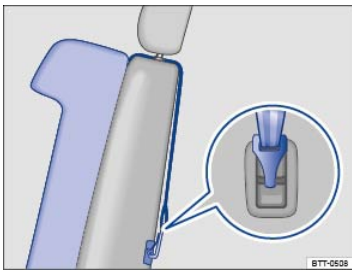


Fig. 78 Example of a mounted upper tether strap. The top tether strap reduces the forward movement of the child restraint in a crash, to help reduce the risk of head injury if the child hits the vehicle interior.

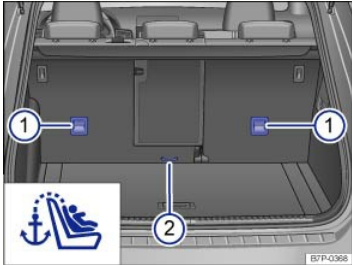


Fig. 79 Anchorages for the top tether strap on the back of the rear seat.

Read and follow the introductory information and safety information first ⇒ [Introduction to the subject](#)

**The rear seat bench has fixed anchorages and pull-out anchorages ⇒ Fig. 79 .**

- ① Fixed anchorages for the outboard seats.
- ② Pull-out anchorages for the center seating position.

#### Installing the tether strap

- Release or deploy the tether strap on the child restraint according to the child restraint manufacturer's instructions.
- Remove the luggage compartment cover if necessary.
- Locate the tether anchor on the rear seat backrest.
- Outer seating position: Guide the upper tether strap under the outer rear head restraint (raise the head restraint if necessary ⇒ [Adjusting the seating position](#))  
*For child restraints with V-tether straps: Always make sure that the head restraint guide rods do not interfere with any part of the top tether strap.*
- Center seating position: Guide the upper tether strap under the center rear head restraint only when it is pushed all the way up. If the tether strap hook is too big to pass under the center head restraint, push the head restraint all the way down and guide the strap over the center head restraint.
- Guide the tether strap between the rear seat back and the luggage compartment cover.
- Attach the tether strap anchorage hook into the opening of the tether anchorage ⇒ [Fig. 79](#).
- Pull on the tether strap hook so that the spring catch of the hook is engaged.
- Tighten the tether strap firmly following the child restraint manufacturer's instructions.

#### Releasing the tether strap

- Loosen the tension on the tether strap following the child restraint manufacturer's instructions.
- Depress the spring catch on the hook and release it from the anchorage.

### WARNING

Improper installation of child restraints will increase the risk of injury and death in a crash.

- Always follow the instructions provided by the manufacturer of the child restraint when installing it in your vehicle.
- Never install a child restraint without a properly attached top tether strap if the child restraint manufacturer's instructions require the top tether strap to be used. The use of a top tether strap for forward-facing child restraints is required by law in Canada.
- Improper use of top tether straps and anchors can lead to injury in a collision. The anchors are designed to withstand only those loads imposed by correctly fitted child restraints.
- Never attach 2 child restraint systems to 1 top tether strap or top tether anchorage.
- Never attach a child seat tether strap to a tie-down in the luggage compartment.
- Never use child restraint top tether anchorages to secure safety belts or other kinds of occupant restraints.
- Never secure or attach any luggage or other items to the top tether anchorages.
- If a tether or other strap is used to attach a child restraint to the front passenger seat, make sure that it is not so tight that it causes the weight-sensing mat for the Advanced Airbag System to measure more weight than is actually on the seat.



- The heavier weight registered can make the Advanced Airbag System work as though an adult were on the seat and deploy the Advanced Airbag when it should be suppressed causing serious or even fatal injury to the child.
- If you must install a rearward-facing child seat on the front passenger seat because of exceptional circumstances, but the PASSENGER AIR BAG **OFF** light does not come on and stay on, immediately install the rearward-facing child seat at seating position on the rear seat and have the airbag system inspected by your authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility.

#### NOTE

To help prevent permanent indentations from forming in the cushion, remove the guidance fixtures from the anchorage points when there is not child seat secured in the vehicle anchorage points.



Be careful not to activate the switchable locking retractor when routing the safety belts around the head restraints. Only pull the safety belt out far enough to allow you to route the belt around the head restraint.

## Sources of information about child restraints and their use

Read and follow the introductory information and safety information first ⇒ [Introduction to the subject](#)

The following are some sources of additional information about child restraint selection, installation and use:

Safety authorities advise that the best child safety seat is the one that fits your child and fits in your vehicle, and that you will use correctly and consistently.

Try before you buy!

### Transport Canada Information Centre

Tel.: 1-800-333-0371  
 Tel.: 1-613-998-8616 (Ottawa)  
<http://www.tc.gc.ca/roadsafety>

### National Highway Traffic Safety Administration

Tel.: 1-888-327-4236 (TTY: 1-800-424-9153)  
<http://www.nhtsa.gov>  
<http://www.safercar.gov>

### National SAFE KIDS Campaign

Tel.: 1-202-662-0600  
<http://www.safekids.org>

### Safety BeltSafe U.S.A.

Tel.: 1-800-745-SAFE or 1-800-745-7233 (English)  
 Tel.: 1-800-747-SANO or 1-800-747-7266 (Spanish)  
<http://www.carseat.org>

### Volkswagen Customer CARE

Tel.: 1-800-822-8987

## Lights and vision

### Lights

[Introduction to the subject](#)

In this chapter you will find information on the following subjects:

⇒ [Indicator lights](#)

⇒ [Turn signal lever and high beam switch](#)

⇒ [Switching lights on and off](#)

⇒ [Lights and vision features](#)

⇒ [Coming home and Leaving home features \(orientation lighting\)](#)

⇒ [Instrument panel lighting and headlight range adjustment](#)

⇒ [Interior and reading lights](#)

Always obey local vehicle lighting laws.


The driver is always responsible for the correct headlight settings and driving light.













**WARNING**

Headlights that are aimed too high and improper use of the headlight flasher or high beams can blind and distract other drivers. This can lead to a crash and serious personal injuries.

- Always make sure that headlights are properly adjusted.
- Never use the headlight flasher or high beams when they can blind or distract other drivers.

## Indicator lights

 Read and follow the introductory information and safety information first ⇒ [Introduction to the subject](#)

Lights up	Possible cause	Proper response
	One or more driving lights not working or cornering light malfunction.	Replace burned out bulb ⇒ <a href="#">Replacing light bulbs</a> or if all light bulbs are OK, visit an authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility.
	One or more brake lights burned out.	See an authorized Volkswagen dealer or an authorized Volkswagen Service Facility.
	Adaptive Front Lighting System (AFS) malfunction.	See an authorized Volkswagen dealer or an authorized Volkswagen Service Facility ⇒ <a href="#">Adaptive Front Lighting System (AFS)</a> .
	Headlight range adjustment malfunction.	See an authorized Volkswagen dealer or an authorized Volkswagen Service Facility ⇒ <a href="#">Dynamic headlight range adjustment on vehicles with Adaptive Front Lighting System</a> .
	Parking lights switched on.	
	One or more license plate lights burned out.	See an authorized Volkswagen dealer or an authorized Volkswagen Service Facility.
	Fog lights switched on.	⇒ <a href="#">Switching lights on and off</a> .
	Turn signals, left or right.	
	The indicator light blinks twice as fast if a turn signal is not working on the vehicle or the trailer.	If necessary check the vehicle and trailer lighting.
	Daytime running lights on.	⇒ <a href="#">Lights and vision features</a> .
	High beams switched on or headlight flashers in use.	⇒ <a href="#">Turn signal lever and high beam switch</a> .
Flashes	Possible cause	Proper response
	Driving light system malfunction.	See an authorized Volkswagen dealer or an authorized Volkswagen Service Facility.

When the ignition is switched on, several warning and indicator lights come on briefly for a function check. They go out after a few seconds.

#### ⚠ WARNING

Failure to heed warning lights and instrument cluster text messages can cause the vehicle to break down in traffic and result in a collision and serious personal injury.

- Never ignore warning lights or text WARNINGS.
- Always stop the vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so.
- Whenever stalled or stopped for repair, move the vehicle a safe distance off the road, stop the engine, turn on the emergency flashers, and use other warning devices to warn approaching traffic.
- Never park the vehicle in areas where the hot catalytic converter and exhaust system can come into contact with dry grass, brush, spilled fuel, oil, or other material that can catch fire.
- A broken down vehicle presents a high accident risk for itself and others. Switch on emergency flashers and set up a warning triangle to warn oncoming traffic.

#### ❗ NOTE

Failure to heed warning lights or text WARNINGS can result in vehicle damage.



High Intensity Discharge (HID) headlights provide bright, uniform lighting to help you see and be seen. The light comes from an electric arc between two electrodes in the gas-filled bulb. Over time, the electrodes can wear down and the gap between them will get wider. The HID lamp's control unit then increases the voltage to keep the arc's brightness constant. However, the commonly called "Xenon" bulbs will also ultimately burn out. Before they burn out, HID lamps can flicker. A message will then appear in the MFI. This is your reminder to see an authorized Volkswagen dealer or an authorized Volkswagen Service Facility to check the headlights.

## Turn signal lever and high beam switch

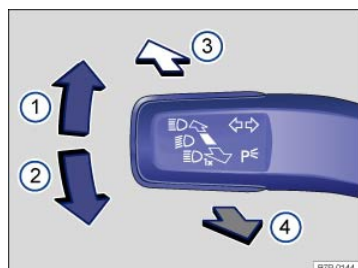


Fig. 80 Turn signal lever and high beam switch.

📖 Read and follow the introductory information and safety information first ⇒ [Introduction to the subject](#)

**Move the lever to the desired position ⇒ Fig. 80 :**

- ① Right turn signal.
- ② Left turn signal.
- ③ Switching high beams on ⇒ . The indicator light comes on in the instrument cluster when the high beams are switched on.
- ④ Switching the high beams off and operating the headlight flasher. The *headlight flasher* turns on the high beams as long as the lever is pulled and manually held in the pulled position. The indicator light lights up. When released, the lever moves back to the home position and turns off the high beams. The indicator light goes out.

Move the lever back to the home position to turn the feature off.

### Convenience turn signal (lane change feature)

To use the convenience turn signal feature, move the lever up or down slightly, just to the point of resistance and then release it. If you have the convenience turn signal (**Conv. turn sig.**) switched on, the turn signals and the turn signal indicator flash 3 times. If it is switched off, they flash as long as you hold the lever up or down, and go out when you release the lever.

The convenience turn signal is switched on and off in the **Lights & Vision** menu in the instrument cluster display ⇒ [Volkswagen Information System](#). If your vehicle is not equipped with the **Lights & Vision** menu, the convenience turn signal feature can be deactivated by an authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility.

#### ⚠ WARNING

Improper use of high beams can distract and blind others, causing accidents and serious injuries.



The turn signal light works only when the ignition is switched on. The emergency flasher works even when the ignition is switched off ⇒ *In an emergency.*



The indicator light flashes twice as fast if a turn signal bulb is burned out.



High beams can only be switched on when low beams are on.

## Switching lights on and off

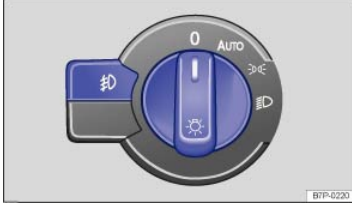


Fig. 81 Next to the steering wheel: Headlight switch.

Read and follow the introductory information and safety information first ⇒ [Introduction to the subject](#)

Turn the light switch to the desired position ⇒ Fig. 81:

	When the ignition is switched off	When the ignition is switched on
0	Fog lights, low beams and parking lights switched off.	Headlights off, daytime running lights (DRL) on.
AUTO	Orientation lighting may be switched on.	Automatic headlights active; DRL.
☞☞	Parking lights switched on. Low beams off. Parking lights and DRL stay on.	Parking lights switched on.
☞	Low beams switched off – parking lights switched on.	Low beams switched on.
☞	Fog lights switched off. The DRL may stay on for some time.	Headlights and fog lights switched on.

### Fog lights:

The indicator light ☞ in the headlight switch or the instrument cluster shows that the fog lights are switched on.

- To switch on the fog lights ☞: first turn the light switch to position ☞, then push the button for the fog lights ☞.
- To switch off the fog lights push the button for the fog lights ☞.

### Acoustic warning when lights are not switched off

In the following situations, a warning chime will sound if you take the key out of the ignition and open the driver door. This is to remind you that lights are still on.

- If the parking lights are switched on ⇒ [Switching lights on and off](#).
- Light switch in position ☞☞.

### ⚠ WARNING

Daytime running lights and parking lights are not bright enough to let you see ahead or be seen by others when it is dark.

- Always switch on the low beam headlights at dusk or when it is dark and whenever the weather is bad or visibility is poor.
- Never use the daytime running lights to see where you are going. They are not bright enough and will not let you see far enough ahead for safety, especially at dusk or when it is dark. Always switch on the low beam headlights at dusk or when it is dark.
- The taillights do not come on with the daytime running lights. Unless the taillights are on, a vehicle cannot be seen by others in bad weather, at dusk, or when it is dark.
- Even if the automatic headlights are switched on, the low beam headlights may still not come on by themselves in fog or heavy rain. You have to switch on the low beam headlights manually.



In cool or humid weather, the insides of the headlights, the taillights, and turn signals can temporarily fog up. This is normal and does not affect the service life of the vehicle's lighting system.



The length of time they stay on depends on the vehicle battery charge.

## Lights and vision features

Read and follow the introductory information and safety information first ⇒ [Introduction to the subject](#)

### Daytime running lights (DRL)

Separate lamps are installed in the headlights or in the front bumper for the daytime running lights.

When the daytime running lights are on, only these separate lamps come on ⇒ .

The daytime running lights come on whenever the ignition is switched on and the light switch is in position **0** or **AUTO**. The or **DRL** indicator light in the instrument cluster indicates that the feature is active ⇒ [Indicator lights](#).

If the light switch is in position **AUTO**, a low light sensor switches the instrument and switch lighting on and off automatically.

### Daytime running lights (DRL) parking feature

Some models are equipped with a daytime running lights (DRL) parking feature that switches the daytime running lights off when the vehicle is parked and the ignition is switched on.

The daytime running lights can be activated and deactivated in the **Lights & Vision** menu in the instrument cluster display ⇒ [Volkswagen Information System](#).

Function	Action
Switching the DRL off:	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>– Switch the ignition on.</li> <li>– Turn the light switch to the <b>0</b> position.</li> <li>– Set the parking brake.</li> </ul>
Switching the DRL back on:	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>– Release the parking brake.</li> <li>– <b>OR:</b> Turn the light switch to the  position.</li> </ul>

### Static cornering lights

Your vehicle may have fog lights under the front bumper, which on some models are also static cornering lights. On some models the static cornering lights may be integrated in the headlights. At speeds below about 25 mph (40 km/h), the light on one side of the vehicle will come on when you turn a corner. If you turn to the right, the right fog light comes on; turn left and the left fog light comes on. The light dims and goes out when the steering wheel is straightened out again.

When you move the selector lever to Reverse (**R**), the static cornering lights on both sides of the vehicle may come on so that you can see the area around the vehicle better when backing up.

The static cornering lights work only when the headlights are on. If you are using automatic headlights (headlight switch in the **AUTO** position) ⇒ [Fig. 81](#), they work only when the headlights have been automatically switched on. The static cornering lights do not come on when the headlight switch is in the **0** position or when the fog lights themselves have been switched on ⇒ [Switching lights on and off](#).

### Automatic headlights **AUTO**

The automatic headlights are a convenience feature only and cannot always recognize all driving situations.

If the light switch is in the **AUTO** position, the outside vehicle lighting and the instrument lighting are automatically switched on at dusk/nightfall and off in normal daylight in the following situations ⇒ .

Automatic activation:	Automatic deactivation/change to daytime running lights:
If the low-light sensor registers <i>darkness</i> , for example when driving through a tunnel.	If sufficient brightness is registered.

Automatic activation:	Automatic deactivation/change to daytime running lights:
If you drive faster than about 87 mph (140 km/h) for several seconds.	If you drive slower than about 40 mph (65 km/h) for several seconds.
If the rain sensor recognizes heavy rain and switches the windshield wipers on.	If the windshield wipers have not moved for several minutes.

### Adaptive Front Lighting System (AFS)

The Adaptive Front Lighting System works only with the low beams switched on and only at speeds above about 6 mph (10 km/h). The swivel-mounted lamps automatically improve road illumination during cornering.

The Adaptive Front Lighting System can be switched on and off in the Infotainment System.

- Switch on the ignition.
- Press the **CAR** Infotainment button.
- Tap the Settings function key on the screen.
- Select the menu item Lights and vision from the list.
- Tap Adaptive front lighting system (AFS) to enable or disable this feature.

The feature is enabled when the check box in the Adaptive front lighting system (AFS) function key is checked .

### Lights with LED-technology

You cannot replace the LEDs. Contact your authorized Volkswagen dealer or an authorized Volkswagen Service Facility for assistance.

### WARNING



Crashes and other accidents can happen when you cannot see the road ahead and when you cannot be seen by other motorists.

- Never use daytime running lights (DRL) to see where you are going. (DRL) are not bright enough to light up the roadway and be seen by other motorists. You will not be able to see far enough ahead for safety, especially at dusk or when it is dark. Always switch on the low beam headlights at dusk or when it is dark.
- If the automatic headlights (**AUTO**) are switched on, the low beam headlights still may not be switched on in fog or heavy rain. You have to switch on the low beam headlights yourself.
- The taillights do not come on when the daytime running lights are switched on. A vehicle without taillights on cannot be seen by others in bad weather, at dusk, or when it is dark.



In cool or humid weather, the insides of the headlights, rear lights, and turn signals can temporarily fog up. This is normal and does not affect the service life of the vehicle's lighting system.

## Coming home and Leaving home features (orientation lighting)

 Read and follow the introductory information and safety information first ⇒  [Introduction to the subject](#)

The basic settings for the Coming home and Leaving home features must be made in the Infotainment System.

- Switch on the ignition.
- Press the **CAR** Infotainment button.
- Tap the Settings features key on the screen.
- Select the menu item Lights and vision in the list.
- Tap Coming home or Leaving home to enable or disable the feature.
- Check the check box in the Coming home or Leaving home to select the  feature key.

### Coming home features

The lighting delay period can be adjusted in the Infotainment System.

Function key: More information

10 Sec.: The lighting delay period is about 10 seconds. Tap the function to select the setting and close the window.

20 Sec.: The lighting delay period is about 20 seconds. Tap the function to select the setting and close the window.

30 Sec.: The lighting delay period is about 30 seconds. Tap the function to select the setting and close the window.

To close the window without changing the setting, tap X.

#### Leaving home feature

The Leaving home feature can be enabled or disabled in the Infotainment System. The lighting delay period can also be adjusted in the Infotainment System.

Off: Feature is switched off. Tap the function to select the setting and close the window.

10 Sec.: The lighting delay period is about 10 seconds. Tap the function to select the setting and close the window.

20 Sec.: The lighting delay period is about 20 seconds. Tap the function to select the setting and close the window.

30 Sec.: The lighting delay period is about 30 seconds. Tap the function to select the setting and close the window.

To close the window without changing the setting, tap X.

#### Switching the Coming home and Leaving home features on and off

The Coming home feature must be switched on manually. The Leaving home feature is automatically controlled by a low-light sensor.

Coming home	Action
Switch on:	– Switch off the ignition.
	– Operate the headlight flasher for about 1 second ⇒ <i>Turn signal lever and high beam switch</i> .
	Opening the driver door switches on the Coming home feature. The <i>delay period</i> starts when the last vehicle door or the trunk lid is closed.
Switch off:	– Automatically after the preset delay period is over.
	– Automatically if any door or the trunk lid is still open about 60 seconds after activation.
	– Turn the light switch to the <b>0</b> position.
	– Switch on the ignition.

Leaving home	Action
Switch on:	– Unlock the vehicle when the light switch is <i>not</i> in the <b>0</b> position and the low-light sensor registers <i>darkness</i> .
Switch off:	– Automatically after the preset delay period is over.
	– Lock the vehicle.
	– Turn the light switch to the <b>0</b> position.
	– Switch on the ignition.

The background lighting in the outside mirrors lights up the area close to the doors while you are getting into or out of the vehicle. It is switched on when the vehicle is unlocked, a vehicle door is opened, or the Coming home or Leaving home feature is activated. If the vehicle is equipped with a light sensor, the background lighting in the outside mirrors is only switched on in darkness.



If the Coming home feature is switched on and the driver door is opened, no acoustic warning will sound to warn that the light is still on.

## Instrument panel lighting and headlight range adjustment



Fig. 82 Next to the steering wheel: Control for instrument cluster lighting.

Read and follow the introductory information and safety information first ⇒ [Introduction to the subject](#)

### Instrument panel lighting

When the lights are on, the brightness of the instrument panel lighting is adjusted by turning the thumbwheel ⇒ [Fig. 82](#).

- Push and release button; the button pops out to let you change the adjustment.
- Set the desired brightness and push the button back in.

In vehicles with daytime running lights (DRL), the instrument cluster lighting switches off automatically when it is dark outside or when driving through tunnels, for example. You will need to switch the headlights on manually when this happens, so that the vehicle's taillights will turn on ⇒ [Lights and vision](#).

### Dynamic headlight range adjustment on vehicles with Adaptive Front Lighting System

The headlight range is automatically adjusted to the vehicle loading once the Adaptive Front Lighting System is switched on.

#### WARNING

Headlights that are aimed too high because of the way the vehicle is loaded can blind and distract other drivers. This can lead to a crash and serious personal injuries.

- Always adjust headlights to loading conditions so that the light cone do not blind others.

#### WARNING

If dynamic headlight range adjustment does not work properly or at all, the headlights could blind and distract other drivers. This can lead to a crash and serious personal injuries.

- Have headlight range adjustment checked immediately by an authorized Volkswagen dealer or an authorized Volkswagen Service Facility.

## Interior and reading lights

Read and follow the introductory information and safety information first ⇒ [Introduction to the subject](#)

Button	Function
	Ambient lighting on or off ⇒ <a href="#">Ambient lighting</a> .
	Interior lights on.
	Door contact switch-center position.
	Interior lights go on automatically when the vehicle is unlocked, a door is opened, or the vehicle key is removed from the ignition. The lights go out again a few seconds after you close the door. They also go out when you lock the vehicle or switch on the ignition.
	Reading light on or off.

Glove and luggage compartment lights




The glove compartment and luggage compartment may have lights that come on automatically when they are opened and go off when they are closed.

### Footwell lighting

The footwell lighting lights up the front footwells on the driver and passenger sides when the parking lights or low beams are switched on.

The brightness can be adjusted in the Infotainment System.

- Press the **CAR** Infotainment button.
- Tap the Settings function key on the screen.
- Select the menu item Lights and vision in the list.
- Select the menu item Footwell light from the sub-menu.
- Place your finger on the touchscreen slider  and, *keeping your finger on the screen*, move your finger to drag the slider to the desired brightness.
- **OR:** Tap the - or + function key on the screen to move the slider in steps.

### Roof lighting


When the ignition and headlights are switched on, the a light in the front roof console lights up and illuminates the front center console from above.

The brightness is set using the instrument lighting control ⇒ *Instrument panel lighting and headlight range adjustment* .



The interior and reading lights go out when you lock the vehicle or a few minutes after you remove the vehicle key from the ignition. This helps to prevent unnecessary drain on the vehicle battery.



You have to push the  button *twice* to switch on a reading light that has been automatically switched off.

### Ambient lighting

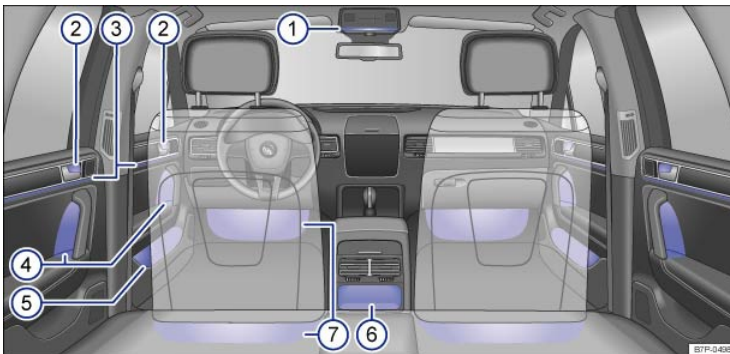


Fig. 83 Inside the vehicle: Areas of the ambient lighting

The ambient lighting ⇒ *Fig. 83* provides indirect light in the following areas:

- ① Interior light with ambient lighting
- ② Illuminated front and rear door openers
- ③ Front and rear door moldings
- ④ Illuminated front and rear door handles
- ⑤ Illuminated front door storage compartments
- ⑥ Illuminated storage compartment in the rear center console
- ⑦ Front and rear footwell lighting


To activate the ambient lighting briefly push the  button in the roof console ⇒ *Fig. 10*.

The ambient lights are automatically activated, when:

- The vehicle is unlocked.
- **OR** you open a door.
- **OR** you pull the remote control vehicle key out of the ignition switch.

The brightness can be adjusted in the Infotainment System.

- Press the **CAR** Infotainment button.
- Tap the Settings function key on the screen.
- Select the menu item Lights and vision in the list.

- Select the menu item Ambient lighting from the sub-menu.
- Place your finger on the touchscreen slider  and, *keeping your finger on the screen*, move your finger to drag the slider to the desired brightness.
- **OR:** Tap the - or + function key on the screen to move the slider in steps.

## Sun protection

### Introduction to the subject

In this chapter you will find information on the following subjects:

⇒ *Sun visors*

⇒ *Windshield made of heat-insulating glass*

⇒ *Rear side window sunshade*

#### WARNING

Sun visors and side window shades can reduce visibility.

- Always stow sun visors and side window shades when not needed to block sun glare.

## Sun visors

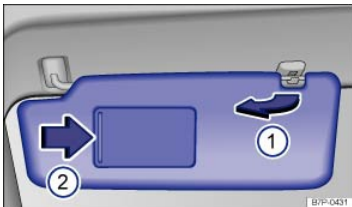


Fig. 84 Sun visor.

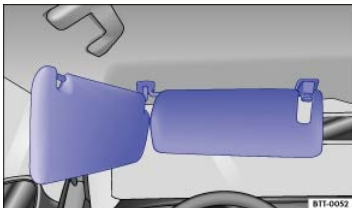


Fig. 85 Double sun visors.

 Read and follow the introductory information and safety information first ⇒  *Introduction to the subject*


Sun visor adjustment:

- Flip the sun visor down toward the windshield.
- Lift out of mounting and move toward the doors ⇒ *Fig. 84①*.
- Rotate the sun visor toward the door.

Vanity mirror and lighting

A vanity mirror is behind a cover in the sun visor. When the cover is slid open ⇒ *Fig. 84②*, the light comes on.

The light goes out when you shut the cover or if you flip the sun visor up again.

 The vanity mirror light goes out after several minutes. This helps to prevent unnecessary drain on the vehicle battery.

## Windshield made of heat-insulating glass

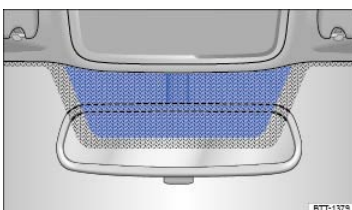



Fig. 86 Heat-reflective windshield with communications window (blue shaded area).

 Read and follow the introductory information and safety information first ⇒ [Introduction to the subject](#)

Windshields made of insulating glass have a transparent metallic infrared-reflecting coating. There is an uncoated area (communications window) just above the inside rear view mirror ⇒ [Fig. 86](#). This serves as a communications window for transmitting signals to and from electronic components and accessories.

The uncoated area must not be blocked on the inside or outside or covered with stickers because this can cause the electronic components to malfunction.

## Rear side window sunshade

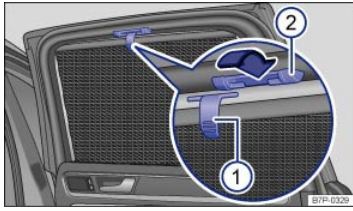



Fig. 87 Sunshade in the rear right window.

 Read and follow the introductory information and safety information first ⇒ [Introduction to the subject](#)

The sunshades for the rear side windows are integrated into the side trim of the respective window.

- Pull the sunshade all the way up by the projecting handle ⇒ [Fig. 87①](#).
- Insert each eye of the handle into the corresponding mount ②. Make sure that the extended sunshade is safely hooked into both mounts ②.
- Unhook the sunshade at the top and guide it down to retract the blind ⇒ ①.

### NOTE

To help prevent damage to the shade or the interior rim, do not let the sunshade retract quickly.

## Windshield wiper and washer

### Introduction to the subject

In this chapter you will find information on the following subjects:

⇒ [Indicator lights](#)

⇒ [Windshield wiper lever](#)

⇒ [Windshield wiper functions](#)

⇒ [Windshield wiper service position](#)

⇒ [Rain sensor](#)

⇒ [Checking and refilling windshield washer fluid](#)

### WARNING

Windshield washer fluid without enough frost protection can freeze on the windshield and reduce visibility.

- Use the windshield washer system with enough frost protection for winter temperatures.
- Never use the windshield wipers/washers when it is freezing without first defrosting the windshield. The washer solution may freeze on the windshield and reduce visibility.

### WARNING

Worn or dirty wiper blades reduce visibility and increase the risk of accidents and severe injuries.

- Always replace wiper blades that are worn, damaged, or do not keep the windshield clear.




### NOTE

To help prevent damage to the wiper blades and the wiper motor when it is cold outside, always make sure that blades are not frozen to the windshield **before** operating the wipers. Using the windshield wiper service position can be helpful in cold weather, so the wipers do not freeze to the windshield

⇒ [Windshield wiper service position](#).

## Indicator lights

Read and follow the introductory information and safety information first ⇒ [Introduction to the subject](#)

Lights up	Possible cause	Proper response
 Rain sensor malfunction.		Switch ignition off and on again. If the indicator light comes on again and stays on, contact an authorized Volkswagen dealer or an authorized Volkswagen Service Facility ⇒ <a href="#">Rain sensor</a> .
 Windshield and/or rear window wiper malfunction.		Switch ignition off and on again. If the indicator light comes on again and stays on, contact an authorized Volkswagen dealer or an authorized Volkswagen Service Facility ⇒ <a href="#">Windshield wiper lever</a> .
 Windshield and rear window washer fluid level too low.		Refill windshield washer reservoir at the next opportunity ⇒ <a href="#">Checking and refilling windshield washer fluid</a> .

When the ignition is switched on, several warning and indicator lights come on briefly for a function check. They go out after a few seconds.

### NOTE

Failure to heed warning lights or text WARNINGS can result in vehicle damage.

## Windshield wiper lever

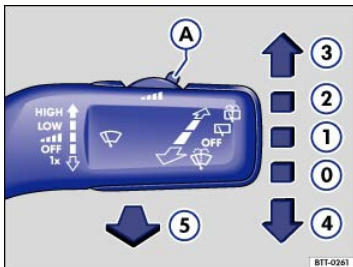



Fig. 88 Operating the front windshield wiper.







Fig. 89 Operating the rear wiper.

Read and follow the introductory information and safety information first ⇒ [Introduction to the subject](#)

Move the lever to the desired position ⇒ :

- ① OFF Wiper switched off.
- ①  Intermittent wiping for the windshield. Adjust the interval settings with switch ⇒ [Fig. 88A](#) (vehicles without rain sensors) or the sensitivity of the rain sensor (vehicles with rain sensors).
- ② LOW Slow wiper speed (speed 1).
- ③ HIGH Fast wiper speed (speed 2).

Move the lever to the desired position ⇒ ①:

- ④  Tap and release lever for *one* wipe cycle at speed 1. Push lever down longer for speed 2 wipe cycle.
- ⑤  Pull the lever toward the steering wheel to activate the windshield washers, then release.
- ⑥  Intermittent wiping for the rear window. The wiper wipes about every 6 seconds.
- ⑦  Press the lever forward as far as it will go to activate the rear window washers, then release.

#### ! NOTE

- To help prevent damage to the wiper blades and the wiper motor when it is cold outside, always make sure that blades are not frozen to the windshield **before** operating the wipers. Using the service position can be helpful in cold weather so the wipers do not freeze to the windshield ⇒ [Windshield wiper service position](#).
- If the ignition is switched off while the wipers are running, the wipers will continue at the same wiping speed when the ignition is switched on again. Frost, ice, snow, leaves, and other objects on the windshield can damage the wipers and the wiper motor.
- Remove snow and ice from the wipers before you begin driving.
- If the wiper blades freeze to the windshield, loosen them carefully. Volkswagen recommends using a deicing spray.

#### ! NOTE

Never switch on the windshield wipers when the windshield is dry because the windshield can be scratched.



The windshield wipers work only if the ignition is switched on and the engine hood is closed. The windshield wipers turn off automatically when the engine hood is opened. The rear windshield wipers turn off automatically when the trunk lid is opened.



If the front wipers are on, the rear wiper is switched on automatically whenever the car is put into reverse.



If the windshield wiper lever is in the rear window intermittent wiping position ⇒ [Fig. 89⑥](#) when the ignition is switched off and back on or the engine is started, rear window wiper action does not resume until the windshield wipers are activated. This is to keep the wiper from working when the window is dry. By switching rear window intermittent wiping off and then back on, you can override this feature and activate the rear window wiper immediately.



The intermittent wiping for the front windshield depends on the driving speed. The higher the speed, the faster the wipers move.




If the wiper blades freeze to the windshield, loosen them carefully. Volkswagen recommends using a deicing spray.



If the front wipers are on, the rear wiper is switched on automatically when backing up.

## Windshield wiper functions

 Read and follow the introductory information and safety information first ⇒ [Introduction to the subject](#)

### Wiper performance in different situations:

When the vehicle is not moving:

The wiper speed changes temporarily to the next lower speed.

During automatic wipe/wash:

While the washer system is working, the climate control system switches to recirculation for about 30 seconds to help prevent the washer fluid odor from entering the vehicle interior.

During intermittent wiping:

Speed-dependent interval control: The higher the vehicle speed, the faster the wipers move.

### Heated washer nozzles

The heating thaws frozen washer nozzles, but not the fluid supply hoses. When the ignition is switched on, the heat applied to the washer nozzles is automatically regulated depending on the outside air temperature.

### Headlight washer system

The headlight washer system cleans the headlight lens.

If the ignition and the headlights (high or low beams) are switched on, the headlights are cleaned the first time and every fifth time the front windshield washers are activated. This happens only when the low or high beams are on when the windshield wiper lever is pulled towards the steering wheel. However, the headlights must still be washed by hand periodically (for instance, during fueling) in order to get rid of hard-to-remove dirt (like insect splatter).

To help make sure that the headlight washer system works during winter weather, always keep the headlight washer nozzles free of snow and remove any ice with deicer spray before driving. Use a deicer spray to remove any ice.



If there is something on the windshield, the wiper will try to wipe it away. If it continues to block the wiper, the wiper will stop moving. Remove the obstacle and switch the wiper on again.

## Windshield wiper service position

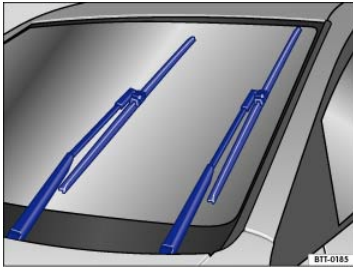


Fig. 90 Windshield wiper in service position.

Read and follow the introductory information and safety information first ⇒ [Introduction to the subject](#)

In the service position, the wiper arms can be lifted away from the windshield ⇒ [Fig. 90](#). The wipers are moved to the service position as follows:

### Manual activation of service position

- The engine hood must be closed ⇒ [Working in the engine compartment](#).
- Switch the ignition off, turn it on briefly, and then off again.
- Press the windshield wiper lever down briefly ⇒ [Fig. 88④](#) when the ignition is off.
- Wipers move into service position.

### Activating service position in the Infotainment System

- The engine hood must be closed ⇒ [Working in the engine compartment](#).
- Switch on the ignition.
- Press the **CAR** Infotainment button.
- Tap the Service function key on the screen.
- Tap the function key Wipers in service pos. to activate or deactivate the service position.

If the box in the Wipers in service pos. function key is checked , the feature is switched on ⇒ [Fig. 187](#).

Fold the wiper arms back onto the windshield before driving! The wiper arms will move back to their original position after driving off or when the windshield wiper lever is activated.

### Lifting and the wiper blades and tilting them away from the windshield

- Put the wiper arms to the service position ⇒
- Do not touch the wiper blades; grasp the wiper arms only at the bracket above the wiper blades.

#### NOTE

- To help prevent damage to the engine hood and the windshield wiper arms, lift the wiper arms away from the windshield only when they are in the service position.
- Always carefully fold the windshield wiper arms down against the windshield before driving the vehicle

## Rain sensor

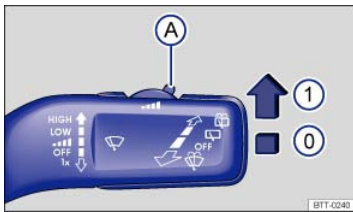


Fig. 91 Windshield wiper lever: Adjusting rain sensor (A).

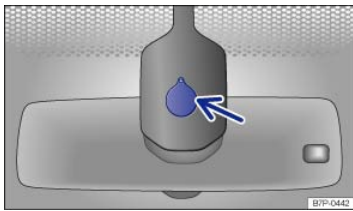


Fig. 92 Sensitive rain sensor surface.

Read and follow the introductory information and safety information first ⇒ [Introduction to the subject](#)

When switched on, the rain sensor automatically shortens or lengthens the delay between wiping cycles depending on how hard it is raining ⇒ . The rain sensor's sensitivity can be adjusted manually. Manual wiping (vehicles without rain sensors) ⇒ [Windshield wiper lever](#).

The rain sensor has to be enabled in the Infotainment System.

Push the lever into the desired position ⇒ [Fig. 91](#):

- Rain sensor off (windshield wiper lever home position).
- Rain sensor active – automatic wiping as needed.
- Adjusting the sensitivity of the rain sensor: Move switch to the right – high sensitivity. Move switch to the left – low sensitivity.

After switching the ignition off and back on again, the rain sensor stays on and works again with the wiper lever in position when the vehicle speed is over 10 mph (16 km/h).

Even if the rain sensor is disabled, it is still necessary to reach this speed to reactivate the wipers when the windshield wiper lever is in the intermittent wiping position. The wipers then wipe at fixed intervals instead of wiping as needed, as they do in rain sensor mode.

#### Enabling and disabling the rain sensor in the Infotainment System

- Switch on the ignition.
- Press the [CAR](#) Infotainment button.
- Tap the Assist systems function key on the screen.
- Tap the function key Rain sensor to enable or disable the rain sensor.

If the box in the Rain sensor function key is checked , the feature is enabled.

#### Possible reasons for changes in the way the rain sensor works

The rain sensor may misread what is happening in the *detection zone of its sensitive rain-sensor surface* ⇒ [Fig. 92](#) (arrow) and not work for a number of reasons, which include:

- Worn out wiper blades: Worn out wiper blades may leave a film of water or wiping streaks; this can cause the wipers to run longer, to wipe more often, or to wipe continuously at high speed.
- Insects: Insects hitting the sensor cause wiping.
- Salt streaks: Salt streaks on the windshield from winter driving can cause wiping more often or continuously on glass that is almost dry.
- Dirt: Caked-on dust, wax, any other buildup on the windshield (lotus effect), or car-wash detergent residue can lower the rain sensor's sensitivity and cause it to react too slowly or not at all.
- Crack in the windshield: If a stone hits and chips the sensitive surface while the rain sensor is on, this will trigger a wiper cycle. After that, the rain sensor will recognize the change and recalibrate itself to respond to the smaller detection zone. Depending on the size of the chip, the sensor's reaction pattern may or may not change.

#### WARNING

The rain sensor cannot always recognize rain and activate the wipers.

- Switch the wipers on manually when water on the windshield reduces visibility.



Clean the sensitive area of the rain sensor regularly and check the wiper blades for wear or damage.



To remove wax and coats of polish safely, we recommend using an alcohol-based windshield cleaner.

## Checking and refilling windshield washer fluid

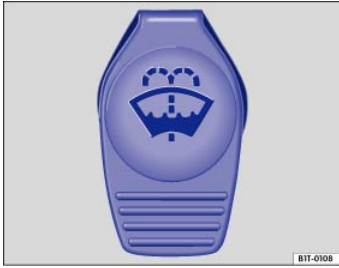


Fig. 93 In the engine compartment: Cap of the windshield washer fluid reservoir.



Read and follow the introductory information and safety information first ⇒ [Introduction to the subject](#)

Check the windshield washer fluid level regularly and refill as necessary.

There is a filter screen in the filler neck of the windshield washer fluid reservoir. The screen helps to keep large particles and debris from getting into and clogging the windshield washer nozzles when adding windshield washer fluid. Take the screen out only to clean it. If the screen is damaged or missing, have it replaced immediately, otherwise the system may become clogged and not work properly.

- Open the engine hood ⇒ .
- The windshield washer fluid reservoir can be identified by the symbol on its cap ⇒ [Fig. 93](#).
- Check if there is still enough windshield washer fluid in the reservoir.
- Refill with an appropriate windshield washer fluid that is recommended by Volkswagen ⇒ . Follow the directions on the container.
- In cold weather, always use a special windshield washer antifreeze solution that will help keep the water from freezing ⇒ .

### Recommended cleaners

- For the warmer months, Windscreen Clear Summer- G 052 184 A1 - or equivalent. Mixing ratio 1:100 (1 part concentrate to 100 parts water) in the windshield washer reservoir.
- All-season Windscreen Clear- G 052 164 A2 - or equivalent. the mixing ratio in winter to 0 °F (-18 °C) about 1:2 (1 part concentrate to 2 parts water), otherwise, mixing ratio 1:4 in the windshield washer reservoir.

### Filling capacity

The windshield washer fluid reservoir holds about 4.5 liters; in vehicles with a headlight washer system about 8 qts (7.5 liters).

#### WARNING

Never mix antifreeze or similar additives into the windshield washer reservoir. This could produce an oily film on the windshield, which would considerably reduce visibility.

- Use clear water with a cleaning solution recommended by Volkswagen.
- If necessary, blend with a suitable windshield washer fluid antifreeze agent.

#### NOTE

- Never mix cleaning solutions recommended by Volkswagen with other cleaning agents. If you do, this could cause sediments or other by-products that can clog the windshield wiper nozzles.
- When refilling, do not confuse one type of operating liquid with another! Otherwise serious malfunctions and engine damage can occur!

## Mirrors



### Introduction to the subject

In this chapter you will find information on the following subjects:

⇒ [Inside mirror](#)

⇒ [Outside mirrors](#)

For your driving safety, it is important that you properly adjust the outside mirrors and the inside mirror before you start driving ⇒ .



The outside mirrors and the inside mirror help you see and adapt your driving to traffic behind you. Remember that the inside and outside rearview mirrors will not show everything behind you. There can be blind spots. Blind spots can be significantly larger if the mirrors are not properly adjusted.

**⚠ WARNING**

Adjusting mirrors when the vehicle is moving can cause driver distraction, accidents, and serious personal injury.

- Always adjust the rearview mirrors when the vehicle is not moving.
- Always be aware of what is happening around the vehicle when changing lanes, passing, turning, or parking. Another vehicle, pedestrian, or object could be in your blind spot.
- Always make sure mirrors are properly adjusted and the view to the rear is not reduced by moisture, ice, snow, or other things.

**⚠ WARNING**

Auto-dimming mirrors contain an electrolyte fluid which can leak if the mirror glass is broken. Electrolyte fluid can irritate the skin, eyes, and respiratory system.

- Repeated or prolonged exposure to electrolyte fluid can irritate the respiratory system, especially among people with asthma or other respiratory conditions. Get fresh air immediately by leaving the vehicle or, if that is not possible, open windows and doors all the way.
- If electrolyte fluid gets into the eyes, flush them thoroughly with large amounts of clean water for at least 15 minutes; medical attention is recommended.
- If electrolyte fluid contacts skin, flush affected area with clean water for at least 15 minutes and then wash affected area with soap and water; medical attention is recommended. Thoroughly wash affected clothing and shoes before reuse.
- If swallowed, and the person is conscious, rinse mouth with water for at least 15 minutes. Get medical attention immediately. Do not induce vomiting unless instructed to do so by a medical professional.

**! NOTE**

Broken glass in the auto dimming mirrors can cause electrolyte fluid leakage. Liquid electrolyte leaked from a broken mirror glass will damage any plastic surfaces it comes in contact with. Clean up spilled electrolyte fluid immediately with clear water and a sponge.

## Inside mirror

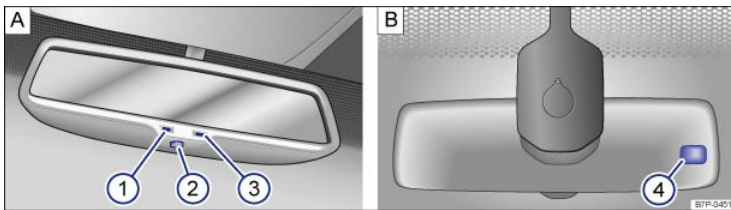


Fig. 94 Auto-dimming inside mirror (if applicable).

Read and follow the introductory information and safety information first ⇒ [Introduction to the subject](#)

Adjust the inside mirror to make sure that there is good visibility through the rear window.

For example, visibility through the rear window could be impaired if there is a sunshade on the rear window or clothing on the luggage compartment cover, or if the rear window is covered with ice, snow, or dirt.

Auto-dimming inside mirror (if applicable)

**Key to ⇒ Fig. 94 :**

- ① Indicator light
- ② Switch
- ③ Sensor for recognizing entry of light from rear
- ④ Sensor for recognizing entry of light from front

The auto-dimming feature can be switched on and off with the switch on the inside mirror ⇒ [Fig. 94②](#). When auto-dimming is activated, the indicator light ① is on

If the ignition is switched on, the sensor ③ *automatically* darkens the inside mirror depending on the amount of light shining into the vehicle from the rear.

The auto-dimming feature is deactivated when you shift the transmission into reverse or switch on the interior lights or the reading light.

Do not attach external navigation devices to the windshield or in the vicinity of the auto-dimming inside mirror ⇒ .

**⚠ WARNING**

The illuminated display on an external navigation device can cause the auto-dimming inside mirror to malfunction, which can result in crashes and serious injuries.

- Malfunctions in the auto-dimming function can result in the rearview mirror being unable to evaluate the exact distance of vehicles in the rear or other objects.



If the light striking the sensor is filtered or blocked (such as by a sunshade), the auto-dimming inside mirror will not work properly or may not work at all.

## Outside mirrors

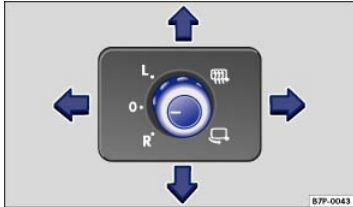


Fig. 95 In the driver door: Adjusting knob for outside mirrors.

Read and follow the introductory information and safety information first ⇒ [Introduction to the subject](#)

Turn the rotary knob to the desired position:

- Fold the outside mirror in toward the vehicle body ⇒ .
- Switch on outside mirror heating. Heats only at outside air temperatures below +68 °F (+20 °C).
- L** Adjust the left outside mirror by pressing the knob to left/right and up/down.
- R** Adjust the right outside mirror by pressing the knob to left/right and up/down.
- O** Neutral position. Outside mirror folded out, no heating or adjustment possible.

### Memory for front passenger side mirror (when backing up)

- Choose the remote control vehicle key that will be used with the settings about to be made.
- Unlock the vehicle with that remote control key.
- Set the electronic parking brake.
- Switch on the ignition.
- Shift the transmission into neutral.
- Press the **CAR** Infotainment button.
- Tap the Settings function key on the screen.
- Select Seat settings from the list.
- Check the check box in the Driver seat remote control key  function key.
- Shift the transmission into reverse.
- Adjust the passenger outside mirror for a clear view of the curb, for example.
- The adjusted mirror position is automatically stored and assigned to the vehicle key that used to unlock the vehicle. The preselected position will be recalled when the key assigned to that mirror adjustment position is used again. For vehicles with memory seat, refer to ⇒ [Seat functions](#).

### Recalling passenger side mirror settings

- Turn the adjusting knob for the side mirrors to the **R** position.
- Shift the transmission into reverse gear with the ignition switched on.
- The mirror moves back to the regular position when the vehicle moves forwards faster than about 10 mph (15 km/h) or the adjusting knob is turned to the **O** or **L** position.

Improper use of the folding outside mirrors can cause personal injury.

- Always make sure that nobody is in the way when folding the mirrors in or out.
- Make sure that you do not get your finger caught between the mirror and the mirror base when moving the mirrors.


#### WARNING


Incorrectly estimating distances with the right outside mirror can cause collisions and serious injury.


- The right outside mirror has a convex (curved) surface. This widens your field of vision. But vehicles or other objects seen in a convex mirror will look smaller and farther away than they really are.
- If you use the right outside mirror to judge distances from vehicles behind you when changing lanes, you could estimate incorrectly and cause a crash and serious injuries.
- Whenever possible, use the inside mirror to more accurately judge distance and size of vehicles or other objects seen in the convex mirror.
- Always make sure you have a clear view to the rear of the vehicle.

#### NOTE

- Always fold in the outside mirrors when taking the vehicle through an automatic car wash.
- Never fold power mirrors in manually because doing so could damage the electrical drive.

 To reduce fuel consumption, use outside mirror heating only when needed.

 When first switched on, outside mirror heating works with maximum heat for about 2 minutes.

 If power mirror adjustment does not work, the outside mirrors can be adjusted by hand by pressing on the edges of the mirror surface.

## Transporting

### Driving tips

#### Introduction to the subject


In this chapter you will find information on the following subjects:

⇒ *Stowing luggage*

⇒ *Driving with an open trunk lid*

⇒ *Driving a loaded vehicle*

⇒ *Weights and axle weights*

Always stow heavy objects in the luggage compartment and make sure that the rear seat backrests are securely latched. Always use the tie-downs in the luggage compartment and secure the objects with suitable straps. Never overload the vehicle. Remember that the vehicle load, as well as how it is distributed, can affect vehicle handling and braking ⇒ .

#### WARNING

Unsecured or incorrectly stowed items can fly through the vehicle, causing serious personal injury during hard braking or sharp steering or in an accident. Loose items can also be struck and thrown through the passenger compartment by the front airbags if they inflate. To help reduce the risk of serious personal injury:

- Always stow all objects securely in the vehicle.
- Always keep storage compartments closed while driving.
- Do not stow hard, heavy, or sharp objects in open bins in the vehicle or on top of the instrument panel.
- Remove hard, heavy, and sharp objects from clothing and bags in the vehicle interior and stow securely. Always put heavy items in the luggage compartment.
- Always secure objects in the passenger compartment properly with suitable straps so that they cannot move into the deployment area of a side or front airbag during braking in a sudden maneuver, or in a collision.
- Always make sure that there is nothing on the front passenger seat when the backrest is folded forward. When the backrest is folded forward, even light objects could be pushed into the seat cushion and cause the weight-sensing mat in the seat to register enough weight to turn the airbag on.
- Always make sure that the PASSENGER AIR BAG **OFF** light is on and stays on whenever the backrest of the front passenger seat is folded forward ⇒ *Airbag system*.


- Passengers must never ride in an incorrect seating position because objects are being transported in the vehicle.
- Never let anybody sit in a seat that is blocked by objects being carried in the vehicle.

#### WARNING

Heavy loads will influence the way your vehicle handles and increase stopping distances. Heavy loads that are not properly stowed or secured can cause loss of control and serious injury.

- Secure the load properly to keep it from shifting.
- Always remember when transporting heavy objects that a change in the center of gravity also changes the way your vehicle handles:
  - Always distribute the load as evenly as possible.
  - Secure heavy objects properly as far forward in the luggage compartment as possible.
  - Always tie down heavy items securely with suitable straps using the tie-downs in the luggage compartment.
- Securely latch the rear seat backrest in the upright position.
- Never exceed the Gross Axle Weight Rating or the Gross Vehicle Weight Rating on the safety compliance sticker on the left door jamb. Exceeding permissible weight can cause the vehicle to skid and handle differently.
- Always adapt your speed and driving to the heavier load and the weight distribution in the vehicle. Take road, weather, traffic, and visibility conditions into account as well.
- Drive especially carefully and accelerate gently.
- Always accelerate and avoid sudden braking and driving maneuvers.
- Always brake earlier than you would if you were not driving a loaded vehicle.

## Stowing luggage

 Read and follow the introductory information and safety information first ⇒ [Introduction to the subject](#)

Always stow all luggage securely in the vehicle

- Distribute the load in the vehicle, on the roof and in the trailer as evenly as possible.
- Put heavy objects as far forward as possible in the luggage compartment and securely latch the rear seat backrest in the upright position.
- Secure luggage in the luggage compartment to the tie-downs with suitable straps ⇒ [Luggage compartment](#).
- Adjust the headlight range ⇒ [Lights](#).
- Check the pressure in all 4 tires when the tires are still cold. Never reduce air pressure in warm tires to match cold tire inflation pressure. Heed the information on the tire pressure label ⇒ [Tires and wheels](#).
- Pay especially close attention to your vehicle's Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS) when driving with a heavy load ⇒ [Tire Pressure Monitoring System \(TPMS\)](#).


#### NOTE

The defroster heating wires or antenna in the rear window can be damaged by objects that rub against them.



Please review information about loading a trailer and a roof rack ⇒ [Roof rack](#).

## Driving with an open trunk lid

 Read and follow the introductory information and safety information first ⇒ [Introduction to the subject](#)

Driving with an open trunk lid can lead to serious personal injury. If you have to drive with an open trunk lid, make sure that all objects and the lid itself are properly secured and take appropriate measures to keep toxic exhaust fumes from entering the vehicle.

#### WARNING

Driving with an unlatched or open trunk lid can lead to serious personal injuries.

- Never transport objects larger than those fitting completely into the luggage compartment, because the trunk lid cannot be closed properly.
- After closing the trunk lid, always pull up on it to make sure that it is properly closed and cannot open suddenly when the vehicle is moving.
- Always stow all objects securely in the luggage compartment. Loose objects can fall out of the luggage compartment and injure others on the road behind you.

- Drive carefully; anticipate what other drivers will do.
- Avoid abrupt or sudden driving or braking maneuvers, because the unlatched trunk lid can move suddenly.
- Always mark objects sticking out from the luggage compartment clearly for others to see. Obey all applicable legal requirements.
- Never use the trunk lid to clamp or hold objects protruding from the luggage compartment.
- Always remove any luggage rack or other rack mounted on the trunk lid (along with any luggage on the rack) before driving with an open trunk lid.

#### WARNING


Driving with an open trunk lid can cause poisonous carbon monoxide in the engine exhaust to get into the passenger compartment.

- Carbon monoxide causes drowsiness, inattentiveness, poisoning, and loss of consciousness. It can lead to accidents and severe personal injuries.
- Always keep the trunk lid closed while driving to help keep poisonous exhaust fumes from being drawn into the vehicle.
- Never transport objects that are too large to fit completely into the luggage area, because then the trunk lid cannot be fully closed.
- If you absolutely must drive with an open trunk lid, do the following to reduce the risk of carbon monoxide poisoning:
  - Close all windows and the power sunroof.
  - Switch off the climate control system's air recirculation feature.
  - Open all air vents in the instrument panel.
  - Set the fresh air fan to the highest speed.

#### NOTE

The open trunk lid changes the vehicle's length and height.

## Driving a loaded vehicle

 Read and follow the introductory information and safety information first ⇒ [Introduction to the subject](#)

For good handling when driving a loaded vehicle, please observe the following:


- Securely stow all luggage ⇒ [Stowing luggage](#).
- Drive especially carefully and accelerate gently.
- Avoid sudden braking and driving maneuvers.
- Brake earlier than you would if you were not driving a loaded vehicle.
- If applicable, observe information about driving with a trailer ⇒ [Trailer towing](#).
- If applicable, observe information about driving with a roof rack ⇒ [Roof rack](#).

#### WARNING

Heavy loads can change the way your vehicle handles and increase stopping distances. Heavy loads that are not properly stowed or secured can shift suddenly, causing loss of control and serious injury.

- Secure the load properly to keep it from shifting.
- Always remember when transporting heavy objects that they change the vehicle's center of gravity and also the way it handles
  - Always distribute the load as evenly as possible.
  - Secure heavy objects properly as far forward in the luggage compartment as possible.
  - Use your vehicle's luggage compartment tie-downs with suitable straps.
  - Always tie down heavy items securely with suitable straps.
- Securely latch the rear seat backrest in the upright position.
- Never exceed the Gross Axle Weight Rating or the Gross Vehicle Weight Rating on the safety compliance sticker on the left door jamb. Exceeding permissible weight can cause the vehicle to skid and handle differently.
- Always adapt speed and driving to the heavier load and the weight distribution in the vehicle. Take road, weather, traffic, and visibility conditions into account as well.
- Always accelerate gently and avoid sudden braking and driving maneuvers.
- Always brake earlier than you would if you were not driving a loaded vehicle.

## Weights and axle weights


 Read and follow the introductory information and safety information first ⇒ [Introduction to the subject](#)

The actual gross weight of any vehicle depends on the engine, basic equipment, any factory-installed optional equipment for the given model, and any accessories that have been installed. The Gross Vehicle Weight Rating (GVWR) and the Gross front and Rear Axle Weight Ratings (GAWR) for a given vehicle are printed on the vehicle's Safety Compliance Certification Label on the driver door jamb.

The **Gross Vehicle Weight Rating** includes the weight of the vehicle itself with all of its factory-installed equipment, plus a full tank of gasoline, the engine oil and coolant, all vehicle occupants (150 lbs / 68 kg per seating position) and cargo.

The **Gross Axle Weight Ratings** specify the maximum allowable load for each axle.

Determining the Gross Vehicle Weight Rating ⇒ [Tires and wheels](#).

The cargo payload may not be increased by using a roof rack without commensurately reducing the weight from vehicle occupants ⇒ . Determining the Gross Vehicle Weight Rating ⇒ [Tires and wheels](#).

Vehicle payload consists of the combined weight of the following:

- Passengers.
- Total luggage and other cargo.
- Factory-installed or retrofitted accessories.
- Roof load including roof rack system.
- Hitch weight and tongue weight for trailer towing operation.

Please refer to the Gross Vehicle Weight Rating (GVWR) and the Gross front and rear Axle Weight Ratings (GAWR) for your vehicle, which are printed on the vehicle's Safety Compliance Certification Label on the driver door jamb.

### WARNING

Exceeding maximum permissible weight ratings can result in vehicle damage, accidents, and serious personal injury.

- Never let the actual weights at the front and rear axles exceed the permissible Gross Axle Weight Rating. Also, never let the total of these actual weights exceed the Gross Vehicle Weight Rating.
- Always remember that the vehicle's handling and braking will be affected by extra load and the distribution of this load. Adjust your speed accordingly.

### NOTE

- Always distribute the load evenly and as low as possible in the vehicle. The vehicle capacity weight figures apply when the load is distributed evenly in the vehicle (passengers and luggage).
- When transporting a heavy load in the luggage compartment, carry the load as close to the rear axle (as far forward) as possible so that the vehicle's handling and braking are affected as little as possible.

## Luggage compartment

### Introduction to the subject

In this chapter you will find information on the following subjects:

⇒ [Folding the backrest of the rear bench forward and back into place](#)


⇒ [Luggage compartment cover](#)

⇒ [Luggage compartment pass-through](#)

⇒ [Tie-downs](#)

⇒ [Shopping bag hook](#)

⇒ [Luggage compartment floor](#)

Always stow heavy objects in the luggage compartment and make sure that the rear seat backrests are securely latched in their upright position. Always secure objects to the tie-downs with suitable straps. Never overload the vehicle. Remember that the vehicle load, as well as how it is distributed, can affect vehicle handling and braking ⇒ .

### WARNING

An open or unlocked luggage compartment poses special risks for children.

- Close and lock the trunk lid and all doors when the vehicle is not in use. First, make certain that no one is left inside.
- Never leave your vehicle unattended or let children play around the vehicle, especially with the trunk lid left open. A child could crawl into the vehicle and pull the hatch shut, becoming trapped and unable to get out. This could cause severe or fatal injuries.
- A closed vehicle can become very hot or very cold, depending on the season. Temperatures can quickly reach levels that can cause unconsciousness or death, particularly to small children.
- Never let children play in or around the vehicle.
- Never let anyone ride in the luggage compartment.

#### **⚠ WARNING**

Unsecured or incorrectly stowed items can fly through the vehicle, causing serious personal injury during hard braking or sharp steering or in an accident. Loose items can also be struck and thrown through the passenger compartment by the front airbags if they inflate. To help reduce the risk of serious personal injury:

- Always stow all objects securely in the vehicle. Always put luggage and heavy items in the luggage compartment.
- Always secure objects in the passenger compartment properly with suitable straps so that they cannot move into the deployment zone of a side or front airbag during a sudden braking, in a sudden maneuver, or in a collision.
- Always keep storage compartments closed while driving.
- Never stow hard, heavy, or sharp objects in the vehicle's open storage compartments, on the shelf behind the rear seat bench, or on the top of the instrument panel.
- Always remove hard, heavy, or sharp objects from clothing and bags in the vehicle interior and stow them securely in the luggage compartment.

#### **⚠ WARNING**

Transporting heavy objects causes the handling characteristics of the vehicle to change and increases braking distances. Heavy loads which are not properly stowed or secured in the vehicle can lead to a loss of vehicle control and cause serious personal injury.

- Transporting heavy items causes the handling characteristics of the vehicle to change by shifting the vehicle's center of gravity.
- Always distribute luggage evenly and as low as possible within the vehicle. The vehicle capacity weight figures apply when the load is distributed evenly in the vehicle (passengers and luggage).
- Always stow luggage and heavy items in the luggage compartment as far forward of the rear axle as possible and secure them with appropriate straps to the tie-downs provided.
- Never exceed the vehicle's Gross Vehicle Weight Rating or Gross Axle Weight Ratings, which are printed on the Safety Compliance Certification Label located on the door jamb of the driver door. Exceeding the permissible weight can cause the vehicle to skid and behave differently.
- Always adapt your speed and driving style to accommodate your payload and its weight distribution within your vehicle.
- Be especially cautious and gentle when stepping on the accelerator pedal and avoid sudden braking and other maneuvers.
- Brake earlier than you would if you were not driving a loaded vehicle.

#### **ℹ NOTE**

- The defroster heating wires or antenna in the rear window can be damaged by objects that rub against them.
- The antenna wiring in the side windows can be damaged by items rubbing against it.



The ventilation slots between the rear window and the luggage compartment cover must not be blocked so that stale air can escape from the vehicle.

## Folding the backrest of the rear bench forward and back into place



Fig. 96 Lower part of the rear seat bench: Lever to unlock the rear seat backrest by hand.

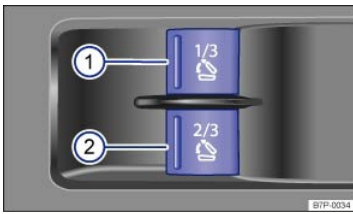


Fig. 97 Right side wall of the luggage compartment: Switches for power release of the rear seat backrest.

Read and follow the introductory information and safety information first ⇒ [Introduction to the subject](#)

The rear seat backrest is divided into 2 sections. Each section of the rear seat backrest can be folded down individually to increase luggage space.

**There are power release switches for the rear seat backrests in the luggage compartment ⇒ Fig. 97 .**

- ① Release switch for the *right-hand* backrest section.
- ② Release switch for the *left-hand* backrest section.

#### Folding the rear seat backrest forward

Before folding down the rear seat backrest, push its head restraint(s) all the way down and slide the seat itself backwards as far as it will go ⇒ [Adjusting the seat position](#).

- Release the rear seat backrest by hand using the lever underneath the seat or the release switches in the luggage compartment ⇒ Fig. 97. The rear seat backrest then folds forward by itself.
- Move the rear seat backrest the rest of the way down by hand and push down on it until it locks into place.
- If the rear backrest is folded down, no one, including children, may ride on the rear seat.

#### Folding the rear backrest back into place

- Release the rear seat backrest by hand using the lever underneath the seat or the release switches in the luggage compartment ⇒ Fig. 97. The rear seat will unlatch and spring up slightly.
- Fold the rear seat backrest back up and push it securely into its latches, making sure it locks securely into place ⇒ . The seat release lever must return to its original position.
- The rear backrest must be securely latched into place for the safety belts on the rear seats to provide optimal protection.
- After putting the seat backrest back up, the seat must be adjusted to the person using it ⇒ [Adjusting the seating position](#).

### WARNING

Improper folding and improper latching of the rear seat backrest can cause serious personal injury.

- Always make sure there are no people or animals in the area around the rear seat backrest when folding it forward.
- Never fold the rear backrest up or down while the vehicle is moving.
- When folding the rear seat backrest back up, make sure that the safety belt does not get caught or damaged.
- Keep hands, fingers, feet and other body parts out of the way when folding the rear seat backrest up and down.
- Each rear seat backrest must be securely latched in the upright position so that the safety belts on the rear seats can provide protection. This is particularly the case for the middle seat on the rear bench.
- If a seat is used with an unsecured backrest, the passenger will move forward together with the rear seat backrest during sudden braking, driving maneuvers or a collision.
- No one, including children, may ride on the rear seats if the rear seat backrest is folded down or not correctly latched.

### NOTE

Before folding the rear seat backrest forward, adjust the front seats so that the rear seat's head restraint or backrest cushion will not butt up against the front seats.

- The weight on the rear seat backrests when folded down must never exceed 110 lbs. (50 kg).

### NOTE

Items in the luggage compartment could be damaged or cause damage when the rear seat is adjusted in the fore and aft direction.



If the vehicle battery charge is weak, power release of the rear seat backrests may not be possible.



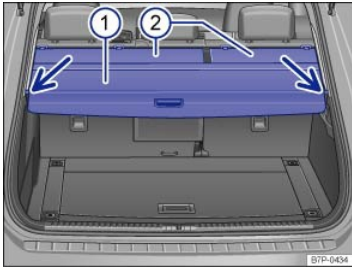


Fig. 98 In the luggage compartment: Closed luggage compartment cover.

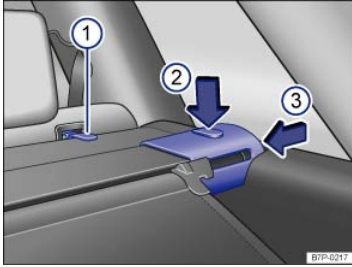


Fig. 99 In the luggage compartment: Removing the luggage compartment cover.

Read and follow the introductory information and safety information first ⇒ [Introduction to the subject](#)

#### Opening the luggage compartment cover

- Grasp the luggage compartment cover ⇒ [Fig. 98①](#) by the handle and pull it slightly to the rear.
- Move the luggage compartment cover down slightly to unhook it from the side retainers (arrows) and then guide it forward to retract it.

#### Closing the luggage compartment cover

- Pull the retracted luggage compartment cover ⇒ [Fig. 98①](#) evenly towards the rear.
- Hook the luggage compartment cover into the left and right side retainers (arrows).

#### Convenience position for the luggage compartment cover

To help make it easier to load the vehicle, the luggage compartment cover can be moved to a higher position.

- With the luggage compartment cover closed, fold up the flap where the handle is located. The luggage compartment cover automatically moves to the convenience position.
- To return the luggage compartment cover to the original position, grasp the handle and pull down evenly. Then hook the luggage compartment cover into the side retainers ⇒ .

#### Removing the luggage compartment cover

- If the gap cover is in use ⇒ [Fig. 98②](#), unhook it from the fastening eyes on the rear seat backrests ⇒ [Fig. 99①](#).
- Push down release button ⇒ [Fig. 99②](#) and push in the end parts of the luggage compartment cover ⇒ [Fig. 99③](#).
- Lift the luggage compartment cover up and out.

#### Reinstalling the luggage compartment cover

- First fit the luggage compartment cover ⇒ [Fig. 98①](#) into the left-hand slot.
- Then fit the other end into the right-hand slot.
- Push down release button ⇒ [Fig. 99②](#) and push in the end parts of the luggage compartment cover ③.
- Push the luggage compartment cover down into the right-hand slot so that it locks into place.
- Make sure that the luggage compartment cover is properly locked into place.
- If there is a gap cover ⇒ [Fig. 98②](#), hook it back into the fastening eyes on the rear seat backrests ⇒ [Fig. 99①](#).

#### WARNING

In a sudden braking or other maneuver, or in a collision, unsecured or improperly secured objects or animals on the luggage compartment cover could cause serious personal injury.

- Never leave hard, heavy or sharp objects in bags or loose on the luggage compartment cover.
- Never let animals ride on the luggage compartment cover.

#### WARNING

The view towards the rear is greatly limited when the luggage compartment cover is in the convenience position.

- Before driving, ensure that the luggage compartment cover is not in the convenience position.

#### NOTE

To help prevent damage to the luggage compartment cover, the luggage compartment may only be loaded to a height at which the luggage compartment cover will not press on the cargo when the trunk lid is closed.

- The defroster heating wires or antenna in the rear window can be damaged by objects that rub against them.



Do not cover the ventilation slots in the side consoles. Otherwise, stale air cannot escape from the vehicle.

## Luggage compartment pass-through

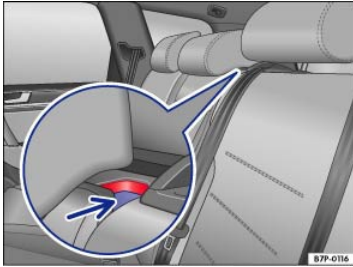


Fig. 100 In the rear backrest: Luggage compartment pass-through opening.



Read and follow the introductory information and safety information first ⇒ [Introduction to the subject](#)

There is a pass-through for transporting things like skis in the rear seat backrest behind the center armrest.

To help prevent soiling the vehicle interior, cover dirty items before sliding them into the pass-through.

If the center armrest is folded down, no one can sit on the middle seat of the rear bench.

### Opening the pass-through

- Push the center head restraint all the way down if necessary ⇒ [Adjusting the seating position](#).
- Push down the release button (arrow) and fold the center section of the rear seat backrest all the way forward.
- Open the trunk lid.
- Slide long objects from the luggage compartment through the pass-through.
- Secure objects with the safety belt.
- Close the trunk lid.

### Closing the pass-through

- Fold the middle part of the rear seat backrest (pass-through) back up (towards the rear) until it locks in to place. The red mark on the release button should no longer be visible ⇒ [Fig. 100](#).
- Close the trunk lid.



The pass-through can also be opened from the luggage compartment. Push down the release button (arrow) and push the center section of the rear seat backrest (pass-through) all the way forward.

## Tie-downs

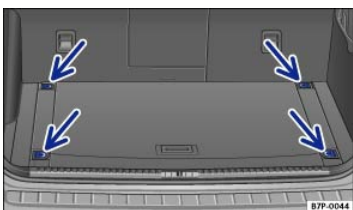


Fig. 101 In the luggage compartment: Tie-downs.



Read and follow the introductory information and safety information first ⇒ [Introduction to the subject](#)

There are tie-downs in the front and back of the luggage compartment, which you can use to secure luggage or other items ⇒ [Fig. 101](#) (arrows).

You have to fold the tie-downs open to use them.

Elastic straps can snap back towards you if they are not properly attached.

If you use elastic straps to secure items in the luggage compartment, be sure to first securely attach them to the tie-downs just behind the rear seat backrest first and then to the tie-downs at the loading edge of the luggage compartment.

Remove the hooks from the tie-downs in the reverse order described above, first from the tie-downs at the loading edge and then from the tie-downs behind the rear seat backrest so that if the hooks come loose suddenly, they will move away from you.

#### ⚠ WARNING

Unsuitable, worn, or damaged tie-down straps (elastic or non-elastic) can snap or come loose during braking or other maneuvers or in a collision. Objects secured with these straps can then come loose and fly through the passenger compartment, causing severe personal injuries or death.

- To help prevent baggage or other items from coming loose and flying around, always use suitable undamaged tie-down straps.
- Securely fasten the tie-down straps to the tie-downs.
- Loose or improperly secured objects in the luggage compartment can slide about suddenly and change the vehicle's handling.
- Secure even small and light objects. Loose objects in the luggage or passenger compartment can fly about during sudden braking maneuvers or in the event of an accident and injure occupants.
- Never exceed the maximum allowable weight force (kilogram force) when securing objects.
- Never secure a child seat to the tie-downs.

#### ⚠ WARNING

Elastic straps have to be stretched when being attached to the tie-downs in the luggage compartment. Hooks on elastic straps can cause serious personal injury if not handled properly and attached securely.

- Always protect eyes and face from injury from the hooks when attaching them to the vehicle and do not let them snap back and hit you.
- Always hold the hooks on elastic straps firmly when attaching to the vehicle and do not let them snap back and hit you.
- First attach the hooks on the straps to the tie-downs at the rear seat backrest in the luggage compartment and then to the tie-downs near the loading edge of the luggage compartment. This way, if one of the hooks on the elastic straps snaps back, it will move away from you, decreasing the risk of personal injury.



The maximum weight force for the tie-downs is about 785 lbs (356 kg).



For suitable straps and luggage stowage systems, please see an authorized Volkswagen dealer or an authorized Volkswagen Service Facility.

## Shopping bag hook

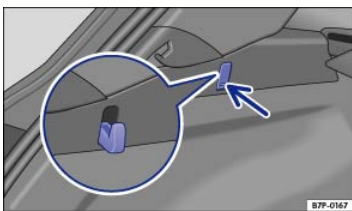


Fig. 102 In the luggage compartment: Shopping bag hook.

Read and follow the introductory information and safety information first ⇒ [⚠ Introduction to the subject](#)

On the left side of the luggage compartment, some vehicles have a pull-down shopping bag hook for hanging light shopping bags.

- Push the bottom of the bag hook (arrow) to fold it out.
- Hang the bag on the hook.

#### ⚠ WARNING

Never use the shopping bag hooks as a tie-downs. The hooks could break off during sudden braking maneuvers or in a collision.

#### ! NOTE

The maximum load for the shopping bag hook is 5 lbs (2.5 kg).

## Luggage compartment floor

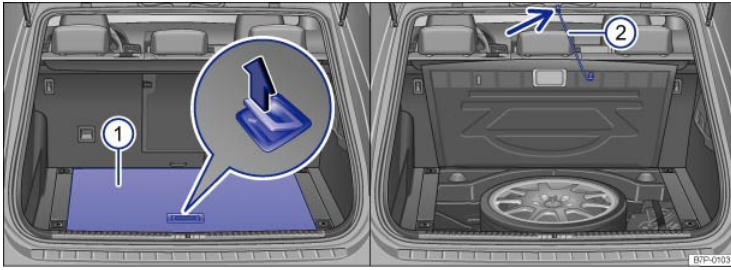


Fig. 103 In the luggage compartment: Lifting luggage compartment floor panel and securing it with retaining strap.

Read and follow the introductory information and safety information first ⇒ [Introduction to the subject](#)

Small objects can also be stowed in a compartment **underneath** the luggage compartment floor.

### Opening and securing the luggage compartment floor panel

- Open the trunk lid.
- Open the luggage compartment cover if it is installed ⇒ [Opening the luggage compartment cover](#).
- Fold up the luggage compartment floor handle (left magnified view) in the direction of the arrow ① and lift the floor panel by the handle.
- Hook retaining strap ② under the luggage compartment floor panel and hang it from the top of the luggage compartment (arrow).

### Unhooking and closing the luggage compartment cover

- Unhook the retaining strap ⇒ [Fig. 103②](#) from the top of the luggage compartment (arrow).
- Hook the retaining strap ② underneath the luggage compartment floor panel ① and lower the floor panel into place.
- Close the luggage compartment cover if you opened it ⇒ [Closing the luggage compartment cover](#).
- Close the trunk lid.

### WARNING

During hard braking or an accident, loose objects can fly through the passenger compartment and cause serious or even fatal injuries.

- Even if the luggage compartment floor panel is properly raised, it is still necessary to secure all objects.
- Objects stowed between the rear seat bench and the luggage compartment floor panel must never be more than 2/3 as high as the raised floor panel.
- Objects stowed between the rear seat bench and the raised luggage compartment floor panel must never weigh more than about 16.5 lbs. (7.5 kg).



If you slide the rear seats forward, there is a gap between the luggage compartment floor and the rear seats. Make certain there are no objects in this space before sliding the rear seats back again.

## Roof rack

### Introduction to the subject

In this chapter you will find information on the following subjects:

⇒ [Attaching the roof rack base carrier and roof rack](#)

⇒ [Securing a load on the roof rack](#)

The roof of your vehicle has been designed to optimize aerodynamics and does not have traditional rain gutters that are used to attach many kinds of roof racks.

Since the rain gutters are molded into the roof to provide efficient aerodynamics, only Volkswagen-approved base carriers and roof racks can be used.

### When should the roof rack be removed?

- When it is no longer needed.
- Before driving through an automatic car wash.
- When the vehicle would otherwise be too high to fit into a space with low clearance, such as a parking garage.

### WARNING

Transporting heavy or bulky loads on the roof rack will change the way the vehicle handles by shifting the vehicle's center of gravity and increasing the wind drag area.

- Always secure the load properly with suitable and undamaged straps so that the load will not shift.
- Cargo that is large, heavy, bulky, long or flat will have a negative effect on the vehicle's aerodynamics, center of gravity and overall handling.
- Always avoid sudden maneuvers and hard braking.
- Always adapt your speed and driving to the heavier load and the weight distribution in the vehicle. Take road, weather, traffic, and visibility conditions into account as well.

#### NOTE

- Always remove the roof rack before driving through an automatic car wash.
- Your vehicle is higher when the roof rack is installed, especially when it is loaded. Compare the vehicle height with existing clearance heights, such as underpasses and garage doors.
- Always make sure that the roof rack system and anything being carried on it does not interfere with the roof antenna, the power sunroof, or the trunk lid.
- Make sure that the trunk lid does not touch items on the roof rack when opened.

✿ If a roof rack is installed, fuel consumption increases due to increased air resistance.

## Attaching the roof rack base carrier and roof rack

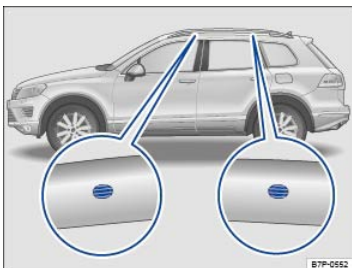


Fig. 104 Attachment points for the base carrier and roof rack.

📖 Read and follow the introductory information and safety information first ⇒ [Introduction to the subject](#)

The base carrier is the basis of a complete roof rack system. For safety reasons, additional attachments are necessary to transport luggage, bicycles, surfboards, skis and small boats. Suitable accessories can be purchased from your authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility.

No base carrier or roof rack can be installed *unless* the vehicle has roof rails ⇒ [Fig. 104](#).

### Attaching the roof rack base carrier and roof rack

Always attach the base carrier and roof rack correctly.

Always carefully follow the installation instructions from the base carrier or roof rack manufacturer.

The mounting holes for positioning are on the inside of the roof rails ⇒ [Fig. 104](#) (magnified view).

Only mount the roof rack base carrier at the holes shown in the illustration.

#### WARNING


Installing or using a base carrier or roof rack improperly can cause the entire system to fly off the vehicle, causing collision and injury.

- Always follow the installation instructions provided by the manufacturer.
- Use the base carrier and roof rack only if they are undamaged and properly installed.
- Only mount the roof rack base carrier on the markings shown in the illustration ⇒ [Fig. 104](#).
- Install the base carrier and roof rack properly.
- Make sure that all bolts and fasteners are properly installed and properly tightened before every trip; and retighten them as needed after driving a short distance. During a long trip, check all bolts and fasteners at each stop.
- Always properly install special fixtures for items such as bicycles, skis, surfboards, etc.
- Do not modify or repair the base carrier or roof rack.



Follow the installation instructions provided for installing the roof rack system. Always carry them in the vehicle.

## Securing a load on the roof rack

 Read and follow the introductory information and safety information first ⇒ [▲ Introduction to the subject](#)

It is not possible to secure a load unless the roof rack system has been properly installed ⇒ [▲](#).

### Maximum permissible roof load

The maximum permissible roof load is **220 lbs. (100 kg)**. The maximum permissible roof load is the combined weight of the roof rack and the items being carried on the roof ⇒ [▲](#).

Be sure you know the weight of the roof rack and the items you want to transport on the roof. Weigh them if necessary. Never carry a total of more than the maximum permissible roof load.

When using a roof rack with a low load limit, do not load the rack to the maximum weight mentioned above. In this case, you may only load the roof rack to the weight limit specified in the system's installation instructions.

### Distributing the load

Distribute the load evenly and secure it properly ⇒ [▲](#).

### Checking the mountings

After the base carrier and roof rack have been installed, check all bolts and fasteners after driving a short time and at regular intervals thereafter.

## WARNING

If the maximum permissible roof load is exceeded, accidents and substantial vehicle damage may occur.

- Never exceed the specified roof load, the maximum gross axle weight rating, or the gross vehicle weight rating.
- Do not exceed the loading capacity of the roof rack, even if the permissible roof load is not fully utilized.
- Always make sure that loads are properly distributed and that heavier items are as far as possible, toward the front.

## WARNING

Loose or improperly secured items can fall off the roof rack and cause accidents and injuries.

- To help prevent baggage or other items from coming loose and flying around, always use suitable undamaged tie-down ropes and ratchet straps.
- Secure the load properly.

## Trailer towing

### Introduction to the subject

In this chapter you will find information on the following subjects:

⇒ [Technical requirements](#)

⇒ [Hitching up and connecting a trailer](#)

⇒ [Loading the trailer](#)

⇒ [Driving with a trailer](#)

⇒ [Ball mount](#)

⇒ [Retrofitting a trailer hitch](#)

⇒ [Maximum permissible trailer weight](#)

Obey country-specific requirements about trailer towing and trailer hitches.

Your Volkswagen was mainly designed for carrying passengers. If you plan to tow a trailer, please remember your vehicle will be performing a job for which it was not primarily intended. The additional load will affect durability, handling, fuel economy, and performance, and may require the vehicle to be serviced more often.

Trailer towing not only places more stress on the vehicle, it calls for more concentration from the driver. Always follow the operating and driving instructions given, and use common sense.

Under winter conditions, install winter tires on the vehicle **and** the trailer.

### Tongue weight

The *maximum* permissible trailer tongue weight exerted on the ball mount must not exceed **617 lbs (280 kg)**.

## WARNING

Riding in a trailer is dangerous and may be illegal.

## WARNING

Improper use of the trailer hitch can cause accidents and injuries. An improperly installed, incorrect, or damaged trailer hitch can cause the trailer to separate from the towing vehicle and cause serious personal injuries.

- Only use an undamaged, properly mounted trailer hitch.
- Never repair or modify the trailer hitch.
- To reduce the risk of injury in rear-end collisions, and the risk to pedestrians and cyclists when the vehicle is parked, always remove the ball mount when you are not towing a trailer.
- Never install a weight distributing or load equalizing trailer hitch on your vehicle. The vehicle was not designed for these kinds of trailer hitches. The trailer hitch attachment can fail, causing the trailer to tear loose from the vehicle.

## WARNING

Improper trailer towing can cause loss of vehicle control and serious personal injury.

- Driving with a trailer and carrying heavy or large things can change the way the vehicle handles, increase the distance it needs to stop safely, and cause accidents.
- Always secure the load properly with suitable and undamaged straps so that the load will not shift.
- Always adapt your speed and driving to the heavier load and the weight distribution in the vehicle. Take road, weather, traffic, and visibility conditions into account as well.
- Reduce your speed even more than you otherwise would when going downhill and under unfavorable load, weather, or wind conditions.
- Trailers with a high center of gravity tip more easily than trailers with a low center of gravity.
- Always avoid sudden maneuvers and hard braking.
- Be especially careful when passing other vehicles.
- Reduce speed immediately if the trailer shows the slightest sign of swaying.
- Never try to stop the swaying by accelerating.
- Always obey speed limits. In some areas, the speed limits for vehicles towing trailers are lower than for vehicles without trailers. Never drive faster than 50 mph - 80 km/h (under exceptional circumstances 60 mph - 100 km/h) when towing a trailer. This applies even if the local speed limit is higher.



If you are driving a new vehicle or a vehicle with a new or rebuilt engine, do not tow a trailer during the break-in period, about 600 miles (1,000 km) ⇒ [Parts, accessories, repairs and modifications](#).



If you tow a trailer, your vehicle may need maintenance more often because of the extra load it has to move.



When you are not towing, remove the trailer hitch ball. This helps keep the trailer hitch from causing damage to your vehicle and to others if your vehicle is hit from behind.




Some models need a trailer hitch to tow or tow-start other vehicles. You may want to always carry the ball mount in the vehicle after it has been removed. Be sure to stow it securely.

## Technical requirements



Read and follow the introductory information and safety information first ⇒ [Introduction to the subject](#)

Use only a weight-carrying trailer hitch designed and approved for the gross weight of the trailer you want to tow. The trailer hitch must be suitable for your vehicle and trailer and must be securely bolted to the appropriate place on the vehicle chassis. Use only a trailer hitch with a removable ball mount. Always check with the trailer hitch manufacturer to make sure that you are using the correct trailer hitch and carefully follow the hitch manufacturer's instructions. Never install a weight distributing or load equalizing trailer hitch on your vehicle. The vehicle is not designed for this kind of trailer hitch ⇒ .

Your authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility has the genuine Volkswagen hitch receiver, ball mount and electrical kit that has been specifically approved for your vehicle.

### Do not use a bumper-mounted trailer hitch

Never install a trailer hitch on the bumper or on the bumper attachments. The trailer hitch must not interfere with the impact-absorbing bumper system. Do not make

any changes to the vehicle exhaust and brake systems. From time to time, check that all trailer hitch mounting bolts are securely fastened. When you are not towing, remove the trailer hitch. This helps keep the trailer hitch from causing damage if your vehicle is hit from behind.

### Engine cooling system

Towing a trailer makes the engine and its cooling system work harder. It is important that the engine cooling system is up to the job. Make sure that the cooling system has enough coolant.

### Trailer brakes

If your trailer has its own brakes, make sure it meets all regulations. The trailer brake system must never be directly connected to the vehicle's brake system.

### Safety chains

Always use safety chains between your vehicle and the trailer ⇒ [Hitching up and connecting a trailer](#).

### Trailer taillights

Trailer lights must meet all regulations ⇒ [Hitching up and connecting a trailer](#).

Never connect the trailer lights directly to the electrical system of your vehicle. Be sure to check with your authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility about correct wiring, switches and relays.

### Outside mirrors

If you cannot see the traffic behind you using the regular outside mirrors, then you must install extended mirrors. Extended mirrors may also be required by law in some countries/states/provinces. Always adjust the outside mirrors before driving. It's vital that you always have a clear view to the rear of the vehicle.

### Maximum power consumption for the trailer

Do not exceed the power ratings listed in the chart below.

Electrical load	Maximum power
Brake lights total	108 watts
Turn signals per side	54 watts
Side marker lights total	100 watts
Taillights total	54 watts

### WARNING

- An improperly installed or incorrect trailer hitch can cause a trailer to separate from the tow vehicle and cause serious personal injuries.
- If you don't have to tow a trailer any more, remove the entire trailer hitch. Always seal all bolt holes to prevent water and deadly exhaust fumes from getting into the vehicle.

### NOTE

- If the trailer lights are not connected properly, the vehicle's electronics may be damaged.
- If the trailer uses too much electricity, the vehicle's electronics may be damaged.
- Never connect the electrical system for the trailer directly to the electrical connections for the rear lights or to any other unsuitable power sources. Use only a suitable connector to provide power to the trailer.




If you tow a trailer frequently, Volkswagen recommends having the vehicle serviced between the regular maintenance and inspection intervals because of the extra load it has to pull.



In some countries an additional fire extinguisher must be carried if the total weight of the trailer exceeds 5,512 lbs (2,500 kg).

## Hitching up and connecting a trailer

 Read and follow the introductory information and safety information first ⇒ [Introduction to the subject](#)

### Safety chains

Always make sure that the safety chains are properly attached to the towing vehicle. Leave enough slack in the chains so that you can go around corners without stretching the chains. The safety chains must not drag on the ground, however.



## Trailer electrical socket

The vehicle is equipped with a setup for connecting a trailer socket. The electrical connection between the towing vehicle and the trailer is a conventional 7 pin trailer socket.

## Trailer taillights

Make sure that the trailer lights work properly and meet legal requirements. Do not exceed the maximum power consumption for the trailer → [Maximum power consumption for the trailer](#).

The trailer is connected to the anti-theft alarm (if equipped):

- When the vehicle has a factory installed anti-theft alarm and a factory installed trailer hitch.
- When the trailer is not equipped with LED taillights.
- When the trailer is electrically connected to the towing vehicle via the trailer socket.
- When the vehicle and trailer electric systems are functional, fault-free and undamaged.
- When the vehicle is locked with the remote control vehicle key and the anti-theft alarm is active.

When the vehicle is locked, the alarm will be triggered as soon as the electrical connection to the trailer is interrupted.

Always switch off the anti-theft alarm when a trailer is being hitched or unhitched. The tilt sensor could otherwise trigger an alarm unnecessarily.

## ⚠ WARNING

Improper connections to the vehicle electrical system can cause malfunctions that affect the entire vehicle electrical system, which can lead to accidents and serious personal injury.

- Have any work on the electrical system done by an authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility.
- Never connect the electrical system for the trailer directly to the electrical connections for the rear lights or to any other unsuitable power sources. Use only a suitable connector to provide power to the trailer.

## ! NOTE

Never attach a trailer to the vehicle or leave it attached to the vehicle when the trailer is supported by a trailer jack or blocks. Various things (such as a change in trailer or vehicle load or a flat tire) can lower or raise the vehicle. This subjects the trailer hitch and the trailer to strong forces that can damage the vehicle or the trailer.



Any problems with the vehicle's electrical system when attached to a trailer should be checked by an authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility.



If the engine is switched off and accessories in the trailer are on and use electricity from the vehicle, the vehicle battery will be drained as long as the electrical systems of the vehicle and the trailer are connected.



For technical reasons, trailers with LED taillights cannot be integrated into the anti-theft alarm system.

## Loading the trailer



Read and follow the introductory information and safety information first → [Introduction to the subject](#)

### Maximum permissible trailer weight and tongue weight

Maximum permissible trailer weight is the load that the vehicle can tow → [Introduction to the subject](#). The tongue load or tongue weight is the load pressing down on the trailer hitch ball mount → [Maximum permissible trailer weight](#).

The maximum permissible trailer weight and tongue weight for your vehicle are listed on → [Maximum permissible trailer weight](#) in this Manual.

The trailer load and tongue weight on the type identification plate for the trailer hitch are only test values. The vehicle-specific figures are often *lower than* these values. In some countries, but generally not in the United States, the vehicle-specific figures are listed in the official vehicle documents. Specifications in official vehicle documents always take precedence.

To help ensure optimum handling and driving safety, Volkswagen recommends always using the maximum permissible **tongue weight**. If the tongue weight is too low, the vehicle and trailer will not handle as well.

Tongue weight increases the load on the rear axle and, in turn, reduces the remaining load your vehicle can carry → [Determining the correct load limit](#).

### Combined towing weight

Combined towing weight is the weight of the loaded towing vehicle plus the weight of the loaded trailer.

This vehicle has not been designed to tow a Class III trailer and must never be retrofitted to tow a Class III trailer. Always make sure that your vehicle has been designed to tow the trailer you want to use and that is legal to tow the trailer where you will be driving.

### Loading the trailer

The weight distribution in the vehicle and trailer must be balanced. Use the maximum permissible tongue weight and make sure that the load in the trailer is evenly distributed and that it is not front-heavy or tail-heavy:

- Distribute the load in the trailer so that heavy objects are directly above the axle or as close as possible to the axle.
- Secure loads properly on the trailer.

### Tire pressure

Always follow the trailer manufacturer's tire pressure recommendations for the trailer tires.

When towing, inflate the towing vehicle's tires to the maximum permissible pressure listed on the tire pressure label ⇒ [Tires and wheels](#).

### WARNING

Exceeding the gross weight ratings for axle, tongue, vehicle, trailer or combined weight can cause accidents and serious personal injury.

- Never exceed the specified values.
- Never let the actual weights at the front and rear axles exceed the Gross Axle Weight Ratings. Never let the combined front and rear weights exceed the Gross Vehicle Weight Rating.

### WARNING

Trailer loads that are not properly secured can shift when the vehicle is moving or braking and suddenly change the way the vehicle handles, causing accidents and severe injuries.

- Always load the trailer properly.
- Always secure the load properly with suitable, undamaged straps that can be tightened so that the load cannot shift.

## Driving with a trailer

 Read and follow the introductory information and safety information first ⇒ [Introduction to the subject](#)

### Headlight settings

Towing a trailer can raise the front end of the vehicle enough for the low beams to blind other road users. Use the headlight range adjustment feature to lower the light cones as required. If your vehicle does not have headlight range adjustment, have the headlights adjusted by an authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility. Vehicles with Xenon headlights self-adjust to vehicle load and do not need manual adjustment.




### Special towing considerations

- If the trailer has an **overrun brake**, apply the brakes *gently at first* and then firmly. This helps to prevent sudden brake shock and helps prevent trailer wheels from locking up.
- Due to the combined towing weight including the higher gross vehicle weight, the stopping distance is longer.
- Before driving downhill, especially on hills that are long or steep, shift into a lower gear so that the engine helps to brake the vehicle. Otherwise, the brake system could overheat and might fail.
- The vehicle's center of gravity and, in turn, the vehicle's handling, will change because of the trailer load and the increased combined towing weight of the vehicle and trailer.
- Weight distribution is especially bad if the towing vehicle is empty and the trailer is loaded. If you absolutely must drive with this combination, drive with extra care and at a reduced speed.

### Starting off with a trailer on hills

Depending on how steep the hill is and the combined towing weight, a parked vehicle with trailer can roll backwards when you first start moving.

When starting off with a trailer on a hill:

- Depress and hold the brake pedal.
- Put the transmission in Drive (D).
- Press the  button once to deactivate the electronic parking brake ⇒ [Braking and parking](#).
- Pull and hold the  button to hold the vehicle and trailer with the electronic parking brake ⇒ [Braking and parking](#).
- At the same time, release the brake pedal and gradually depress the accelerator. Do not release the  button until the engine starts to move the vehicle forward. If your vehicle has an automatic transmission, you can also depress and hold the brake pedal for added braking and then let up on the brake pedal when you feel that the vehicle "wants" to move forward.

- Drive ahead slowly.

## ⚠ WARNING

Improper trailer towing can cause loss of vehicle control and serious personal injury.

- Driving with a trailer and carrying heavy or bulky items changes the way the vehicle handles and increases the distance it needs to stop safely.
- Always watch what is happening up ahead and around you. Brake earlier than you would if you were not towing a trailer.
- Always adapt your speed and driving to the heavier load and the weight distribution in the vehicle. Take road, weather, traffic, and visibility conditions into account as well.
- Reduce your speed even more than you otherwise would when going downhill and under unfavorable load, weather, or wind conditions.
- Drive especially carefully and accelerate gently. Always avoid sudden maneuvers and hard braking.
- Be especially careful when passing other vehicles.
- Reduce speed immediately if the trailer shows even the slightest sign of swaying.
- Never try to stop the swaying by accelerating.
- Always obey speed limits. In some areas speed limits for vehicles towing trailers are lower than for vehicles without trailers.

## Ball mount

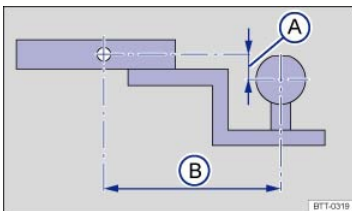


Fig. 105 Dimensions of the ball mount support.

📖 Read and follow the introductory information and safety information first ⇒ ⚠ *Introduction to the subject*

If you must tow a trailer, you must have the necessary electrical wiring and socket together with a suitable trailer hitch installed. Because towing a trailer places a great deal of stress on the vehicle, the attachment of a trailer to the vehicle and the dimensions of the receiver and ball mount are very important so that the extra forces the vehicle has to withstand can be properly handled.

Depending on its equipment, certain parts required for the installation of a trailer hitch may already have been installed at the factory. If your vehicle does not already have the preparation package installed, your authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility can install the necessary parts and equipment including the proper trailer hitch for you.

The receiver used requires both a ball mount and a ball that meet special requirements regarding geometry and size. This applies to both the height of the ball above the surface where it attaches ⇒ Fig. 105A, and the pin-to-ball distance ⇒ Fig. 105B.

These dimensions are important because they help determine the way that the forces that arise during towing are applied to the receiver and its attachments to the vehicle. If you buy a different ball mount and ball, make sure that they meet the following specifications.

### Ball mount dimensions

- The drop height A from the center of the ball to the center of the hole for the securing pin on the ball mount must be at least  $1 \frac{1}{4}$  inches (32.3 mm) and at most  $2 \frac{7}{8}$  inches (73 mm).
- The pin-to-ball distance B from the center of the ball to the center of the hole for the securing pin on the ball mount must be no more than  $6 \frac{1}{8}$  inches (157.3 mm).
- The ball diameter must be no more than 2 inches (51 mm).

Volkswagen recommends that you have an authorized Volkswagen dealer or an authorized Volkswagen Service Facility install the electrical system and socket.

A ball mount and ball combination that does not meet these specifications can damage your vehicle and may even fail in use ⇒ ⚠.

Never install a weight distributing or load equalizing trailer hitch on your vehicle. The vehicle is not designed for this kind of trailer hitch ⇒ ⚠.

## ⚠ WARNING

An improperly installed or unsuitable trailer hitch can cause the trailer to separate from the towing vehicle and result in a major accident with serious personal injuries.

- Have any trailer hitch retrofit or other work on a trailer hitch done by a qualified workshop.

## ⚠ CAUTION

The ball mount sticks out behind the rear bumper and can cause injury to pedestrians and cyclists.

- To reduce the risk of injury in rear-end collisions, and the risk to pedestrians and cyclists when the vehicle is parked, always remove the ball carrier when you are not towing a trailer.

**NOTE**

- Never use a ball larger than 2 inches (51 mm) on your vehicle. The vehicle was not designed to tow heavier trailers with a receiver larger than the specified ball. The increased loads can damage the attachment points for the trailer hitch.
- Never use an adapter to increase the size of the trailer hitch receiver to more than 2 inches (50.8 mm) to tow a trailer that is heavier than the maximum permissible trailer weight that your vehicle can tow.
- You can use an adapter if required for the proper installation of a bicycle rack or other similar carrier as long as the maximum weight limits are observed. When using bicycle racks or similar carriers make sure that the rear lights are not blocked.
- Only use trailer hitches that are approved by the hitch manufacturer for your vehicle and model.

### Retrofitting a trailer hitch

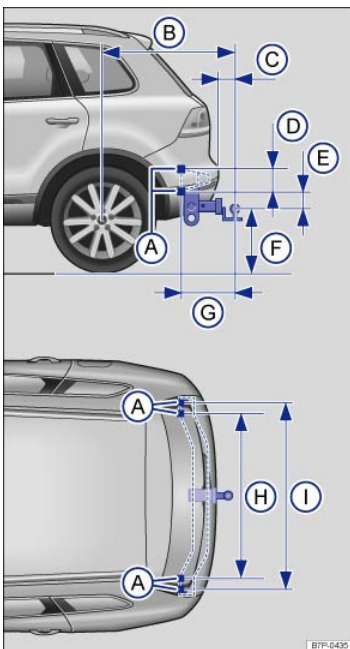


Fig. 106 Dimensions and attachment points for retrofitting a trailer hitch.

Read and follow the introductory information and safety information first ⇒ [Introduction to the subject](#)

Volkswagen recommends having the trailer hitch retrofit performed by a qualified workshop because cooling system modifications or the installation of heat shields may be necessary. Volkswagen recommends that you see an authorized Volkswagen dealer or an authorized Volkswagen Service Facility before having a hitch installed on your vehicle.

When retrofitting a trailer hitch, the specified distance dimensions must be strictly adhered to. Under no circumstances may the distance from the center of the hitch ball to the surface of the road ⇒ Fig. 106(F) be less than the specified minimum. This minimum height must be present even when the vehicle is fully loaded and subject to the maximum tongue weight.

**Distance dimensions ⇒ Fig. 106 :**

- (A) Attachment points.
- (B)  $42\frac{5}{16}$  inches (1074.6 mm)
- (C) at least  $2\frac{9}{16}$  inches (65 mm)
- (D)  $5\frac{1}{8}$  inches (131 mm)
- (E)  $2\frac{1}{16}$  inches (52 mm)
- (F) from  $13\frac{3}{4}$  inches to  $16\frac{1}{2}$  inches (350 - 420 mm)
- (G)  $13\frac{15}{16}$  inches (354.5 mm)
- (H)  $41\frac{5}{16}$  inches (1050 mm)
- (I)  $46\frac{7}{16}$  inches (1180 mm)

**WARNING**

Improper or incorrect connections to the vehicle electrical system can cause malfunctions that affect the entire vehicle electrical system and cause accidents and serious personal injury.

- Never connect the electrical system of the trailer directly to the electrical connections of the rear lights or other unsuitable power sources. Use only a suitable connector to provide power to the trailer.
- Have any trailer hitch retrofit or other work on a trailer hitch done by a qualified workshop.


#### WARNING

An improperly installed or unsuitable trailer hitch can cause the trailer to separate from the towing vehicle and result in a major accident with serious personal injuries.



Only use trailer hitches that are approved by Volkswagen for your vehicle and model.

## Maximum permissible trailer weight

 Read and follow the introductory information and safety information first ⇒ [Introduction to the subject](#)

Maximum permissible trailer weights	lbs.	kg
Trailer with brakes	7718	3500
Trailer without brakes	1650	748
Trailer hitch tongue load	617	280

The Gross Vehicle Weight Rating and the Gross Axle Weight Rating must not be exceeded, even with a trailer. These ratings are listed on the safety compliance label on the left front door jamb ⇒ [Important vehicle labels](#). When a trailer is towed, the weight of the ball mount and the tongue weight of the trailer are added to the vehicle weight ⇒ [Determining the correct load limit](#).

The trailer weight ratings given above are valid only up to altitudes of 3000 ft (1000 m) above sea level. The maximum permissible combined towing weight must be reduced by about 10% for every 3000 ft (1000 m), or portion thereof, of additional altitude.

#### WARNING

Exceeding the gross trailer weight rating and tongue weight can cause accidents and serious personal injury.

- Never let the actual weights at the front and rear axles exceed the Gross Axle Weight Ratings. Never let the combined front and rear weights exceed the Gross Vehicle Weight Rating.

#### NOTE

Exceeding the gross weight ratings can cause extensive vehicle damage that is not covered by any Volkswagen Limited Warranty.

## Tires

### Tires and wheels

#### Introduction to the subject

In this chapter you will find information on the following subjects:

⇒ [Tire and wheel handling](#)

⇒ [Wheel rims](#)

⇒ [New and replacement tires](#)

⇒ [Tire inflation pressure](#)

⇒ [Tire inflation pressure in cold tires](#)

⇒ [Tread depth and tread wear indicators](#)

⇒ [Tire wear and damage](#)

⇒ *Collapsible spare tire*

⇒ *Tire labeling*

⇒ *Winter tires*

⇒ *Snow chains*

⇒ *Glossary of tire and loading terminology*

⇒ *Tires and vehicle load limits*

⇒ *Determining the correct load limit*

⇒ *UTQG classification*

Volkswagen recommends that all work on tires and wheels be done by an authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility. They are familiar with the technical requirements and recommended procedures, have the necessary special tools and spare parts, and can properly dispose of old tires.

## ⚠ WARNING

New tires or tires that are old, worn or damaged cannot provide maximum control and braking performance.

- Improper care and handling of tires and wheels can reduce driving safety and cause accidents and severe injuries.
- Install only radial tires of the same make, the same dimensions (tread circumference), and similar tread profile on all 4 wheels.
- New tires tend to be slippery and must be broken in. Always drive with special care for the first 350 miles (560 km) to help reduce the risk of losing control, a collision, and serious personal injuries.
- Check tire inflation pressure regularly when the tires are cold and always maintain the prescribed tire pressure. Low tire pressure can cause tires to get too hot, resulting in tread separation, sudden loss of pressure, and blowouts. Tires with excessively low pressure flex (bend) more, which can cause the tire to overheat and fail suddenly without warning.
- Check tires regularly for wear and damage.
- Never drive with worn or damaged tires (for example, tires with punctures, cuts, cracks, blisters, or bumps). Driving with worn or damaged tires can lead to loss of vehicle control, sudden tire failure including blowouts and sudden deflation, crashes, and serious personal injuries.
- Have worn or damaged tires replaced immediately.
- Never exceed the maximum speed rating or the maximum load rating of the tires on your vehicle.
- The effectiveness of the driver assistance systems and the braking support systems depends on the tire traction.
- If you notice unusual vibration or if the vehicle pulls to one side when driving, always stop as soon as it is safe to do so and check the wheels and tires for damage.
- To reduce the risk of losing control, crashes, and serious personal injuries, never loosen the bolts on wheels with bolted rim rings.
- Never mount used tires on your vehicle if you are not sure of their past use. Old, used tires and wheels may have damage that cannot be seen that can lead to sudden tire failure and loss of vehicle control.
- Tires age even if they are not being used and can fail suddenly, especially at high speeds, causing loss of vehicle control, accidents, and severe personal injuries. Tires that are more than 6 years old can be used only in an emergency and even then only with special care and at low speed.



For technical reasons it is usually not possible to use wheel rims from other vehicles. Even wheel rims from the same model may not fit properly. Check with an authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility if necessary.

## Tire and wheel handling

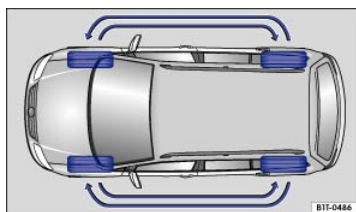


Fig. 107 Tire rotation diagram.

📖 Read and follow the introductory information and safety information first ⇒ ⚠ *Introduction to the subject*

Tires may be the least appreciated and most abused parts of a motor vehicle. Tires are very important, since their small patches of rubber are the only contact

between your vehicle and the road.

Maintaining correct tire pressure, making sure that your vehicle and its tires do not have to carry more weight than they can safely handle, and regularly inspecting tires for damage (such as cuts, slashes, irregular wear, and overall condition) are the most important things that you can do to help avoid sudden tire failure, including tread separation and blowout.

The tires and wheels are essential parts of the vehicle's design. The tires and wheels approved by Volkswagen are specially matched to the characteristics of the vehicle for good road holding and safe handling when in good condition and properly inflated.

#### Avoiding tire damage

- If you must drive over a curb or other obstacle, drive very slowly and as much as possible at a right angle to the curb with the tire tread of both front wheels contacting the curb at the same time.
- Regularly check tires for damage, such as punctures, cuts, tears and blisters.
- Remove embedded material in the tread profile that **has not yet penetrated the inside of the tire** ⇒ *Tire wear and damage*.
- Heed all warning messages from the Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS) ⇒ *Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS)*.
- Replace worn or damaged tires immediately ⇒ *Tire wear and damage*.
- Damage to tires and wheels is often not readily visible. If you notice unusual vibration or the vehicle pulls to one side, this may indicate that one of the tires is damaged. The tires must be checked immediately for **hidden damage** by an authorized Volkswagen dealer or an authorized Volkswagen Service Facility. See also ⇒ *Tire wear and damage*.
- Never exceed the load and permissible maximum speed rating of the tires ⇒ *Tire labeling*.
- Always keep aggressive chemicals including grease, oil, gasoline and brake fluid off the tires, including the compact spare tire ⇒ ⚠.
- Replace missing valve caps immediately.

#### Unidirectional tires

Unidirectional tires are designed to rotate only in one direction. Unidirectional tires have arrows on the sidewalls that show the direction of rotation ⇒ *Tire labeling*. Unidirectional tires must always be mounted according to the specified direction of rotation in order to deliver their best grip, braking performance, low road noise, and good wear as well as good hydroplaning resistance.

If you have to mount a tire opposite to its proper direction of rotation, you must drive more carefully, since the tire is no longer being used as designed. This is particularly important on wet roads. You must replace or remount the tire as soon as possible in order to restore the correct direction of rotation.

#### Rotating tires

To help ensure even wear on all tires, regular tire rotation according to the diagram ⇒ *Fig. 107* is recommended. In this way all tires can have about the same service life.

Volkswagen recommends that you have your tires rotated by an authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility.

#### Tires more than 6 years old

Tires age even if they are not being used. Physical and chemical processes reduce tire strength and performance and cause them to harden and become brittle. Old tires can fail suddenly and without warning.

Volkswagen recommends replacing tires that are 6 years and older. This also applies to tires that look new (including the tire on the compact spare wheel) or that seem to still be usable with tread depth that has not yet reached the legal minimum depth ⇒ ⚠.

The age of each tire can be determined with the manufacturing date that is part of the U.S. DOT tire identification number (TIN) ⇒ *Tire labeling*.

#### Tire storage

Mark tires before removing them to help make sure that the previous location (left, right, front, rear) and rolling direction can be maintained when remounting them. Store tires in a cool, dry and preferably dark place. Do **not** store tires mounted on wheels standing up.

Tires not mounted on wheels should be covered to help protect them from dirt and stored vertically (sitting on the tread).

#### Lower profile tires (low aspect ratio tires)

Lower profile tires have a wider tread surface, larger rim diameter, and lower sidewalls than conventional wheel/tire combinations ⇒ Ⓢ. Lower profile tires can improve the vehicle's handling and precision. They may, however, result in a less comfortable ride, for example, on uneven road surfaces.

#### ⚠ WARNING

Aggressive fluids and materials can cause visible and invisible tire damage that can cause tire blowouts.

- Always keep chemicals, oils, grease, fuels, braking fluids and other aggressive substances away from tires.

#### ⚠ WARNING


Tires age even if they are not being used and can fail suddenly, especially at high speeds, causing loss of vehicle control, accidents, and severe personal

injuries.


- Tires that are more than 6 years old can be used only in an emergency and even then only with special care and at low speed.

#### NOTE

Tires and rims, especially lower profile tires and their rims, can be severely damaged and even destroyed by driving through potholes or over curbs and other obstacles.

 Always dispose of old tires in accordance with legal requirements.

## Wheel rims

 Read and follow the introductory information and safety information first ⇒ [Introduction to the subject](#)

The design of wheel bolts is matched to the factory-installed wheels. If different wheels are installed, wheel bolts with the right length and bolt head shape must be used. This helps to ensure that wheels can be mounted securely and that the brakes will work correctly ⇒ .

In most cases, you cannot use wheel bolts from a different vehicle. Even wheel rims from the same model may not fit properly.

Tires and wheel rims approved by Volkswagen have been matched precisely to your vehicle model and contribute considerably to good handling and safe vehicle performance.

### Tightening Torque

Wheel bolts must always be installed with the correct tightening torque ⇒ [Changing a wheel](#). The required tightening torque for the Touareg's wheel bolts is **133 f lbs (180 Nm)**. After changing a wheel, the bolt torque must be checked as soon as possible with an accurate torque wrench. See an authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility.

### Wheel rims with bolted rim rings

Wheel rims with bolted rim rings have several parts. The parts are bolted together with special screws in a special process. This helps to ensure that they will work properly, prevent leaks, run true and safely. Damaged wheel rims must be replaced, and you must never take them apart or try to repair them yourself. Have an authorized Volkswagen dealer or an authorized Volkswagen Service Facility repair them for you ⇒ [▲](#).

### Wheel rims with bolted decorative covers

Light-alloy wheels may have interchangeable decorative covers attached to the rim with self-locking screws. If you want to replace damaged wheel covers, contact your authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility ⇒ [▲](#).

#### WARNING

Using improper or damaged wheel rims can affect driving safety, cause accidents and severe personal injuries.

- Use only wheel rims approved for the vehicle.
- Regularly check wheel rims for damage and replace them if necessary.

#### WARNING

Improper loosening and tightening of the bolts on wheel rims with bolted rim rings can cause accidents and severe personal injury.

- Never loosen bolted connections on wheel rims with bolted rim rings.
- Have all work on wheel rims with bolted rim rings performed by an authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility.

## New and replacement tires

 Read and follow the introductory information and safety information first ⇒ [Introduction to the subject](#)

### New tires

- Drive a vehicle with new tires especially carefully for the first 350 miles (560 km) because the tires must first be *broken in*. Tires that are not broken in have reduced traction ⇒ [▲](#) and braking performance ⇒ [▲](#).
- Install only radial tires only of the same make, the same dimensions (tread circumference), and similar tread profile on all 4 wheels.
- The tread depth of new tires can differ between tire models and manufacturers because of different design features and tread design.

### Replacing tires

- Tires should be replaced in pairs and not individually (both front tires or both rear tires at the same time) ⇒ [▲](#).
- Replace tires only with tires that have the same specifications, including width and diameter, load and top speed rating as the tires approved by Volkswagen for



your vehicle and model.

- Never use tires that are larger or wider than the dimensions of the tires approved by Volkswagen for your vehicle and model. Larger tires could scrape and rub on the vehicle body or other parts of the vehicle.

#### Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS) considerations

Factory-installed wheels are equipped with a sensor that constantly monitors tire pressure, then transmits this information to the TPMS → [Tire Pressure Monitoring System \(TPMS\)](#). If you are going to replace the wheels, make sure that the new wheels also have sensors that are compatible with the TPMS on your vehicle. New wheels with sensors have to be recognized and integrated into the system. The new wheels and sensors are recognized and integrated when driving off the first time.

If you install wheels that do not have sensors, or have sensors that are not compatible, the TPMS will not work properly. In this case, the TPMS will not be able to monitor tire pressure or warn you if pressure is low. An error message may appear in the instrument cluster display or the TPMS will switch itself off.

- Whenever you change sensors, you have to install new valves and seals. Please see an authorized Volkswagen dealer or an authorized Volkswagen Service Facility.
- Always drive with the valve caps securely installed. We recommend using factory-supplied valve caps. Ask an authorized Volkswagen dealer or an authorized Volkswagen Service Facility to replace lost caps.

If you install new tires that differ the original Volkswagen specifications, for your vehicle and model, the benchmark tire inflation pressure values stored in your vehicle's TPMS may have to be adjusted (reprogrammed). This requires professional assistance. For more information, contact your authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility.

Installing replacement tires with steel cord body plies in the tire sidewall may cause malfunction of the TPMS, and is not recommended (cord material information is molded on the tire sidewall).

Always check the TPMS indicator light after replacing one or more tires on your vehicle. If the indicator light is on, the TPMS is not working properly. Your replacement tire might be incompatible with the system, or some component of the TPMS may be damaged.

For detailed information about TPMS, how it works and what you need to know → [Tire Pressure Monitoring System \(TPMS\)](#).

#### WARNING

New tires tend to be slippery and must be broken in.

- Always drive with special care for the first 350 miles (560 km) to help reduce the risk of losing control, a collision, and serious personal injuries.


#### WARNING


Tires must have the required clearance. Tires that do not have enough clearance can rub against parts of the vehicle body, suspension, and brake system, causing brake system failure, tread delamination, and sudden blow outs.

- Always make sure that new tires are not larger than the tires approved for your vehicle and that the new tires do not rub against parts of the vehicle.

#### NOTE

- When switching to different tires, make certain the valves and sensors are not damaged.
- Never drive without valve stem caps. The valves and sensors could be damaged.
- If the sensor on the Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS) must be replaced, the valve must be replaced at the same time.

 Always dispose of old tires in accordance with legal requirements.

 TPMS wheel sensors are classified as Perchlorate Material – Special handling may apply. Obey all legal requirements regarding handling and disposal of these components – See <http://www.dtsc.ca.gov/hazardouswaste/perchlorate>. Obey all applicable legal requirements regarding handling and disposal of the vehicle or parts of its restraint system, including airbag modules and safety belts with pretensioners. Authorized Volkswagen dealers and authorized Volkswagen Service Facilities are familiar with the requirements, and we recommend that you have them perform this service for you.



If the replacement wheel is different from the tires that you have mounted on your vehicle (for example winter tires or wider, low-profile tires, or a compact spare), then use the replacement wheel for a short time only, and drive cautiously.

- Replace it with a tire matching the others on your vehicle as soon as possible.



Although tire size specifications can be the same, the actual dimensions may differ from those nominal values for different tire makes, or the tire contours may be significantly different.

## Tire inflation pressure

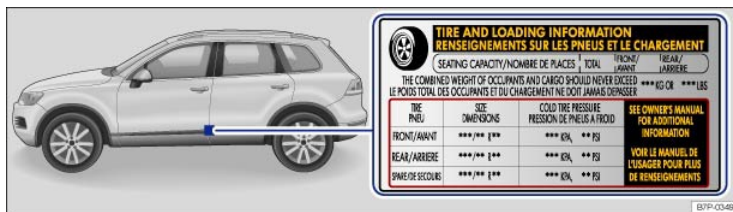


Fig. 108 Location of the tire inflation pressure label.

Read and follow the introductory information and safety information first ⇒ [Introduction to the subject](#)

The correct tire inflation pressure for factory-installed tires is listed on a label. The factory-installed tires may be summer, winter, or all-season tires. The label ⇒ [Fig. 108](#) is on the driver door jamb.

Under- or over-inflation significantly shortens the service life of your tires and affects the handling of the vehicle ⇒ [Warning](#). The correct tire pressure is very important, particularly when the vehicle is driven at **higher speeds**. Incorrect tire pressure causes increased wear and even sudden tire failure and blowouts.

Therefore tire pressure should be checked at least once a month and always before long trips.

The specified tire inflation pressure applies to a **cold tire**. When tires are warm, the pressure will be higher than when the tires are cold.

Do not reduce the tire pressure on warm tires to match the required cold tire inflation pressure. The tire inflation pressure would then be too low and could cause sudden tire failure and blowout.

### Checking tire inflation pressure

Always check the tire pressure on "cold" tires when the vehicle has not been driven more than a couple of miles (kilometers) at low speed within the last 3 hours.

- Check tire inflation pressure regularly and on cold tires. Check all the tires, including the collapsible spare (if any). In colder climates tire pressure should be checked more often, but only when the tires are cold. Always use an accurate tire pressure gauge.
- After adjusting the tire inflation pressures, make sure to screw the valve caps back on, replace missing valve caps immediately. Please read and heed the information on resetting the Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS) if necessary ⇒ [Tire Pressure Monitoring System \(TPMS\)](#).
- Remember that the vehicle manufacturer, not the tire manufacturer, determines the correct tire pressure for the tires on your vehicle. Never exceed the maximum inflation pressure listed on the tire sidewall for any reason.

Inflate the **spare wheel** to the pressure specified for the vehicle's road wheels on the tire pressure label; inflate a **compact spare wheel** to the pressure specified for the compact spare on the tire pressure label or on a separate label for the compact spare, if there is one.

### WARNING

Incorrect tire pressure can cause a sudden tire failure, or blowout, loss of control, collision, serious personal injury, and even death.

- Always inflate tires to the recommended and correct cold tire pressure before driving off.
- Low tire pressure can cause tires to get too hot, resulting in tread separation, sudden loss of pressure, and blowouts. Tires with excessively low pressure flex (bend) more, which can cause the tire to overheat and fail suddenly without warning.
- Excessive speed and/or overloading can cause heat buildup, sudden tire failure including a blowout and sudden deflation and loss of control.
- If the tire pressure is too low or too high, the tires will wear prematurely and the vehicle will not handle well.
- Regularly check tire inflation pressure, at least once a month, and also especially before a long trip.
- Check the pressure in all 4 tires when the tires are still cold. Never reduce air pressure in warm tires to match cold tire inflation pressure.

### NOTE

- Make sure not to jam the tire pressure gauge into the valve stem. Otherwise you can damage the tire valves and the tire inflation pressure sensors.
- Driving without valve caps, with the wrong valve caps, or with valve caps that are not properly screwed on can damage the tire valves and the sensors on the Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS). To help prevent damage, always use valve stem caps like those originally installed at the factory. The caps must be screwed on tightly. Do not use metal valve caps or comfort valve stem caps.

Underinflation increases fuel consumption.




Pressures measured with a gauge when inflating the tires may be different from the pressures read by the tire pressure sensors. The electronic TPMS is more accurate.



When the TPMS warns that the pressure in at least one tire is too low, check the tire pressure in all 4 tires with an accurate tire pressure gauge. Low tire pressure usually cannot be spotted by looking at the tire. This is especially true for low-profile tires. When checking the tire pressures, refer to ⇒ [Tire Pressure Monitoring System \(TPMS\)](#).

## Tire inflation pressure in cold tires

 Read and follow the introductory information and safety information first ⇒ [Introduction to the subject](#)

Engine	Tire dimensions	Tire inflation pressure, front axle		Tire inflation pressure, rear axle	
		PSI	kPa	PSI	kPa
<b>3.0 l / 240 hp (176 kW)</b> TDI	255/55 R 18 109 H xl	33	230	39	270
	265/50 R 19,110 H xl	33	230	39	270
	275/45 R 20,110 H xl	33	230	39	270
<b>3.6 l / 280 hp (206 kW)</b> FSI	255/55 R 18,109 H xl	33	230	38	260
	265/50 R 19,110 H xl	33	230	38	260
	275/45 R 20,110 H xl	33	230	38	260


xl = reinforced sidewall.

The Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS) is configured at the factory with the correct tire inflation pressure applicable for the vehicle model, engine and factory installed tires. This tire inflation pressure is also listed on the sticker inside the driver door jamb ⇒ [Tire inflation pressure](#). The tire inflation pressure are listed for all tires and the collapsible spare tire. In the event of a discrepancy between the above figures and the tire pressures listed on the tire inflation pressure label, the pressures listed on the label are the ones you should use. If different tires are installed, the Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS) cannot properly monitor tire inflation pressures unless the TPMS is reset to the new tire pressures ⇒ [Tire Pressure Monitoring System \(TPMS\)](#). Authorized Volkswagen dealers and authorized Volkswagen Service Facilities have the necessary special tools and must reset the TPMS for the new tires on your vehicle.

## Tread depth and tread wear indicators



Fig. 109 Tread pattern: Wear indicator.

 Read and follow the introductory information and safety information first ⇒ [Introduction to the subject](#)

### Tread depth

Most driving situations require as much tread depth as possible and similar tread depth for the tires on the front and rear wheels. This is especially true when driving in winter weather, at low temperatures and under wet conditions ⇒ [Introduction to the subject](#).

In most countries the legally permissible minimum tread depth is 06 in (1/16 in; 1.6 mm), as measured in tread grooves next to the wear indicators. Please be sure obey country-specific legal requirements.

**Winter tires** are no longer suitable for winter operation once the tread pattern is worn down to a depth of 3/16 in (4.8 mm).

The tread depth of new tires can differ between tire models and manufacturers because of the different design features and tread patterns.

### Tread wear indicator (TWI) in the tire

The 1/16 in (1.6 mm) high wear indicators are molded into the bottom of the tread grooves of the original tires running across the treads ⇒ [Fig. 109](#). Several wear indicators are evenly spaced around the tire. Markings on the sides of the tires (for example TWI or symbols) show the position of the wear indicators.

Wear indicators show when the tires are worn down. The tires must be replaced no later than when the tread pattern is worn down to the wear indicators.

### WARNING

Worn tires are dangerous and can cause loss of vehicle control including serious personal injuries.

- Never drive a vehicle when the tread on any tire is worn down to the wear indicators, replace them sooner.

- Worn tires do not grip the road properly, especially on wet roads, increasing your risk of hydroplaning and loss of control.
- Worn tires reduce the ability of your vehicle to handle well in normal and difficult driving situations and increase braking distances and the risk of skidding.

## Tire wear and damage

 Read and follow the introductory information and safety information first ⇒ [▲ Introduction to the subject](#)

Wheel rim and tire damage is often difficult to see. Unusual **vibrations** or **pulling to one side** can be an indication of tire damage ⇒ .

- If you suspect tire damage, immediately reduce speed!
- Check tires and wheel rims for damage.
- If a tire is damaged, do not drive any farther. Get expert assistance.
- If no external damage is visible, slowly and carefully drive to the nearest authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility or other qualified workshop and have the vehicle checked.

### Objects embedded in the tire

- If embedded objects have penetrated to the inside of the tire, do not remove them! If objects are stuck in the tread grooves of the tire, they can be removed.
- *With a collapsible spare tire* : If necessary, change the damaged wheel ⇒ [Changing a wheel](#) . If necessary, get professional assistance to change the wheel.
- *With the tire mobility set* : If necessary, seal and inflate the damaged tire with the tire mobility set ⇒ [Tire mobility set](#) . Get assistance from an authorized Volkswagen dealer, an authorized Volkswagen Service Facility, or another qualified workshop.
- Check tire pressure and adjust if necessary.

### Tire wear

Tire wear depends on several factors, including:

- Driving style.
- Unbalanced wheels.
- Wheel alignment.

*Driving style* – Fast cornering, hard acceleration and braking increase tire wear. If you experience increased tire wear under normal driving conditions, have the vehicle suspension checked by an authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility.

*Unbalanced wheels* – The wheels on a new vehicle are balanced. When driving, however, various conditions can cause a wheel to become unbalanced. Unbalanced wheels can cause wear to the steering and suspension systems. Have all wheels rebalanced. A wheel must always be rebalanced if a new tire has been mounted.

*Wheel alignment* – Incorrect wheel alignment causes excessive and uneven tire wear, impairing vehicle safety. If you notice excessive or uneven tire wear, have the wheel alignment checked by an authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility.

## WARNING

Unusual vibrations or pulling to one side can indicate tire damage.

- Reduce speed immediately and stop when it is safe to do so.
- Check tires and wheel rims for damage.
- Never drive with a damaged tire or rim. Get expert assistance instead.
- If no external damage is visible, slowly and carefully drive to the nearest authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility or other qualified workshop and have the vehicle checked.

## Collapsible spare tire

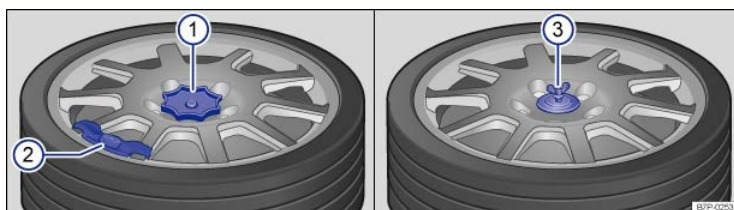


Fig. 110 Under the luggage compartment floor panel: Collapsible spare tire with threaded retainer (left) and collapsible spare tire with fastening bolt and washer (right).

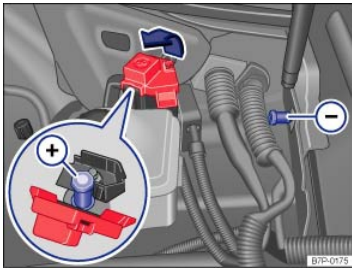


Fig. 111 Connection points in the engine compartment for the collapsible spare tire compressor.

Read and follow the introductory information and safety information first ⇒ [Introduction to the subject](#)

### Removing the collapsible spare tire

- Open the trunk lid: Lift up the luggage compartment floor panel and hook it to the top of the luggage compartment or remove the reversible luggage compartment floor panel ⇒ [Luggage compartment](#).
- Take the retainer ⇒ [Fig. 110](#) ① from the middle of the collapsible spare wheel and fit it onto the fastening bolt ②; then unscrew the bolt completely counterclockwise.
- **OR:** Turn the fastening bolt with washer ③ counterclockwise and remove completely.
- Take the collapsible spare tire out of the vehicle.
- Inflate the collapsible spare tire to not more than 51 psi (3.5 bar / 350 kPa) **before** mounting it on the vehicle ⇒ [Inflating the collapsible spare tire](#).

### Inflating the collapsible spare tire

- Take the compressor out of the luggage compartment ⇒ [Vehicle tool kit](#).
- Screw the tire filler hose onto the valve of the collapsible spare tire.
- Open the engine hood ⇒ [In the engine compartment](#).
- Connect the compressor with the 12 Volt clips **only** to the jump-start terminals in the engine compartment ⇒ [Jump-starting](#). The red clip on the compressor cable is connected to the positive terminal ⊕; the black clip is connected to the negative terminal ⊖ ⇒ [Fig. 111](#).
- Route the connector cables so that they cannot get caught in rotating parts.
- Start the vehicle engine and let it run.
- Switch on the compressor. Make sure that the air bleed screw on the tire pressure gauge is closed.
- Inflate the collapsible spare tire to a pressure of 51 psi (3.5 bar / 350 kPa). The compressor must be switched off after 10 minutes at most to keep it from overheating.

### Stowing the tire you removed

- Lift up the luggage compartment floor panel and hook it to the top of the luggage compartment or remove the reversible luggage compartment floor panel ⇒ [Luggage compartment](#).
- If necessary, return the vehicle tool kit to its location in the luggage compartment.
- Unhook the luggage compartment floor panel/replace reversible luggage compartment floor panel.
- Put the tire you took off the vehicle in the luggage compartment and secure it firmly.
- Close the trunk lid.

### Driving with the collapsible spare tire

The collapsible spare tire is different in design from the road tires and must be used only in the event of a flat tire, only for a brief time, and only when driving with extra caution ⇒ [▲](#).

Replace it with a tire matching the others on your vehicle as soon as possible.

### Please heed the following:

- Do not drive faster than 50 mph (80 km/h)!
- Avoid full-throttle acceleration, hard braking and fast cornering!
- Do not use snow chains on the collapsible spare tire.
- After installing the collapsible spare tire, check the tire pressure as soon as possible ⇒ [Checking tire inflation pressure](#).

### Reusing the collapsible spare tire

The collapsible spare tire can be reused as long as it is not damaged and not worn down to the tread wear indicators.

It takes several hours for the collapsible spare tire to return to its collapsed form after you let the air out of it. Once this has happened, you can put it back in the

spare tire well and secure it.

- Let the air out of the tire by unscrewing the valve core.
- Screw the valve core back in once the air has been released.
- Wait several hours before putting the collapsible spare tire back in the spare tire well.
- Once the time is up, open the trunk lid. Lift up the luggage compartment floor panel and hook it to the top of the luggage compartment or remove the reversible luggage compartment floor panel ⇒ [Luggage compartment](#).
- Place the collapsible spare tire in the spare tire well and secure it with the fastening bolt ( ⇒ [Fig. 110②](#) or ③).
- Fit the retainer ① back into the middle of the collapsible spare tire ⇒ [Fig. 110](#).
- Unhook the luggage compartment floor panel/replace reversible luggage compartment floor panel.
- Close the trunk lid.

**⚠ WARNING**

Improper use of a collapsible spare tire can cause loss of vehicle control, a crash or other accident, and serious personal injury.

- Never use a collapsible spare tire if it is damaged or worn down to the wear indicators.
- The collapsible spare tire is identified by a sticker and the words 50 mph or 80 km/h. This is the maximum permissible speed when driving with this tire.
- Never drive faster than 50 mph (80 km/h) with a collapsible spare tire. Avoid full-throttle acceleration, heavy braking, and fast cornering!
- Never drive more than 125 miles (200 km) if a compact spare wheel is installed on the front axle (drive axle).
- Replace the collapsible spare tire with a normal wheel as soon as possible. Collapsible spare tires are designed for brief use only.
- Regularly check U.S. DOT tire identification number (TIN) to determine the age of the collapsible spare tire ⇒ [Tire labeling](#). Tires age even if they are not being used and can fail suddenly, especially at higher speeds.
- Tires that are more than 6 years old can only be used in an emergency and then with special care and at lower speeds.
- The collapsible spare tire must always be secured with the wheel bolts provided by the factory.
- Never drive using more than one collapsible spare tire.
- After installing the collapsible spare tire, the tire pressure must be checked as soon as possible ⇒ [Tire inflation pressure](#).
- Snow chains cannot be used on the collapsible spare tire. If you need the snow chains, but one of the front tires is flat, you have to mount the collapsible spare tire on the rear axle. The tire taken off the rear axle can then be used to replace the flat front tire. Be sure to maintain the tire's direction of rotation. Install the snow chains on the full-sized road wheel.



If possible, fasten the collapsible spare tire or the wheel you took off the vehicle securely in the luggage compartment. On vehicles equipped with a tire mobility set, the tire you took off the vehicle **cannot** be secured.

**Tire labeling**

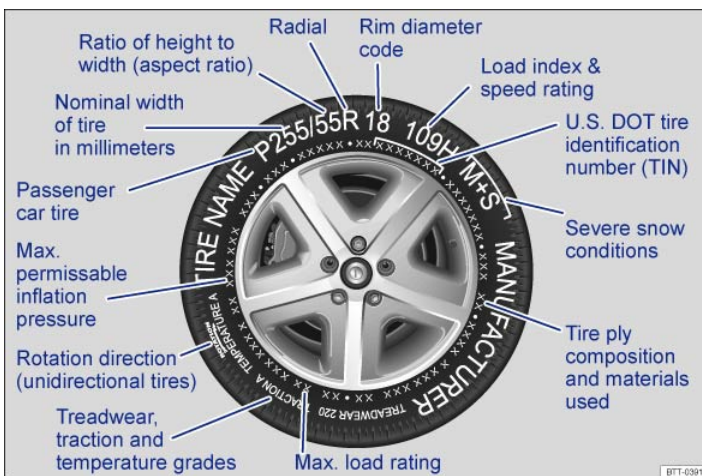


Fig. 112 International tire labeling.

Read and follow the introductory information and safety information first ⇒ [Introduction to the subject](#)

Knowing about tire specifications makes it easier to choose the correct replacement tires. Radial tires have specifications marked on the sidewall.

Tire labeling (example)	Meaning
-------------------------	---------

Tire labeling (example)	Meaning	
<i>Brand, Logo</i>	<i>Manufacturer</i>	
<i>Tire name</i>	Individual tire designation of the manufacturer.	
P255 / 55 R 18	Dimensions:	
	P	Tire application: Passenger car
	255	Nominal sidewall-to-sidewall width of tire in millimeters.
	55	Ratio of height to width (aspect ratio)
	R	Tire belt design letter code for radial.
	18	Rim diameter (in inches)
109 H	Load rating code ⇒ <i>Load rating code</i> and speed rating code ⇒ <i>Tire labeling</i> .	
XL	Indicates reinforced tire (heavy-duty)	
M+S or M/S	Indicates Mud and Snow capability (also M/S) ⇒ <i>Winter tires</i> .	
RADIAL TUBELESS	Tubeless radial tire.	
E4 ...	Labeling according to international regulations (E) including number of the approving country. The multi-digit approval number is listed next.	
DOT BT RA TY5 1709	Tire identification number ( <b>TIN</b> <sup>9</sup> ) - In some cases the manufacturing date is only on one side of the tire:	
	DOT	The tire complies with the requirements of the United States Department of Transportation, responsible for issuing safety standards.
	BT	Identification letter of the manufacturing site.
	RA	Manufacturer information regarding tire dimensions.
	TY5	Tire characteristics provided by the manufacturer.
	1709	Manufacturing date: 17th week in 2009.
TWI	Marks the position of the treadwear indicator ⇒ <i>Tread depth and tread wear indicators</i> .	
Made in Germany	Country of manufacture.	
MAX LOAD 615 KG (1356 LBS)	United States maximum load rating per wheel.	
MAX INFLATION 350 KPA (51 PSI)	United States maximum permissible inflation pressure.	
ROTATION	Rotation direction (unidirectional tires)	

Tire labeling (example)	Meaning
SIDEWALL 1 PLY RAYON	Tire ply composition and materials used:  1 layer of rayon.
TREAD 4 PLIES  1 RAYON + 2 STEEL + 1 NYLON	Tire tread composition and materials used:  In this example there are 4 layers under the tread: 1 layer of rayon, 2 layers of steel belt and 1 layer of nylon.
<b>Consumer information regarding comparison to specified base tires (standardized test procedure) ⇒ <i>Consumer Information</i>:</b>	
TREADWEAR 220	Relative service life expectancy of the tire referenced to a US-specific standard test.
TRACTION A	Traction rating under wet conditions (AA, A, B or C).
TEMPERATURE A	Temperature stability of the tire at increased test bench speeds (A, B or C).
<b>Additional numbers found on the tire could either be tire manufacturer internal labels or country-specific labels (such as for Brazil and China).</b>	

#### Unidirectional tires

Unidirectional tires are designed to rotate only in one direction. Unidirectional tires have arrows on the sidewalls that show the direction of rotation. Make sure you mount the tire so that it rotates in the proper direction. The tire's performance with regard to hydroplaning, traction, noise, and wear is worse if it is not mounted in the proper direction of rotation.

If you have to mount a tire opposite to its proper direction of rotation, you must drive more carefully, since the tire is no longer being used as designed. This is particularly important on wet roads. You must replace or remount the tire as soon as possible in order to restore the correct direction of rotation.

#### Load rating code

The load index indicates the maximum permissible load per individual tire in pounds (kilograms).

<b>91</b>	1356 lbs (615 kg)
<b>92</b>	1388 lbs (630 kg)
<b>93</b>	1433 lbs (650 kg)
<b>95</b>	1521 lbs (690 kg)
<b>97</b>	1609 lbs (730 kg)
<b>98</b>	1653 lbs (750 kg)
<b>99</b>	1709 lbs (775 kg)
<b>100</b>	1763 lbs (800 kg)
<b>101</b>	1819 lbs (825 kg)
<b>102</b>	1874 lbs (850 kg)
<b>103</b>	1929 lbs (875 kg)
<b>104</b>	1984 lbs (900 kg)
<b>110</b>	2337 lbs (1060 kg)

#### Speed rating code letter

The speed rating code letter indicates the maximum permissible road speed of the tires.

<b>P</b>	up to 93 mph (150 km/h)
<b>Q</b>	up to 99 mph (160 km/h)
<b>R</b>	up to 106 mph (170 km/h)
<b>S</b>	up to 112 mph (180 km/h)
<b>T</b>	up to 118 mph (190 km/h)
<b>U</b>	up to 124 mph (200 km/h)
<b>H</b>	up to 130 mph (210 km/h)



<b>V</b>	up to 149 mph (240 km/h)
<b>Z</b>	over 149 mph (240 km/h)
<b>W</b>	up to 168 mph (270 km/h)
<b>Y</b>	up to 186 mph (300 km/h)

Some tire manufacturers label tires with a maximum permissible road speed above 149 mph (240 km/h) with the letter combination ZR.


#### WARNING

Using incorrect or unmatched tires and/or wheels or improper tire and wheel combinations can lead to loss of control, collision and serious personal injury.

- Always use tires, wheels and wheel bolts that meet the specifications of the original factory-installed tires or other combinations that have been specifically approved by the vehicle manufacturer.
- All 4 wheels must be fitted with radial tires of the same type, the same size (tread circumference), and the same tread pattern. Driving with different tires reduces vehicle handling and can lead to a loss of control.
- Never drive faster than the maximum speed for which the tires installed on your vehicle are rated because tires that are driven faster than their rated speed can fail suddenly.
- Overloading tires can cause heat build-up, sudden tire failure, including a blowout and sudden deflation and loss of control.
- Temperature grades apply to tires that are properly inflated and not over- or underinflated.

<sup>a)</sup> TIN represents the serial number of the tire.


## Winter tires

 Read and follow the introductory information and safety information first ⇒ [Introduction to the subject](#)

Winter tires improve the handling characteristics of your vehicle significantly when driving under wintry road conditions. Summer tires have less traction on snow and ice because of their design (width, rubber composition, tread design). Volkswagen strongly recommends that you always have winter tires or all-season tires installed on all 4 wheels on your vehicle, especially when winter road conditions are expected. Winter tires also improve the vehicle's braking performance and help reduce stopping distances during winter weather. Volkswagen recommends installing winter tires once temperatures are below +45 °F (+7 °C).

Winter tires are no longer suitable for winter driving once the **tread pattern** is worn down to a depth of 3/16 in (4.8 mm). In addition, winter tire performance decreases with **age** – independent of the tread profile depth.

### When using winter tires:

- Obey state and country-specific legal requirements.
- Install winter tires on all 4 wheels.
- Use winter tires only under wintry road conditions.
- Only use winter tires with dimensions approved for the vehicle.
- Use only winter tires of the same tire belt design, the same dimensions (tread circumference), and the same tread design.
- Follow speed restrictions according to the winter tire's speed rating code letter ⇒ .

### Speed restrictions

Winter tires are certified up to a top speed identified by speed rating code letters on the side wall ⇒ [Tire labeling](#).

In some vehicle models it is possible to set a speed warning in the **MFI** menu in the instrument cluster display ⇒ [Volkswagen Information System](#).

Top speed rating and tire inflation pressure for **V winter tires** depend on the engine installed in your vehicle. Be sure to ask your authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility about the maximum permissible speed and the required tire inflation pressure for the winter tires that you plan to use.

### All-wheel drive (4MOTION)

Vehicles with all-wheel drive and standard road wheels have good forward motion and traction even under wintry road conditions. However, Volkswagen recommends installing snow tires or all season tires on *all 4* wheels to improve handling as well as *braking performance*.

If you use **snow chains**, please read and heed information and directions ⇒ [Snow chains](#).


#### WARNING


Driving faster than the maximum speed for which the winter tires on your vehicle were designed can cause sudden tire failure including a blowout and sudden deflation, loss of control, crashes and serious personal injuries.


- Winter tires have a maximum speed rating that may be lower than your vehicle's maximum speed.
- Never drive faster than the maximum speed for which the winter tires installed on your vehicle are rated because tires that are driven faster than their rated

speed can fail suddenly.


- Never exceed the maximum load rating for the winter tires installed on your vehicle.

 Install summer tires promptly in the spring. Summer tires offer better handling characteristics for temperatures above +45 °F (+7 °C). They are quieter, do not wear as quickly, and reduce fuel consumption.

 If factory-installed wheels and/or tires are replaced when installing winter tires, make sure that the wheels are equipped with sensors that are compatible with the factory-installed Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS) and that the tires are also compatible with the system ⇒ [Tire Pressure Monitoring System \(TPMS\)](#). If new tires are not identical to those that were removed and require different cold tire inflation pressure, the tire inflation pressure values must be reprogrammed for the TPMS. Please see your authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility ⇒ [Tire Pressure Monitoring System \(TPMS\)](#).

 If necessary, ask your authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility about permissible winter tire dimensions.

## Snow chains

 Read and follow the introductory information and safety information first ⇒ [Introduction to the subject](#)

Obey local regulations as well as the applicable speed limits when driving with snow chains.


Snow chains improve forward motion, traction and braking characteristics under wintry conditions.

Snow chains may be used **only on the front wheels** when driving on roads and highways. This applies even to **all-wheel drive vehicles** (4MOTION). Snow chains may be used **only in the following tire and wheel rim combinations** :

Tire dimensions	Rim
235/65 R17	7 1/2 J x 17 ET 55
255/60 R17	7 1/2 J x 17 ET 55
255/55 R18	8 J x 18 ET 57

Please contact your authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility about appropriate wheel, tire and snow chain dimensions.

If possible, use only chains with low profile links that are not thicker than 37/64 in (15 mm) including the tensioner.

Remove center hubcaps and decorative rim rings before installing snow chains ⇒ . However, for safety reasons, caps must be installed on the wheel bolts. These are available from authorized Volkswagen dealers and authorized Volkswagen Service Facilities.

### Collapsible spare

For technical reasons, snow chains cannot be used on the collapsible spare ⇒ [Collapsible spare tire](#).

If you must use snow chains and have a collapsible spare tire mounted, move the collapsible spare to the rear axle, if a front tire has to be replaced. The tire taken off the rear axle can then be used to replace the flat front tire. Be sure to install the unidirectional tires so that they will run in the proper direction. Volkswagen recommends installing the snow chains before mounting the wheel to the vehicle.


### WARNING

Using the wrong snow chains or installing snow chains improperly can cause accidents and severe personal injuries.


- Always use the proper snow chains.
- Follow the installation instructions provided by the snow chain manufacturer.
- Never exceed the permissible speed limit when driving with snow chains.

### NOTE

- Remove snow chains when roads are free of snow. Otherwise, the chains can damage the tires, impair vehicle handling and can be quickly worn down.
- Snow chains can scratch or damage wheel rims, if they have direct contact with the rims. Volkswagen recommends using coated snow chains.

 Snow chains are available in different sizes for each vehicle model.

## Glossary of tire and loading terminology

 Read and follow the introductory information and safety information first ⇒ [Introduction to the subject](#)

### Accessory weight

The combined weight (in excess of those standard items which may be replaced) of automatic transmission, electro-mechanical power steering, power brakes, power windows, power seats, radio, and heater, to the extent that these items are available as factory-installed equipment (whether installed or not).

### Aspect ratio

The ratio of sidewall height to tire width, expressed as a percentage. A number of 70 (0.7:1 or 70%) or lower indicates a low-profile tire with a shorter sidewall for improved steering response and better overall handling on dry pavement.

### Bead

The part of a tire made of steel wires, wrapped or reinforced by ply cords, with the shape and structure to ensure proper fit to the wheel rim.

### Bead separation

A breakdown of the bond between components in the bead.

### Carcass

The tire structure, except tread and sidewall rubber which, when inflated, bears the load.

### Chunking

The breaking away of pieces of the tread or sidewall.

### Cord

The strands of material forming the plies in the tire.

### Cord separation

The parting of cords from adjacent rubber compounds.

### Cracking

Any parting within the tread, sidewall, or inner liner of the tire extending to cord material.

### Cold tire inflation pressure

The tire pressure recommended by the vehicle manufacturer for a tire of a specified size that has not been driven for more than a couple of miles (kilometers) at low speeds in the 3 hour period before the tire pressure is measured or adjusted.

### Curb weight

The weight of a motor vehicle with standard equipment including the maximum capacity of fuel, oil, and coolant, air conditioner, and additional weight of optional equipment.

### Extra load tire

A tire designed to operate at higher loads and at higher inflation pressures than the corresponding standard tire.

### Gross Axle Weight Rating (GAWR)

The load-carrying capacity of a single axle system, measured where the tire contacts the ground.

### Gross Vehicle Weight Rating (GVWR)

The maximum loaded weight of the vehicle.

### Groove

The space between 2 adjacent tread ribs.

### Load rating (code)

The maximum load that a tire is rated to carry for a given inflation pressure. You may not find this information on all tires because it is not required by law.

### Maximum load rating

The load rating for a tire at the maximum permissible inflation pressure for that tire.

### Maximum loaded vehicle weight

The total of:

- Curb weight

- Accessory weight
- Vehicle capacity weight
- Production options weight

#### **Maximum (permissible) inflation pressure**

The maximum cold inflation pressure to which a tire may be inflated. Also called maximum inflation pressure.

#### **Normal occupant weight**

Means 150 lbs (68 kilograms) times the number of occupants seated in the vehicle up to the total seating capacity of your vehicle.

#### **Occupant distribution**

The placement of passengers in a vehicle.

#### **Outer diameter**

The diameter of a new, properly inflated tire.

#### **Overall width**

Total width measured at the exterior sidewalls of an inflated tire, including the additional width of labeling, decorations, or protective bands or ribs.

#### **Passenger car tire**

A tire intended for use on passenger cars, multipurpose passenger vehicles, and trucks, that have a gross vehicle weight rating (GVWR) of 10,000 pounds or less.

#### **Ply**

A layer of rubber-coated parallel cords.

#### **Ply separation**

A parting of rubber compound between adjacent plies.

#### **Pneumatic tire**

A mechanical device made of rubber, chemicals, fabric, and steel or other materials, that, when mounted on an automotive wheel, provides the traction and contain the gas or fluid that sustains the load.

#### **Production options weight**

The combined weight of installed regular production options weighing over 5 lbs (2.3 kg) more than the standard items they replace, and not previously considered as curb weight or accessory weight. These include, for example, heavy-duty brakes, ride levelers, roof rack, heavy-duty battery, and special trim.

#### **Radial ply tires**

A pneumatic tire in which the ply cords that extend to the beads are laid at substantially 90 degrees to the centerline of the tread.

#### **Recommended inflation pressure**

The tire pressure recommended by the vehicle manufacturer for a tire of a specified size that has not been driven for more than a couple of miles (kilometers) at low speeds in the 3 hour period before the tire pressure is measured or adjusted.

#### **Reinforced tire**

A tire designed to operate at higher loads and at higher inflation pressures than the corresponding standard tire.

#### **Rim**

The outer edge of a wheel upon which the tire beads are seated.

#### **Rim diameter**

The nominal diameter of the wheel's tire bead seating surface. If you change your wheel size, to wheels of a different diameter, you will have to purchase new tires to match the new wheels.

#### **Rim size**

Designation means rim diameter and width.

#### **Rim type designation**

The industry or manufacturer's designation for a rim by style or code.

#### **Rim width**

The nominal distance between wheel rim flanges.

### Section width

The linear distance between the exteriors of the sidewalls of an inflated tire, excluding elevations due to labeling decoration, or protective bands.

### Sidewall

The portion of a tire between the bead and the tread.

### Sidewall separation

The parting of the rubber compound from the cord material in the sidewall.

### Speed rating (letter code)

A standardized letter code indicating the maximum speed at which a tire is designed to be driven for extended periods of time. The ratings range from 93 mph or 150 km/h (P) to 186 mph or (300 km/h) Y.

The speed rating letter code, where applicable, is molded on the tire sidewall ⇒ [Tire labeling](#). You may not find this information on all tires because it is not required by law.

### Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS)

A system that detects when at least one of a vehicle's tires is underinflated and illuminates a low tire-pressure warning light.

### Tread

The portion of a tire that normally touches the road.

### Tread rib

A tread section running circumferential around a tire.

### Tread separation

Tire failure caused by the tread pulling away from the tire carcass.

### Tread wear indicators (TWI)

Raised areas within the main tread grooves that show, visually, when tires are worn and near the end of their useful life ⇒ [Tread depth and tread wear indicators](#)

### Uniform Tire Quality Grading (UTQG)

A tire information system developed by the U.S. National Highway Traffic Safety Administration (NHTSA) that is designed to help buyers compare tires. UTQG is not a safety rating, nor is it a guarantee that a tire will last for a certain number of miles or perform a certain way. It gives tire buyers more information to compare with factors such as price, brand loyalty and dealer recommendations. Under UTQG, tires are graded by the tire manufacturers in 3 areas: tread wear, traction and temperature resistance. UTQG information is molded into the tire sidewalls.

### U.S. DOT Tire Identification Number (TIN)

A tire's serial number. It begins with the letters DOT (Department of Transportation) and indicates that the tire meets all federal standards. The next 2 numbers or letters indicate the plant where the tire was manufactured. The last 4 numbers represent the week and year of manufacture.

For example, the numbers 1801 mean that the tire was produced in the 18th week of 2001. Any other numbers are marketing codes used by the tire manufacturer. This information is used to help identify affected consumers if a tire defect requires a recall.

### Vehicle capacity weight

The total rated cargo, luggage and passenger load. Passenger load is 150 lbs (68 kilograms) times the vehicle's total seating capacity (as listed on the label inside the driver door).

### Vehicle maximum load on the tire

The load on an individual tire that is determined by taking each axle's share of the maximum loaded vehicle weight (GAWR) and dividing by 2.

### Vehicle normal load on the tire

The load on an individual tire that is determined by taking each axle's share of the curb weight, accessory weight, and normal occupant weight (distributed according to the table below) and dividing by 2.

### Wheel size designation


Wheel rim diameter and width.

## OCCUPANT LOADING AND DISTRIBUTION FOR VEHICLE NORMAL LOAD FOR VARIOUS DESIGNATED SEATING CAPACITIES

Designated seating capacity, number of occupants	Vehicle normal load, number of occupants	Occupant distribution in a normally loaded vehicle
2,3 or 4	2	2 in front

Designated seating capacity, number of occupants	Vehicle normal load, number of occupants	Occupant distribution in a normally loaded vehicle
5	3	2 in front, 1 in back

## Tires and vehicle load limits

 Read and follow the introductory information and safety information first ⇒ [Introduction to the subject](#)

There are limits to the load any vehicle or any tire can carry. A vehicle that is overloaded will not handle well and is more difficult to stop. Overloading can damage important parts of the vehicle. Overloading can also lead to blowout, sudden loss of pressure or other tire failure that can cause loss of control.

Your safety and the safety of your passengers depends on making sure that load limits are not exceeded. Vehicle load includes everybody and everything in and on the vehicle. These load limits are technically referred to as the vehicle's **Gross Vehicle Weight Rating (GVWR)**.

The GVWR includes the weight of the basic vehicle, all factory-installed and other accessories, a full tank of fuel, oil, coolant and other fluids plus maximum load. The maximum load includes the number of passengers that the vehicle is intended to carry (seating capacity) with an assumed weight of 150 lbs (68 kg) for each passenger at a designated seating position and the total weight of any luggage in the vehicle. If you tow a trailer, the weight of the trailer hitch and the tongue weight of the loaded trailer must be included as part of the vehicle weight. At altitudes above 3000 ft (1000 m), combined towing weight (vehicle plus trailer) must be reduced by 10% for every 3000 ft (1000 m).


**The Gross Axle Weight Rating (GAWR)** is the maximum load that can be carried at each of the vehicle's 2 axles (by the front or rear tires). GVWR and GAWR are listed on the safety compliance label on the driver's door jamb. Your vehicle has 5 total seating positions: 2 in the front and 3 in back. Each seating position has a safety belt. Because there is an upper limit to your vehicle's total weight (GVWR), the weight of whatever is being carried (including the weight of a trailer hitch and the tongue weight of the loaded trailer) is also limited. More passengers, or passengers who are heavier than the assumed 150 lbs (68 kg), mean that less weight can be carried as luggage or other cargo. The tire pressure label on your Volkswagen also lists the maximum combined weight of all of the occupants and luggage or other cargo that the vehicle can carry.

### WARNING

Overloading a vehicle can cause loss of vehicle control, a crash or other accident, serious personal injury, and even death.

- Carrying more weight than your vehicle was designed to carry will prevent the vehicle from handling properly and increase the risk of the loss of vehicle control.
- The brakes on a vehicle that has been overloaded may not be able to stop the vehicle in a safe distance.
- Tires on a vehicle that has been overloaded can fail suddenly, including a blowout and sudden deflation, causing loss of control and a crash.
- Always make sure that the total load being transported – including the weight of a trailer hitch and the tongue weight of a loaded trailer – does not make the vehicle heavier than the vehicle's Gross Vehicle Weight Rating.

## Determining the correct load limit

 Read and follow the introductory information and safety information first ⇒ [Introduction to the subject](#)


Never overload tires. The following example illustrates how to determine the combined weight of all vehicle occupants and luggage or other vehicle payloads. Never overload the vehicle!

### Steps for Determining Correct Load Limit:

1. Locate the statement THE COMBINED WEIGHT OF OCCUPANTS AND CARGO SHOULD NEVER EXCEED XXX KG OR XXX LBS on your vehicle's placard (tire inflation pressure label) ⇒ [Tire inflation pressure](#).
2. Determine the combined weight of the driver and passengers that will be riding in your vehicle.
3. Subtract the combined weight of the driver and passengers from XXX kg or XXX lbs.  
  
The resulting figure equals the available amount of cargo and luggage load capacity.
4. For example, if the XXX amount equals 1400 lbs. and there will be five 150 lb. passengers in your vehicle, the amount of available cargo and luggage load capacity is 650 lbs. (1400-750 (5 x 150) = 650 lbs.)

5. Determine the combined weight of luggage and cargo being loaded on the vehicle. That weight may not safely exceed the available cargo and luggage load capacity calculated in Step 4.
6. If your vehicle will be towing a trailer, load from your trailer will be transferred to your vehicle. Consult this Manual to determine how this reduces the available cargo and luggage capacity of your vehicle.  
  
Check the tire sidewall to determine the load index specified for the tire.

## UTQG classification

 Read and follow the introductory information and safety information first ⇒ [▲ Introduction to the subject](#)

Uniform Tire Quality Grading (UTQG): Quality grades can be found where applicable on the tire sidewall between the tread shoulder and maximum section width. Example:

- Treadwear (number)
- Traction: AA, A, B or C
- Temperature: A, B or C

For example: Treadwear 200, Traction AA Temperature A

All passenger car tires must conform to Federal Safety Requirements in addition to these grades.

### Treadwear

The tread wear grade is a comparative rating based on the wear rate of the tire when tested under controlled conditions on a specified government test course.

For example, a tire graded 150 (Tread wear-value 150) would wear one-and-one-half (1 1/2) times as well on the government course as a tire graded 100.

The relative performance of tires depends upon the actual conditions of their use, however, and may depart significantly from the norm due to variations in driving habits, service practices and differences in road characteristics and climate.

### Traction

The traction grades from highest to lowest, are AA, A, B and C. Those grades represent the tire's ability to stop on wet pavement as measured under controlled conditions on specified government test surfaces of asphalt and concrete. A tire marked C may have poor traction performance ⇒ [▲](#).

### Temperature

The temperature grades are A (the highest), B, and C representing the tire's resistance to the generation of heat, and its ability to dissipate heat when tested under controlled conditions on a specified indoor laboratory test wheel.

Sustained high temperature can cause the material of the tire to degenerate and reduce tire life, and excessive temperature can lead to sudden tire failure.

The grade C corresponds to a level of performance which all passenger car tires must meet under the Federal Motor Vehicle Safety Standard No. 109. Grades B and A represent higher levels of performance on the laboratory test wheel than the minimum required by law ⇒ [▲](#).

## WARNING

The traction grade assigned to this tire is based on straight-ahead braking traction tests, and does not include acceleration, cornering, hydroplaning or peak traction characteristics.

## WARNING

The temperature grade for this tire is established for a tire that is properly inflated and not overloaded. Excessive speed, underinflation or excessive loading, either separately or in combination, can cause heat buildup and possible tire failure.

## Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS)

 [Introduction to the subject](#)

In this chapter you will find information on the following subjects:

⇒ [Indicator light \(telltale\)](#)

## ⇒ Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS)

The Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS) uses a pressure sensor in each wheel. Signals from the sensors are transmitted to the TPMS.

The TPMS checks the tire pressure of all 4 tires while you are driving and warns if there is a loss of pressure while the vehicle is moving. Pressure loss that is 25 % or more of the benchmark value programmed into the system is signaled by the indicator light (telltale), by acoustic warnings, and by text messages in the instrument cluster display.


### WARNING


Incorrect tire pressures and/or underinflation can cause sudden tire failure, loss of control, collision, serious personal injury or even death.

- When the warning symbol appears in the instrument cluster, stop and inspect the tires.
- Incorrect tire pressure and/or underinflation can cause increased tire wear and can affect the handling of the vehicle and stopping ability.
- Incorrect tire pressures and/or underinflation can also lead to sudden tire failure, including a blowout and sudden deflation, causing loss of vehicle control.
- The driver is responsible for the correct tire pressures for all tires on the vehicle. The recommended tire pressure values are listed on a sticker on the driver door ⇒ *Tires and wheels*.
- The TPMS can only work correctly when all tires on the vehicle are filled to the correct cold tire pressure specified for the tires installed on the vehicle.
- Using incorrect tire pressure values can cause accidents or other damage. Always inflate the tires to the correct specified cold tire pressure values for the tires installed on the vehicle.
- Always maintain correct cold tire inflation pressure so that TPMS can do its job.
- Always inflate tires to the recommended and correct tire pressure before driving off.
- Driving with underinflated tires causes them to flex (bend) more, letting them get too hot, resulting in tread separation, sudden tire failure, and loss of control.
- Excessive speed and/overloading can cause heat build-up, sudden tire failure and loss of control.
- If the tire pressure is too low or too high, the tires will wear prematurely and the vehicle will not handle well.
- If the tire is not flat and you do not have to change a wheel immediately, drive carefully and at reduced speed to the nearest service station to check the tire pressure and add air as required.
- When replacing tires or wheel rims on vehicles equipped with TPMS always read and heed the information and all WARNINGS regarding *Tires and wheels* ⇒ *Tires and wheels*.

### NOTE

- The wheel electronics are attached to special aluminum valves on the wheels. These valves are screwed on rigidly. Never bend the valves into position when checking and adjusting tire pressure.
- Missing valve stem caps can cause damage to the valves as well as to the TPMS sensors. To help prevent damage, always use valve stem caps like those originally installed at the factory. The caps must be screwed on tightly. Do not use metal valve stem caps.
- Do not use comfort valve caps. They do not seal properly and can damage the sensors.
- When switching to different tires, make certain the valves and sensors are not damaged.
- When replacing the valve cores, use only nickel-plated replacement cores.
- The batteries in the wheel electronics have a life of up to 10 years. It is not possible to replace the batteries. The entire device must be replaced.

 Underinflation increases fuel consumption and tire wear.

 Dispose of the wheel electronics and the old batteries in an environmentally responsible manner. Batteries of the type used in the wheel electronics may contain Perchlorate Material. Special handling may apply. See <http://www.dtsc.ca.gov/hazardouswaste/perchlorate>. Obey all applicable legal requirements regarding proper disposal.



Do not rely solely on the Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS). Check your tires regularly to make sure they are properly inflated and have no signs of damage, such as punctures, cuts, cracks, and blisters. Remove any objects that become embedded in the tire tread but have not penetrated into the body of tire itself.



When you take delivery of the vehicle, the Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS) is calibrated for the factory-recommended cold tire inflation pressure for the tires on your vehicle, as shown on the label inside the driver door ⇒ *Fig. 108*.

- For replacement tires that require a different inflation pressure, the TPMS must be adjusted to the new pressure specification by an authorized Volkswagen dealer or an authorized Volkswagen Service Facility. Only one value can be entered for each tire partial or full load; see the tire inflation pressure label on the driver door pillar ⇒ *Tire inflation pressure*.
- To help prevent damage to the sensor and valve, do not put excessive force on the valve when checking the tire pressure. Do not try to bend the valve.



- If sensors have to be replaced, have the valves changed at the same time.
- The tire valve gaskets must be replaced whenever a tire is mounted on the rim. Your authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility has a valve seal and gasket kit for this purpose. Always make sure that a valve seal and gasket kit is also used whenever a sensor is replaced.
- If you have to adjust the tire pressure on a warm tire, fill the tire with 2.0 - 4.35 psi (20 - 30 kPa) more than the pressure specified on the tire pressure label.
- When the TPMS determines that the air pressure in at least one tire is too low, carefully check the pressure in all 4 tires with an accurate tire pressure gauge. Low tire pressure usually cannot be determined by looking at the tire. This is especially true of low-profile tires.
- A Declaration of Compliance with the United States FCC and Industry Canada regulations is found on ⇒ [Declaration of Compliance, Telecommunications and Electronic Systems](#).



There may be differences between the pressure readings from a tire pressure gauge and the pressures registered by the Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS). The electronic TPMS is more accurate.



If you have work done on your wheels or tires, inform the workshop that the vehicle is equipped with a Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS) that has sensors in the wheels.



New tires may expand slightly the first time they are driven at high speeds, which can trigger a tire pressure warning. Remember that tire pressure can only be properly measured when the tire is cold ⇒ [Tires and wheels](#).

## Indicator light (telltale)

Read and follow the introductory information and safety information first ⇒ [Introduction to the subject](#)

Lights up	Display text	Possible cause or meaning ⇒	Proper response
	FLAT TIRE	Rapid loss of pressure in one or more tires. At least one tire has a pressure below 20.3 psi (1.4 bar) or a loss of tire pressure greater than 2.9 psi/min (0.2 bar/min).	<b>Stop!</b> Reduce speed immediately! Stop the vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so. Avoid fast cornering and hard braking!  Check all tires for external damage and embedded objects.  Check the inflation pressure of all 4 tires. If you are sure it is not necessary to change a tire right away, drive at reduced speed to the nearest authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility .
	CHECK TIRE PRESSURES	Critical loss of pressure of 25% or more in at least in one or more tires (compared with benchmark pressure setting) with the pressure more than 7.25 psi (0.5 bar) below the specified value.	Immediately check the tire inflation pressure of all tires. If you are sure it is not necessary to change a tire right away, drive at reduced speed to the nearest authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility.

Flashes	Display text	Possible cause or meaning ⇒	Proper response
		Possible communication problem between a sensor and the system. This may be caused by interference from a nearby radio transmitter (such	

Flashes	Display text	Possible cause or meaning	Proper response
(Intermittently while driving.)		as a mobile phone or other broadcast device) that uses the same frequency range. The indicator light should stop flashing as soon as you are far enough away from the device causing the interference.	Switch the source of interference off.

(L)

–

There is a system malfunction if the indicator light flashes for about 65 seconds and then stays on continuously.

If the tire pressure is correct but the indicator light keeps flashing after you switch the ignition off and on again, have an authorized Volkswagen dealer or an authorized Volkswagen Service Facility check the system.

When the ignition is switched on, several warning and indicator lights come on briefly for a function check. They go out after a few seconds.

**⚠ WARNING**

Incorrect tire pressures and/or underinflation can cause sudden tire failure, loss of control, collision, serious personal injury, or even death.

- When the warning symbol (L) appears in the instrument cluster, stop the vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so and inspect all tires.
- Incorrect tire pressure and/or underinflation can cause increased tire wear and can affect the handling of the vehicle and its stopping ability.
- Incorrect tire pressure and/or underinflation can also lead to sudden tire failure, including a blowout and sudden deflation, causing loss of vehicle control.
- The driver is responsible for the correct tire pressures for all tires on the vehicle. The recommended tire pressure values are listed on a sticker inside the driver's door ⇒ Fig. 108.
- The TPMS can only work correctly when all tires on the vehicle are filled to the correct cold tire inflation specified for the tires installed on the vehicle. Always set and maintain the correct cold tire inflation pressure so that TPMS can do its job.
- Using incorrect tire pressure values can cause accidents or other damage. Check the pressure in all 4 tires when the tires are still cold. Never reduce air pressure in warm tires to match cold tire inflation pressure.
- Always inflate the tires to the correct specified cold tire pressure values for the tires installed of the vehicle; see the tire inflation pressure label on the driver door jamb ⇒ Tire inflation pressure.
- Always inflate tires to the recommended and correct tire pressure before driving off.
- Driving with underinflated tires causes them to flex more, letting them get too hot, which can result in tread separation, sudden tire failure, and loss of control.
- Excessive speed and/or overloading can cause heat buildup, sudden tire failure, and loss of control.
- If the tire pressure is too low or too high, the tires will wear prematurely and the vehicle will not handle well.
- If the tire is not flat and you do not have to change the tire or wheel immediately, drive at reduced speed to the nearest service station to check the tire pressure and add air as required.
- When replacing tires or wheel rims on vehicles equipped with TPMS, always read and heed the information and all WARNINGS in the section Tires and wheels (see Index).

**⚠ WARNING**

Failure to heed warning lights and instrument cluster text messages can cause the vehicle to break down in traffic and result in a collision and serious personal injury.

- Never ignore warning lights or text WARNINGS.
- Always stop the vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so.

**ⓘ NOTE**

Failure to heed warning lights or text WARNINGS can result in vehicle damage.

**Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS)**

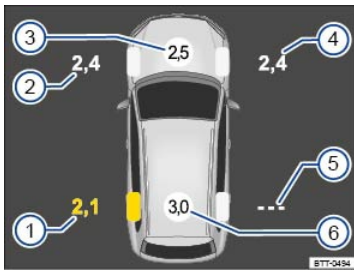


Fig. 113 Instrument cluster display: Current tire inflation pressures.

Read and follow the introductory information and safety information first ⇒ [Introduction to the subject](#)

The Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS) uses a pressure sensor in each wheel. Signals from the sensors are transmitted to the TPMS.

The TPMS checks the tire pressure of all 4 tires while you are driving and warns if there is a loss of pressure while the vehicle is moving. Pressure loss that is 25 % or more of the benchmark value programmed into the system is signalled by the indicator light (telltale), by acoustic warnings, and by text messages in the instrument cluster display.

If you mount tires of a different size than the factory installed tires, an authorized Volkswagen dealer or an authorized Volkswagen Service Facility must adjust the benchmark TPMS tire pressure to match the new tires. Without this adjustment, TPMS may not work correctly or at all.

The tire pressure recommended for the tires originally installed on the vehicle is on a sticker on the driver door jamb ⇒ [Tires and wheels](#).

#### Display in the instrument cluster

The display in the instrument cluster shows the vehicle with the actual and benchmark tire pressures of all 4 road wheels ⇒ [Fig. 113](#).

Key to ⇒ [Fig. 113](#)

Position number	Meaning
①	Tire pressure warning, left rear tire.
②	Current tire pressure, front left tire.
③	Benchmark pressure, front tires.
④	Current tire pressure, front right tire.
⑤	No data received, right rear tire.
⑥	Benchmark pressure, rear tires.

If the tire pressure is too low, the relevant tires and the respective readings are shown in yellow ⇒ [Fig. 113](#).

Each tire, including the spare (if provided), should be checked monthly when cold and inflated to the inflation pressure recommended by the vehicle manufacturer on the vehicle placard or tire inflation pressure label. (If your vehicle has tires of a different size than the size indicated on the vehicle placard or tire inflation pressure label, you should determine the proper tire inflation pressure for those tires.)

As an added safety feature, your vehicle has been equipped with a Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS) that illuminates a low tire pressure telltale when one or more of your tires is significantly underinflated. Accordingly, when the low tire pressure telltale illuminates, you should stop and check your tires as soon as possible and inflate them to the proper pressure. Driving on a significantly underinflated tire causes the tire to overheat and can lead to tire failure. Underinflation also reduces fuel efficiency and tire tread life, and may affect the vehicle's handling and stopping ability.

Please note that the TPMS is not a substitute for proper tire maintenance, and it is the driver's responsibility to maintain correct tire pressure, even if underinflation has not reached the level to trigger illumination of the TPMS low tire pressure telltale.

Your vehicle has also been equipped with a TPMS malfunction indicator to indicate when the system is not operating properly. The TPMS malfunction indicator is combined with the low tire pressure telltale. When the system detects a malfunction, the telltale will flash for approximately 1 minute and then remain continuously illuminated. This sequence will continue upon subsequent vehicle start-ups as long as the malfunction exists.

When the malfunction indicator is illuminated, the system may not be able to detect or signal low tire pressure as intended. TPMS malfunctions may occur for a variety of reasons, including the installation of replacement or alternate tires or wheels on the vehicle that prevent the TPMS from functioning properly. Always check the TPMS malfunction telltale after replacing one or more tires or wheels on your vehicle to ensure that the replacement or alternate tires and wheels allow the TPMS to continue to function properly.

## Collapsible spare tire

The collapsible spare tire has no tire pressure sensor. When the collapsible spare tire is mounted on the vehicle, the Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS) indicator light will flash in the instrument cluster display. The TPMS continues to monitor the other 3 wheels.

## Tire storage

If the tires do not move for an extended period of time, the sensors will not transmit tire pressures to the system. This saves sensor battery life. When the ignition is switched on, the sensors transmit signals to the Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS).

### WARNING

Incorrect tire pressure can cause sudden tire failure, loss of vehicle control and serious personal injury.

- After that, always make sure that all 4 tires are inflated to the correct tire pressure for the tires installed on the vehicle.
- See the tire pressure label ⇒ *Tire inflation pressure* and the Owner's Literature for recommended cold tire inflation pressure and other important information.
- When replacing tires or wheel rims on vehicles equipped with TPMS, always read and heed all of the information and WARNINGS ⇒ *Tire inflation pressure*.

### NOTE

- The wheel electronics are attached to special aluminum valves on the wheels. These valves are screwed on rigidly. Never bend the valves "into position" when checking and adjusting tire pressure.
- Missing tire air valve caps could result in damage to the valves, as well as to the sensors on the Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS). Therefore, make sure your valve caps conform to the specifications of those originally installed on the vehicle and that they are always tightly and properly screwed on to the valves. Do not use metallic valve caps.
- Do not use "comfort valve caps", as these do not seal properly and could therefore cause damage to the sensors.
- When changing or rotating the tires, be careful not to damage the valves or sensors.
- The aluminum valves that are installed should be replaced after about 6 years of use due to aging of the rubber seals. The valves can be replaced when a tire is changed. Do not reuse aluminum valves after they are removed. They must be replaced. The tire pressure sensors can be reused.

## Storage and equipment

### Storage areas

#### Introduction to the subject

In this chapter you will find information on the following subjects:

⇒ *Storage compartment in the doors*

⇒ *Storage compartment in the upper front center console*

⇒ *Storage compartment in the lower front center console*

⇒ *Storage compartment in the front center armrest*

⇒ *Storage compartment in the rear center console*

⇒ *Glove compartment*

⇒ *Storage compartment under the front seats*

⇒ *Other storage compartments*

Store only lightweight or small objects in storage compartments.

There may be a factory-installed **AUX-IN socket**, **Media Device Interface (MDI) / (MEDIA-IN)**, and a **12 Volt socket** located in the storage compartment in the front center armrest ⇒ *Fig. 118*.

The factory-installed **DVD drive**, may be located in the glove compartment ⇒ *Fig. 121*②.

### WARNING

Loose objects can be thrown around the inside of the vehicle when the vehicle is moving, especially during sudden maneuvers and hard braking. This can cause serious personal injuries and even make the driver lose control of the vehicle.

- Never let animals ride in the vehicle's open storage compartments, on top of the instrument panel, or on the shelf behind the rear seats.

- Never put hard, heavy or sharp objects in these places or in articles of clothing or bags in the passenger compartment.
- Always keep storage compartments closed while driving.

#### ⚠ WARNING

Objects in the driver footwell can prevent the pedals from moving freely. This can cause loss of vehicle control and increase the risk of serious personal injuries.

- Always make sure that nothing can interfere with the pedals.
- Always fasten floor mats securely to the floor.
- Never put floor mats or other floor coverings on top of already installed floor mats.
- Always make sure that nothing can fall into the driver footwell while the vehicle is moving.

#### ⚠ WARNING

Some kinds of cigarette lighters can be lit unintentionally, or crushed causing a fire that can result in serious burns and vehicle damage.

- Always make sure that there are no lighters in the seat tracks or near other moving parts before adjusting the seats.
- Before closing a storage compartment, always make sure that no cigarette lighter can be activated, crushed, or otherwise damaged.
- Never leave a cigarette lighter in a storage compartment, on the instrument panel or in other places in the vehicle. Heat buildup in the passenger and luggage compartment of a parked vehicle can result in temperatures in the vehicle that are much higher than the outside temperatures, particularly in summer. High temperatures could cause the cigarette lighter to catch fire.

#### ! NOTE

- The defroster heating wires or antenna in the rear window can be damaged by hard or sharp things on the shelf below the rear window.
- Do not keep any food, medicine, or other items sensitive to heat or cold in the vehicle. They can be damaged or made unusable by heat or cold.
- Things that are made of transparent materials (such as eyeglasses, magnifying glasses, or transparent suction cups on the windows) can magnify sunlight and damage the vehicle.



The ventilation slots between the rear window and the luggage compartment cover must not be blocked so that stale air can escape from the vehicle.

### Storage compartment in the doors

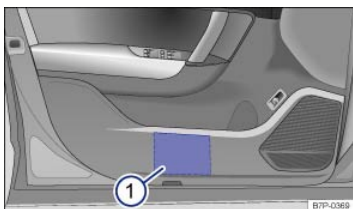


Fig. 114 In the driver door: Storage compartment.

📖 Read and follow the introductory information and safety information first ⇒ ⚠ *Introduction to the subject*

There is a storage compartment in each vehicle door. ⇒ Fig. 114①.

### Storage compartment in the upper front center console



Fig. 115 In the upper front center console: Storage compartment.

📖 Read and follow the introductory information and safety information first ⇒ ⚠ *Introduction to the subject*

To *open*, press the button on the cover ⇒ Fig. 115 (arrow).

To *close*, push the cover down until it latches securely.

## Storage compartment in the lower front center console

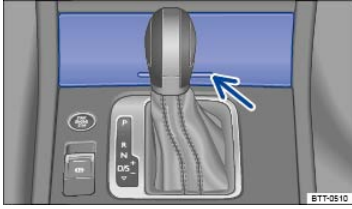



Fig. 116 In the lower front center console: Storage compartment.

 Read and follow the introductory information and safety information first ⇒ [Introduction to the subject](#)

This storage compartment can be used for storing small items or other light objects.

To *open*, briefly press and release the storage compartment cover ⇒ [Fig. 116](#) (arrow).

To *close*, push the lid up until it latches.



The lower front center console storage compartment has a 12 Volt socket ⇒ [Power outlets](#).

## Storage compartment in the front center armrest

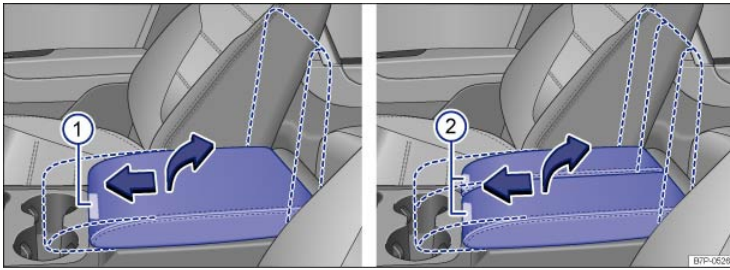


Fig. 117 In the front center armrest: Storage compartment.

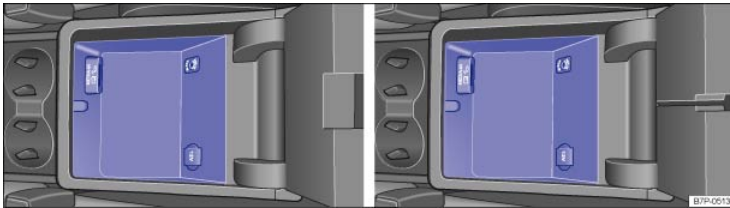



Fig. 118 In the front center armrest: Storage compartment.

 Read and follow the introductory information and safety information first ⇒ [Introduction to the subject](#)

The sections of a center armrest can be opened separately to access the storage compartment.

A MEDIA-IN , AUX-IN ⇒ [Booklet Radio or Navigation System](#), and 12 Volt socket ⇒ [12 Volt sockets in the vehicle](#) may also be located in the storage compartment ⇒ [Fig. 118](#).

To *slide* (if applicable), press ⇒ [Fig. 117①](#) or ⇒ [Fig. 117②](#) move the center armrest in the direction of the arrow ⇒ [Fig. 117](#).

To *open*, press button ⇒ [Fig. 117①](#) or ⇒ [Fig. 117②](#) and lift the center armrest section up completely in the direction of the arrow ⇒ [Fig. 46](#).

To *close*, push the center armrest down until it latches in place.

### WARNING

The center armrest can restrict the driver's arm movement and cause crashes and serious personal injury.

- Always keep storage compartments in the center armrest closed while driving.

### WARNING

Never let a passenger, especially a child, ride on the center armrest. Improper seating position can increase the risk of serious personal injury in a crash.



There may be a 12 Volt-socket, a MEDIA-IN multimedia jack, or an AUX-IN-jack in the front center armrest stowage compartment.

- The MEDIA-IN multimedia jack lets you connect external devices to the Infotainment System.

## Storage compartment in the rear center console



Fig. 119 In the rear center console: Storage compartment.

Read and follow the introductory information and safety information first ⇒ *Introduction to the subject*

A storage compartment is located in the rear center console ⇒ Fig. 119①.

## Glove compartment

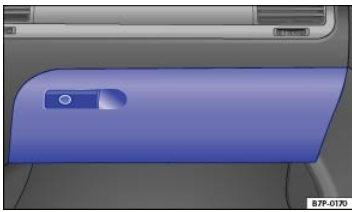


Fig. 120 On the passenger side: Glove compartment.

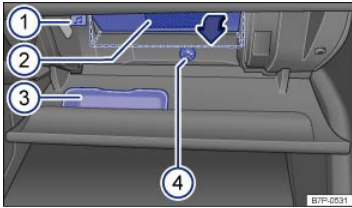


Fig. 121 Inside the glove compartment.

Read and follow the introductory information and safety information first ⇒ *Introduction to the subject*

**Key to ⇒ Fig. 121 :**

- ① Release for fold-down compartment.
- ② Compartment storage net for Owner's Manual ⇒ Fig. 121② or within the fold-down compartment there may be a MEDIA-IN multimedia jack or a DVD drive (HDD, SD) ⇒ *BookletRadio or Navigation System*,
- ③ Eyeglass compartment.
- ④ Vent.

### Opening and closing the glove compartment

If necessary, unlock the glove compartment. It is locked when the key slot is vertical.

- To *open*, pull the handle ⇒ Fig. 120.
- To *close*, push the lid up.

### Owner's Manual slot

The Owner's Manual ⇒ Fig. 121② is located in the storage net and should be kept there.

### Storage areas

Inside the glove compartment, there is an eyeglass compartment ⇒ Fig. 121③.

### MEDIA-IN multimedia jack or DVD drive (HDD, SD)

The fold-down compartment has either a MEDIA-IN multimedia jack ⇒ *BookletRadio or Navigation System*, or a DVD drive with media center (HDD), and slots for SD cards ⇒ Fig. 121②. Pull down the release ⇒ Fig. 121① to open the fold-down compartment.

See ⇒ *BookletRadio or Navigation System*, for information and instructions on operating the DVD drive.

## Cooling the glove compartment

There is an air vent  $\Rightarrow$  Fig. 121④ in the back of the glove compartment. Cool air can be directed into the glove compartment if the air conditioner is on. Open or close the air vent by turning it.

### ⚠ WARNING

An open glove compartment door can increase the risk of serious injury during sudden braking or driving maneuvers or in a crash.

- Always keep the glove compartment closed while the vehicle is moving.

### ⓘ NOTE

Keep the compartment with the DVD drive  $\Rightarrow$  Fig. 121② closed while driving; otherwise, vibration may damage the DVD drive.

### ⓘ NOTE

In some vehicle models, design considerations have made it necessary to have openings in the glove compartment behind the Owner's Manual slot, for example. Small items may fall through these openings and get behind the instrument panel. This can cause unusual noises and damage the vehicle. Never put any small objects in the glove compartment for this reason.

## Storage compartment under the front seats

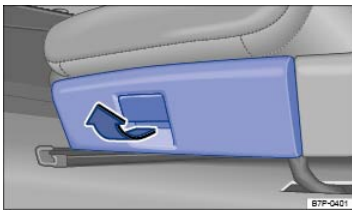


Fig. 122 Under the driver seat: Storage compartment.

📖 Read and follow the introductory information and safety information first  $\Rightarrow$  ⚠ *Introduction to the subject*

There is a storage compartment  $\Rightarrow$  Fig. 122 under each front seat. A first aid kit can be stored in this storage compartment.

### Opening and closing the storage compartment

To **open**, pull the handle slightly in the direction of the arrow  $\Rightarrow$  Fig. 122 and then push the cover down.

To **close**, fold the cover up and push in the direction of the front seat until it engages securely.

### ⚠ WARNING

An open storage compartment can interfere with the pedals and cause accidents and severe personal injuries.

- Always keep the storage compartment closed when the vehicle is moving. Otherwise the storage compartment cover and other objects could get into the driver footwell and interfere with the pedals.

## Other storage compartments

📖 Read and follow the introductory information and safety information first  $\Rightarrow$  ⚠ *Introduction to the subject*

### Additional storage:

- Shelf behind the rear seat backrest – only for light clothing or similar objects that do not interfere with visibility to the rear!
- **Coat hooks** on the center door jamb and on the overhead grab handles in the rear.
- **Shopping bag hooks** in the luggage compartment  $\Rightarrow$  *Luggage compartment*.
- An elastic strap in the right side trim of the luggage compartment.

### ⚠ WARNING

Clothes or other items on the shelf behind the rear seat backrest may limit visibility, and cause thereby causing accidents and severe personal injuries.

- Always hang clothes so that they do not limit visibility.
- Always use the built-in coat hooks only for lightweight clothing. Never leave any heavy or sharp-edged items in the pockets that may interfere with airbag deployment and can cause personal injury in a collision.

## Cup holders




## Introduction to the subject

In this chapter you will find information on the following subjects:

⇒ *Cup holders in the front center console*

⇒ *Cup holders in the rear center armrest*

### Beverage bottle holders

There is a place for bottles in the open storage bins on the driver and front passenger doors and holders for bottles in the open storage bins in the rear doors. The bottle volume must not exceed 49 oz (1.5 l) (front doors) and 16.9 oz (0.5 l) (rear doors) ⇒ .

#### WARNING

Improper use of beverage holders can cause injuries.

- Never put hot drinks in the cup holders. During normal or sudden maneuvers, sudden braking or in a collision, hot liquid can be spilled and cause burns!
- Make certain that bottles or other items cannot fall into the driver's footwell while the vehicle is moving and interfere with the movement of the pedals.
- Never put heavy cups, food or other heavy items in the cup holders. Heavy items can fly through the passenger compartment in a crash and cause serious injury.
- Use the bottle holders only for standard beverage bottles holding no more than 49 oz (1.5 l) (front doors) and 16.9 oz (0.5 l) (rear doors).

#### WARNING

Hot or freezing temperatures in the passenger compartment can cause closed bottles to explode or break.

- Never leave closed bottles in a very hot or cold vehicle.

#### WARNING

Bottles and other things can fall into the driver's footwell and interfere with the pedals while driving.

- Make sure that bottles cannot fall into the driver's footwell during driving to avoid obstructing the pedals.
- Use the bottle holders only for standard beverage bottles holding no more than 49 oz (1.5 l) (front doors) and 16.9 oz (0.5 l) (rear doors).

#### NOTE

Never put open drinks in the cup holder when the vehicle is moving. The drinks can spill and damage the vehicle, including the electrical system.

### Cup holders in the front center console

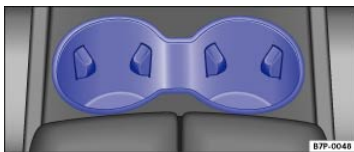




Fig. 123 In the front center console: Cup holders.

 Read and follow the introductory information and safety information first ⇒  *Introduction to the subject*

There are 2 cup holders in the front center console in front of the front center armrest ⇒ Fig. 123.

### Cup holders in the rear center armrest

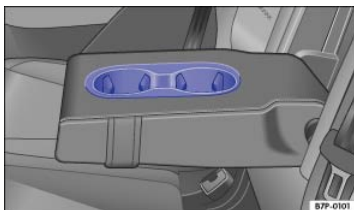




Fig. 124 In the rear center armrest: Cup holders.

 Read and follow the introductory information and safety information first ⇒  *Introduction to the subject*

There are 2 cup holders in the rear seat center armrest ⇒ Fig. 124. Fold the center armrest down to use these cup holders.

**⚠ WARNING**

Always keep the armrest folded up when the vehicle is moving to reduce the risk of injury.

- Never let anybody, especially children, ride on the rear center armrest or in the center position on the rear seat when the armrest is folded down. An improper seating position can increase the risk of serious injury in a crash.



The insert is suitable for bottle volumes up to 16.9 oz. (0.5 liter).



Use the insert only in the cup holder in the rear center armrest. The insert cannot be installed in the cup holder in the front center console. Attempting to do so can scratch the surface.

## Power outlets

### Introduction to the subject

In this chapter you will find information on the following subjects:

⇒ [12 Volt sockets in the vehicle](#)

⇒ [115 Volt outlet in the vehicle](#)

Electrical devices can be connected to the vehicle sockets.

The connected devices must be in good working order.

**⚠ WARNING**

Improper use of electrical sockets and electrical devices may start a fire and cause severe personal injury.

- Never leave children unattended in the vehicle. Sockets and connected devices can be used when the ignition is switched on.
- If the connected device gets warm, immediately switch it off and disconnect the power supply.

**! NOTE**

- To help prevent damage to the electrical system, never connect any accessories such as a solar panel or vehicle battery charger to a 12 Volt socket.
- Only use accessories which have been tested for electromagnetic compatibility with a motor vehicle.
- To help prevent damage from voltage fluctuations, switch off all electrical consumers connected to the 12 Volt socket before switching the ignition on or off or starting the engine.
- Never connect devices to a 12 Volt socket that draw more than the maximum wattage the socket can supply. Drawing too much power can damage the vehicle electrical system.



Please turn off the engine when you stop for any length of time.



The vehicle battery will drain if you use electrical equipment when the engine is not running.



Unshielded devices may interfere with radio reception or the vehicle's electrical system.



Operating electrical devices near the windshield-integrated antenna may interfere with AM radio reception.

## 12 Volt sockets in the vehicle

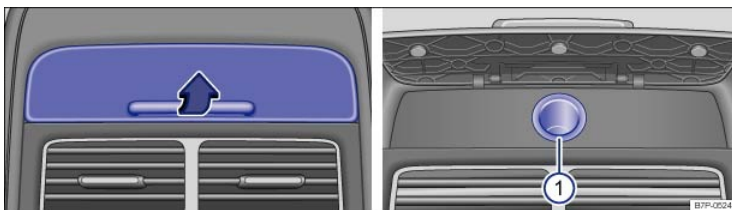


Fig. 125 Rear center console: Open cover for access to the 12 Volt socket.

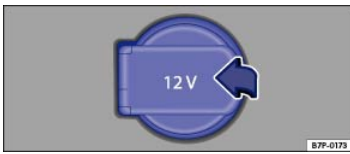


Fig. 126 Front center armrest storage compartment, luggage compartment, lower front center console: Opening the cover of the 12 Volt socket.

Read and follow the introductory information and safety information first ⇒ [Introduction to the subject](#)

### Maximum power draw

Sockets Maximum power draw

12 Volts 120 watts

The maximum power draw at any one socket must never be exceeded. Electrical devices should have information on them that says how much power they draw.

If 2 or more electrical devices are connected at the same time, the total power draw of all connected devices must never be more than 190 watts .

### 12 Volt socket

The 12 Volt socket works only when the ignition is switched on.

If the ignition is on but the engine is not running, the vehicle battery will be drained by any device that is plugged in and turned on. For this reason, never use the electrical sockets unless the engine is running.

To help prevent damage from voltage fluctuations, switch off all electrical devices connected to a 12 Volt socket before switching the ignition on or off or starting the engine.

The vehicle may have 12 Volt sockets at the following places:

- In the storage compartment in the front center armrest.
- In the rear center console ⇒ [Fig. 125](#)① or ⇒ [Fig. 127](#)①.
- In the luggage compartment.
- In the storage compartment in the lower front center console.

### Opening and closing the cover in the rear center console

- Reach into the recess from below ⇒ [Fig. 125](#); fold the cover up in the direction of the arrow and hold it open.
- The cover is spring-loaded and closes when you let it go.

### Opening and closing the 12 Volt socket covers in the front center armrest storage compartment, luggage compartment, lower front center console

- Grasp the cover on the side ⇒ [Fig. 126](#) and open it in the direction of the arrow; hold it open.
- The cover is spring-loaded and closes when you let it go.

### NOTE

- Follow the manufacturer's instructions for connected devices!
- Never exceed the maximum power consumption, or the entire vehicle electrical system may become damaged.
- 12 Volt socket:
  - Only use equipment that has been tested for electromagnetic compatibility and complies with applicable guidelines.
  - Never feed current into the socket with a solar panel, for example.




Unshielded devices may interfere with radio reception or the vehicle's electrical system.

## 115 Volt outlet in the vehicle



Fig. 127 Rear center console: Open cover for access to the 115 Volt outlet (if equipped).

 Read and follow the introductory information and safety information first ⇒ [Introduction to the subject](#)

**Maximum power draw**

Outlet ⇒ <a href="#">Fig. 127②</a>	Maximum power draw
115 Volts	150 watts (300 watts peak consumption)

The maximum power draw at any one outlet must never be exceeded. Electrical devices should have information on them that says how much power they draw.

**115 Volt outlet**

The outlet can only be used if the engine is running .

*Connecting an electrical device:* Insert the plug as far as it goes into the outlet in order to unlock the integrated childproof lock. There is electricity in the outlet only after the childproof lock is unlocked.

LED display on the outlet	
Green continuous light:	The child-proof lock is unlocked. The outlet is operational.
Red flashing light:	Malfunction, such as cutoff due to current overload or overheating.

**Opening and closing the cover in the rear center console**

- Reach into the recess from below; fold the cover up in the direction of the arrow and hold it open.
- The cover is spring-loaded and closes when you let it go.

**Overheating cutoff**

The inverter in the 115 Volt outlet shuts off automatically above a certain temperature. The shutoff prevents overheating in case of excessive power consumption of connected devices or at high ambient air temperatures. The inverter switches back on automatically after a cool-down period. Connected devices which were left switched on come back on again. For this reason, switch off connected electrical devices if the inverter switches off due to overheating.

**⚠ DANGER!**

Improper use of the 115 Volt outlet can cause electrical shock, burns, and severe personal injury.

- Never spill liquids on the socket.
- Never plug an adapter or an extension cord into the 115 Volt outlet. Otherwise, the integrated child-proof lock is switched off and the outlet is live.
- Never stick anything that conducts electricity, such as a knitting needle, into the contacts of the 115 Volt outlet.

**ⓘ NOTE**

- Follow the manufacturer's instructions for connected devices!
- Never exceed the maximum power consumption, or the entire vehicle electrical system may become damaged.
- 115 Volt outlet:
  - Do not connect devices or plugs which are too heavy, such as a grid power supply adapter or cord, directly onto the outlet.
  - Do not connect lamps containing fluorescent tubes.
  - Only connect devices to the outlet with voltage consistent with the voltage of the outlet.
  - For devices with a high starting current, the integrated over-current shutoff will prevent them from being switched on. In this case, disconnect the power supply from the device and reconnect after about 10 seconds.

**ⓘ** Some devices may not work very well when connected to the 115 Volt outlet due to low wattage.

**ⓘ** Unshielded devices may interfere with radio reception or the vehicle's electrical system.

# Infotainment System

## Introduction to the Infotainment System

### Safety information on Infotainment System

#### WARNING

Driving on today's roads demands the full attention of the driver at all times. Driver distraction causes accidents, collisions and serious personal injury!

- Never let yourself be distracted when setting, adjusting, or using the Infotainment System, when using your mobile phone, or when operating the mobile phone controls.
- Always drive attentively and responsibly. Use the Infotainment system, your mobile phone, and the mobile phone controls only if road, traffic, and weather conditions permit and you will not be distracted from your driving.
- If you cannot use the Infotainment System, your mobile phone, or the mobile phone controls safely while driving, wait until later or find a safe spot where you can pull off the road and park the vehicle.
- Always set sound volume levels so that you can clearly hear horns, sirens, and other warning sounds outside the vehicle.
- Setting the sound volume too high may damage your hearing. This applies even if you are exposed to high volumes for short periods only.

#### WARNING

The volume level may suddenly get louder change when you switch media source or connect a new audio source.

- Always lower the base volume before switching media source or connecting a new audio source.

#### WARNING

Driving recommendations and traffic symbols displayed by the navigation system may differ from the current traffic situation.

- Traffic signs and traffic regulations have priority over the recommendations and displays provided by the navigation system.
- Always adjust your speed and driving style to road, traffic, weather, and visibility conditions.

#### WARNING

External devices that are loose in the vehicle or not properly secured could be thrown around the interior and cause injuries during a sudden driving or braking maneuver, or in a crash.

- Never put or attach an external device on a door, on the windshield or above or near to the areas marked AIRBAG on the steering wheel, the instrument panel and the seat backrests, or between these areas and the vehicle occupants. External devices could cause serious injury in an accident, especially when the airbags inflate.

#### WARNING

Connecting cables of external devices may obstruct visibility through the windshield or other windows.

- Route cables so as not to interfere with the driver.

#### WARNING

Opening a CD or DVD player's housing can lead to injuries from invisible laser radiation.

- Always have CD or DVD players repaired only by a qualified workshop.

#### NOTE

Improper insertion or insertion of an improperly fitting memory card can damage the locking mechanism in the memory card slot.

- Pay attention to the proper insertion position.
- Excessive pressure can destroy the locking mechanism in the memory card slot.
- Only use suitable memory cards.

#### NOTE

- When inserting and removing CDs and DVDs, always hold them at right angles to the front of the unit. Inserting or removing them at an angle to the DVD drive may lead to scratching.
- Inserting a second CD or DVD while a CD or DVD is inserted or is being ejected can destroy the DVD drive. Always wait until the data storage device is completely ejected.

## NOTE

Any foreign objects attached to a data medium and non-round data storage devices can damage the DVD drive.

- Only clean 12-cm standard CDs or DVDs should be used!
  - Do not attach stickers or other items to the data storage device. Stickers may peel off and damage the drive.
  - Do not insert 8-cm single CDs or non-round CDs (shaped CDs) or DVDs.
  - Do not insert DVD-Plus, Dual Discs and Flip Discs, as these are thicker than standard CDs.

## System settings (CAR)

### Introduction to the subject

In this chapter you will find information on the following subjects:

⇒ *Settings main menu (CAR)*

⇒ *Assist systems menu*

⇒ *Settings menu*

⇒ *Service menu*

Press the **CAR** Infotainment button for the choice of settings menus.

## WARNING

Driving on today's roads demands the full attention of the driver at all times. Driver distraction causes accidents, collisions and serious personal injury!

- Never let yourself be distracted when setting, adjusting, or using the Infotainment System, when using your mobile phone, or when operating the mobile phone controls.
- Always drive attentively and responsibly. Use the Infotainment system, your mobile phone, and the mobile phone controls only if road, traffic, and weather conditions permit and you will not be distracted from your driving.
- If you cannot use the Infotainment System, your mobile phone, or the mobile phone controls safely while driving, wait until later or find a safe spot where you can pull off the road and park the vehicle.
- Always set sound volume levels so that you can clearly hear horns, sirens, and other warning sounds outside the vehicle.

## Settings main menu (CAR)

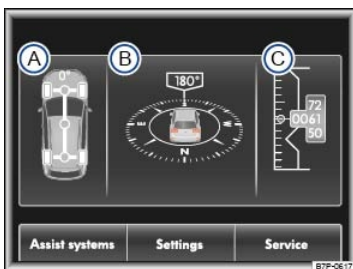


Fig. 128 Infotainment system with navigation: Settings main menu (CAR).

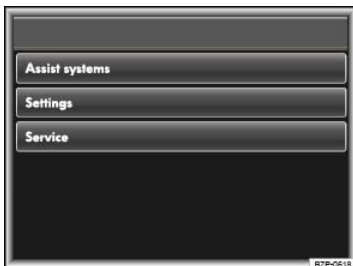


Fig. 129 Infotainment system without navigation: Settings main menu (CAR).

Read and follow the introductory information and safety information first ⇒ [Introduction to the subject](#)

- (A) Shows steering angle.
- (B) Compass view with the current direction of travel.
- (C) Display showing the current altitude.

Open settings main menu (CAR):


- Switch on the ignition.
- Press the [CAR](#) Infotainment button.
- To adjust the settings for a certain feature, press the appropriate function key.

Function key: Effect

Assist systems: Assist systems menu ⇒ [Assist systems menu](#) .


Settings: Settings menu ⇒ [Settings menu](#) .

Service: Service menu ⇒ [Service menu](#) .

You can always go back to the previously active menu from the main menu by pressing the  function key.

If the check box in a function key is checked , the feature is switched on ⇒ [Booklet Radio or Navigation System](#) .

## Assist systems menu

 Read and follow the introductory information and safety information first ⇒ [Introduction to the subject](#)

- Switch on the ignition.
- Press the [CAR](#) Infotainment button.
- Tap the Assist systems function key on the screen.

Pressing the  function key always takes you back to the previously active menu.

The feature is enabled when the function key check box  is checked.

Function key: Effect

Rain sensor: Activate or deactivate rain sensor ⇒ [Windshield wiper and washer](#) .

Parking distance warning system : Settings for parking distance warning system ⇒ [Park Distance Control \(PDC\)](#) .

Side Assist (lane change assist system) : Adjust the display brightness.

Changes made in settings menus are automatically applied once the menu is closed.

## Settings menu

 Read and follow the introductory information and safety information first ⇒ [Introduction to the subject](#)

- Switch on the ignition.
- Press the [CAR](#) Infotainment button.
- Tap the Settings function key on the screen.

Pressing the  function key always takes you back to the previously active menu.

The feature is enabled when the function key check box  is checked.

Function key: Effect

Lights and vision: Settings for lighting outside the vehicle and inside the passenger compartment ⇒ [Lights](#) .

Instrument cluster: Settings for the instrument cluster ⇒ [Instrument Cluster](#) .

Seat settings: Settings for the front seats ⇒ [Adjusting the seating position](#) .

Vehicle key: Settings for convenience closing ⇒ [Power windows](#) .

Function key: Effect


Central locking: Settings for the central locking system ⇒ [Power locking system](#).

Garage door opener: Settings for the garage door opener ⇒ [HomeLink® Universal Transmitter](#).

Vehicle ID/Number of keys: Display of vehicle chassis number and number of authorized remote control vehicle keys ⇒ [Technical data](#).


Changes made in settings menus are automatically applied once the menu is closed.

## Service menu

 Read and follow the introductory information and safety information first ⇒ [Introduction to the subject](#)

- Switch on the ignition.
- Press the [CAR](#) Infotainment button.
- Tap the Service function key on the screen.
- **OR:** Tap the Settings and then tap the Service/inspection function key on the screen.

Display of current oil level and service messages ⇒ [Instrument Cluster](#).

Pressing the  function key always takes you back to the previously active menu.

The feature is enabled when the function key check box  is checked.

Function key: Effect

Reset Interval service: Reset Service reminder display ⇒ [Instrument Cluster](#).

Wipers in service pos.: Activate or deactivate the service position of the windshield wipers ⇒ [Windshield wiper and washer](#).



# While driving

## Vehicle operation

### Starting and stopping the engine

#### Introduction to the subject

In this chapter you will find information on the following subjects:

⇒ *Warning and indicator lights*

⇒ *Vehicle key positions in the ignition switch*

⇒ *Starter button*

⇒ *Starting the engine*

⇒ *Stopping the engine*

⇒ *Electronic immobilizer*

#### Immobilizer display

If an unauthorized vehicle key is used or the system malfunctions, **Immobilizer active!** may appear on the instrument cluster. The engine cannot be started.

#### Push-starting and tow-starting

For technical reasons, **never** try to push-start or tow-start the vehicle. Jump-start the vehicle instead while following proper and safe procedures.

#### WARNING

Switching off the engine while the vehicle is moving can make the vehicle harder to stop and result in loss of vehicle control, leading to collisions and severe personal injuries.

- Brake and steering assistance systems, the airbag system, safety belt pretensioners, and other vehicle safety features only work when the engine is running.
- Switch off the engine only when the vehicle is not moving.

#### WARNING

To reduce the risk of serious personal injury when starting and running the vehicle's engine:

- Never start the engine or let it run in a confined or enclosed area. Engine exhaust contains carbon monoxide, a poisonous, colorless, and odorless gas. Carbon monoxide can cause unconsciousness and death.
- Never leave the vehicle unattended with the engine running. The vehicle could move suddenly or some other unexpected event could occur resulting in property damage or personal injury.
- Never use starting assist fluids. Starting fluids can explode and can cause a run-away vehicle condition.

#### WARNING

To reduce the risk of serious personal injury when you leave the vehicle:



- Always switch off the engine and ignition and take the key with you when you leave the vehicle. Never let the engine run in a confined or enclosed area. Engine exhaust contains carbon monoxide, a poisonous, colorless, and odorless gas. Carbon monoxide can cause unconsciousness and death.






#### WARNING

The vehicle exhaust system and the catalytic converter or diesel particulate filter get very hot. They can cause fires and serious personal injury.

- Never park the vehicle where the hot exhaust system or catalytic converter could ignite flammable materials, such as brush, leaves, dry grass, spilled fuel, etc.
- Never apply additional undercoating or rust proofing on or near the exhaust manifold, exhaust pipes, catalytic converter, diesel particulate filter, or heat shields.

## Warning and indicator lights

 Read and follow the introductory information and safety information first ⇒  *Introduction to the subject*

Lights up	Possible cause	Proper response
	Ignition malfunction.	Get professional assistance ⇒ <i>About the brakes</i> .
	Electronic immobilizer active.	Use an authorized remote control vehicle key ⇒ <i>Electronic immobilizer</i> .
	Ignition switch or starter button (Keyless Access) malfunction.	Have the system checked immediately by a qualified workshop.
	Battery in remote control vehicle key is dead.	Replace the battery; get an authorized Volkswagen dealer or an authorized Volkswagen Service Facility to assist you.
	Glow plug preheating before diesel engine start-up.	⇒ <i>Starting the engine</i> .
	Depress brake pedal!	Depress the brake pedal while starting the engine.
	No authorized remote control vehicle key found (Keyless Access).	Use an authorized remote control vehicle key ⇒ <i>Electronic immobilizer</i> .
	Engine cannot be started with starter button (Keyless Access).	Start the engine with the remote control vehicle key. Take the vehicle to an authorized Volkswagen dealer or an authorized Volkswagen Service Facility and have the system checked.

When the ignition is switched on, several warning and indicator lights come on briefly for a function check. They go out after a few seconds.

### WARNING

Failure to heed warning lights and instrument cluster text messages can cause the vehicle to break down in traffic and result in a collision and serious personal injury.

- Never ignore warning lights or text WARNINGS.
- Always stop the vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so.
- Whenever stalled or stopped for repair, move the vehicle a safe distance off the road, turn on the emergency flashers, stop the engine, and use other warning devices to warn approaching traffic.

### NOTE

Failure to heed warning lights or text WARNINGS can result in vehicle damage.

## Vehicle key positions in the ignition switch



Fig. 130 In the ignition switch: Vehicle key positions.

 Read and follow the introductory information and safety information first ⇒  *Introduction to the subject*

0 If there is no vehicle key in the ignition, the steering column is locked.

1 *Brake pedal not depressed:*

Turn the ignition switch either clockwise or counterclockwise. The ignition is switched on and the steering column lock is disengaged. Diesel engine is preheated. Vehicle key **cannot** be removed from ignition switch.

*Brake pedal depressed:*

Ignition is switched on, steering column lock is disengaged and the engine is started. Diesel engine is preheated. Vehicle key **cannot** be removed from ignition switch.

To switch off the engine, turn the vehicle key either clockwise or counterclockwise and release. The vehicle key can be removed from the ignition switch when the transmission shift lever is in the (P) position.

If you use the wrong key

If an unauthorized remote control vehicle key has been inserted into the ignition switch, it can be removed as follows:

- The vehicle key cannot be removed from the ignition unless both the key and the selector lever have been moved to the correct position. Press the release button on the transmission selector lever, move the selector lever to the Park **(P)** position and release the button. The vehicle key can now be removed.

If you leave the ignition on

If you leave the ignition on and open the driver door, a warning message may appear in the instrument cluster. In addition, you may also hear an acoustic warning. This warning reminds you to switch off the ignition before leaving the vehicle ⇒ ⓘ.

### ⚠ WARNING

Improper use of vehicle keys can result in serious personal injury.

- Always switch off the engine and the ignition and take the key with you when you leave the vehicle. The engine can be started and vehicle systems such as the power windows can be operated, leading to serious personal injury.
- Never leave children, disabled persons, or anyone who cannot help themselves in the vehicle. The doors can be locked with the remote control vehicle key. This could result in people being trapped in the vehicle in an emergency. For example, depending on the time of year, people trapped in the vehicle can be exposed to very high or very low temperatures.
- Heat build-up in the passenger and luggage compartment of a parked vehicle can result in temperatures in the vehicle that are much higher than the outside temperatures, particularly in summer. Temperatures can quickly reach levels that can cause unconsciousness and death, particularly to small children.
- Never remove the key from the ignition switch while the vehicle is moving or rolling to a stop. The steering wheel will lock and you will not be able to steer or control the vehicle.
- Only attach lightweight objects to the remote control vehicle key that weigh no more than a combined total of 3.5 oz (100 g).

### ⓘ NOTE

Leaving the key in the ignition for a long time when the engine is not running will drain the vehicle battery.

- Always switch off the ignition before leaving the vehicle.



Leaving the key in the ignition for a long time when the engine is not running will drain the vehicle battery.



Leaving the selector lever for a long period of time in any position other than Park **(P)** when the ignition is switched off can drain the vehicle battery.



The vehicle key can be removed from the ignition switch only when the transmission is in Park **(P)**. You may have to press the release button on the transmission selector lever to put the lever into Park **(P)**.

## Starter button



Fig. 131 In the front center console: Starter button of the Keyless Access locking and starting system.

📖 Read and follow the introductory information and safety information first ⇒ ⚠ *Introduction to the subject*

The starter button can only be used when an authorized vehicle key is in the vehicle.

### Engaging and releasing the steering lock

- Press the starter button *once* briefly to release the steering lock and turn on the ignition, without pressing the foot brake ⇒ ⚠.
- Press the starter button **again** to turn the ignition off. The steering lock is unlocked.

If you happen to press the starter button while trying to lock the steering lock while the ignition is still on, a chime will sound when the driver door is opened. At the same time, a message appears in the instrument cluster display informing you that the ignition is still active.

### Switching the ignition on and off

- Press the starter button *once* to switch on the ignition without depressing the brake pedal ⇒ ⚠.
- Press the starter button *again* to switch off the ignition.

When the ignition is switched on, a chime will sound when the driver door is opened. At the same time, a message appears in the instrument cluster display informing you that the ignition is still active.

### Starting and stopping the engine

- Depress the brake pedal.
- Press the starter button to start the engine.
- Press the starter button *again* to stop the engine.

#### WARNING

Unintended vehicle movement can cause serious personal injury.

- Do *not* depress the brake pedal when switching on the ignition, as the engine could otherwise start immediately.

#### WARNING

Improper use of vehicle keys can result in serious personal injury.

- Always switch off the engine and the ignition and take the key with you when you leave the vehicle. Children or unauthorized persons may use it to lock the vehicle, start the engine, and operate vehicle systems such as the power windows, leading to serious personal injury.
- Never leave children, disabled persons, or anyone who cannot help themselves in the vehicle. The doors can be locked using the remote control vehicle key. This could result in people being trapped in the vehicle in an emergency. For example, depending on the time of year, people trapped in the vehicle can be exposed to very high or very low temperatures.
- Heat build-up in the passenger and luggage compartment of a parked vehicle can result in temperatures in the vehicle that are much higher than the outside temperatures, particularly in summer. Temperatures can quickly reach levels that can cause unconsciousness and death, particularly to small children.



In vehicles with a diesel engine and Keyless Access, the engine start may be delayed if the engine has to be preheated.



If the ignition is switched on or the engine is running and the driver door is opened, a chime sounds. The chime is also a reminder to switch off the engine and turn off the ignition before leaving and locking the vehicle from the outside.




Leaving the ignition on for a long time when the engine is not running will drain the vehicle battery and the engine may not start.

- Always switch off the ignition before leaving the vehicle.



Always switch off the ignition before leaving the vehicle. Read and follow any information in the instrument cluster display.

## Starting the engine

 Read and follow the introductory information and safety information first ⇒ [Introduction to the subject](#)

Please perform these steps only in the order listed.		
Step	Vehicles without Keyless Access	Vehicles with Keyless Access
1.	Depress and hold down the brake pedal until step 4 is completed.	
2.	Shift the transmission into Park <b>(P)</b> or <b>(N)</b> .	
3.	Turn the vehicle key <i>briefly</i> clockwise or counterclockwise ⇒ Fig. 130② and release.	Press the starter button ⇒ Fig. 131 <i>briefly</i> and release - do not depress the accelerator pedal. An authorized remote control vehicle key must be inside the vehicle in order to start the engine.
	<b>In vehicles with a diesel engine</b> , the engine start may be delayed if the engine is preheated.	<b>In vehicles with a diesel engine</b> , the engine start may be delayed if the engine is preheated.
4.	If the engine does not start, switch off the ignition and start again after about 1 minute.	

Please perform these steps only in the order listed.		
Step	Vehicles without Keyless Access	Vehicles with Keyless Access
5.	Release the electronic parking brake when you are ready to start driving ⇒ <i>Braking and parking</i> .	

**⚠ WARNING**

Never leave the vehicle unattended with the engine running, especially when it is in gear. The vehicle could move suddenly or some other unexpected event could occur, resulting in property damage, fire, or personal injury.


**⚠ WARNING**

Starting fluids can explode and can cause a run-away vehicle condition.

- Never use starting assist fluids.

**! NOTE**

- You can damage the starter or the engine if you try to start the engine when the vehicle is still moving, or if you try to restart the engine right after switching it off.
- Avoid high engine speeds, full throttle acceleration and heavy engine loads when the engine is cold.
- Do not try to start the engine by pushing or towing the vehicle. Unburned fuel can get into the catalytic converter and damage it. The steering column may also be locked.

 Do not let your vehicle warm up while standing; instead, start driving right away after making sure that you have good visibility through all windows. This will help the engine reach operating temperature faster and keep down emissions.



If the battery in the remote control vehicle key is weak or dead, the engine cannot be started with the starter button. In this case, remove the starter button from the ignition switch and insert the remote control vehicle key into the ignition switch to start the vehicle.




Major consumers of electricity are temporarily switched off when the engine is being started.



After starting a cold engine, there may be increased operating noises for a few seconds. This is normal and harmless.

## Stopping the engine

 Read and follow the introductory information and safety information first ⇒ [▲ Introduction to the subject](#)

Please perform these steps only in the order listed.		
	Vehicles without Keyless Access	Vehicles with Keyless Access
1.	Bring the vehicle to a complete stop ⇒ ▲.	
2.	Depress and hold down the brake pedal until step 4 is completed.	
3.	Shift the transmission into Park (P).	
4.	Apply the electronic parking brake to help prevent the vehicle from moving ⇒ <i>Braking and parking</i> .	
5.	Turn the vehicle key in the ignition clockwise or counterclockwise pause and then release.	Press the starter button.
6.	Removing the vehicle key from the ignition switches off electrical equipment and activates the steering column lock.	Opening the driver door switches off electrical equipment and activates the steering column lock.

### Emergency shut-off function

If the engine does **not** switch off when the vehicle key is turned in the ignition lock or when the starter button is pressed briefly, it must be switched off using the emergency switch-off function.

The steps should only be carried out in the specified order.		
	Vehicles without Keyless Access	Vehicles with Keyless Access
1a.	Selector lever in position <b>D/S/R</b> : turn the vehicle key clockwise or counterclockwise in the ignition lock <i>twice</i> within 1 second and then release the key.	Selector lever in position <b>D/S/R</b> : at a speed below 10 km/h (6 mph) and with the brake pedal depressed, press the starter button <i>twice</i> within a 1 second period and then release ⇒ ▲.
	<b>OR</b> : Hold the vehicle key in the required position for longer than 2 seconds.	<b>OR</b> : Press and hold the starter button for longer than 2 seconds.
1b.	Selector lever in position <b>N</b> : Turn the vehicle key in the ignition lock clockwise or counterclockwise and then let go of the key.	Selector lever in position <b>N</b> : Irrespective of the speed at which the vehicle is travelling, press the starter button <i>once</i> ⇒ ▲.
2.	The engine switches itself off.	

### ⚠ WARNING

Never stop the engine before the vehicle has come to a complete stop. You can lose control of the vehicle, crash, and be seriously injured.

- The airbags and safety belt pretensioners will not work when the ignition is switched off.
- The brake booster does not work when the engine is not running. More brake pedal pressure will be needed to stop the vehicle.
- The power steering system does not work when the engine is not running, and you will need more force to steer the vehicle.
- When the key is removed from the ignition switch, the steering will lock and you will not be able to steer the vehicle.

### ! NOTE

If the vehicle has been driven hard for a long time, the engine could overheat when it is stopped. To reduce the risk of engine damage, let the engine idle in Neutral for about 2 minutes before you switch off the ignition.



If the ignition is switched on or the engine is running and the driver door is opened, a chime sounds. The chime is also a reminder to switch off the engine and turn off the ignition before leaving and locking the vehicle from the outside.



The vehicle key can be removed from the ignition only when the transmission is in Park **(P)**.



After the engine has been switched off, the radiator fan in the engine compartment may keep running for several minutes, or may start running after the vehicle has been parked for a while, even if the ignition is switched off and the vehicle key has been removed. The radiator fan shuts off automatically when the engine has cooled down enough.

## Electronic immobilizer

📖 Read and follow the introductory information and safety information first ⇒ ▲ [Introduction to the subject](#)

The immobilizer helps to prevent the engine from being started and driven with an unauthorized vehicle key.

There is a microchip inside the vehicle key. The chip deactivates the immobilizer automatically when an authorized vehicle key is inserted into the ignition switch.

The electronic immobilizer is automatically activated when the remote control vehicle key is pulled out of the ignition switch. On vehicles with Keyless Access, the remote control vehicle key must be outside the vehicle ⇒ [Unlocking or locking vehicles with Keyless Access](#).

The engine can therefore only be started with an authorized and correctly coded genuine Volkswagen remote control vehicle key. Coded remote control vehicle keys are available from authorized Volkswagen dealers, authorized Volkswagen Service Facilities, and from certain independent repair facilities and locksmiths who are qualified to make these vehicle keys ⇒ [Vehicle key set](#).

If an unauthorized remote control vehicle key is used, **Immobilizer active!** appears in the instrument cluster display. The vehicle cannot be operated with this key.

A Declaration of Compliance with the United States FCC and Industry Canada regulations is on ⇒ [Declaration of Compliance, Telecommunications and Electronic Systems](#).



Using genuine Volkswagen keys helps minimize the risk of malfunctions.

## Shifting

### Introduction to the subject

In this chapter you will find information on the following subjects:

⇒ *Warning and indicator lights*

⇒ *Pedals*

⇒ *Automatic transmission: Selector lever*

⇒ *Shifting with Tiptronic®*

⇒ *Driving with automatic transmission*

⇒ *Automatic transmission malfunction*

When the ignition is switched on and the transmission is in Reverse (R):

- The backup lights come on.
- The rear window wiper switches on when the windshield wipers are switched on.
- Parking Distance Control, the Optical Parking System, and the camera for Rear View Camera System switch on (if applicable).

#### WARNING

Rapid acceleration can cause skidding and loss of traction, especially on slippery roads, resulting in a loss of vehicle control, collisions, and serious personal injury.

- Only use the kick-down feature or fast acceleration if visibility, weather, road, and traffic conditions permit it and other drivers will not be endangered by your driving and the vehicle's acceleration.

#### WARNING



Constant braking causes the brakes to overheat and even to fail leading to collisions and serious personal injury.




- Never ride the brakes or apply the brake pedal too often or too long.
- Riding the brakes will substantially reduce braking performance, increase stopping distance, and can cause complete brake system failure.


#### NOTE

- Never ride the brakes by keeping your foot on the brake pedal when you do not want to brake. This will make the brakes wear faster.
- Before driving downhill, especially on hills that are long or steep, always reduce speed and shift into lower gear (manual or automatic transmission). This will let the vehicle use engine braking and reduce the load on the brakes. Otherwise, the brake system could overheat and even fail. Only use the brakes when you need them to slow the vehicle down more or to stop.

## Warning and indicator lights

 Read and follow the introductory information and safety information first ⇒  *Introduction to the subject*

Lights up	Possible cause	Proper response
 Depress brake pedal!		Depress the brake pedal.
 Automatic transmission malfunction.		Have the system checked immediately by an authorized Volkswagen dealer, an authorized Volkswagen Service Facility, or another qualified workshop.
 Depress brake pedal!		Depress the brake pedal to select a gear or drive position.
		Also refer to electronic parking brake ⇒ <i>Braking and parking</i> .
Flashes	Possible cause	Proper response

Flashes	Possible cause	Proper response
	The release button in the selector lever is not engaged. Vehicle movement is prevented.	Engage selector lever release button ⇒ <i>Automatic Shift Lock (ASL)</i> .

When the ignition is switched on, several warning and indicator lights come on briefly for a function check. They go out after a few seconds.

### WARNING

Failure to heed warning lights and instrument cluster text messages can cause the vehicle to break down in traffic and result in a collision and serious personal injury.

- Never ignore warning lights or text WARNINGS.
- Always stop the vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so.
- Whenever stalled or stopped for repair, move the vehicle a safe distance off the road, turn on the emergency flashers, stop the engine, and use other warning devices to warn approaching traffic.

### NOTE

Failure to heed warning lights or text WARNINGS can result in vehicle damage.

## Pedals

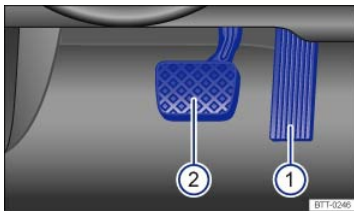




Fig. 132 Pedals in vehicles with automatic transmission: ① Accelerator pedal, ② brake pedal.

 Read and follow the introductory information and safety information first ⇒  *Introduction to the subject*

All pedals must always be able to move freely in and out without interference from floor mats or other things.

Only use floor mats that leave the pedal area free and are held securely in place with floor mat fasteners to help prevent sliding.

If a brake circuit malfunctions, more brake pedal travel is needed to bring the vehicle to a full stop, and it is important that nothing is in the way when you have to depress the brake pedal harder and further than normal.

### WARNING

Objects in the driver footwell can prevent the pedals from moving freely. This can cause loss of vehicle control and increase the risk of serious personal injuries.

- Always make sure that nothing can interfere with the pedals.
- Always fasten floor mats securely to the floor.
- Never put floor mats or other floor coverings on top of already installed floor mats.
- Always make sure that nothing can fall into the driver footwell while the vehicle is moving.

### NOTE

Always make sure that the pedals are able to move freely and that nothing can interfere with them. If a hydraulic brake circuit fails, more brake pedal travel will be needed to bring the vehicle to a stop. The brake pedal must be pressed farther and harder than normal.

## Automatic transmission: Selector lever





Fig. 133 Automatic transmission selector lever with shift lever release button (arrow).

Read and follow the introductory information and safety information first ⇒ [Introduction to the subject](#)

Automatic transmission vehicles have an Automatic Shift Lock (ASL). With ASL, you must depress the brake pedal and hold it down while pressing the release button on the selector lever handle in the direction of the arrow ⇒ Fig. 133 in order to move the selector lever out of Park (**P**) and into a drive gear. When the selector lever is in Neutral (**N**), you also have to depress the brake pedal before you can move the selector lever to Drive (**D**), Sport Drive (**S**), or Reverse (**R**).

If the ignition is switched on, either the current selector lever setting or the current gear is shown in the instrument cluster display.

Selector lever position	Designation	Meaning ⇒
<b>P</b>	<b>Park</b>	The drive wheels are mechanically locked.  Select only when the vehicle is <i>not moving</i> . To change the selector lever position, switch on the ignition (if it is off) and then press the release button while holding down the brake pedal.
<b>R</b>	<b>Reverse</b>	The reverse gear is engaged.  Shift into Reverse only when the vehicle is <i>not moving</i> .
<b>N</b>	<b>Neutral</b>	Transmission is in Neutral position. No power is transferred to the wheels and no engine braking effect is available.
<b>D</b>	<b>Drive</b> (Standard driving position)	All forward gears shift up and down automatically. The transmission shifts as needed depending on engine load, individual driving style, and driving speed.
<b>S</b>	<b>Sport Drive</b> (Sport driving position)	All forward gears automatically upshift <i>later</i> and downshift <i>earlier</i> than in the Drive ( <b>D</b> ) position, to take full advantage of the engine's power reserves. The transmission shifts as needed depending on engine load, individual driving style, and driving speed.
	<b>Toggle between driving positions</b>	To toggle between Drive ( <b>D</b> ) and Sport Drive ( <b>S</b> ) briefly push the selector lever backward once from the ( <b>D/S</b> ) position. The selector lever always springs back to ( <b>D/S</b> ).  This feature lets you access Tiptronic mode from both the Sport driving position ( <b>S</b> ) and the standard driving position ( <b>D</b> ) ⇒ <i>Shifting with Tiptronic®</i> .

#### Automatic Shift Lock (ASL)

The Automatic Shift Lock (ASL) in Park (**P**) and Neutral (**N**) prevents drive positions from being engaged inadvertently, which would cause the vehicle to move.

To release the ASL, depress and hold the brake pedal with the ignition switched on. Press the release button on the selector lever at the same time.

The ASL is not engaged if the selector lever is moved quickly through Neutral (**N**) (e.g., when shifting from Reverse (**R**) to Drive (**D**)). This makes it possible to rock the vehicle backwards and forwards if it is stuck in snow or mud. The ASL engages automatically if the brake pedal is not depressed and the lever is in Neutral (**N**)

for more than about 1 second and the vehicle is traveling no faster than about 3 mph (5 km/h).

#### ⚠ WARNING

Moving the selector lever to the wrong position can cause loss of vehicle control, a collision, and serious personal injury.

- Never accelerate when moving the selector lever.
- When the engine is running and a drive position is engaged, the vehicle will start to move as soon as the brake pedal is released.
- Never shift into Reverse or Park when the vehicle is moving.

#### ⚠ WARNING

Unintended vehicle movement can cause serious personal injury.

- Never get out of the driver's seat while the engine is running, especially when the transmission is in a drive gear. If you must leave your vehicle while the engine is running, always set the electronic parking brake and shift the transmission into Park (**P**).
- Never leave the vehicle in Neutral (**N**). It will roll down hills, whether the engine is running or not.
- When the engine is running and a drive gear - Drive (**D**), Sport Drive (**S**), or Reverse (**R**) - has been selected, press and hold the brake pedal to keep the vehicle from moving. The vehicle may creep and move forward or backward even if the engine is idling slowly.
- Never shift into Reverse (**R**) or Park (**P**) when the vehicle is moving.

#### ⓘ NOTE

Even though the transmission is in Park (**P**), the vehicle may move a couple of inches (a few centimeters) forwards or backwards if you take your foot off the brake pedal after stopping the vehicle **without** first setting the electronic parking brake.



If the selector lever is moved into Neutral (**N**) by mistake when the vehicle is moving, take your foot off the accelerator pedal. Wait until the engine speed has dropped to idle speed before moving the selector lever into a drive gear.



Leaving the selector lever for a long period of time in any position other than Park (**P**) when the ignition is switched off can drain the vehicle battery.

## Shifting with Tiptronic®

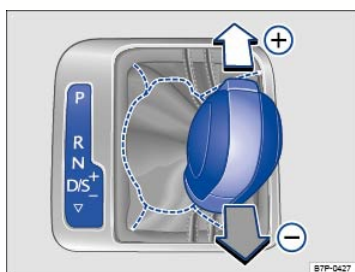


Fig. 134 Selector lever in Tiptronic position.



Fig. 135 Steering wheel with optional Tiptronic shift paddles.

📖 Read and follow the introductory information and safety information first ⇒ ⚠ *Introduction to the subject*

Tiptronic lets you upshift and downshift manually with the automatic transmission. When Tiptronic mode is used, the transmission stays in the current gear and does not upshift or downshift automatically unless the transmission senses a situation where upshifting or downshifting is necessary to keep the engine from over- or under-revving.

### Using Tiptronic with the selector lever

- Push the selector lever sideways to the right from Drive **D/S** position into the Tiptronic position ⇒ ⚠.
- Briefly push the selector lever forward ⊕ to upshift into a higher gear or backward ⊖ to downshift into a lower gear ⇒ Fig. 134.

Using Tiptronic with the shift paddles behind the steering wheel (if equipped)


- The paddles ⇒ *Fig. 135* (arrows) work when the selector lever is in the Tiptronic position or when the selector lever is in Drive **(D)** or Sport Drive **(S)**. You do not have to move the selector lever over to the right into the Tiptronic position.
- To upshift, pull the paddle on the right + **OFF** toward you.
- To downshift, pull the paddle on the left – toward you.
- To switch off Tiptronic mode, pull the paddle on the right + **OFF** toward you and hold it there for about 1 second.

Tiptronic will switch off automatically if the shift paddles have not been used for a while and the selector lever is not in the Tiptronic position.

#### ! NOTE

- During acceleration, the transmission will shift automatically into the next higher gear before reaching maximum engine speed (rpm).
- If you use Tiptronic to shift into a lower gear, the transmission will downshift only when doing so will not over-rev the engine.

## Driving with automatic transmission

 Read and follow the introductory information and safety information first ⇒ [▲ Introduction to the subject](#)


All forward gears shift up and down automatically.

### Driving on hills

The steeper the grade, the lower the gear that must be selected. Lower gears increase the braking effect of the engine. Never coast downhill in Neutral **(N)**.


- Reduce speed.
- Switch to Tiptronic mode by moving the selector lever from Drive **(D)** to the right into the Tiptronic position ⇒ *Shifting with Tiptronic®*.
- Downshift by pulling the selector lever back briefly (-).
- **OR:** Downshift using the paddles (if equipped) on the steering wheel.

### Stopping and starting on hills

If you stop on a hill with the vehicle in gear, you must depress the brake pedal or engage the electronic parking brake to keep the vehicle from rolling. Do not release the brake pedal or the parking brake until the vehicle has started to move forwards ⇒ .

### Kick-down acceleration

The kick-down feature permits maximum acceleration when the selector lever is in the Drive **(D)**, Sport Drive **(S)** or Tiptronic mode.

If you push the accelerator all the way down, the vehicle will automatically downshift, depending on vehicle speed and engine speed (rpm). This feature lets you take advantage of the full acceleration capacity of the vehicle ⇒ .

With kick-down actuated, the transmission will stay in the current gear longer and not upshift until the engine reaches maximum rpm.

#### ! WARNING

Rapid acceleration can cause skidding and loss of traction, especially on slippery roads, resulting in a loss of vehicle control, collisions, and serious personal injury.

- Only use the kick-down feature or fast acceleration if visibility, weather, road, and traffic conditions permit and other drivers will not be endangered by your driving and the vehicle's acceleration.
- Always adapt your driving to the traffic flow.
- Note that the drive wheels can spin and the vehicle can swerve when ASR is switched off, especially when the road is slippery.
- Once you have accelerated, switch ASR back on again.



#### ! NOTE

- When stopping on hills with the transmission in a drive gear, do not use the accelerator to help prevent the vehicle from rolling backwards. This can cause the automatic transmission to overheat and be damaged.
- Never let the vehicle coast or roll down a hill in Neutral **(N)**, especially when the engine is not running. The transmission will not be lubricated and will be damaged.

## Automatic transmission malfunction

 Read and follow the introductory information and safety information first ⇒ [▲ Introduction to the subject](#)

Emergency shift program

If the automatic gearbox goes to emergency program, it is indicated with a text message along with a yellow indicator lamp  on the instrument cluster display. Depending on the current system fault, the selector lever position may continue to be displayed. The text message will go away after a few seconds. The yellow indicator lamp  remains lit up while the system fault continues to exist.

In any event, have the automatic transmission checked by an authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility.

#### NOTE

- As soon as you get any of these warnings about transmission overheating, you must either park the vehicle in a safe place or drive faster than 12 mph (20 km/h).
- If the text message and acoustic warning repeat themselves every 10 seconds or so, you must park the vehicle in a safe place as soon as you can safely do so and stop the engine. Let the transmission cool down.
- To help prevent damage to the transmission, do not drive the vehicle again until the acoustic warning has stopped. As long as the engine is overheated, avoid stop and start driving and avoid low speeds (walking pace).

## Braking and parking

### Introduction to the subject

In this chapter you will find information on the following subjects:

⇒ *Warning and indicator lights*

⇒ *Electronic parking brake*

⇒ *Parking*

⇒ *About the brakes*

⇒ *Braking assistance systems*


⇒ *Switching Anti-Slip Regulation (ASR) on and off*

⇒ *Brake fluid*

The **braking assistance systems** are the Anti-Lock Brake System (ABS), Brake Assist System (BAS), Electronic Differential Lock (EDL), Anti-Slip Regulation (ASR) and Electronic Stability Control (ESC).

#### WARNING

Driving with bad brakes or worn brake pads can cause a collision and serious personal injury.

- If the symbol **BRAKEWEAR** or  lights up in the instrument cluster display, whether alone or together with a text message, immediately contact an authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility to have the brake pads checked and, if necessary, replaced.

#### WARNING

Parking improperly can cause serious personal injury.


- Never remove the key from the ignition switch while the vehicle is moving or rolling to a stop. The steering wheel will lock and you will not be able to steer or control the vehicle.
- Never park the vehicle where the hot exhaust system or catalytic converter could ignite flammable materials, such as brush, leaves, dry grass, spilled fuel, etc.
- Always apply the parking brake when parking your vehicle.
- Improper use of the parking brake can seriously injure you and your passengers.
- Never use the parking brake to slow down the vehicle when it is moving, except in an emergency. The stopping distance is much longer because only the rear wheels are braked. Always use the foot brake to stop the vehicle.
- Never activate the throttle manually from the engine compartment when the engine is running and the automatic transmission is in gear. The vehicle will start to move as soon as the engine speed increases even if the parking brake is on.
- Never leave children or anyone who cannot help themselves behind in the vehicle. They could release the parking brake and move the gear selector lever or gear shift, which could cause the vehicle to start moving. This can lead to a crash and serious personal injuries.
- Always switch off the engine and the ignition and take the key with you when you leave the vehicle. The engine can be started and vehicle systems such as the power windows can be operated, leading to serious personal injury.
- Never leave children, disabled persons, or anyone who cannot help themselves in the vehicle. The doors can be locked with the remote control vehicle key, trapping passengers in the vehicle in an emergency. For example, depending on the time of year, people trapped in the vehicle can be exposed to very high or very low temperatures.














- Heat buildup in the passenger and luggage compartment of a parked vehicle can result in temperatures in the vehicle that are much higher than the outside temperatures, particularly in summer. Temperatures can quickly reach levels that can cause unconsciousness and death, particularly to small children.






## NOTE





- Always be careful when you park in areas with parking barriers or high curbs. These vary in height and could damage your bumper and related parts if the front of your vehicle hits a barrier or curb that is too high while you are getting into or out of a parking spot. To help prevent damage, stop before the tires of your vehicle touch a parking barrier or curb.
- Always be careful when you enter a driveway or drive up or down steep ramps or over curbs or other obstacles. Parts of the vehicle close to the ground may be damaged (such as bumper covers, spoilers, and parts of the engine, suspension, and exhaust systems).

## Warning and indicator lights

 Read and follow the introductory information and safety information first ⇒ [Introduction to the subject](#)

Lights up	Possible cause or meaning ⇒ 	Proper response
 <b>Stop!</b>		
 <b>P/PARK</b>	Electronic parking brake engaged.	In order to drive off, release the electronic parking brake by depressing the brake pedal ⇒ <a href="#">Electronic parking brake</a> .
	Brake system malfunction.	 <b>Stop!</b> Get professional assistance immediately ⇒ <a href="#">About the brakes</a> .
	Brake fluid level too low.	 <b>Stop!</b> Check the brake fluid level ⇒ <a href="#">Brake fluid</a> .
 <b>BRAKE</b>	Together with ABS indicator light  or <b>ABS</b> : ABS failure.	See an authorized Volkswagen dealer or an authorized Volkswagen Service Facility. The vehicle brakes will work without ABS.
	Together with indicator light  : electronic parking brake malfunction.	See an authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility because you may not be able to park the vehicle safely.
 <b>S</b>	Depress brake pedal!	Depress the brake pedal.
 <b>BRAKEWEAR</b>	Brake pads worn.	If you believe it is safe to do so, immediately take the vehicle to an authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility. Check, and if necessary replace, <b>all</b> brake pads.
 <b>P</b>	Electronic parking brake malfunction.	See an authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility because you may not be able to park the vehicle safely.
	ESC malfunction.	Take the vehicle to an a qualified workshop.
	ESC switched off by the system.	Switch ignition off and on again. You may have to drive a short distance.
	Together with ABS indicator light  or <b>ABS</b> : ABS malfunction.	Take the vehicle to an a qualified workshop. The vehicle brakes will work without ABS.
 <b>S</b>		

Lights up	Possible cause or meaning ⇒ ⚠	Proper response
	Vehicle battery has been reconnected.	Drive a short distance at a speed of 10 – 12 mph (15 - 20 km/h. If the indicator light stays on, see an authorized Volkswagen dealer or an authorized Volkswagen Service Facility ⇒ <a href="#">12 Volt vehicle battery</a> .
	Deactivation of ESC (by the system).	Switch ignition off and on again. You may have to drive a short distance.
	Deactivation of ASR (manually).	Switch on ASR manually ⇒ <a href="#">Switching Anti-Slip Regulation (ASR) on and off</a> . Automatically switch on ASR by turning the ignition on and off.
	Together with ESC indicator light  : ABS malfunction.	See an authorized Volkswagen dealer or an authorized Volkswagen Service Facility. The vehicle brakes will work without ABS.
	Together with warning light  or <b>BRAKE</b> : ABS failure.	Depress the brake pedal to select a gear or drive position ⇒ <a href="#">Shifting</a> .
	Depress brake pedal!	Depress the brake pedal to release electronic parking brake ⇒ <a href="#">Electronic parking brake</a> .

Flashes	Possible cause	Proper response
		 <b>Do not continue driving</b>
	Electronic parking brake malfunction.	Contact an authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility for assistance.
	ESC or ASR is working.	Take foot off accelerator pedal. Adapt driving to road conditions.
	The release button in the selector lever is not engaged.	Engage the Automatic Shift Lock (ASL) ⇒ <a href="#">Automatic Shift Lock (ASL)</a> .

When the ignition is switched on, several warning and indicator lights come on briefly for a function check. They go out after a few seconds.






### WARNING

Failure to heed warning lights and instrument cluster text messages can cause the vehicle to break down in traffic and result in a collision and serious personal injury.

- Never ignore warning lights or text WARNINGS.
- Always stop the vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so.

### WARNING

Driving with bad brakes can cause a collision and serious personal injury.

- If the brake warning light **BRAKE** or  does not go out, or comes on when driving, either the brake fluid level in the reservoir is too low or there is a fault in the brake system. Stop the vehicle as soon as you can do so safely and get expert assistance ⇒ [Brake fluid](#).
- If the brake warning light **BRAKE** or  comes on at the same time as the ABS warning light **ABS** or , the ABS may not be working properly. This could cause the rear wheels to lock up relatively quickly during braking. Rear wheel brake lock-up can cause loss of vehicle control.
- If you believe the vehicle is safe to drive, drive slowly and very carefully to the nearest authorized Volkswagen dealer, authorized Volkswagen Service Facility, or other qualified workshop and have the brake system inspected. Avoid sudden hard braking and steering.
- If the ABS indicator light **ABS** or  does not go out, or if it comes on while driving, the ABS system is not working properly. The vehicle can then be stopped only with the standard brakes (without ABS). You will not have the protection ABS provides. Contact your authorized Volkswagen dealer or an authorized Volkswagen Service Facility as soon as possible.
- If the symbol **BRAKEWEAR** or  lights up in the instrument cluster display, whether alone or together with a text message, immediately contact an authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility to have the brake pads checked and, if necessary, replaced.

## NOTE

Failure to heed warning lights or text WARNINGS can result in vehicle damage.

## Electronic parking brake



Fig. 136 In the lower front center console: Switch for the electronic parking brake.

Read and follow the introductory information and safety information first ⇒ [Introduction to the subject](#)

### Setting the electronic parking brake

You can engage the electronic parking brake any time the vehicle is not moving - even if the ignition is switched off. Always engage the parking brake when you leave or park the vehicle.

- Pull and hold the switch ⇒ [Fig. 136](#).
- The parking brake is engaged when the indicator light (P) in the switch and in the instrument cluster ⇒ [Braking and parking](#) comes on.

### Releasing the electronic parking brake

- Switch the ignition on.
- Press the switch ⇒ [Fig. 136](#). At the same time, press the brake pedal firmly or press the accelerator pedal lightly if the engine is running.
- The parking brake is released when the indicator light (P) in the instrument cluster ⇒ [Warning and indicator lights](#) goes out.

### Releasing the electronic parking brake automatically when you start driving

The electronic parking brake releases automatically when you start driving if the driver door is closed **and** the driver's safety belt is buckled.

### Emergency braking function

Only use the emergency braking function in an emergency, when you cannot stop the vehicle using the brake pedal ⇒ [!](#)

- Pull and hold the switch ⇒ [Fig. 136](#) to brake the vehicle **hard**. An audio warning signal will sound at the same time.
- To stop the braking maneuver, release the switch or press the accelerator pedal.

## WARNING

Improper use of the electronic parking brake can cause accidents and severe injuries.

- Never use the parking brake to slow down the vehicle when it is moving, except in an emergency. Braking distance is much longer, since only the rear wheels are braked. Always use the foot brake.
- Never press the accelerator pedal when a selector lever position or gear is engaged and the engine is running. The vehicle could begin moving, even if the electronic parking brake is set.
- Never activate the throttle manually from the engine compartment when the engine is running and the automatic transmission is in gear. The vehicle will start to move even if the parking brake is engaged.


## NOTE

Even though the transmission is in Park (P), the vehicle may move a couple of inches (a few centimeters) forwards or backwards if you take your foot off the brake pedal after stopping the vehicle **without** first firmly setting the parking brake.

**i** If the vehicle battery is dead, the electronic parking brake cannot be released. Use a jump-start ⇒ [Jump-starting](#).

**i** You may hear noises when setting or releasing the electronic parking brake.

**i** If the electronic parking brake is not used for a while, an automatic system check will occasionally run when the vehicle is parked. This system check makes audible noises.

 Read and follow the introductory information and safety information first ⇒ [▲ Introduction to the subject](#)

Please note legal regulations when stopping and parking your vehicle.

### Parking the vehicle

Please perform these steps only in the order listed.

- Stop the vehicle on a suitable surface ⇒ [▲](#).
- Hold the brake pedal down until the engine is switched off.
- Apply the electronic parking brake to help prevent the vehicle from moving ⇒ [Electronic parking brake](#).
- Shift the transmission into Park **(P)**.
- Switch off the engine and then take your foot off the brake.
- Remove the vehicle key from the ignition.
- If necessary, turn the steering wheel slightly to engage the steering lock.
- Make sure all passengers and especially children leave the vehicle.
- Take all vehicle keys with you when leaving your vehicle.
- Lock the vehicle.

### On hills

Before stopping the engine, turn the steering wheel so that, if the vehicle starts to roll, its front wheels will roll into the curb:

- Facing downhill, turn the front wheels so that they point toward the curb.
- Facing uphill, turn the front wheels so that they point away from the curb.

#### WARNING

The vehicle exhaust system and the catalytic converter or diesel particulate filter get very hot. They can cause fires and serious personal injury.

- Never park where the hot exhaust system could ignite flammable materials, such as brush, leaves, dry grass, spilled fuel, etc.

#### WARNING


Leaving the vehicle when the selector lever is not in Park **(P)** (automatic transmissions) can cause the vehicle to roll away. This can cause accidents and serious personal injuries.

- When leaving the vehicle, always move the selector lever to Park **(P)**, engage the parking brake, and pay attention to the warning messages on the instrument cluster display at all times.

#### NOTE

- Always be careful when you park in areas with parking barriers or high curbs. These vary in height and could damage your bumper and related parts if the front of your vehicle hits a barrier or curb that is too high while you are getting into or out of a parking spot. To help prevent damage, stop before the tires of your vehicle touch a parking barrier or curb.
- Always be careful when you enter a driveway or drive up or down steep ramps or over curbs or other obstacles. Parts of the vehicle close to the ground may be damaged (such as bumper covers, spoilers, and parts of the engine, suspension, and exhaust systems).

## About the brakes

 Read and follow the introductory information and safety information first ⇒ [▲ Introduction to the subject](#)

**New brake pads** do not provide full performance during the first 100 to 200 miles (200 to 300 km) and must first be broken in ⇒ [▲](#). To some extent, you can make up for the somewhat reduced performance by applying more pressure to the brake pedal. But, **during the break-in period**, the stopping distance for hard braking and emergency braking will be longer until the brakes are fully broken in. Avoid hard braking and situations that might require hard braking (such as following other vehicles too closely) – especially during the break-in period.

**Brake pad wear** depends mostly on operating conditions and the way the vehicle is driven. If you do a lot of city and short-distance driving and/or have a sporty driving style, you should have the brake pads checked by an authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility more often than the regular service intervals.

**Wet brakes** (for example, after driving through water or washing the vehicle or after heavy rainfall) will not brake as well. Stopping distances will be longer when brake discs are wet or, in winter, even icy. Wet or icy brakes must be dried as soon as possible by carefully applying the brakes a couple of times while traveling at relatively high speed. Make sure nobody is behind you and that you do not endanger yourself or others ⇒ [▲](#).



**Brakes coated with road salt** also react slower and need longer stopping distances. If there is salt on the roads and you are not braking regularly, brake carefully and gently from time to time to remove any salt coating from the brake discs and pads ⇒ ▲.

Brake disc **corrosion** (rust) and **dirt** buildup on the brake pads are more likely to occur if the vehicle is not driven much or is driven only for short distances with little braking. If the brakes have not been used and there is some rust on the discs, clean the brake discs and pads once in a while by carefully braking a couple of times while driving at relatively high speed to help clean the brake discs and pads. Make sure nobody is behind you and that you do not endanger yourself or other: ⇒ ▲.

#### Brake system malfunction

If you brake and find that the vehicle doesn't brake nearly as well as it used to (sudden increase in stopping distance), a brake circuit may have failed. The brake warning light (D) or **BRAKE** will light up and a message may appear in the instrument cluster display. If you believe the vehicle is safe to drive, immediately take it to the nearest authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility for repair. Drive slowly and very carefully, allow for the longer stopping distance, and be ready to push longer and harder on the brake pedal to slow the vehicle down.

#### Brake booster

The brake booster works only when the engine is running. It increases the force on the brakes above and beyond the pressure put on the brake pedal by the driver.

If the brake booster is not working, or if the vehicle has to be towed, you will have to push the brake pedal harder to make up for the lack of booster assistance and the resulting longer stopping distance ⇒ ▲.

#### ▲ WARNING

New brake pads do not provide maximum braking performance.

- New brake pads do not have the best stopping power for the first 200 miles (320 km) and must be broken in. You can compensate for the slightly reduced braking force by putting more pressure on the brake pedal.
- Drive with extra care while the new brake pads are being broken in. This reduces the risk of collisions and serious personal injuries due to a loss of control over the vehicle.
- Never follow other vehicles too closely or put yourself into other situations that might require sudden, hard braking, especially when the brake pads have not been broken in.

#### ▲ WARNING

Overheated brakes will reduce the vehicle's stopping power and increase stopping distances considerably.

- When driving downhill, the brakes have to work especially hard and heat up quickly.
- Before driving downhill, especially on hills that are long or steep, always reduce speed and shift into lower gear (manual or automatic transmission). This will let the vehicle use engine braking and reduce the load on the brakes. Otherwise, the brake system could overheat and possibly fail. Only use the brakes when you need them to slow the vehicle down more or to stop.
- A damaged front bumper or a non-standard spoiler can reduce airflow to the brakes and make them overheat.

#### ▲ WARNING

Wet brakes or brakes coated with ice or road salt react slower and need longer stopping distances.

- Carefully apply the brakes to test them.
- Always dry brakes and clean off ice and salt coatings with a few cautious brake applications when visibility, weather, road and traffic conditions permit.

#### ▲ WARNING

Driving when the brake booster is not working increases stopping distances and can cause accidents and serious personal injuries.

- Never let the vehicle coast when the engine is switched off.
- If the brake booster is not working (such as when the vehicle is being towed), a lot more pedal force is needed to slow down and stop.

#### ! NOTE


- Never ride the brakes by keeping your foot on the brake pedal when you do not want to brake. Constant pressure on the brake pedal can make the brakes overheat. Riding the brakes will substantially reduce braking performance, increase stopping distance, and can cause complete brake system failure.
- Before driving downhill, especially on hills that are long or steep, always reduce speed and shift into lower gear (manual or automatic transmission). This will let the vehicle use engine braking and reduce the load on the brakes. Otherwise, the brake system could overheat and possibly fail. Only use the brakes when you need them to slow the vehicle down more or to stop.



When the front brakes are serviced, you should have the rear brake pads inspected at the same time. The wear of all brake pads should be visually checked regularly. The best way to check for brake pad wear is to have your authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility visually inspect

the pads through the openings in the wheel rims or from underneath the vehicle. If necessary, the wheels can be taken off for a more thorough inspection.

## Braking assistance systems

 Read and follow the introductory information and safety information first ⇒ [Introduction to the subject](#)

The ESC, ABS, BAS, ASR and EDL braking assistance systems work only when the engine is running. These systems can significantly improve active driving safety.

### Electronic Stability Control (ESC)

ESC helps to improve road holding and vehicle dynamics to help reduce the probability of skidding and loss of vehicle control. It works only when the engine is running. ESC detects certain difficult driving situations, including when the vehicle is beginning to spin (yaw) out of control. ESC then helps you to get the vehicle back under control by selectively braking the wheels and/or reducing engine power and by providing steering assistance to help hold the vehicle on the driver's intended course.

ESC has limitations. It is important to remember that ESC cannot overcome the laws of physics. It will not always be able to help out under all conditions you may come up against. For example, ESC may not always be able to help you master situations where there is a sudden change in the coefficient of friction of the road surface. When there is a section of dry road that is suddenly covered with water, slush or snow, ESC cannot perform the same way it would on a dry surface. If the vehicle hydroplanes (rides on a cushion of water instead of the road surface), ESC will not be able to help you steer the vehicle because contact with the pavement has been interrupted and the vehicle cannot be braked or steered. During fast cornering, particularly on winding roads, ESC cannot always deal as effectively with difficult driving situations as it can at lower speeds. When towing a trailer, ESC is not able to help you regain control as it would if you were not towing a trailer.

Always adjust your speed and driving style to visibility, road, traffic, and weather conditions. ESC cannot override the vehicle's physical limits, increase the available traction, or keep a vehicle on the road if road departure is a result of driver inattention. Instead, ESC improves the possibility of keeping the vehicle under control and on the road during extreme maneuvers by using the driver's steering inputs to help keep the vehicle going in the intended direction. If you are traveling at a speed that causes you to run off the road before ESC can provide any assistance, you may not experience the benefits of ESC.

ESC includes and/or works together with the ABS, BAS, ASR, EDL, and XDL systems (see below). ESC is switched on all the time. In certain situations when you need less traction or additional traction cannot be achieved, you can switch off ESC by pressing the ASR button ⇒ [Fig. 137](#). Be sure to switch ASR on again when you no longer need less traction.

ESC can be switched on and off manually in *Off-road Mode* ⇒ [Off-road mode](#).

### Anti-Lock Brake System (ABS)

ABS helps to keep the wheels from locking up and helps to maintain the driver's ability to steer and control the vehicle. This means the vehicle is less likely to skid, even during hard braking:

- Push the brake pedal down hard and hold it there. Don't take your foot off the pedal or reduce the force on the pedal!
- Do not pump the brake pedal or let up on it!
- Steer the vehicle while pushing down hard on the brake pedal.
- ABS stops working if you release or let up on the brake.

When ABS is doing its job, you will notice a **slight vibration** through the brake pedal and hear a noise. *ABS cannot shorten the stopping distance under all conditions*. The stopping distance may even be longer, for instance, when driving on gravel or on newly fallen snow covering an icy or slippery surface.

When driving forwards on loose surfaces, a special off-road ABS is automatically activated. In this mode, the front wheels could lock briefly. This shortens the braking distance in off-road situations as the wheels dig into loose surfaces. This occurs only when driving straight ahead. When the front wheels are turned, the normal ABS is activated.

### Brake Assist (BAS)

The Brake Assist System (BAS) can help to reduce stopping distances. If you press the brake pedal very quickly, BAS detects an emergency situation. It then very quickly builds up full brake system pressure, maximizing braking power and reducing the stopping distance. This way, ABS can be activated more quickly and efficiently.

Do **not** reduce pressure on the brake pedal! BAS switches off automatically as soon as you release or let up on the brake.

### Anti-Slip Regulation (ASR)

ASR reduces engine power directed to spinning wheels and adjusts power to the road conditions. Even under poor road conditions, ASR can make it easier to get moving, accelerate, and climb hills.

ESC and ASR can help when driving on loose surfaces (such as gravel) and in deep snow. If you get stuck in deep snow, you may be able to get going again by rocking the vehicle back and forth. ESC and ASR recognize this special driving situation and automatically increase the speed of the front wheels. Keep pressing the accelerator and let ESC increase the speed of the front wheels to help you keep moving or get moving again.

ASR can be switched on or off manually ⇒ [Switching Anti-Slip Regulation \(ASR\) on and off](#) .

## Electronic Differential Lock (EDL and XDL)

EDL is applied during regular straight-line acceleration. EDL gently brakes a drive wheel that has lost traction (spinning) and redirects the drive force to other drive wheels. In extreme cases, EDL automatically switches off to keep the brake from overheating. As soon as the brake has cooled down, EDL automatically switches on again.

XDL is an extension of the Electronic Differential Lock system. XDL does not react to drive wheel slippage when driving straight ahead. Instead, XDL detects slippage of the inside front wheel during fast cornering. XDL applies enough brake pressure to this wheel in order to stop the slippage. This improves traction, which helps the vehicle stay on track.

### ⚠ WARNING

Driving fast on icy, slippery, or wet roads can lead to a loss of control and result in serious personal injury for you and your passengers.

- Always adjust your speed and driving style to road, traffic, weather, and visibility conditions. Never let the additional safety that ESC, ABS, BAS, ASR, and EDL can provide tempt you into taking extra risks.
- Braking assistance systems cannot overcome the laws of physics and always prevent loss of vehicle control. Slippery and wet roads are still dangerous even with ESC and the other systems!
- Driving too fast on wet roads can cause the wheels to lose contact with the road and hydroplane. A vehicle that has lost road contact cannot be braked, steered, or controlled.
- These systems cannot reduce the risk of accident, for example if you drive too fast for conditions or if you do not keep your distance from the vehicle in front of you.
- Although these systems are very effective and can help you control the vehicle in many difficult situations, always remember that your vehicle handling control is limited by tire traction.
- When accelerating on a slippery surface, for example on ice and snow, depress the accelerator carefully. Even with these systems, the wheels may start to spin, leading to a loss of vehicle control.

### ⚠ WARNING

The effectiveness of ESC can be significantly reduced if other components and systems that affect vehicle dynamics, including but not limited to brakes, tires, and other systems mentioned above, are not properly maintained or functioning.

- Always remember that vehicle alterations or modifications can affect the functioning of the ABS, BAS, ASR, EDL, and ESC systems.
- Changing the vehicle suspension or using an unapproved tire / wheel combination can change the way the ABS, BAS, ASR, EDL, ASR, and ESC systems work and reduce their effectiveness.
- The effectiveness of ESC is also determined by the tires fitted ⇒ [Tires and wheels](#).



All 4 wheels must be equipped with identical tires in order for ESC and ASR to work properly. Differences in the tread circumference of the tires can cause the system to reduce the engine power when it is not expected.



If ABS is not working, ESC, ASR, and EDL will also not work.



You may hear noises when these systems are active.


## Switching Anti-Slip Regulation (ASR) on and off



Fig. 137 In the front center console: Button to manually switch ASR on and off.


📖 Read and follow the introductory information and safety information first ⇒ [Introduction to the subject](#)


The Electronic Stability Control (ESC) only works when the engine is running. This system includes ABS, EDL and ASR.

ASR can be switched off by pressing  button ⇒ [Fig. 137](#) while the engine is running. Switch off ASR only in situations where there is not enough traction, such as the following:

- When driving in deep snow or on loose surfaces.

- When rocking the vehicle back and forth when you are stuck.


Afterward, reactivate ASR by pressing the  button again.

In *Off-road Mode* you can also switch ESC on or off on some models by pushing the  button ⇒ *Off-road mode*.

## Brake fluid



Fig. 138 In engine compartment: Brake fluid reservoir cap.

 Read and follow the introductory information and safety information first ⇒ [▲ Introduction to the subject](#)

Brake fluid absorbs water from the air over time. Too much water in the brake fluid will damage the brake system. Water also lowers the boiling point of the brake fluid. Too much water in the brake fluid can cause vapor lock during heavy brake use or hard braking. Vapor lock reduces braking performance, increases stopping distances and can even cause total brake failure. Your safety and the safety of others depends on brakes that are working properly at all times ⇒ [▲](#).

### Brake fluid specifications

Volkswagen has developed a special brake fluid that is optimized for the brake system in your Volkswagen. Volkswagen recommends that you expressly use brake fluid that conforms to quality standard **VW Standard 501 14** for optimum performance of the brake system. Check the information on the container for the brake fluid you want to use to make sure it meets the requirements for your vehicle.

Brake fluid that complies with **VW Standard 501 14** can be purchased from your authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility.

If this special brake fluid is not available you may – under these circumstances – use another high-quality brake fluid that complies with U.S. Federal Motor Vehicle Safety Standard (FMVSS) 116 DOT 4 ⇒ [▲](#).

Please note, however, that not all brake fluids that comply with U.S. Federal Motor Vehicle Safety Standard FMVSS 116 DOT 4 have the same chemical composition. Some of these brake fluids can contain chemicals that could, over time, degrade or damage internal parts of the vehicle's brake system.

Volkswagen therefore recommends that you use brake fluid that expressly complies with **VW Standard 501 14** for optimum brake system performance over the long term.

### Brake fluid level

The fluid level in the transparent brake fluid reservoir must always be between the MIN and MAX marking ⇒ [▲](#).

On some vehicles, engine components block the view of the brake fluid reservoir and make it impossible to see the brake fluid level. If you cannot clearly see the brake fluid level in the brake fluid reservoir, please see an authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility.

The brake fluid level drops slightly when the vehicle is being used as the brake pads wear and the brakes are automatically adjusted.

### Changing brake fluid

Brake fluid must be changed according to the service schedule in your ⇒ *Booklet Warranty and Maintenance*. Have the brake fluid checked by an authorized Volkswagen dealer or an authorized Volkswagen Service Facility. Refill only with new brake fluid that meets the standards listed above.

## WARNING

Brake failure and reduced brake performance can be caused by not having enough brake fluid in the reservoir or by old or incorrect brake fluid.

- Check the brake system and brake fluid level regularly.
- Always change the brake fluid according to the service schedule in your ⇒ *Booklet Warranty and Maintenance*.
- Hard braking with old brake fluid may cause vapor lock. Vapor lock reduces braking performance, increases stopping distances and can even cause total brake failure.
- Always make sure that only the correct brake fluid is used. Only use brake fluid that expressly conforms to VW Standard 501 14 or, if it is not available, only use a high-quality brake fluid that conforms to U.S. Standard FMVSS 116 DOT 4 requirements.
- Using another brake fluid, or one that is not of high quality, can impair the function of the brake system and reduce its effectiveness. If the container does not say that the brake fluid complies with VW Standard 501 14, or U.S. Standard FMVSS 116 DOT 4, do not use it.
- The brake fluid must be new.

## ⚠ WARNING

Brake fluid is poisonous.

- To reduce the risk of poisoning, never use food, beverage or other non-original containers to store brake fluid. Someone might be misled by the original label on the container, or by the shape of the container, and drink the brake fluid. This could occur even if you relabel the container as brake fluid.
- Only store brake fluid in the closed, original container and keep it out of the reach of children.

## ! NOTE

Brake fluid will damage vehicle paint, plastic parts and tires. Wipe any brake fluid off vehicle paint and other vehicle parts immediately.

🌿 Brake fluid can pollute the environment. Brake fluid that has leaked out must be collected and disposed of properly, following all applicable environmental regulations.

## Saving fuel and helping the environment

### 📖 Introduction to the subject

In this chapter you will find information on the following subjects:

⇒ *Efficient driving style*

⇒ *Fuel-efficient driving*

Fuel consumption, environmental impact, and wear and tear on engine, brakes and tires depend mainly on the following 3 factors:

- Your personal driving style.
- External driving conditions (weather road conditions).
- Technical requirements.

You can reduce fuel consumption by up to 25% by using a few simple techniques and adjusting your driving style.

## ⚠ WARNING

Always adjust your speed and the distance you keep between you and the vehicles ahead of you to the road, traffic, weather, and visibility conditions.

## Efficient driving style

📖 Read and follow the introductory information and safety information first ⇒ ⚠ *Introduction to the subject*

### Shifting faster

As a rule, the following applies: The higher gear is always the most efficient gear. The rule of thumb for most vehicles is to drive in 3rd gear at about 20 mph / 30 km/h, 4th gear at about 25 mph / 40 km/h, and 5th gear at about 30 mph / 50 km/h.

If traffic and driving conditions permit, skipping gears when upshifting also saves fuel.

Do not run the gears up to their limit. Use 1st gear only to start moving and then smoothly shift into 2nd gear. Avoid kick-downs in vehicles with automatic transmissions.

### Coasting

If you take your foot off the accelerator, fuel delivery to the engine is interrupted, which lowers fuel consumption.

Therefore, when nearing a red stop light, for instance, allow the vehicle to coast without using the accelerator. The engine will then continue to run at idle.

In situations where the vehicle will be stopped for a longer period of time, such as at a railroad crossing, physically switch off the engine.

### Defensive driving and flowing with traffic

Frequent braking and acceleration increases fuel consumption significantly. Just by driving defensively and keeping a sufficiently large distance away from the vehicle in front of you can make up for the speed fluctuations caused by taking your foot off the accelerator. Active braking and accelerating is then not necessarily required.

### Calm and smooth driving

Consistency is more important than speed. The more smoothly you drive, the less fuel the vehicle consumes.

When driving on the highway or freeway, a constant, moderate speed is more efficient and economical than constantly accelerating and braking. Usually you can reach your destination just as quickly by driving at a moderate, but steady speed.

The cruise control can assist in maintaining a uniform driving style.

### Moderate use of extra electrical loads

Comfort inside the vehicle is nice and important, but it is important to use them in an environmentally conscious manner.

Some devices can increase fuel consumption when activated (examples):

- Climate control system (air conditioner): If the climate control system has to produce starkly contrasting temperatures, it requires a large amount of energy, which is generated by the engine. The temperature in the vehicle should therefore not be extremely different from that of the outside temperature. It may be helpful to ventilate the vehicle before driving and then to drive a short distance with the windows open. After that, switch on the air conditioner with the windows closed. Keep the windows closed when driving at high speeds. Open windows increase fuel consumption.
- Switch off seat heating once it has served its purpose.
- Switch off the windshield and rear window defroster as soon as the windows are free of fog and ice.

Additional factors that increase fuel consumption (examples):

- Malfunctioning engine control.
- Driving in the mountains.
- Towing a trailer.

### ! NOTE

Never let the vehicle coast or roll down a hill in Neutral (N), especially when the engine is not running. The transmission will not be lubricated and will be damaged.

## Fuel-efficient driving

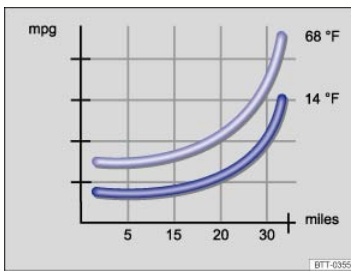


Fig. 139 Fuel consumption at 2 different outside air temperatures.

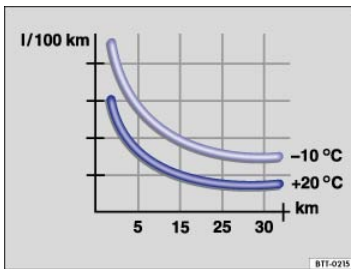


Fig. 140 Fuel consumption in l/100 km at 2 different outside air temperatures.

Read and follow the introductory information and safety information first ⇒ [Introduction to the subject](#)

Driving defensively and economically can easily reduce fuel consumption by 10 to 15%.

The vehicle consumes the most fuel when accelerating. Defensive driving requires less braking and therefore less acceleration. If possible, coast the vehicle to a stop, for example, when you can see that the next traffic light is red or is about to turn red.

### Avoid traveling short distances

A cold engine consumes significantly more fuel immediately after starting. It takes a few miles before the engine is warmed up and fuel consumption is stabilized.

To reduce fuel consumption and the emission of pollutants effectively, the engine and catalytic converter must reach their optimal **operating temperature**. Critical in this context is also the **outside air temperature**.

⇒ Fig. 139 and ⇒ Fig. 140 display the varying fuel consumption rates for the same distance driven, once at +68 °F (+20 °C) and once at +14 °F (-10 °C).

Therefore, avoid driving short distances unnecessarily and consolidate routes.

Under the same conditions, the vehicle consumes more fuel in winter than in summer.

Letting the engine run to warm up is not only illegal in some places, but also technically not necessary and wastes fuel.

### Adjust the tire pressure

The proper tire pressure helps reduce rolling resistance as well as fuel consumption.

When purchasing new tires, always make sure that the tires are optimized for lower rolling resistance.

### Use low viscosity engine oil

Fully synthetic, low viscosity engine oils that expressly comply with Volkswagen oil quality standards reduce fuel consumption. Low viscosity engine oils reduce the frictional resistance on the engine and are distributed more evenly and quickly, particularly when cold-starting the engine. The effect is particularly apparent in vehicles that frequently travel short distances.

Always ensure the right engine oil level is maintained and keep to the scheduled service intervals (engine oil changes).

Make sure the engine oil that you purchase expressly complies with Volkswagen oil quality standards and is the oil approved by Volkswagen for your vehicle.

### Avoid unnecessary weight

The lighter the vehicle, the more economical and eco-friendly it will be. For example, an extra 220 lbs (100 kg) of weight increases fuel consumption by up to 1 pint per 60 miles (0.3 l/100 km).

Remove all unnecessary items and unnecessary dead weight from the vehicle.

### Remove unnecessary aftermarket components

The more aerodynamic the vehicle, the less fuel it will consume. Aftermarket components such as bicycle racks reduce its aerodynamic performance.

Therefore, remove unnecessary structures and unused rack systems, particularly if planning to drive at higher speeds.

## Steering

### Introduction to the subject

In this chapter you will find information on the following subjects:

⇒ [Warning and indicator lights](#)

⇒ [Steering system information](#)

The power steering system is not electro-mechanical, it is hydraulic. In both cases, the power steering works only when the engine is running.

The hydraulic power steering system uses hydraulic lines, hydraulic oil, a pump, a filter, and other parts to maintain a constant oil pressure in the hydraulic system.



The electro-mechanical power steering system automatically adjusts to driving speed, steering torque, and the steering angle of the wheels. It delivers extra steering force only when you are actually turning the wheels. The electro-mechanical power steering works only when the engine is running.



### WARNING


Turning the steering wheel is very hard when the power steering system is not working. This makes it harder to steer and control the vehicle.




- Power steering works only when the engine is running.
- Power steering works only when either the combustion engine or the electric motor is running.
- Never let the vehicle coast with the engine switched off.
- Never remove the key from the ignition switch while the vehicle is moving or rolling to a stop. The steering wheel will lock and you will be unable to control the vehicle.

## Warning and indicator lights

 Read and follow the introductory information and safety information first ⇒  [Introduction to the subject](#)

Lights up	Possible cause	Proper response
	Steering system malfunction.	 <b>Stop!</b>  Have the power steering system checked immediately by an authorized Volkswagen dealer or an authorized Volkswagen Service Facility.

Lights up	Possible cause	Proper response
	Power steering assist is reduced.	Stop, restart the engine, and drive a short distance. If the yellow warning light does not come on again, you do <b>not</b> need to have the steering system checked.
	Vehicle battery was disconnected and has been reconnected.	Otherwise, have the steering checked immediately by an authorized Volkswagen dealer or an authorized Volkswagen Service Facility. Drive a short distance at about 10 - 12 mph (15 - 20 km/h).

Flashes	Possible cause	Proper response
	Electronic steering column lock malfunction.	 <b>Stop!</b> The ignition cannot be switched on. The vehicle must not be towed! Get professional assistance.
	Steering column is twisted.	Turn the steering wheel back and forth. Switch the ignition off and then switch it on again. Heed any messages shown in the instrument cluster display, if applicable.
	Steering column not locked/unlocked.	On vehicles with Keyless Access, press the starter button briefly twice in a row without depressing the brake pedal. <b>Do not drive any farther</b> if the steering column remains locked after you switch on the ignition. Contact your authorized Volkswagen dealer or an authorized Volkswagen Service Facility for assistance.

When the ignition is switched on, several warning and indicator lights come on briefly for a function check. They go out after a few seconds.

 **WARNING**

Failure to heed warning lights and instrument cluster text messages can cause the vehicle to break down in traffic and result in a collision and serious personal injury.

- Never ignore warning lights or text WARNINGS.
- Always stop the vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so.

 **NOTE**

Failure to heed warning lights or text WARNINGS can result in vehicle damage.

## Steering system information

 Read and follow the introductory information and safety information first ⇒  *Introduction to the subject*

### Electronic steering column lock

The steering column is locked by removing the remote control vehicle key from the ignition switch when the vehicle is not moving. The electronic steering column lock does not lock if the vehicle moves for more than 10 seconds after the remote control vehicle key is removed.

Vehicles with Keyless Access: The steering column is locked if the driver door is opened with the ignition switched off. The vehicle must be standing still and the transmission must be in Park (**P**) on an automatic transmission vehicle.



If the driver door is opened before the ignition is switched off, the electronic steering column lock is activated only after the vehicle has been locked with the vehicle key or via the sensor in the door handle.

### Power steering

Power steering automatically adjusts to driving speed, steering torque, and the steering angle of the wheels. Power steering works only when the engine is running

If power steering is reduced or lost completely, it will be much harder to steer and control the vehicle.

### Counter-steering assistance

Counter-steering assistance is part of Electronic Stability Control (ESC). This feature makes it easier for the driver to control the vehicle in difficult situations. For example, if you have to brake hard on a surface that provides uneven traction, the vehicle could pull to the right or left. ESC detects this situation and helps the driver counter-steer with additional steering power ⇒ ▲.

#### ⚠ WARNING

The counter-steering assistance in ESC can do no more than help the driver steer in difficult situations. The driver must still control the vehicle. The vehicle does not steer by itself with this feature!

#### ! NOTE

If the ignition is off, the steering column lock will engage and the vehicle cannot be steered. For this reason, you must leave the ignition on when going through an automatic car wash, for example, so that the wheels will still steer.

## Driver assistance systems

### Starting assistance systems

#### 📖 Introduction to the subject

In this chapter you will find information on the following subjects:

⇒ [Warning and indicator lights](#)

⇒ [Auto Hold](#)

⇒ [Hill Start Assist \(Hill Hold\)](#)

⇒ [Hill Descent Control](#)

#### ⚠ WARNING

The intelligent technology of the dynamic starting assistance features cannot overcome the laws of physics. Never let the increased convenience provided by the dynamic starting assistance features tempt you into taking risks.

- Unintended vehicle movement can cause serious personal injury.
- The dynamic starting assistance features are no substitute for careful and attentive driving.
- Always adapt your speed and driving style to visibility, weather, road, and traffic conditions.
- The dynamic starting assistance features cannot keep the vehicle from moving in all hill-start situations (for example, if the ground is slippery or icy).
- Never activate the throttle manually from the engine compartment when the engine is running and the automatic transmission is in gear. The vehicle will start to move as soon as the engine speed increases, even if the parking brake is set.

#### ⚠ WARNING

Driving with too little fuel in the fuel tank increases the risk of stalling, especially when driving up and down hills.

- If your vehicle stalls suddenly, this can cause an accident and serious personal injuries.
- Driver assistance and braking assistance systems can malfunction when there is too little fuel in the tank and cause you to lose control of the vehicle.
- Never drive until the fuel tank is almost empty.



### Warning and indicator lights


📖 Read and follow the introductory information and safety information first ⇒ ▲ [Introduction to the subject](#)

Lights up

Possible cause

Proper response

Lights up	Possible cause	Proper response
	Hill Start Assist (Hill Hold) malfunction.	Take the vehicle to an authorized Volkswagen dealer or an authorized Volkswagen Service Facility and have the system checked.
	Hill Descent Control switched on.	⇒ <i>Hill Descent Control</i> .

Flashes	Possible cause	Proper response
	Hill Descent Control is operating. ⇒ <i>Hill Descent Control</i> .	

When the ignition is switched on, several warning and indicator lights come on briefly for a function check. They go out after a few seconds.

### ⚠ WARNING

Failure to heed warning lights and instrument cluster text messages can cause the vehicle to break down in traffic and result in a collision and serious personal injury.

- Never ignore warning lights or text WARNINGS.
- Always stop the vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so.


### ℹ NOTE

Failure to heed warning lights or text WARNINGS can result in vehicle damage.

## Auto Hold



Fig. 141 In the lower center console: Button for Auto Hold.

 Read and follow the introductory information and safety information first ⇒ [Introduction to the subject](#)

The indicator light in the AUTO HOLD button lights up when Auto Hold is enabled.

Auto Hold automatically keeps the vehicle from rolling backwards or forwards or creeping after it has come to a stop. It is not necessary to hold the vehicle with the brake pedal.



Auto Hold takes over and holds the vehicle once it comes to a stop and you take your foot off the brake pedal.

If you step on the accelerator pedal or give the accelerator pedal a brief tap, Auto Hold releases the brake again. The vehicle is now free to move and can roll downhill unless you accelerate in the other direction.

#### Conditions for operation of Auto Hold:

- The driver door is closed.
- The driver safety belt is buckled.
- The engine is running.
- You have brought the vehicle to a complete stop using the brake pedal.

Auto Hold switches off again if the driver door is opened, the driver safety belt is unbuckled, or the engine is switched off while the vehicle is standing still.

If Auto Hold switches off, the electronic parking brake engages automatically to hold the vehicle ⇒ . The red indicator light  comes on in the instrument cluster display.

#### Manual activation and deactivation of Auto Hold

Press the AUTO HOLD button ⇒ . When the indicator light in the button is out, Auto Hold is disabled.

#### Automatic activation and deactivation of Auto Hold

Auto Hold is automatically reactivated when you switch on the ignition if you enabled it by pressing the AUTO HOLD button before switching the ignition off.

If you did not enable Auto Hold before switching the ignition off, Auto Hold remains disabled when you switch the ignition on the next time.

### WARNING

The intelligent Auto Hold technology cannot change the laws of physics. Never let the increased convenience provided by Auto Hold tempt you into taking risks.

- Never leave the vehicle with the engine running even if Auto Hold is enabled.
- Auto Hold cannot keep the vehicle from moving in all hill-start situations (for example, if the ground is slippery or icy).
- Unintended vehicle movement can cause serious personal injury.
- Never activate the throttle manually from the engine compartment when the engine is running and the automatic transmission is in gear. The vehicle will start to move as soon as the engine speed increases, even if the electronic parking brake is on.

### NOTE

Before entering a car wash **always** deactivate Auto Hold. Otherwise, automatic engagement of the electronic parking brake can cause damage.

## Hill Start Assist (Hill Hold)

 Read and follow the introductory information and safety information first ⇒ [Introduction to the subject](#)

Hill Start Assist (Hill Hold) helps keep the vehicle from rolling backwards when starting out on a hill, for example after stopping at a traffic light. You don't have to apply and release the parking brake while depressing the accelerator. For Hill Start Assist to work, the engine must be running and the vehicle must be in Drive (D) or Sport Drive (S) and you must use the foot brake to hold the vehicle before starting to move.

Hill Start Assist keeps the brake applied for not quite 2 seconds with the same force you used to prevent the vehicle from moving. This gives you time to take your foot off the brake, and gently depress the accelerator to get the vehicle moving again. If you do not depress the accelerator pedal and get the vehicle moving again within this time, the brakes will release and the vehicle will roll downhill. Furthermore, if any requirement for engaging Hill Start Assist is no longer met while the vehicle is stopped, Hill Start Assist disengages, the indicator light in the button goes out, and the brakes are automatically released and will no longer hold the vehicle.

Hill Start Assist is activated automatically when points 1 to 3 are met **at the same time** :

1. Hold the **stopped** vehicle on an incline with the foot brake or electronic parking brake.
2. The engine is running smoothly.
3. The transmission must be in Drive ( **D** ) or Sport Drive ( **S** ) and the foot brake must be depressed to keep the vehicle from moving.
4. To drive off, take your foot off the brake pedal and gently depress the accelerator within 2 seconds.

**Release the brake as you gently depress the accelerator.**

Hill Start Assist is immediately deactivated:


- If any requirement listed in the table above is no longer met (see ).
- If the engine is not running smoothly or the engine malfunctions.
- If the engine stalls or is switched off.
- If the transmission is in Neutral ( **N** ).
- If a tire does not have enough road contact (such as when the vehicle is tipped or at an angle).


### WARNING

The intelligent technology of Hill Start Assist cannot overcome the laws of physics. Never let the increased convenience provided by Hill Start Assist tempt you into taking risks.

- The Hill Start Assist feature cannot hold the vehicle in all hill start situations (for example, if the surface is icy or slippery).
- Hill Start Assist can only help keep the vehicle from moving for less than 2 seconds. After that, the brakes will be released and the vehicle can roll down the hill.

## Hill Descent Control

 Read and follow the introductory information and safety information first ⇒ [Introduction to the subject](#)


Hill Descent Control helps the driver on steep downhill grades by actively braking the vehicle. The vehicle is held to the speed it has when Hill Descent Control first begins to work ⇒ .

One requirement for speed regulation is that the tires must have a sufficiently good grip on the ground underneath. For example, Hill Descent Control **cannot** perform its function on icy slopes or on slopes with an oily road surface.

An indicator light  comes on in the instrument cluster display whenever Hill Descent Control is enabled. The indicator light *blinks* when Hill Descent Control is regulating the brakes.

Hill Descent Control is always enabled, but only regulates the brakes when certain requirements are met.

Hill Descent Control regulates automatically if all of the following conditions apply:

- The indicator light  is on.
- **And:** The vehicle's engine is running.
- **And:** The **Off-road** driving mode is selected ⇒ *Off-road mode*.
- **And:** The vehicle speed is under 18 mph (30 km/h).
- **And:** The downhill grade is at least 10%.
- **And:** The driver does not press the accelerator or brake pedals.

If you accelerate or step on the brake when Hill Descent Control is operating, the feature switches off. Hill Descent Control begins regulating speed again the next time the requirements are met.

Hill Descent Control does not regulate vehicle speed if one of the following occurs:

- The downhill grade is less than 10%.
- **OR:** The vehicle speed is over 18 mph (30 km/h).
- **OR:** The driver brakes or accelerates.

#### WARNING

Always be ready to apply the brakes. Otherwise accidents and injuries can occur.

- Hill Descent Control is merely a driving aid and cannot always slow the vehicle down enough under on downhill grades.
- The vehicle may pick up speed despite the use of Hill Descent Control.



The Hill Descent Control also works when you are backing down a hill.

## Cruise control

### Introduction to the subject

In this chapter you will find information on the following subjects:

⇒ *Warning and indicator lights*

⇒ *Cruise control operation*

Cruise control helps maintain an individually stored constant speed when driving above about 12 mph (20 km/h).

Cruise control slows down the vehicle only by reducing the flow of fuel to the engine, not by braking ⇒ .

#### WARNING

Using the cruise control when it is not possible to drive safely at a constant speed can be dangerous and can lead to an accident and serious personal injury.

- Never use cruise control when driving in heavy or varying traffic or when you cannot keep a safe distance between you and the vehicles, ahead of you.
- Never use cruise control on steep, winding, or slippery roads (such gravel roads, wet roads, or snowy or icy roads) or on roads with standing water.
- Never use cruise control when driving off-road or on unpaved roads.
- Always adjust your speed and the distance you keep between you and the vehicles ahead of you to the road, traffic, weather, and visibility conditions.
- To help prevent unintended operation of cruise control, switch the system off when it is not being used.
- It is dangerous to use the Resume feature when the previously set speed is too high for the existing road, traffic, or weather conditions.
- When traveling downhill, the cruise control may not be able to maintain a constant speed. The vehicle will speed up because of its own weight. Downshift and/or use the foot brake to slow the vehicle.

## Warning and indicator lights

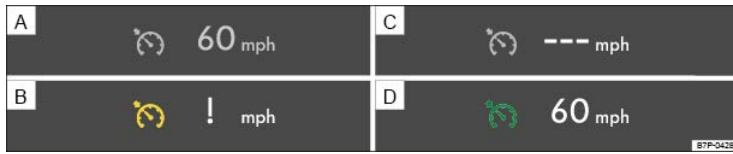


Fig. 142 In the instrument cluster display: Cruise control status indications.

Read and follow the introductory information and safety information first ⇒ [Introduction to the subject](#)

### Display

Different cruise control versions are available. The stored speed is shown in the instrument cluster display on some equipment versions.

Status ⇒ [Fig. 142](#)

- A** Cruise control temporarily deactivated.
- B** System malfunction. See an authorized Volkswagen dealer or an authorized Volkswagen Service Facility.
- C** Cruise control activated. No speed stored in memory.
- D** Cruise control is active.

Lights up	Possible cause
	Cruise control malfunction ⇒ <a href="#">Fig. 142 B</a> .
	Cruise control is regulating vehicle speed.
	Cruise control is switched on, but <b>not</b> active.

When the ignition is switched on, several warning and indicator lights come on briefly for a function check. They go out after a few seconds.

### WARNING

Failure to heed warning lights and instrument cluster text messages can cause the vehicle to break down in traffic and result in a collision and serious personal injury.

- Never ignore warning lights or text WARNINGS.
- Always stop the vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so.

### NOTE

Failure to heed warning lights or text WARNINGS can result in vehicle damage.

## Cruise control operation

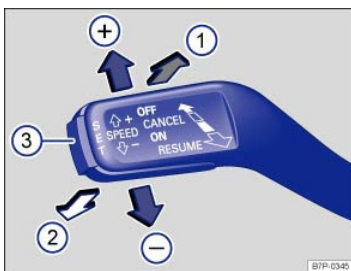


Fig. 143 On the left side of the steering column: Cruise control operating lever.

Read and follow the introductory information and safety information first ⇒ [Introduction to the subject](#)

In order to:	You must: ⇒ <a href="#">Fig. 143</a>	Result:
Switch on cruise control.	Move the lever to the <b>ON</b> position ①.	System is switched on, but does not regulate vehicle speed until a speed is set.

In order to:	You must: ⇒ Fig. 143	Result:
Set cruise control to current vehicle speed.	Press the <b>SET</b> button ③.	Current vehicle speed is set; cruise control helps to maintain this speed. If the cruise control is already regulating vehicle speed, the stored speed is reduced by 1 mph (1 km/h) each time the button is pressed.
Temporarily deactivate cruise control.	Push the lever <i>briefly</i> to the <b>CANCEL</b> position ②.	Cruise control is temporarily deactivated. The speed is still stored in the memory.
	<b>OR:</b> Depress the brake pedal.	
Resume speed stored in cruise control.	Pull the lever <i>briefly</i> to the <b>RESUME</b> position ①.	Cruise control resumes speed previously set. If there is not a previously stored speed, the cruise control stores and maintains the current speed. If the cruise control is already regulating vehicle speed, the stored speed is increased by 1 mph (1 km/h) each time the lever is pulled.
Increase set speed (while cruise control is actively controlling vehicle speed).	Push the lever <i>briefly</i> to the <b>SPEED+</b> position ⊕ position to increase the set speed in increments of 5 mph (10 km/h) and store.	The vehicle will accelerate until the new higher speed is reached and saves the new higher speed in the memory.
	Push and hold the lever in the <b>SPEED+</b> ⊕ position to increase the set speed continuously until the higher desired speed is reached and the lever is released.	
Reduce set speed (while cruise control is actively controlling vehicle speed).	Push the lever <i>briefly</i> to the <b>SPEED-</b> position ⊖ to reduce the set speed in increments of 5 mph (10 km/h) and store.	Cruise control will slow the vehicle down <i>without braking</i> by reducing the flow of fuel to the engine until the new lower speed is reached and saves the new lower speed in the memory.
	Push and hold the lever <i>longer</i> in the <b>SPEED-</b> position ⊖ to reduce the set speed continuously until the lower desired speed is reached and the lever is released.	
Switch off cruise control.	Push the lever to <b>OFF</b> position ②.	Pushing the lever briefly to the first detent deactivates the cruise control and saves the stored speed. Pushing the lever to the second detent turns off the cruise control and deletes the stored speed.

#### Driving downhill with cruise control

If cruise control cannot maintain constant speed while driving downhill, slow the vehicle with the foot brake and downshift if necessary.

#### Automatic deactivation

Cruise control speed regulation is automatically deactivated or temporarily interrupted:

- If the system detects an error that could affect the function of the cruise control.

- If the vehicle has accelerated and goes faster than the stored speed for a longer time.
- If the brake pedal is depressed.
- If an airbag deploys.

## Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Front Assist

### Introduction to the subject

In this chapter you will find information on the following subjects:

⇒ *Display, warning and indicator lights*

⇒ *Radar sensors, ultrasonic sensors and Front Assist camera*

⇒ *Switching ACC on and off*

⇒ *When to temporarily deactivate Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC)*

⇒ *Forward Collision Warning system (Front Assist)*


⇒ *Temporarily switch off the Forward Collision Warning system (Front Assist) in the following situations*

⇒ *Forward Collision Warning system (Front Assist) system limits*

⇒ *Autonomous Emergency Braking*

⇒ *Special driving situations*

Your vehicle may be equipped with the Adaptive Cruise Control system (ACC), which helps maintain an individually stored constant speed between about 20 mph (30 km/h) and 95 mph (150 km/h) and a previously set distance in time intervals between your vehicle and those in front of you.

The vehicle may be braked, if the situation so requires, **to a standstill** by an **active braking maneuver** ⇒ .

How does Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) work?

Adaptive Cruise Control requires you to set the desired speed and distance. Set and adjust the speed using the lever to the left of the steering column. Set the distance using the sliding switch on top of the lever.

#### Driver intervention warning

Adaptive Cruise Control has system-specified limits. As a driver, you must control the speed and the distance to other vehicles under some circumstances. If that is necessary, the system requests the driver to take over using a visual and audible warning, even if the vehicle can be braked to a standstill by an active braking maneuver.

### WARNING

Always remember that the Adaptive Cruise Control and Front Assist have limits – Using Adaptive Cruise Control when it is not possible to drive safely at a constant speed can be dangerous and can lead to an accident and serious personal injury.

- Adaptive Cruise Control will not slow the vehicle down or maintain the set distance when you drive towards an obstacle or something on or near the road that is not moving, such as vehicles stopped in a traffic jam, or a stalled or disabled vehicle.
- Always adjust your speed and the distance you keep between you and the vehicles ahead of you to the road, traffic, weather, and visibility conditions.
- Never use Adaptive Cruise Control on steep, winding, or slippery roads (such as gravel roads, wet roads, or snowy or icy roads) or on roads with standing water.
- Never use Adaptive Cruise Control when driving in heavy or varying stop-and-go traffic.
- Never use Adaptive Cruise Control when driving off-road or on unpaved roads.
- Always remember that the Adaptive Cruise Control cannot detect a vehicle that is driving towards you in your traffic lane and that it cannot detect narrow vehicles such as motorcycles and bicycles.
- Never follow a vehicle so closely that you cannot stop your vehicle safely. The Adaptive Cruise Control cannot slow or brake the vehicle safely when you follow another vehicle too closely. Always remember that the Adaptive Cruise Control has a braking power that is only about 30% of the vehicle's maximum braking ability, under certain circumstances the automatic braking function cannot bring the vehicle to a stop in time.
- Always turn off Adaptive Cruise Control when entering turn lanes, exit lanes and construction zones or in similar situations because the vehicle will automatically accelerate to the stored speed when the road ahead is clear.
- To help prevent unintended operation of Adaptive Cruise Control, switch the system off when it is not being used.
- It is dangerous to use the Resume feature when the previously set speed is too high for the existing road, traffic, or weather conditions.
- When traveling downhill, the Adaptive Cruise Control may not be able to maintain a constant speed. The vehicle will speed up because of its own weight. Downshift and/or use the foot brake to slow the vehicle.

- Never allow the closing speed between you and other vehicles to be so high that the Adaptive Cruise Control may not be able to slow your vehicle safely. If closing speed is too high, you must apply the brakes yourself to reduce the risk of a rear-end crash.
- If a driver intervention warning appears in the instrument cluster display, immediately takeover the control of the brake and gas pedals and slow down the vehicle or bring it to stop when necessary and according to the traffic situation.
- If a Forward Collision Warning system (Front Assist) collision warning appears in the instrument cluster display, immediately take over the control of the brake and gas pedals and slow down the vehicle or bring it to stop when necessary and according to the traffic situation.
- Always be prepared to takeover the control of the brake and the gas pedal in every situation.

**NOTE**

If you suspect that ACC and the Forward Collision Warning system (Front Assist) don't work properly or the sensors are damaged, switch off ACC immediately.

- Go see an authorized Volkswagen dealer or Volkswagen Service Facility for assistance and have the ACC system checked.

### Display, warning and indicator lights

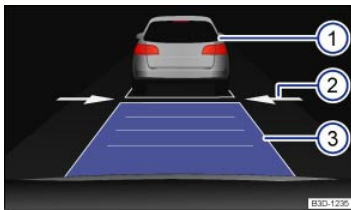


Fig. 144 In the instrument cluster display: ACC is active and the maximum distance is set to the detected vehicle in front.

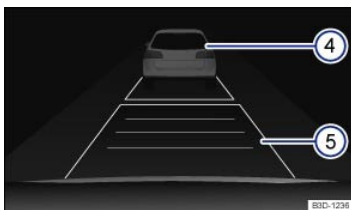


Fig. 145 In the instrument cluster display: ACC is not active but a vehicle was detected in front.







Read and follow the introductory information and safety information first ⇒ [Introduction to the subject](#)

#### Keys to ⇒ Fig. 144 and ⇒ Fig. 145

- ① Vehicle traveling ahead (ACC active)
- ② Indicator for setting the time distance to the vehicle traveling ahead (adjustable with sliding switch)
- ③ Set time distance to vehicle traveling ahead (ACC active)
- ④ Vehicle traveling ahead (ACC not active)
- ⑤ Set time distance to vehicle traveling ahead (ACC not active)

Lights up	Possible cause ⇒	Proper response
	The deceleration of the ACC automatic braking system is not sufficient to bring the vehicle to a full stop in time.	<b>Depress the brake pedal!</b> Driver intervention warning!
	An obstacle was detected when driving off.	Drive slowly and be prepared to stop!
	Front assist collision warning. the Forward Collision Warning system (Front Assist) detected an impending collision with a vehicle driving ahead of yours ⇒ <a href="#">Forward Collision Warning system (Front Assist)</a> .	<b>Depress the brake pedal!</b> Try to avoid a collision by braking the vehicle and/or drawing it aside according to the traffic situation!



Lights up	Possible cause ⇒ ⚠	Proper response
	Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) is currently not available,	Park your vehicle and turn the engine off and on again. Check the sensor for damages or soiling. Should the system still not be available, have it checked by an authorized Volkswagen dealer or Volkswagen service facility.
	The Forward Collision Warning system (Front Assist) or Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) is out of order and not active.	Have the system checked by an authorized Volkswagen dealer or Volkswagen service facility.
	Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) is active and regulating the speed and distance to the vehicle travelling in front of you.	-
	Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) is active and holding the vehicle at the set speed.	-
	Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) is not active but the system is on and detected a vehicle travelling in front of you.	-
	Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) is not active, the system is on but not regulating or holding speed.	-

When the ignition is switched on, several warning and indicator lights come on briefly for a function check. They go out after a few seconds.

**⚠ WARNING**

Failure to heed warning lights and instrument cluster text messages can cause the vehicle to break down in traffic and result in a collision and serious personal injury.

- Never ignore warning lights or text WARNINGS.
- Always stop the vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so.

**ⓘ NOTE**

Failure to heed warning lights or text WARNINGS can result in vehicle damage.

### Radar sensors, ultrasonic sensors and Front Assist camera

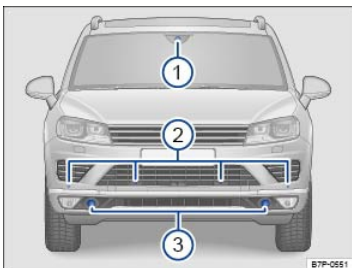



Fig. 146 Vehicle front view: Sensors and camera

 Read and follow the introductory information and safety information first ⇒ ⚠ *Introduction to the subject*

**Key to ⇒ Fig. 146 :**

- ① Camera for Front Assist system
- ② Ultrasonic sensors for the Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC)
- ③ Radar sensors for the Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) and Front Assist

There are 2 radar sensors next to the fog lights on the vehicle front ⇒ Fig. 146③. These can detect moving vehicles up to 590 ft (180 m) in front of your vehicle.

The areas of the sensors ⇒ Fig. 146②③ and the camera ⇒ Fig. 146① must not be spray painted or covered by stickers or other objects, since this can lead to a malfunction of the Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) and the Front Assist system.

**NOTE**

If you notice that Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) or Front Assist doesn't work properly or the sensors are damaged, switch off ACC immediately.

- Go see an authorized Volkswagen dealer or Volkswagen Service Facility for assistance and have the ACC system checked.
- The sensors can be damaged or become misaligned in low speed impacts and parking maneuvers. Damaged or misaligned sensors can cause ACC or Front Assist to malfunction.
- To help make sure that the system works properly, always keep the sensors clean, free of snow and ice; do not cover the sensors with stickers or other objects.
- When cleaning the sensors with power washers or steam cleaners, only spray the sensors directly for a very short time, and always keep the washer nozzle at least 4 inches (10 cm) from the sensors.
- For Declaration of Compliance to United States FCC and Industry Canada regulations : ⇒ [Declaration of Compliance, Telecommunications and Electronic Systems](#)



Always keep the area of the Front Assist camera clear of ice and snow.

**Switching ACC on and off**

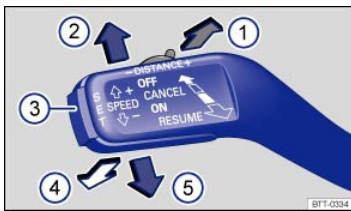


Fig. 147 On the steering wheel column: Lever for Adaptive Cruise Control.



Fig. 148 Lever for Adaptive Cruise Control: Setting the distance (time intervals)

Read and follow the introductory information and safety information first ⇒ [Introduction to the subject](#)

In order to:	You must ⇒ Fig. 147:	Result:
Switch on ACC	Bring lever to position <b>ON</b> ①.	ACC is switched on, but not activated.
Activate ACC	Push <b>SET</b> ③ button <i>briefly</i> .	Current speed is set and the system starts to actively regulate the speed ⇒ ①.
Temporarily deactivate ACC	Push the lever <i>briefly</i> to the <b>CANCEL</b> position ④.	Speed regulation is temporarily deactivated. The set speed is still stored.
	<b>Or:</b> Depress the brake pedal	
Resume speed regulation (reactivate ACC)	Pull the lever <i>briefly</i> to the <b>RESUME</b> position ①.	The speed regulation will be resumed at the stored speed value ⇒ ①.
	Pull the lever <i>briefly</i> to the <b>RESUME</b> position ① to increase the set speed and store the new speed value in increments of 1 mph (1 km/h).	

In order to:	You must ⇒ Fig. 147:	Result:
Increase set speed (while ACC is actively regulating vehicle speed).	Pull and hold the lever to the <b>RESUME</b> position ① position to increase the set speed continuously until the higher desired speed is reached and the lever is released.	The vehicle will accelerate until the new higher speed is reached and saves the new higher speed in the memory.
	Push the lever <i>briefly</i> to the <b>SPEED+</b> position ② position to increase the set speed in increments of 5 mph (10 km/h) and store.	
	Push and hold the lever in the <b>SPEED+</b> ② position to increase the set speed continuously until the higher desired speed is reached and the lever is released.	
Reduce set speed (while ACC is actively regulating but the set vehicle speed is not reached yet).	Push the lever <i>briefly</i> to the <b>SPEED-</b> position ⑤ to reduce the set speed in increments of 5 mph (10 km/h) and store.	The speed will be continuously reduced until the new lower speed is reached.
	Afterwards the new set speed can be reduced in increments of 1 mph (1 km/h) by pushing the <b>SET</b> ③ button.	
	Push and hold the lever <i>longer</i> in the <b>SPEED-</b> position ⑤ to reduce the set speed continuously until the lower desired speed is reached and the lever is released.	
Reduce set speed (while ACC is actively regulating and the set speed has been reached).	Press <b>SET</b> ③ button <i>briefly</i> , in order to decrease set speed and store new speed value in increments of 1 mph (1 km/h).	The speed will be continuously reduced until the new lower speed is reached.
	Push and hold <b>SET</b> ③ button <i>longer</i> to reduce the set speed continuously until the lower desired speed is reached and the lever is released.	
	Push the lever <i>briefly</i> to the <b>SPEED-</b> position ⑤ to reduce the set speed in increments of 5 mph (10 km/h) and store.	
	Push and hold the lever <i>longer</i> in the <b>SPEED-</b> position ⑤ to reduce the set speed continuously until the lower desired speed is reached and the lever is released.	
Switch off ACC.	Push the lever to the <b>OFF</b> position ④.	The system is switched off and the stored speed is canceled.



When you push the lever ⇒ Fig. 147 *briefly* to **SPEED+** position ②, the speed will be increased first to the next highest value in increments of 5 mph (10 km/h), for example, from 47 mph (76 km/h) to 50 mph (80 km/h). Only then is it possible to increase the speed in increments of 5 mph (10 km/h) by *briefly* pushing the lever to the **SPEED+** position ② .

ACC works in the same way when reducing the set speed.

Requirements for activating ACC

- Lever is in the **ON** ⇒ Fig. 147① position.
- The selector lever must be in **D, S** or in Tiptronic mode.
- Gradient angles can't be more than +/- 19 %.
- Brake pedal is depressed when vehicle is standing still.
- the driver safety belt is fastened.
- The doors and the engine hood are closed.
- The electronic parking brake is released
- Hill Descent Control is not activated.
- The vehicle is not rolling backwards.
- There is no parked vehicle or other object in front of your moving vehicle.

#### Activating ACC

When ACC is active one of the 2 green indicator lights (  or  ) light up and the set speed is shown in the display of the instrument cluster and indicated by red di on the speedometer. Text messages and indicator lights in the instrument cluster inform you about the status of the system ⇒ *Display, warning and indicator lights* .

When ACC is switched on, activated and properly working, it will store and regulate the desired speed. The set speed can vary from the actually driven speed if ACC is regulating the distance to the vehicle travelling ahead.

#### Decelerating to a stop


If a vehicle ahead decelerates to a stop the Adaptive Cruise Control likewise decelerates your vehicle to a standstill. After this vehicle is kept in place by the brakes Using the brake does not deactivate the Adaptive Cruise Control in this situation.

If you unlock the safety belt, open a door or the engine hood, switch off the ignition during such a braking state or if the stop exceeds about three minutes, the Adaptive Cruise Control switches off temporarily and activates the parking brake.

By depressing the accelerator pedal while the vehicle is standing still and ACC is active, the vehicle will accelerate. Once you take your foot off the pedal, ACC will automatically resume the stored speed and regulate the set distance.

ACC will **not** automatically accelerate if the vehicle ahead accelerates.

#### Distance (time interval) to the vehicle ahead and driving profiles

The distance the ACC maintains to the vehicle traveling ahead is determined by *time intervals*. A time distance to the vehicle traveling ahead is maintained. This results in a speed-dependent distance. The higher the speed, the larger the distance in feet/meters ⇒  .

The distance can be set at 4 different levels:

Distance	Time distance at 65 mph (105 km/h)
Very small	about 1,0 Seconds
Small	about 1,3 Seconds
Medium	about 1,8 Seconds
Large	about 2,5 Seconds

Besides changing the time distance, the acceleration characteristics can be changed, by choosing on of the following driving profiles:

- Comfort
- Normal
- Sport

The distance intervals can be set by pushing the slider switch on the lever ⇒ Fig. 148. The driving profile can only be set in the infotainment system .

Always select a greater following distance to the vehicle ahead on wet roads than on dry roads.

#### Setting the distance and selecting a driving profile

In order to show the currently selected distance in the instrument cluster display, briefly tap the sliding switch on the lever ⇒ Fig. 148.

Setting the distance with the sliding switch on the lever ⇒ Fig. 148:

In order to:	You must ⇒ Fig. 148:	Result:
Increase the distance by one level	Briefly push the sliding switch to the right ☉.	The distance is increased by 1 level.
Increase the distance quickly	Push and hold the sliding switch to the right ☉.	The distance is increased quickly by several levels.
Decrease the distance by one level	Briefly push the sliding switch to the left ☾.	The distance is decreased by 1 level.
Decrease the distance quickly	Push and hold the sliding switch to the left ☾.	The distance is decreased quickly by several levels.

Selecting a driving profile in the infotainment system:

- Switch on the ignition.
- Push the infotainment button **CAR**.
- Tap on the Assistants button in the display.
- Select ACC.
- Tap on the Driving profiles button in the display and select driving profile.

### DANGER!

Following other vehicles too closely increases the risk of collisions and serious personal injury or even death.

- Always obey applicable traffic laws when setting the distance to the vehicles ahead in traffic.
- Setting short distances to the traffic ahead reduces the time and distance available to bring your vehicle to a safe stop and makes it even more necessary to pay close attention to traffic.
- Always use good judgment and select a safe following distance for the traffic, road and weather conditions.
- Never use Adaptive Cruise Control on narrow or winding roads or under poor road conditions (snow, ice, streets covered with standing water or gravel, for example) or when visibility is poor, especially when it is foggy.
- Always select a greater following distance to the vehicle ahead on wet roads than on dry roads.

### WARNING

Improper use of the Adaptive Cruise Control can cause collisions, other accidents and serious personal injury.

- Always remember that the Adaptive Cruise Control has limits – it will not slow the vehicle down or maintain the set distance when you drive towards an obstacle or something on or near the road that is not moving, such as vehicles stopped in a traffic jam, or a stalled or disabled vehicle.
- Always remember that the Adaptive Cruise Control cannot detect a vehicle that is driving towards you in your traffic lane and that it cannot detect narrow vehicles such as motorcycles and bicycles.
- Never drive at speeds that are too fast for traffic, road and weather conditions.
- Never follow a vehicle so closely that you cannot stop your vehicle safely. The Adaptive Cruise Control cannot slow or brake the vehicle safely when you follow another vehicle too closely. Always remember that the Adaptive Cruise Control has a braking power that is only about 30% of the vehicle's maximum braking ability, the automatic braking function cannot bring the vehicle to a stop.
- Never use Adaptive Cruise Control when you cannot drive safely at a steady speed, including on city streets, on winding roads or when road conditions are poor (for example, on ice, gravel, in fog, heavy rain or on wet roads that increase the risk of hydroplaning).
- The radar sensor's *vision* can be reduced by rain, snow and heavy road spray. These and similar conditions can prevent vehicles up ahead from being accurately detected and in some cases they may not be detected at all. Do not use ACC when the radar sensors cannot accurately detect vehicles moving ahead of you in traffic.
- Always turn off Adaptive Cruise Control when entering turn lanes, exit lanes and construction zones or in similar situations because the vehicle will automatically accelerate to the stored speed when the road ahead is clear.
- Never rest your foot on the accelerator pedal, especially when the Adaptive Cruise Control is being used because doing so will override the braking function.
- Always pay attention to traffic, especially when Adaptive Cruise Control is switched on.
- Always maintain a safe speed and distance between your vehicle and other vehicles while considering the traffic situation. This is the duty of the driver. Adaptive Cruise Control is merely an aid to the driver.
- To prevent unintended operation, always switch ACC off when it is not being used.
- It is dangerous to use the Resume feature when the previously set speed is too high for existing road, traffic, or weather conditions.

- Always select a speed and distance to traffic ahead that is safe and appropriate under the prevailing traffic, road, weather, and lighting conditions.
- Never allow the closing speed between you and other vehicles to be so high that the Adaptive Cruise Control may not be able to slow your vehicle safely. If closing speed is too high, you must apply the brakes yourself to reduce the risk of a rear-end crash.

#### NOTE

When the vehicle is driving at speeds lower than 20 mph (30 km/h) and the **SET** button is pressed or the lever is moved to **RESUME**, the vehicle will be accelerated to the lowest possible speed that can be set in ACC of 20 mph (30 km/h)



The stored speed is canceled when the ignition or the ACC is switched off.



The Electronic Stability Control (ESC) cannot be deactivated when the Adaptive Cruise Control is switched on. If the ESC has been deactivated and you then switch on the Adaptive Cruise Control, the ESC function will also be activated automatically.



The currently set distance and the last settings are stored automatically and assigned to the used remote control vehicle key.

## When to temporarily deactivate Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC)

Read and follow the introductory information and safety information first ⇒ [Introduction to the subject](#)

Please deactivate ACC under following conditions ⇒ :

- When driving around curves, turn lanes, highway ramps or construction sites, in order to prevent unwanted acceleration of the vehicle.
- When driving through tunnels.
- Under bad weather conditions or bad visibility, for example, in heavy rain, snowfall or fog.

#### WARNING

Not deactivating Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) in the situations mentioned above can cause collisions, other accidents and serious personal injury.

## Forward Collision Warning system (Front Assist)



Fig. 149 In the instrument cluster display. Advance warning: Distance to vehicle ahead becoming too small.

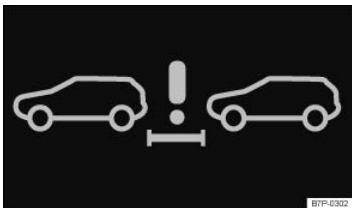


Fig. 150 In the instrument cluster display. warning: Distance to vehicle ahead is too small.

Read and follow the introductory information and safety information first ⇒ [Introduction to the subject](#)

The Forward Collision Warning system (Front Assist), when switched on, uses a radar sensor to help prevent rear-end collisions by providing a warning of a possible collision with a vehicle on the road ahead within physical and technical limits of the system.


**Front Assist is not a substitute for the driver's full concentration.**

### Distance warning

If the vehicle is traveling within a speed range of about 45–130 mph (70–210 km/h), the system warns the driver with a message in the instrument cluster display ⇒ [Fig. 150](#) if it detects that the vehicle is driving too close to the vehicle ahead ⇒ .


The warning period varies according to the traffic situation and your driving style.

## Advance warning

If the vehicle is traveling within a speed range of about 18–130 mph (30–210 km/h), the system warns the driver with a warning chime and a message in the instrument cluster display (⇒ [Fig. 149](#)) if it detects a possible collision with a vehicle ahead ⇒ .

The warning period varies according to the traffic situation and your driving style.

### Brake or take action to avoid the vehicle ahead!

However, do not rely solely on Front Assist. Under certain conditions, the reactions of Front Assist may be unexpected or delayed from the driver's viewpoint. Always pay attention and take over if necessary ⇒ .

## Immediate warning

Front Assist can initiate a short active braking maneuver, should you not react accordingly to an advance warning. In this case you will notice brief jerky braking of the vehicle, to warn you of an impending collision.

The moment of this warning can vary, depending on the traffic situation and the driving behavior.

## Automatic braking maneuver

If you should also fail to react to the immediate warning, the system can initiate an automatic braking maneuver which will slow down the vehicle with gradually increasing braking force. Shortly before a collision the system can also initiate an emergency braking in order to bring the vehicle to a full stop. The reduction in speed can help to minimize the effects of a collision.

## Braking support

Front Assist can help to minimize the effects of a collision by supporting with additional braking force in case of an emergency braking situation, should the system detect that the force applied to the brake pedal by the driver is not sufficient in order to avoid a collision. In order for Front Assist to apply this support, it must have detected an impending collision with another vehicle ahead of yours and the brake pedal has to be hit hard and suddenly. However, this support only works as long as the brake pedal is depressed.

Front Assist cannot react when approaching standing objects ahead of you, like when driving up to a line of stopped vehicles in heavy traffic.

## Operating Front Assist

Front Assist can be turned off or on in the infotainment system:

- Switch on the ignition.
- Push the infotainment button [CAR](#).
- Tap on the Assistants button in the display.
- Select Front Assist.
- Tap on the Active button in order to switch Front Assist on or off.

If the box next to the Active button is checked , then Front Assist is active and ready.

If Front Assist is switched off, then the message **Front Assist deactivated** appears in the display of the instrument cluster.

With Front Assist switched off, the advance warning and the distance warning are also deactivated.

## Switching the advance warning on and off

The advance warning can be switched on or off in the infotainment system:

- Switch on the ignition.
- Push the infotainment button [CAR](#).
- Tap on the Assistants button in the display.
- Select Front Assist.
- Tap on the Warning button in order to switch advance warning on or off.

If the box next to the Active button is checked , then advance warning is active and ready.

Volkswagen recommends to always leave the advance warning activated.

## Special driving situations

Front Assist is subject to physical and system-specified limits when driving. Under certain conditions, the reactions of the Adaptive Cruise Control may be unexpected or delayed from the driver's viewpoint ⇒ [Special driving situations](#).



The Forward Collision Warning system (Front Assist) technology cannot overcome the laws of physics and system-related limits. The driver is always

responsible for braking in time. If Front Assist issues a warning, immediately apply the brake to slow the vehicle down or avoid the obstacle, depending on the traffic situation.

- Always adjust your speed and driving style to road, traffic, weather, and visibility conditions.
- Front Assist cannot prevent accidents and serious injuries on its own.
- Front Assist can issue unnecessary warnings in certain complex driving situations, for example, at traffic islands.
- Front Assist can issue unnecessary warnings when its function is impaired, for example, if the radar sensor is dirty or if the position of the radar sensor has been changed.
- Front Assist does not react to people, animals, or vehicles crossing or approaching in the same lane.
- Always be prepared to take full control of the vehicle at all times.

#### NOTE

If you notice that the Front Assist doesn't work properly or the sensors are damaged, switch off Front Assist immediately.

- See an authorized Volkswagen dealer or Volkswagen Service Facility for assistance and have Front Assist checked.



If Front Assist initiates a braking maneuver, the hydraulic braking system is under pressure. In this case the braking pedal will feel harder and the brake pedal travel will be shorter.




Automatic braking maneuvers can be interrupted by depressing the accelerator pedal or moving the steering wheel.



Deactivate Front Assist if it does not work as described in this chapter, for example, if multiple unwanted warnings occur. Have the system checked by an authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility.

## Temporarily switch off the Forward Collision Warning system (Front Assist) in the following situations

 Read and follow the introductory information and safety information first ⇒ [▲ Introduction to the subject](#)


The Forward Collision Warning system (Front Assist) should be switched off in the following situations due to system limitations ⇒ :

- If the vehicle is being towed.
- If the vehicle is on a dynamometer test bed.
- If the vehicle is not being driven on public roads, for example, off-road or on a track.
- If the radar sensor malfunctions.
- If external force has affected the radar sensor, for example, after a rear-end collision.
- If the radar sensor is covered (even temporarily) by any accessories or other equipment, for example, auxiliary headlights.
- If the vehicle is being loaded onto a truck, ferry, or train.

#### WARNING

Failure to switch off the Forward Collision Warning system in the situations mentioned can cause accidents and serious personal injury.

## Forward Collision Warning system (Front Assist) system limits

 Read and follow the introductory information and safety information first ⇒ [▲ Introduction to the subject](#)

The Forward Collision Warning system (Front Assist) has physical and system-related limits. The driver may therefore feel that, in certain circumstances, some Forward Collision Warning system reactions are unwanted or occur with a delay. You should therefore always be prepared to take full control of the vehicle whenever necessary.

The following conditions can prevent the Forward Collision Warning system (Front Assist) from reacting, or delay its ability to react:

- When driving in tight curves.
- When the accelerator pedal is depressed.
- When the Forward Collision Warning system (Front Assist) is switched off or if there is a fault.
- When ASR is manually switched off.
- When the ESC is taking corrective action.
- When several brake lights on the vehicle or on a trailer connected to the vehicle electrical system are faulty.




- When the radar sensor is dirty or covered.
- When there are metal objects, for example, tracks or metal plates in the road.
- When the vehicle is in Reverse (**R**).
- When weather conditions are poor.
- When narrow vehicles, such as motorcycles, are moving in front of your vehicle.
- When vehicles are traveling slightly offset to the left or right in front of your vehicle.
- When vehicles are crossing in front of your vehicle.
- When there is oncoming traffic.
- When the system cannot detect the traffic situation clearly.
- When loads or attachment parts on other vehicles in front of your vehicle protrude to the side, rear, or above the normal vehicle dimensions.

## Autonomous Emergency Braking




Fig. 151 In the instrument cluster display. Warning: Distance to vehicle ahead becoming too small.

 Read and follow the introductory information and safety information first ⇒ [▲ Introduction to the subject](#)

Autonomous Emergency Braking is a function of the Forward Collision Warning system (Front Assist) and active when the Forward Collision Warning system (Front Assist) is switched on.

The Autonomous Emergency Braking function monitors the traffic situation in front of your vehicle at speeds between 3 mph (5 km/h) and about 20 mph (30 km/h).

If the Autonomous Emergency Braking function detects a critical situation which can lead to a collision, it will prepare the vehicle for a possible emergency braking maneuver ⇒ .

In case of an impending collision and the driver not reacting accordingly to the warning, the system can initiate an automatic braking maneuver in order to reduce the speed of your vehicle and help minimize the effects of a collision.

### Display

An automatic braking maneuver is indicated by a warning in the instrument cluster display ⇒ [Fig. 151](#).

The Autonomous Emergency Braking function may not work under following conditions:

- When driving in tight curves.
- When the Forward Collision Warning system (Front Assist) is switched off or not working properly.
- When ASR is switched off manually.
- When ESC is actively regulating.
- When 2 or more brake lights on your vehicle are not working.
- When the sensors are soiled or covered.
- When the brake pedal is depressed.
- When the **OFF-ROAD** mode is switched on.
- If the last braking maneuver initiated by the Autonomous Emergency Braking function is shorter than 20 seconds ago.
- When your vehicle is driving in reverse.
- When your vehicle is quickly accelerated.
- In bad weather conditions with decreased visibility, like heavy rain or snowfall.
- If the vehicles travelling ahead are too small or narrow, like motorcycles or bicycles.
- If the vehicles travelling ahead are driving offset.
- When there is strong reflected radiation of the radar signal, for example, in multilevel parking structures.
- In case of crossing traffic.
- In case of oncoming vehicles in your lane.

The Autonomous Emergency Braking function should be deactivated by switching off the Forward Collision Warning system (Front Assist) in following situations:

- When the vehicle is being towed.
- When the vehicle is on a roller test stand.
- When the vehicle is off road, like on construction sites or on race tracks.
- When one of the sensors is defective.
- When the sensors have been damaged, like after a frontal collision accident.
- After several false alarms in a row.
- If the sensors are covered by additional parts, like auxiliary headlights.
- If the vehicle is driving on steep terrain or on or across slopes.

#### ⚠ WARNING

Always remember that the Autonomous Emergency Braking function has limits – it will not release you from the responsibility to control and slow down your vehicle.

- The Autonomous Emergency Braking function alone cannot avoid accidents and fatal injuries.
- Under certain circumstances and complex traffic situations the Autonomous Emergency Braking function can perform unwanted braking maneuvers, like in construction sites.
- Soiled or misaligned radar sensors can lead to unwanted braking maneuvers
- The Autonomous Emergency Braking function does not react to people, animals, crossing traffic or vehicles that are approaching you on the same lane.
- Always adjust your speed and the distance you keep between you and the vehicles ahead of you to the road, traffic, weather, and visibility conditions.
- Never follow a vehicle so closely that you cannot stop your vehicle safely, under certain circumstances the automatic braking function cannot bring the vehicle to a stop in time.
- Never allow the closing speed between you and other vehicles to be so high that the Autonomous Emergency Braking function may not be able to slow your vehicle safely. If closing speed is too high, you must apply the brakes yourself to reduce the risk of a rear-end crash.
- Always be prepared to takeover the control of the brake and the gas pedal in every situation.

#### ⓘ NOTE

If you notice that the Autonomous Emergency Braking function doesn't work properly or the sensors are damaged, switch off the Forward Collision Warning system (Front Assist) and therefore the Autonomous Emergency Braking function immediately.

- Go see an authorized Volkswagen dealer or Volkswagen Service Facility for assistance and have the system checked.



If the Autonomous Emergency Braking function initiates a braking maneuver, the hydraulic braking system is under pressure. In this case the braking pedal will feel harder and the brake pedal travel will be shorter.



Automatic braking maneuvers can be interrupted by depressing the accelerator pedal or moving the steering wheel.



The Autonomous Emergency Braking function can slow your vehicle down to a standstill, but not hold your vehicle permanently. When necessary, apply the vehicle brakes!



Should the Autonomous Emergency Braking function not work properly as described here and initiate several false alarms unwanted braking maneuvers in a row, temporarily deactivate the Forward Collision Warning system (Front Assist) and therefore the Autonomous Emergency Braking function. Have the system checked by an authorized Volkswagen dealer or Volkswagen Service Facility.

## Special driving situations

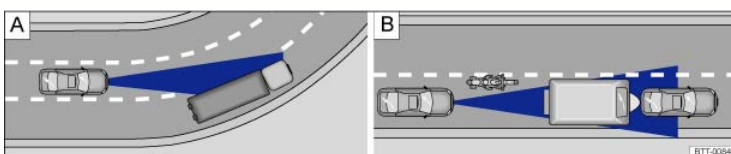


Fig. 152 Driving in a curve. Motorcycle travelling ahead outside of the sensor range.

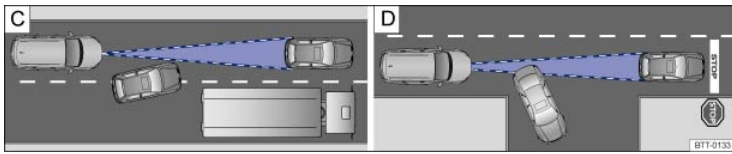


Fig. 153 Vehicle changing lanes. A turning and a stationary vehicle ahead.

Read and follow the introductory information and safety information first → *Introduction to the subject*

Adaptive Cruise Control is subject to physical and system-specified limits when driving. Under certain conditions, the reactions of the Adaptive Cruise Control may be unexpected or delayed from the driver's viewpoint. Always pay attention and take over if necessary:

#### Changing lanes and passing other vehicles

When you change lanes, for example, when passing a vehicle ahead of you, and there is no other vehicle detected on the lane that you switched to, ACC will automatically accelerate your vehicle to the previously set speed.

#### Driving around curves and roundabouts

When driving into a curve and driving out of a long curve, the radar sensor may react to a vehicle in the next lane → Fig. 152A and cause your vehicle to brake. \ stop the braking process by pressing the accelerator pedal.

When driving in curves and roundabouts it can happen that the vehicle travelling ahead of yours temporarily leaves the sensor range of your vehicle. This can lead to an unwanted acceleration of your vehicle. Switch off ACC in narrow curves and roundabouts.

#### Driving through tunnels

The function of the distance radar may be limited when driving in tunnels. Switch off ACC when driving through tunnels.

#### Vehicles offset to one side

Vehicles traveling ahead and to one side can only be detected by the radar sensor when they are within sensor range → Fig. 152B. That applies especially to narrow vehicles such as motorcycles.

#### Vehicles with oversize loads

Under certain circumstances vehicles carrying oversize loads or loads that exceed the vehicle dimensions, like flat-bed trailer trucks, can't be recognized correctly by the ACC. Switch off ACC when driving behind such vehicles.

#### Other vehicles changing lanes

Vehicles that change into your lane within a short distance can only be detected by the radar sensor once they are within sensor range → Fig. 153C. The result is a delayed reaction by the Adaptive Cruise Control.

#### Stationary vehicles

If a vehicle detected by Adaptive Cruise Control turns or changes lanes and there is a stationary vehicle in front of that vehicle, the system will not react to the stationary vehicle → Fig. 153D.

#### Narrow vehicles

Narrow vehicles, such as motorcycles traveling ahead, are often detected late or not at all under some circumstances.

#### Oncoming vehicles

ACC does not detect oncoming vehicles on your lane.

#### Metal objects on the road

Metal objects on the road, such as tracks, can cause irritations for the ACC due to falsely reflected radar signals and therefore lead to unwanted reactions of the system, such as abrupt braking maneuvers.

#### Radar sensor impaired by rain and dirt

If the radar sensor function is impaired by heavy rain, spray, snow or mud, Adaptive Cruise Control switches off temporarily. **ACC not available. No sensor view!** appears in the instrument cluster display.

When Adaptive Cruise Control is reactivated after this message is displayed, it functions like a standard cruise control system. It maintains the set speed but it does **not** regulate the distance to the vehicle ahead.

#### Overheated brakes

Adaptive Cruise Control may switch off temporarily if the brakes overheat significantly, for example from braking maneuvers or driving down steep slopes. **ACC not available** appears in the instrument cluster display. Adaptive Cruise Control cannot be activated.

Adaptive Cruise Control can be activated again once the temperature of the brakes decreases sufficiently. The message **ACC not available** in the instrument

cluster switches off.

If the message **ACC not available** does not switch off, there is a malfunction. Contact your authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility.

#### Trailer towing

When towing a trailer, ACC and the Forward Collision Warning system (Front Assist) may work only with limited functionality.

#### Text messages in the instrument cluster display

Text message	Meaning
ACC not available.	ACC and/or the Forward Collision Warning system (Front Assist) are disabled due to a system malfunction or soiled/misaligned sensors.
ACC and Front Assist are not available.	
ACC not available. No sensor view!	The sensors are soiled and the sensor view is impaired. Clean the sensors.
ACC and Front Assist are not available. No sensor view!	
ACC is currently not available. Gradient is too large.	The highest possible gradient of 19% for ACC to work properly is exceeded or the vehicle is rolling backwards. ACC is deactivated.
ACC is only available in driving level D, S or M.	Shift to selector lever position <b>D</b> , <b>S</b> or <b>M</b> (Tiptronic mode).
ACC: Release parking brake!	ACC is deactivated when the electronic parking brake is engaged.
ACC is currently not available. HDC activated.	The <i>OFF-ROAD mode</i> is switched on and the Hill Descent Control is activated. ACC is deactivated automatically. In order to enable ACC, switch off the <i>OFF-ROAD mode</i> .
ACC: Stabilization control (ESC) intervention.	The Electronic Stability Control (ESC) is currently working and ACC is temporarily deactivated.
ACC: Not available. Please manually accelerate and brake.	ACC is not available. Driver intervention is necessary.
Door open.	ACC cannot be activated. Please close all doors and engine hood.
Object ahead.	A stationary object is detected ahead when ACC is switched on and your vehicle is moving. ACC cannot be activated.
Front Assist deactivated.	Front Assist is deactivated.

#### WARNING

The *view* of the radar sensor can be impaired by rain, snow or heavy spray. Under certain circumstances, this could result in the vehicle ahead being detected inadequately or not at all. Take over yourself if necessary!

- Switch Adaptive Cruise Control off when driving through tunnels because the function of the system could be impaired.
- 
- Adaptive Cruise Control distance regulation will not work if the sensors are covered by heavy rain, spray, snow, etc. **ACC not available. No sensor view!** appears in the instrument cluster display.
- Adaptive Cruise Control switches off temporarily if the brakes overheat too much. **ACC not available** appears in the instrument cluster display.

## Lane Departure Warning (Lane Assist)

### Introduction to the subject

In this chapter you will find information on the following subjects:

⇒ *Warning and Indicator lights*

⇒ *How Lane Assist works*

⇒ *When to deactivate Lane Assist*

⇒ *Driver information*

⇒ *Settings*

Your vehicle may be equipped with the Lane Departure Warning (Lane Assist) system, which can warn you if your vehicle unintentionally leaves the current drive lane.

Any settings for Lane Assist in the infotainment system as well as the activation or deactivation of the system will be stored after the ignition is switched off and will be kept after the ignition is switched back on again.

When you change Lane Assist settings you will notice a short vibration in the steering wheel as a confirmation that the new settings are stored.

Lane Assist has been developed only for on-road driving.

#### WARNING

Always remember that Lane Assist has limits – Using Lane Assist when it is not possible to drive safely can be dangerous and can lead to an accident and serious personal injury.

- Always adjust your speed and the distance you keep between you and the vehicles ahead of you to the road, traffic, weather, and visibility conditions.
- Always keep your hands on the steering wheel and be ready react - Lane Assist will not release you from the responsibility to control your vehicle.
- Always pay attention to the messages in the instrument cluster display and act accordingly.
- Always pay close attention to what is happening around your vehicle.

#### WARNING

Under certain circumstances, the Lane Assist may not be able to recognize all lane markings. Bad or wet roads, worn out markings or objects on the road can lead to the Lane Assist not or mistakenly recognizing lane markings.

- Always switch off Lane Assist under these conditions.

#### WARNING

If the view area of the camera is covered or dirty, Lane Assist may not work properly.

- Always make sure that the camera area is free of dirt or snow and not covered.

#### NOTE

In order to help maintain the proper function of the Forward Collision Warning system (Front Assist):

- Always keep the camera area in the front windshield free of ice, dirt and snow.
- Never cover the camera area.
- Regularly check the windshield and especially the area of the camera for damages.





Lane Assist has been developed only for on-road driving.



If Lane Assist does not work properly and as described here, have the system checked by an authorized Volkswagen dealer or Volkswagen Service Facility.





## Warning and Indicator lights

 Read and follow the introductory information and safety information first ⇒  *Introduction to the subject*

lights up

Possible cause

Proper response

lights up	Possible cause	Proper response
	System or camera malfunction.	Switch the ignition off and on again. Should the warning light still light up, have the system checked by an authorized Volkswagen dealer or Volkswagen service facility.
	Camera view area is covered.	Clean the area of the camera ⇒ <a href="#">Fig. 154</a> .  ⇒ <a href="#">Exterior care and cleaning</a> .
	Lane Assist is switched on and ready.	-
	Lane Assist is switched on but not active.	System is switched on, but can't recognize any lane markings.  Minimum speed not yet reached.

When the ignition is switched on, several warning and indicator lights come on briefly for a function check. They go out after a few seconds.

### WARNING

Failure to heed warning lights and instrument cluster text messages can cause the vehicle to break down in traffic and result in a collision and serious personal injury.

- Never ignore warning lights or text WARNINGS.
- Always stop the vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so.

### NOTE

Failure to heed warning lights or text WARNINGS can result in vehicle damage.

## How Lane Assist works

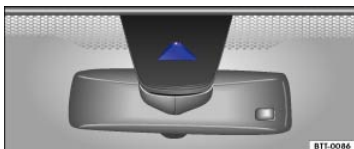



Fig. 154 In the front windshield: Area of the Lane Assist camera.

 Read and follow the introductory information and safety information first ⇒ [Introduction to the subject](#)

With the help of a camera ⇒ [Fig. 154](#), Lane Assist can recognize possible side markings of the current drive lane. Should the vehicle leave this area unintentionally, for example, when leaving the current drive lane without activating a turn signal, the system will warn you by a *vibration of the steering wheel*.

Lane Assist is ready when it recognizes at least *one* side marking.

Lane Assist will not warn you of a lane change if you activate the turn signal, since the system will assume that the lane change is happening intentionally.

### Switching Lane Assist on and off

Select **Assistants** from the main menu in the instrument cluster, then select  **Lane Assist**.

If the check box in the instrument cluster menu is activated () , Lane Assist is automatically enabled when the ignition is switched on.


The indicator light in the instrument cluster shows the status of the system.


The stored settings are recalled when the ignition is switched on.



Before starting to drive, always make sure that the area of the camera ⇒ [Fig. 154](#) is not covered.

## When to deactivate Lane Assist

 Read and follow the introductory information and safety information first ⇒ [Introduction to the subject](#)


Please deactivate Lane Assist under following conditions ⇒ :

- In complex traffic situations when it is necessary for the driver to pay special attention.
- On bad roads or on roads with no or hardly visible side markings.
- Under bad weather conditions and/or bad visibility.
- When the vehicle is off road, like on construction sites or on race tracks.
- If the camera is covered by dirt, ice or snow. In this case clean the camera area as soon as possible or deactivate the system.

#### WARNING


Not deactivating Lane Assist in the situations mentioned above can cause collisions, other accidents and serious personal injury.

## Driver information

 Read and follow the introductory information and safety information first ⇒ [Introduction to the subject](#)

### Automatic deactivation of Lane Assist

Under certain circumstances Lane Assist can be deactivated automatically:


- If the system cannot recognize side markings correctly, like in construction sites, on bad roads, when visibility is bad, or when the camera area is covered.
- If more than 2 side markings are on the lane, for example in certain construction sites or when markings have been added to the lane.
- When the speed of your vehicle is less than 40 mph (65 km/h).
- In narrow curves.
- When a turn signal or the emergency flashers are activated.
- If ESC is deactivated and the warning light  appears in the instrument cluster display ⇒ [Braking and parking](#).

An automatic deactivation of Lane Assist is indicated by a change of color from *green* to *grey* of the indicator light  in the instrument cluster display.



In order to avoid several warnings in a row, Lane Assist can warn you when leaving a lane by crossing over a side marking, but wouldn't warn a second time after crossing a second marking shortly after. This is normal and no cause for concern.



## Settings

 Read and follow the introductory information and safety information first ⇒ [Introduction to the subject](#)

### Lane Assist settings in the infotainment system

You can change some Lane Assist settings in the infotainment system

- Switch on the ignition.
- Push the infotainment button [CAR](#).
- Tap on the Assistants button in the display.
- Select Front LaneAssist.

Function key
Warning time setting: After touching the Warning time setting or  function key, you can choose between <i>early</i> , <i>medium</i> and <i>late</i> .
Steering wheel vibration: After touching the Steering wheel vibration or  function key, you can choose between <i>low</i> , <i>medium</i> and <i>strong</i> .

### Setting the warning time

Menu option	Meaning
<i>Early</i>	The system has a low tolerance level and warns you early if you come too close to a side marking.
<i>Medium</i>	Original setting.

Menu option	Meaning
<i>Late</i>	The system has a high tolerance level and warns you late if you come too close to a side marking.

The warning time setting defines the distance from your vehicle to the side markings. An early warning time means that the distance to the side markings has to be high in order for Lane Assist **not** to trigger a warning.

The time of the warning is also dependent on the approach angle to the side marking and the driving speed. If, for example, you approach a road marking at a steeper angle, the steering wheel will start vibrating at a greater distance.

#### Setting the vibration level of the steering wheel

Menu option	Meaning
<i>Low</i>	Light vibration of the steering wheel.
<i>Medium</i>	Original setting.
<i>Strong</i>	Intensive vibration of the steering wheel.



The factory settings of the warning time and the vibration level are set to *Medium*.

## Lane Change System (Side Assist)

### Introduction to the subject

In this chapter you will find information on the following subjects:

⇒ [Warning and indicator lights](#)

⇒ [How Side Assist works](#)

⇒ [Driving with Side Assist](#)

⇒ [Operating Side Assist](#)

Depending on vehicle equipment, the vehicle may be equipped with the Lane Change System (Side Assist).

The Side Assist system can help the driver watch out for traffic next to and behind the vehicle.

The Side Assist system has been developed only for on-road driving.

A Declaration of Compliance with the United States FCC and Industry Canada regulations is found on ⇒ [Declaration of Compliance, Telecommunications and Electronic Systems](#).

#### WARNING


- Side Assist technology cannot overcome the laws of physics and the limits of the system. Careless or unintentional use of Side Assist may result in accidents and severe injuries.
- Always adjust your speed and driving style to road, traffic, weather, and visibility conditions.
- Always keep your hands on the steering wheel and be prepared to steer.
- Pay attention to the indicator lights in the outside mirrors and in the display of the instrument cluster and operate accordingly.
- Always be careful and look around you. The sensors cannot always detect people, animals, objects. Watch out for small children and animals in particular.

#### NOTE




- The sensors above the rear bumper can be damaged or become misaligned in low speed impacts and parking maneuvers. Damaged or misaligned sensors cannot accurately detect or report objects that might be within range of the Side Assist system.
- When cleaning the sensors with power washers or steam cleaners, only spray the sensors directly for a very short time, and always keep the washer nozzle at least 4 inches (10 cm) from the sensors.
- To help make sure that the system works properly, always keep the sensors in the bumpers clean and free of snow and ice; do not cover the sensors with stickers or other objects.

## Warning and indicator lights





 Read and follow the introductory information and safety information first ⇒ [Introduction to the subject](#)



### Indicator light in the instrument cluster


Lights up	Possible cause	Proper response
 Side Assist system or sensor malfunction		Switch the ignition off and on again. Should the warning light still light up, have the system checked by an authorized Volkswagen dealer or Volkswagen service facility.
 Side Assist is activated.		-
 Side Assist is switched on but not active. Vehicle speed is too low.		If applicable, accelerate vehicle to at least 20 mph (30 km/h) ⇒ <a href="#">How Side Assist works</a> .

When the ignition is switched on, several warning and indicator lights come on briefly for a function check. They go out after a few seconds.

### Indicator lights in the outside mirrors

Light up	Possible cause
	Light up briefly: Side Assist is switched on and ready.
	Light up: Side Assist detected another vehicle next to or diagonally behind your vehicle.

Light up and flash	Possible cause
	The turn signal is switched on and Side Assist detected another vehicle on the corresponding side of your vehicle ⇒  .

If no other vehicle is detected by the Side Assist system in the critical area of your vehicle, the indicator lights in the outside mirrors will not light up ⇒ .

The closer the detected vehicle is to your vehicle, the more indicator lights light up in the outside mirrors. If the approaching vehicle is very close, 4 indicator lights light up.

### WARNING

Failure to heed warning lights and instrument cluster text messages can cause the vehicle to break down in traffic and result in a collision and serious personal injury.

- Never ignore warning lights or text WARNINGS.
- Always stop the vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so.

### NOTE

Failure to heed warning lights or text WARNINGS can result in vehicle damage.

### How Side Assist works

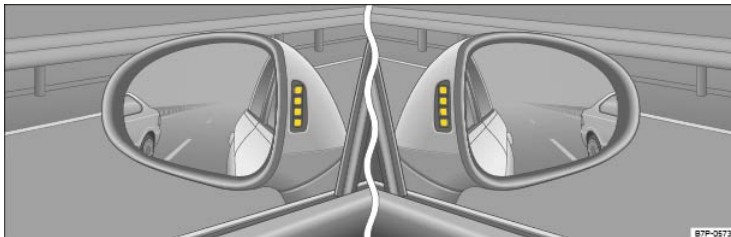


Fig. 155 In the outside mirrors: Side Assist indicator lights



Fig. 156 Rear view of the vehicle: Areas of the Side Assist radar sensors.

Read and follow the introductory information and safety information first ⇒ [Introduction to the subject](#)

Side assist monitors the area next to and behind your vehicle with the help of radar sensors. The system measures the distance and the speed difference to the other vehicles around you. Side Assist does not work below speeds of about 20 mph (30 km/h). If Side Assist detects one or more vehicles in the monitored area, indicator lights light up in the outside mirrors.

#### Indicator lights in the outside mirrors

The indicator lights ⇒ [Fig. 155](#) in the outside mirrors inform you about the traffic behind your vehicle. The indicator lights in the left outside mirror ⇒ [Fig. 155](#) inform you about traffic on the left side and the indicator lights in the right outside mirror ⇒ [Fig. 155](#) inform you about the traffic on the right side of your vehicle.

Indicator lights in the outside mirror	Possible cause
Stay off.	No other vehicle detected by Side Assist in the critical area of your vehicle.
Light up briefly once.	Side Assist is switched on and is ready.
Light up.	Side Assist detected a possible critical situation.
Repeatedly light up brightly.	The turn signal is switched on and Side Assist detected a possible critical situation on the corresponding vehicle side ⇒ .

#### Radar sensors

The Side Assist radar sensors are located on the left and right side above the rear bumper ⇒ [Fig. 156](#). They cover an area of about 160 ft (50 m) behind your vehicle as well as the blind spots on the left and right vehicle side. On the left and right side of your vehicle Side Assist covers an area of about the width of one driving lane.

However, Side Assist does not recognize the exact width of the driving lanes next to your vehicle. In some cases, such as driving in the middle of 2 lanes or with narrow lanes, this can lead to an incorrect indication. In other cases, vehicles moving on further driving lanes like the second to left lane, or even fixed objects, such as guide rails, can cause the indicator lights to light up.

#### Driving with Side Assist



Fig. 157 Driving with Side Assist: A: Moving to another lane with rear traffic. B: Side Assist indicator lights in the left outside mirror.



Fig. 158 Driving with Side Assist: A: Passing another vehicle and moving to the right lane. B: Side Assist indicator lights in the right outside mirror.

Read and follow the introductory information and safety information first ⇒ [Introduction to the subject](#)

While driving Side Assist can detect and indicate other vehicles in the outside mirrors ⇒ [Fig. 157](#) and ⇒ [Fig. 158](#) in the following situations:

- When being passed by another vehicle or moving to another lane with rear traffic approaching your vehicle ⇒ [Fig. 157](#).
- When passing another vehicle ⇒ [Fig. 158](#), with a speed difference of up to 9 mph (15 km/h). When passing another vehicle faster than 9 mph (15 km/h),

the indicator lights will not light up.


The faster another vehicle approaches, the sooner the indicator lights light up in the outside mirror, since the system also considers the speed difference of your vehicle to other vehicles. The indication of 2 vehicles in the same distance to your vehicle can occur at different times, if one of the vehicles is slower than the other

### Special considerations when using Side Assist

In certain situations Side Assist may not be able to interpret the traffic surrounding your vehicle correctly. Amongst others, these situations may occur:

- In narrow curves.
- On roads with differently sized lanes, like in construction areas on highways.
- On hill tops.
- In bad weather conditions.
- When Side Assist detects fixed objects, such as guard rails or high mounted objects on the shoulder.

## Operating Side Assist

 Read and follow the introductory information and safety information first ⇒ [Introduction to the subject](#)

### Activate and deactivate

Select **Assistants** from the main menu in the instrument cluster, then select  **Side Assist**.

If the check box in the instrument cluster menu is activated (  ), Side Assist is automatically enabled when the ignition is switched on.

As soon as Side Assist is ready, the indicator lights in the outside mirrors will light up briefly.

The indicator light in the instrument cluster shows the status of the system.

The stored settings are recalled when the ignition is switched on.


### Brightness

The brightness of the Indicator lights can be adjusted in the Volkswagen Information System ⇒ [Volkswagen Information System](#). This should be done under normal daylight conditions, since the brightness of the indicator lights adjust to the ambient brightness.

Volkswagen recommends adjusting the brightness, so that the indicator lights are clearly visible under normal daylight conditions but don't reflect in the front windshield.

While adjusting the settings, Side Assist is not active.

### Automatic deactivation of Side Assist

The Side Assist radar sensors are automatically deactivated when they are permanently covered. This can be the case if they are covered with snow or ice ⇒  . In this event, a text message will appear in the display of the instrument cluster, to inform you about the deactivation.

In case of an automatic deactivation of Side Assist, the system can only be activated by switching the ignition off and back on again.

### Trailer towing with Side Assist

Side Assist has to be deactivated manually when towing a trailer ⇒ [Trailer towing](#) !

#### NOTE

- In order for Side Assist to work correctly, the area of the radar sensors must be kept clean and clear of snow and ice.

## Rear View Camera System with dynamic orientation lines

### Introduction to the subject

In this chapter you will find information on the following subjects:

⇒ [Operation](#)

⇒ [Camera](#)

⇒ [Rear View Camera System operation](#)

⇒ [Perpendicular parking \(Mode 1\)](#)

⇒ [Parallel parking \(Mode 2\)](#)

A camera in the trunk lid ⇒ [Fig. 159](#) assists the driver while backing up or maneuvering. The camera image is shown together with orientation lines and assistance

areas projected by the system on the screen of the factory-installed radio or navigation system.

2 different orientation lines (modes) can be selected:

- **Mode 1:** Backing into a parking space at right angles to the direction of traffic, such as in a parking lot.
- **Mode 2:** Parallel parking (parking parallel to the direction of traffic).

You can select the mode by tapping the function key on the factory-installed radio or navigation system screen. Only the mode selected is displayed.

The functions and displays of the Rear View Camera System may vary on vehicles with or without Optical Parking System (OPS).

#### WARNING

Rear View Camera System is not able to give you a clear and undistorted view of all areas behind the vehicle.

- The Rear View Camera System has blind spots in which it cannot see people and objects.
- Always be careful and look around you when parking. The Rear View Camera System cannot show people, animals, and objects in certain situations. Watch out for small children and animals in particular.
- Due to the screen resolution, the camera may not pick up thin posts, chain-link fences and similar fences, and other objects, or it may show them unclear.
- The Rear View Camera System lens enlarges and distorts the field of vision and causes objects on the screen to appear altered and imprecise.
- Always keep the Rear View Camera System lens clean and free of snow and ice; do not cover the lens.

#### WARNING


Rear View Camera System technology cannot overcome the laws of physics and the limits of the system. Careless or unintentional use of Rear View Camera System may result in accidents and severe injuries.

- Always adjust your speed and driving style to road, traffic, weather, and visibility conditions.
- Always keep an eye on the parking direction and the vehicle surroundings. The front of the vehicle swings out more than the rear of the vehicle.
- Never pay so much attention to the graphics shown on the screen that you fail to notice what is going on around you.
- Always watch for people, especially small children, animals and objects, because the Rear View Camera System camera may not always be able to detect them.
- The system may not be able to clearly show everything behind the vehicle.
- Use the Rear View Camera System only when the trunk lid is completely closed.

#### NOTE

- The Rear View Camera System shows only two-dimensional images on the screen. Due to the lack of depth of field, it may be difficult or impossible to identify protruding objects or recesses in the road, for example.
- Things like thin rods, fences, posts and trees may not be detected by the Rear View Camera System camera and could damage the vehicle.

## Operation

 Read and follow the introductory information and safety information first ⇒ [▲ Introduction to the subject](#)

Conditions for parking and maneuvering with reversing camera

### Checklist

- ✓ The trunk lid must be closed.
- ✓ A reliable and clear image is displayed and the Rear View Camera System camera lens is clean. .
- ✓ The area behind the vehicle can be seen clearly and completely.
- ✓ The rear of the vehicle is not heavily loaded.
- ✓ The driver is familiar with the system.
- ✓ The position of the Rear View Camera System has not changed, such as after a rear-end collision. If the position of the camera has changed, have the system checked by an authorized Volkswagen dealer or an authorized Volkswagen Service Facility.

Volkswagen recommends practicing parking and maneuvering with Rear View Camera System in a safe place with little or no traffic or in a parking lot under good visibility and weather conditions in order to familiarize yourself with the system, the orientation lines and the way they work.


Trailer towing

The Rear View Camera System hides all orientation lines and assistance areas when the factory-installed trailer hitch has a trailer electrically connected.

Rear View Camera System camera settings

Different settings such as *Brightness*, *Contrast* and *Color* can be adjusted by tapping the function keys - or + or moving the slider.

In order to change the settings follow these instructions:

- Park the vehicle in a safe place on a firm, level surface.
- Apply the electronic parking brake to help prevent the vehicle from moving ⇒ *Braking and parking*.
- Switch the ignition on.
- Turn on the infotainment system if not already on ⇒ *Introduction to the Infotainment System*.
- Place the transmission into Reverse (R) ⇒ *Shifting*.
- Tap the function key .
- Adjust the desired settings in the menu.

## Camera

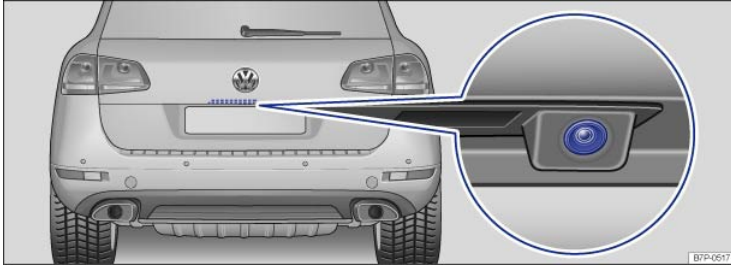



Fig. 159 In the trunk lid: Location of the Rear View camera.

 Read and follow the introductory information and safety information first ⇒  *Introduction to the subject*

The Rear View Camera System camera ⇒ *Fig. 159* (close-up) only shows two-dimensional images. Due to the lack of depth of field, it may be difficult or impossible to identify protruding objects or recesses in the road, for example.



Objects or another vehicle may seem closer or farther away on the screen than they really are:

Examples of optical distortion by the Rear View Camera System:

- When driving from a level surface onto an upward or downward slope.
- When driving up or down a slope onto a level surface.
- If the rear of the vehicle is heavily loaded.
- When approaching protruding objects. These objects can disappear from the field of view when backing up.

### Cleaning the Rear View Camera System camera

Keep camera lens ⇒ *Fig. 159* clean and free from snow and ice.

- Park the vehicle in a safe place on a firm, level surface.
- Apply the electronic parking brake to help prevent the vehicle from moving ⇒ *Braking and parking*.
- Wet the camera lens with a commercially available alcohol-based glass cleaner and clean with a dry cloth ⇒ .
- Remove snow with a brush.
- Remove ice with deicer spray ⇒ .

#### NOTE

- Never use abrasive cleaning agents to clean the camera lens.
- Never remove snow or ice on the camera lens with warm or hot water. This can damage the camera lens.



Volkswagen recommends practicing parking with Rear View Camera System in a safe place with little or no traffic or in a parking lot under good visibility and weather conditions in order to familiarize yourself with the system, the orientation lines and the way they work.



Rear View Camera System cannot be activated when the factory-installed trailer hitch is electrically connected to the trailer or the trunk lid is open.

## Rear View Camera System operation

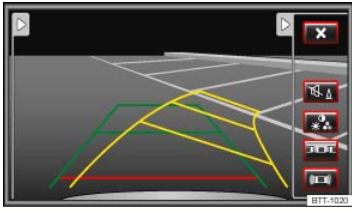


Fig. 160 In the display perpendicular parking (Mode 1).

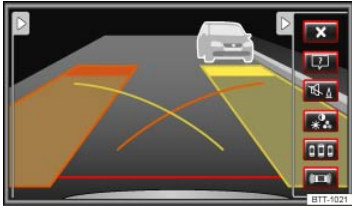


Fig. 161 In the display Parallel parking (Mode 2).

Read and follow the introductory information and safety information first ⇒ [Introduction to the subject](#)



Key to ⇒ [Fig. 160](#) and ⇒ [Fig. 161](#)

Symbol	Meaning
◀	Left edge of the picture: Hide mini-OPS.
▶	Left edge of the picture: Display mini-OPS.
◀	Right edge of the picture: Hide menu.
▶	Right edge of the picture: Display menu.
✕	Leave the current display.
	Switch the beeping signals from the Park Distance Control on or off (if equipped).
	Display settings: Brightness, Contrast, Color.
	Currently in Mode 1: Press to switch to Mode 2.
	Help menu for parking with mode 2
	Currently in Mode 2: Press to switch to Mode.
	Display the Optical Parking System (if equipped).

### Switching the Rear View Camera System camera on and off

The Rear View camera switches automatically on and off.

Function	With the ignition switched on	
	Vehicles without Park Distance Control	Vehicles with Optical Parking System
Switch on the display automatically:	Shift into Reverse (R)	
	Mode 1 is displayed in the factory-installed radio or navigation system ⇒ <a href="#">Fig. 160</a> .	
		Additionally, the mini-OPS will be displayed on the left edge of the factory-installed radio or navigation system screen.

Function	With the ignition switched on	
	Vehicles without Park Distance Control	Vehicles with Optical Parking System
Switch off the display automatically:	Turn off the ignition	
	OR: Drive forward faster than about 9 mph (15 km/h), or longer than about 10 seconds.	OR: Immediately after shifting out of Reverse (R).
	OR: about 10 seconds after shifting out of Reverse (R).	
Hide the Rear View display:	Press one of the factory-installed radio or navigation system buttons or tap the <b>X</b> function key.	
	The display will hide after about 10 seconds.	
		OR: Tap the function key  .
		The OPS will be displayed full-screen.
Show the Rear View display again:	Shift into another gear position then back into Reverse (R).	
		OR: Tap the function key  .

### Perpendicular parking (Mode 1)

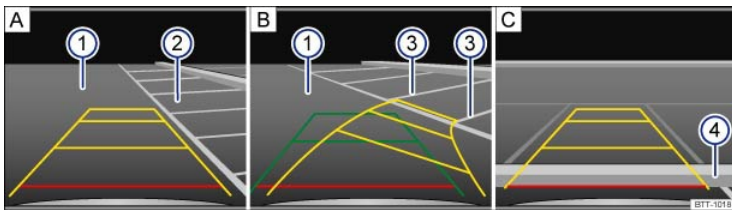


Fig. 162 Orientation lines for perpendicular parking (Mode 1).

 Read and follow the introductory information and safety information first ⇒ [Introduction to the subject](#)

Key to ⇒ Fig. 162:	
	Meaning
<b>A</b>	Searching for a parking space ⇒ Fig. 162A.
<b>B</b>	Steering towards a selected parking space ⇒ Fig. 162B.
<b>C</b>	Maneuvering ⇒ Fig. 162C.
—	<b>Green lines:</b> Vehicle extension (somewhat wider) toward the rear. The green area ends about 6 feet (2 meters) behind the vehicle on the road.  The angles of the lines do not change with the turning of the steering wheel, for orientation.
—	<b>Yellow lines:</b> The extension of the vehicle to the rear shows the vehicle path as determined by the position of the steering wheel. The yellow area ends about 10 feet (3 meters) behind the vehicle on the road.
—	<b>Horizontal red line:</b> Safety distance: Area up to about 16 inches (40 cm) behind the vehicle on the road.  These lines do not change the orientation of the steering angle.

Key to ⇒ Fig. 162:	
Meaning	
①	Road.
②	Selected parking space.
③	Orientation lines for the selected parking space.
④	Rear boundary of the parking space, such as a curb.

All lengths of the lines for orientation refer to a vehicle that is on a horizontal surface.

### Parking with the Rear View camera, perpendicular parking Mode 1

The conditions for parking and maneuvering with Rear View camera must be met ⇒ [Conditions for parking and maneuvering with reversing camera](#) .

Step	Perform the following actions:
1.	Position the vehicle in front of a parking space ⇒ Fig. 162②A.
2.	Shift into Reverse (R).
3.	Slowly back up and steer so that the yellow orientation lines ⇒ Fig. 162③ lead into the selected parking space B. Observe the following message: Look! Safe to move? ⇒ ▲ !
4.	Align the vehicle in the parking space so that the green and yellow orientation lines ⇒ Fig. 162③ are parallel to the selected parking space B.
5.	At the latest when the rear boundary of the parking space, such as a curb ⇒ Fig. 162④ is reached, stop the vehicle C.

### Parallel parking (Mode 2)

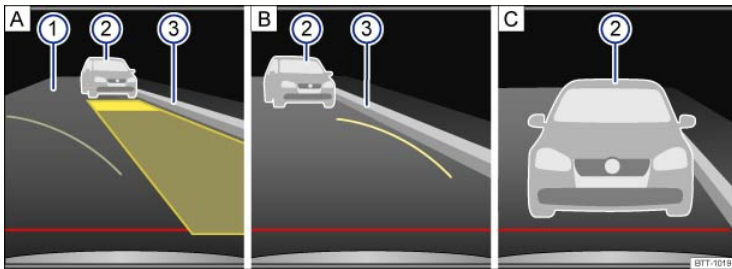


Fig. 163 On the screen: Orientation guides and surfaces of the parking area behind the vehicle.

📖 Read and follow the introductory information and safety information first ⇒ ▲ [Introduction to the subject](#)

Key to ⇒ Fig. 163:	
Meaning	
A	Measuring parking space ⇒ Fig. 163A.
B	Steering towards a selected parking space ⇒ Fig. 163B.
C	Maneuvering ⇒ Fig. 163C.
■	<b>Yellow assistance areas:</b> The shape indicates the required parking area which is needed to park. The area shown must fit completely into the parking space.




Key to ⇒ Fig. 163:	
Meaning	
—	<b>Curved yellow line:</b> When the yellow line touches the curb or any other parking space boundary, the steering wheel must be turned in the opposite direction
—	<b>Horizontal red line:</b> Safety distance: Area up to about 16 inches (40 cm) behind the vehicle on the road.
①	Road.
②	Parked vehicle.
③	Rear boundary of the parking space, such as a curb.

All lengths of the lines for orientation refer to a vehicle that is on a horizontal surface.



The angles of the lines do not change with the turning of the steering wheel, for orientation.

When changing to parallel parking Mode 2, the lines and zones for both sides appear when Mode 2 is selected, and when the turning signal is used, the graphics for the side you are not parking on disappear.

The Rear View camera help menu can be accessed by tapping the  function key.

#### Parking with the Rear View camera, parallel parking Mode 2

The conditions for parking and maneuvering with Rear View camera must be met ⇒ [Conditions for parking and maneuvering with reversing camera](#) .

Step	Perform the following actions:
1.	Position the vehicle about 3 feet (1 meter) away from and parallel to the parking space.
2.	Shift into Reverse (R).
3.	Tap the function key  on the factory-installed radio or navigation system display for Mode 2.
4.	Back up slowly and steer the vehicle so that the yellow surface on the screen is flush with the side boundary ⇒ <a href="#">Fig. 163③</a> of the selected parking space (such as the curb) ⇒ <a href="#">Fig. 163②</a> and stops short of any obstacle such as another vehicle ⇒ <a href="#">Fig. 163A</a> .
5.	Turn the steering wheel as far as it will go in the direction of the parking space and slowly back up.
6.	Observe the following message: Look! Safe to move? ⇒  !
7.	Once the yellow line touches the side boundary ⇒ <a href="#">Fig. 163③</a> of the selected parking space ⇒ <a href="#">Fig. 163B</a> , such as a painted line or a curb stop the vehicle and turn the steering wheel as far as it will go in the opposite direction.
8.	Continue backing up until the vehicle is positioned in the parking space parallel to the roadway ⇒ <a href="#">Fig. 163①</a> .
9.	Stop the vehicle by at least by the time the perpendicular red line touches the rear boundary ⇒ <a href="#">Fig. 162④</a> of the parking space, such as the car parked behind you ⇒ <a href="#">Fig. 163C</a> .
10.	If necessary, correct the parking position.



It may take up to 5 seconds for the area detected by the sensors to be displayed on the factory-installed radio or navigation screen.

## Introduction to the subject

In this chapter you will find information on the following subjects:

⇒ *Area View*

⇒ *Operation instructions*

⇒ *Area View menus (modes)*

There are 4 cameras in the radiator grille, the outside mirrors, and the trunk lid to assist the driver while parking, maneuvering, or driving off-road. The camera image is displayed on the system on the Infotainment System screen.

### WARNING

Using the cameras to estimate the distance to people and things around the vehicle can result in collisions and severe personal injury.

- The camera lenses enlarge and distort the field of vision and cause objects on the screen to appear altered and imprecise.
- Due to the screen resolution or in low-light conditions, the cameras may not pick up thin posts, chain-link fences and similar fences, and other objects, or it may not show them clearly.
- The cameras have blind spots in which they cannot detect people and objects.
- Always keep the camera lenses clean and free of snow and ice; do not cover the lenses.

### WARNING

Area View technology cannot overcome the laws of physics and the limits of the system. Careless or unintentional use of Area View may result in accidents and severe injuries.

- Always adjust your speed and driving style to road, traffic, weather, and visibility conditions.
- Never pay so much attention to the graphics shown on the screen that you fail to notice what is going on around you.
- Always watch for people, especially small children, animals, and objects, because the cameras may not always be able to detect them.
- The system may not be able to clearly show everything behind the vehicle.

### NOTE

- The camera shows only two-dimensional images on the screen. Due to the lack of depth of field, it may be difficult or impossible to identify protruding objects or recesses in the road, for example.
- Things like thin rods, fences, posts, and trees may not be detected by the camera and could damage the vehicle.

## Area View

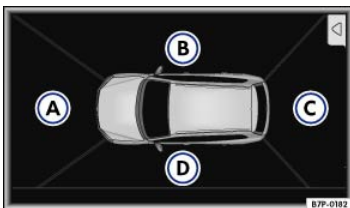





Fig. 164 Display of the Area View: Bird's eye view.

 Read and follow the introductory information and safety information first ⇒  *Introduction to the subject*






There are 4 different camera views ⇒ *Fig. 164* :

- A** Front camera area.
- B** Right camera area.
- C** Rear camera area.
- D** Left camera area.

A bird's eye view  is created by showing all camera views. The bird's eye view can be selected by tapping the *vehicle* within the area ⇒ *Fig. 165A*.

Select the different camera views by tapping the individual areas in the bird's eye view ⇒ *Fig. 164* **A** to **D** or mini bird's eye view ⇒ *Fig. 165A*.

### Camera views

- **Bird's eye view**: For an all-round view of the vehicle , also for off-road driving . The bird's eye view is shown on the full screen ⇒ *Fig. 164*.
- **Front View**: To see cross-traffic in front of the vehicle , for forward perpendicular parking , when approaching an obstacle, and for off-road driving .

- **Side View:** To see the area to the immediate left or right of the vehicle, for parking, or for off-road driving.
- **Rear View:** To see cross-traffic behind the vehicle, for reverse perpendicular parking and when hitching up a trailer to the vehicle.

The selected individual camera view is displayed on the right-hand side of the screen. It is marked by a colored frame in the mini bird's eye view shown on the left. In addition, the available menu options and possible camera views (referred to as modes) for the corresponding camera are shown on the right-hand side of the screen. The view (mode) that is currently active is marked.

## Operation instructions

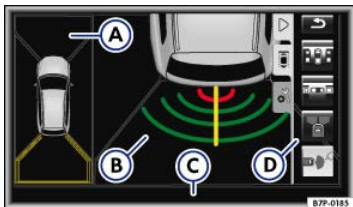


Fig. 165 Display of the Area View: Trailer hitch activated.



Fig. 166 In the upper center console: Button to activate Area View manually.

Read and follow the introductory information and safety information first → [Introduction to the subject](#)

### Function areas on the screen → Fig. 165 :

- Ⓐ Mini bird's eye view. The selected camera is marked by a colored frame.
- Ⓑ Display of selected camera's view.
- Ⓒ Text messages.
- Ⓓ Menu options: ▶ Hide the menu, ◀ Display the menu, ↺ Leave the current display. Function keys to select the current view. Function key for settings on the Infotainment System screen.

#### Activating and deactivating Area View

Manually activate display:	Press button → Fig. 166. The bird's eye view is activated on the Infotainment System screen → Fig. 164. The display will not switch on at speeds above about 9 mph (15 km/h).
Automatically activate display:	Shift into Reverse (R). The camera view behind the vehicle is displayed in perpendicular parking mode with the mini bird's eye view → Fig. 165A.
Manually deactivate display:	Press button → Fig. 166 again.
Automatically deactivate display:	Drive forward faster than about 9 mph (15 km/h). <b>OR:</b> Switch off the ignition. The Area View display screen turns off after a few seconds.

### Special considerations

#### 1) Do not use Area View in the following situations:

- When an incorrect or unclear image is displayed, such as when there is poor visibility or the lens is dirty.
- If the area behind the vehicle cannot be seen clearly or completely.
- If the rear of the vehicle is heavily loaded.

### 1) Do not use Area View in the following situations:

- If the driver is not familiar with the system.
- If the position or angle of the cameras has changed, such as after an accident. Have the system checked by an authorized Volkswagen dealer or an authorized Volkswagen Service Facility.

### 2) Examples of optical distortion by the camera:

The Area View cameras display only two-dimensional images. Recesses and protruding objects on the ground or protruding parts on other vehicles are difficult or impossible to identify due to the lack of depth of field.

Objects or another vehicle may seem closer or farther away on the screen than they really are:

- When driving from a level surface onto an upward or downward slope.
- When driving up or down a slope onto a level surface.
- If the rear of the vehicle is heavily loaded.
- When approaching protruding objects. These objects can disappear from the field of view when approaching them.

#### NOTE

- Never use abrasive cleaning agents to clean the camera lenses.
- Never remove snow or ice on the camera lenses with warm or hot water. This can damage the camera lenses.



Volkswagen recommends practicing using the Area View system in a safe place with little or no traffic or in a parking lot in order to familiarize yourself with the system and the way it works.

### Area View menus (modes)

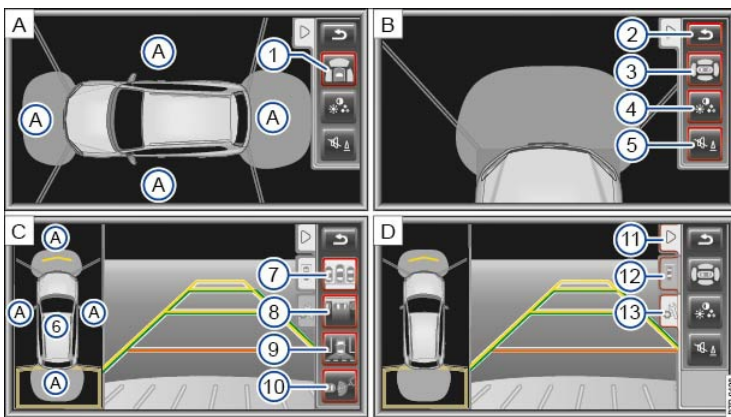


Fig. 167 Display of the Area View: Full-screen bird's eye view (option A), enlarged off-road view (option B), partial view of perpendicular parking with modes menu (option C) and partial view of perpendicular parking with settings menu (option D).



Read and follow the introductory information and safety information first ⇒ [Introduction to the subject](#)

**Function areas on the screen ⇒ Fig. 167 :**




- Ⓐ Activate front, side or rear camera view.
- ① Activate enlarged off-road view.
- ② Leave the current display.
- ③ Activate bird's eye view.
- ④ Adjust display: brightness, contrast, color.
- ⑤ Turn off sound for Park Distance Control.

- 6 Activate full-screen bird's eye view.
- 7 Activate rear perpendicular parking view.
- 8 Activate rear parallel parking view.
- 9 Activate rear cross-traffic view.
- 10 Activate trailer support view.
- 11 Hide menu.
- 12 Activate mode menu.
- 13 Activate settings menu.




#### Bird's eye views

View	Screen display of all cameras
Main mode 	The vehicle and its immediate surroundings are shown in the bird's eye view ⇒ <a href="#">Fig. 167A</a> .
Off-road 	The areas directly in front of the vehicle and partly to the side of the vehicle are displayed as a bird's eye view. This can be used, for example, when driving across a slope so that the area around the vehicle can be seen ⇒ <a href="#">Fig. 167B</a> .



#### Front camera views



View	Screen display of front camera
Front cross-traffic 	Area on left of screen: Left-hand side of intersection.
	Area in center of screen: Area directly in front of vehicle.
	Area on right of screen: Right-hand side of intersection.
Perpendicular parking 	The area in front of the vehicle is displayed. Orientation lines are displayed for assistance. See Rear View Camera System Mode 1 ⇒ <a href="#">Perpendicular parking (Mode 1)</a> .
Off-road 	The area directly in front of the vehicle is shown in a bird's eye view. This can be used, for example, when driving across a slope so that the area directly in front of the vehicle can be seen more easily.

#### Side camera views

View	Screen display of side cameras
Off-road, left and right side 	Areas directly next to the vehicle are displayed in a bird's eye view so you can steer the vehicle accurately around obstacles. The red lines are displayed when an obstacle is about 16 inches (40 cm) from the vehicle.
Left side 	Shows the driver or front passenger side ⇒ <a href="#">Fig. 167D</a> next to the vehicle separately as a bird's eye view. This helps you to see the blind spot along the side of the vehicle.
Right side 	

#### Rear camera views

View	Screen display of rear camera
Perpendicular parking 	The area behind the vehicle is displayed. Orientation lines are displayed for assistance. See Rear View Camera System Mode 1 ⇒ <a href="#">Perpendicular parking (Mode 1)</a> .
Parallel parking 	The area directly behind the vehicle is displayed. The colored areas and lines are provided for orientation. See Rear View Camera System Mode 2 ⇒ <a href="#">Parallel parking (Mode 2)</a> .

View	Screen display of rear camera
Trailer hitch 	The rear of the vehicle is displayed. The red line and the green lines are used to indicate the distance. The distance between the green lines and the red line is about 12 inches (30 cm) each. The distance between the red line and the vehicle is also about 12 inches (30 cm). The yellow line indicates the extension of the trailer hitch towards the rear and shows the direction to the trailer hitch depending on the position of the steering wheel.
Rear cross-traffic 	Area on left of screen: Left-hand side of intersection.
	Area in center of screen: Area directly behind the vehicle.
	Area on right of screen: Right-hand side of intersection.

### Settings on the Infotainment System screen

Tap the function key  $\Rightarrow$  [Fig. 167](#) , to adjust the following settings:

Function key	Action
Brightness	Tap the function key - or +.
	<b>OR:</b> Move the slider to set different brightness levels.
Contrast	Tap the function key - or +.
	<b>OR:</b> Move the slider to set different contrast levels.
Color	Tap the function key - or +.
	<b>OR:</b> Move the slider to set different color levels.

## Park Distance Control (PDC)

### Introduction to the subject

In this chapter you will find information on the following subjects:

$\Rightarrow$  [Park Distance Control](#)

$\Rightarrow$  [Optical Parking System \(OPS\)](#)

Depending on vehicle equipment, the vehicle may be equipped with Park Distance Control (PDC).

The Park Distance Control system (PDC) and the Optical Parking System (OPS) can help the driver when backing up and parking. PDC uses ultrasonic sensors in the bumpers to measure the distance between the vehicle and objects in front and in back of the vehicle. The system uses the time it takes for the ultrasonic waves to bounce back from the object to calculate the distance between the vehicle and an object. Park Distance Control works only at speeds up to about 6-9 mph (10-15 km/h).

If the vehicle gets too close to an obstacle in front or behind it, a beeping signal sounds. The closer the vehicle gets to the obstacle, the faster the beep. When the obstacle is very close, the sound is continuous.

If you move even closer to the obstacle despite the continuous warning sound, the system cannot measure the distance remaining until collision.

A Declaration of Compliance with the United States FCC and Industry Canada regulations is found on  $\Rightarrow$  [Declaration of Compliance, Telecommunications and Electronic Systems](#).

### WARNING

Park Distance Control and the Optical Parking System are not substitutes for careful and attentive driving. Never rely completely on these systems for information about people and objects that might be in the way of the vehicle and could be struck resulting in serious personal injuries.

- The sensors have blind spots in which they cannot detect people, animals, and objects.
- Always be careful and look around you when parking. The sensors cannot always detect people, animals, and objects. Watch out for small children and

animals in particular.

- Certain types of clothing and the surfaces of certain objects do not reflect the ultrasonic waves that the sensors send and receive. Such objects and persons wearing such clothing will not be detected by PDC or will not be detected accurately.
- Noise in the area can interfere with the signals of the Park Distance Control sensors. Under certain circumstances, the system will not detect people and objects for this reason.

**NOTE**

- Things like trailer draw bars, thin rods, fences, trees, and narrow painted vertical poles or posts may not be detected by the Park Distance Control and Optical Parking System sensors and could damage the vehicle.
- If you continue driving closer to an object that the Park Distance Control and Optical Parking Systems have already detected and reported, the object may disappear from the sensor range and may no longer be detected. This is especially true for low or high objects. The system will no longer sound warnings about these objects. Ignoring signals from the Park Distance Control system could result in serious damage to the vehicle.
- The sensors in the bumper can be damaged or become misaligned in low speed impacts and parking maneuvers. Damaged or misaligned sensors cannot accurately detect or report objects that might be within range of the PDC system
- To help make sure that the system works properly, always keep the sensors in the bumpers clean, free of snow and ice; do not cover the sensors with stickers or other objects.
- When cleaning the sensors with power washers or steam cleaners, only spray the sensors directly for a very short time, and always keep the washer nozzle at least 4 inches (10 cm) from the sensors.
- Noise from rough roads, cobblestones, other vehicles and the surrounding area, for example, can prevent the Park Distance Control system from accurately detecting and reporting people and objects that may be within range of the system sensors.
- Aftermarket components such as bicycle racks can impair the function of the Park Distance Control system.



Volkswagen recommends practicing with the Park Distance Control and the Optical Parking System in a location or parking space with no traffic in order to become familiar with the system and how it works.

**Park Distance Control**

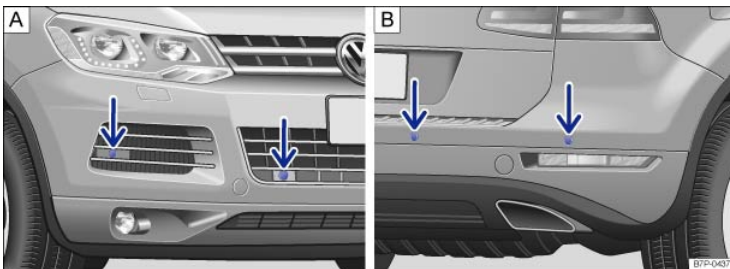


Fig. 168 On the front and rear bumper: Park Distance Control system sensors.

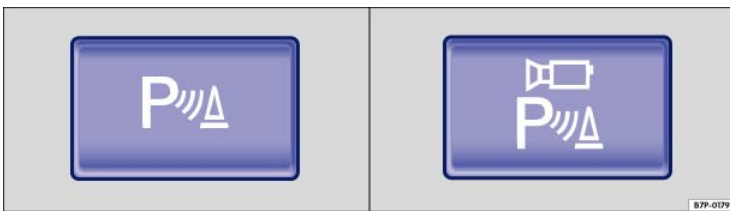







Fig. 169 In the upper front center console: Different versions of the button for switching Park Distance Control on and off.

Read and follow the introductory information and safety information first ⇒ [Introduction to the subject](#)

There are 4 sensors in each bumper ⇒ [Fig. 168](#) (arrows).

In order to	Operation
Manually activate the PDC:	Press the  or  button <i>once</i> when the ignition is switched on.
Manually deactivate the PDC:	Push the  or  button <i>again</i> when the ignition is switched on.
	Press a function selection button on the Infotainment System ⇒ <a href="#">Introduction to the Infotainment System</a> or SETUP.

In order to	Operation
Manually deactivate the OPS small-screen display:	<b>OR:</b> Tap the function key  or Return.
	<b>OR:</b> Tap the <b>X</b> function key $\Rightarrow$ Fig. 170.
	<b>OR:</b> Tap the function key  or Options to switch to the rear view camera display.
Automatically activate the PDC:	Shift into Reverse ( <b>R</b> ) when the ignition is on or the engine is running.
	<b>OR:</b> Drive forward slowly (less than about 5 – 10 mph /10 – 15 km/h) and approach to within about 38 inches (95 cm) of an obstacle.
	<b>OR:</b> If the vehicle rolls backwards.
Automatically deactivate the PDC:	Drive forward faster than about 5 – 10 mph (10 – 15 km/h).
	<b>OR:</b> Shift into Reverse ( <b>R</b> ).
Switch to full-screen view:	Vehicle rolls backwards slowly.
	<b>OR:</b> Press the lit-up button  or  .
	<b>OR:</b> Tap the <b>OPS</b> function key $\Rightarrow$ Fig. 170.

The indicator light in the button   $\Rightarrow$  Fig. 169 comes on and stays on as long as the feature is active.

A chime sounds to tell you that the system is on. If the chime does **not** sound, PDC is not working. Have the system inspected by an authorized Volkswagen dealer or an authorized Volkswagen Service Facility.

#### Special considerations when using Park Distance Control

- In some cases, the Park Distance Control system interprets water and ice on the sensors as an obstacle. To prevent automatic PDC activation in these cases, you can turn Park Distance Control off permanently in the Infotainment System  $\Rightarrow$  *Automatic activation in the Infotainment System*.
- If the distance remains the same, the warning chime volume decreases after a few seconds. If a continuous tone sounds, its volume remains the same.
- If the vehicle moves away from the obstacle, the beeping sound stops automatically. The beep turns on once more automatically if the vehicle approaches the obstacle again.
- There is no beeping when the transmission is in Park (**P**) or the electronic parking brake is engaged.
- The volume of the audible signals can be adjusted by an authorized Volkswagen dealership or an authorized Volkswagen Service Facility.

#### WARNING

Never rely completely on the PDC for information about people and objects that might be in the way of the vehicle and could be struck by the vehicle causing serious personal injury.

- The PDC sensors have blind spots where they cannot detect people or objects.
- Always watch for people, especially small children and animals, because the sensors may not always be able to detect them.



If you hear a long beep lasting about 3 seconds when you first turn PDC on or the indicator light in the button starts blinking, this means there is a malfunction in the Park Distance Control system. Switch off the Park Distance Control system with the button and have it immediately checked by an authorized Volkswagen dealer or an authorized Volkswagen Service Facility.

## Optical Parking System (OPS)



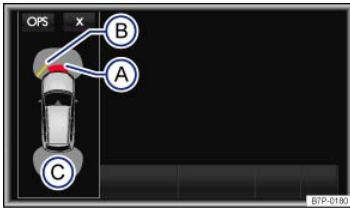


Fig. 170 OPS screen display: Small-screen display.

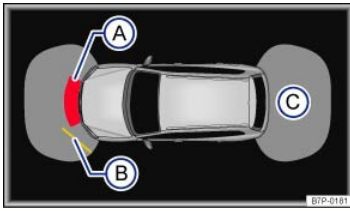


Fig. 171 OPS screen display: Full-screen display.

Read and follow the introductory information and safety information first ⇒ [Introduction to the subject](#)

**Key to ⇒ Fig. 170 and ⇒ Fig. 171 :**

- A** Obstacle detected in collision zone.
- B** Obstacle detected in scanned area.
- C** Scanned area behind the vehicle.

The Optical Parking System is an enhancement of the Park Distance Control system ⇒ [Park Distance Control](#).

The areas scanned by the sensors *in front of* and *behind* the vehicle are displayed on the screen of the factory-installed Infotainment System. Potential obstacles are shown relative to the vehicle ⇒ .

If you approach to within about 38 inches (95 cm) of an obstacle at a speed of less than about 5 - 10 mph /10 - 15 km/h), the small-screen OPS view is displayed. An indicator light comes on ( or ).

#### Automatic activation in the Infotainment System

Automatic activation of the small-screen OPS display can be switched on and off in the Infotainment System.

- Switch on the ignition.
- Press the [CAR](#) Infotainment button.
- Tap the Assist systems function key on the screen.
- Select Parking Distance Warning System from the list.

If the OPS small-screen display has been disabled, Park Distance Control can only be switched on by pressing the button or or by putting the vehicle in Reverse (**R**).

Function	Proper response
Automatically activate the OPS small-screen display:	By approaching to within about 38 inches (95 cm) of an obstacle at a speed of less than about 5 - 10 mph (10 - 15 km/h).
Manually deactivate the OPS small-screen display:	Tap the <b>X</b> function key ⇒ <a href="#">Fig. 170</a> .
Switch to full-screen view:	Vehicle rolls backwards slowly.
	<b>OR:</b> Press the lit-up button  or .
Automatically switch on the display:	<b>OR:</b> Tap the OPS function key ⇒ <a href="#">Fig. 170</a> .
	Shift into Reverse ( <b>R</b> ).
Manually switch on the display:	<b>OR:</b> Vehicle rolls backwards.
	Press the  or  button.

Function	Proper response
Manually deactivate the display:	Press the <b>P</b> or <b>F</b> button <i>again</i> .
Automatically deactivate the display:	Drive forward faster than about 5 - 10 mph (10 - 15 km/h).

#### Scanned areas

In front of the vehicle, the area in which obstacles are detected extends about 48 inches (120 cm) straight ahead and up to 24 inches (60 cm) to either side. Behind the vehicle, the scanned area extends about 5 ft. 4 inches (160 cm) to the rear and about 2 ft. (60 cm) to either side ⇒ Fig. 170© and ⇒ Fig. 171©.

When the system is activated automatically, the acoustic signal sounds only if an object is detected in the area about 20 inches (50 cm) to the front or rear of the vehicle.

#### Screen display

The display shows the scanned area in several segments. The closer the vehicle gets to the obstacle, the closer the segment advances to the displayed vehicle ⇒ Fig. 170© and ⇒ Fig. 171©.

When the next-to-last segment is displayed, you have reached the collision zone. **Stop the vehicle!**

Distance between vehicle and obstacle	Audible signal	Screen: Segment color if obstacle detected
Front: about <b>12 – 48 inches (31 – 120 cm)</b>	Beep tone if manually activated.	Yellow
Rear: about <b>12 – 64 inches (31 – 160 cm)</b>		
Front: about <b>12 – 20 inches (31 – 50 cm)</b>	Beep tone if automatically activated.	Yellow
Rear: about <b>12 – 20 inches (31 – 50 cm)</b>		
About <b>0 – 12 inches (0 – 30 cm)</b> front or rear	Continuous tone.	Red

The distance at which the continuous tone sounds is somewhat greater for vehicles with a factory-installed trailer hitch.

#### Infotainment System settings for OPS

A number of settings can be selected in the Infotainment System.

- Switch on the ignition.
- Press the **CAR** Infotainment button.
- Tap the Assist systems function key on the screen.
- Select Parking Distance Warning System from the list.

#### Function key: Actions

Front volume/tone level: Set different volumes and pitches for the front signal chimes by tapping the - or + function keys or by moving the slider.

Rear volume/tone level: Set different volumes and pitches for the rear signal chimes by tapping the - or + function keys or by moving the slider.

Reduced audio volume: Set different volumes and pitches for the front and rear by tapping the - or + function keys or by moving the slider.


Automatic activation of mini-OPS: If the check box in the function key is checked , the small screen OPS display is automatically switched on when you slowly approach an obstacle. To switch off this feature, tap Automatic activation of mini-OPS. After deactivation, there will not be any warning when you approach an obstacle.

Reset settings: Resets all settings to the factory settings.

#### When towing a trailer

On vehicles with a factory-installed trailer hitch and an electrically connected trailer, a corresponding graphic is displayed on the screen. Distance values behind the vehicles will not be displayed.

## Muting the Park Distance Control volume

You can mute the PDC beeping signals by tapping the  function key on the Radio or Navigation system screen. Tap the function key again to reactivate the acoustic signals.

Muting is cancelled by switching Park Distance Control back on after it was switched off. The warning messages cannot be switched off.

If the display has been switched off manually and PDC remains active, the mute setting is also cancelled.

Switching Park Distance Control back on after it was switched off reactivates the volume. System malfunction warning signals cannot be switched off.

### WARNING

Never rely completely on the OPS for information about people and objects that might be in the way of the vehicle and could be struck by the vehicle causing serious personal injury.

- The OPS sensors have blind spots where they cannot detect persons or objects.
- Never pay so much attention to the OPS and the graphics shown on the screen that you fail to notice what is going on around you.
- Always watch for people, especially small children and animals, because the sensors may not always be able to detect them.

### NOTE

Automatic activation of OPS when approaching an obstacle works only when your speed falls below a threshold of about 5 - 10 mph (10 - 15 km/h). If you then close the display, you must either switch the ignition off and back on or exceed the speed threshold and then reduce speed to under the threshold a second time in order for it to activate automatically again.



Volkswagen recommends practice parking with Park Distance Control and the Optical Parking System on a parking lot or other place where there is little traffic to get used to how the system works.

## Climate control

### Heating and air conditioning

#### Introduction to the subject

In this chapter you will find information on the following subjects:

⇒ *Climatronic controls*

⇒ *Operation via the Infotainment System*

⇒ *Operation*

⇒ *Air vents*

⇒ *Air recirculation*

⇒ *Heated steering wheel*

### Climatronic climate control system

**Your vehicle is equipped with a Climatronic climate control system.** On vehicles with Climatronic climate control, system status messages will appear briefly in the Climatronic display and/or on the factory-installed Radio system or Radio & Navigation system.

You can use the Infotainment System to change the units in which temperatures are displayed.

The temperature units (Fahrenheit or Celsius) in the factory installed radio or navigation system screen can be changed in the **Settings** menu in the Premium instrument cluster display in appropriately equipped vehicles.

### The dust and pollen filter

The dust and pollen filter with an activated carbon insert reduces the entry of pollutants into the passenger compartment.

The dust and pollen filter must be replaced at the intervals recommended in ⇒Booklet *Warranty and Maintenance*, so that the air conditioner can work properly.

If the effectiveness of the filter decreases prematurely due to operating the vehicle where the outside air is heavily polluted, the dust and pollen filter should be replaced more frequently than indicated.

### WARNING

Poor visibility increases the risk of collisions and other accidents that cause serious personal injuries.

- Always make sure all windows are clear of ice, snow and condensation for good visibility to the front, sides, and rear.
- Maximum heating output and fast defrosting will only be possible after the engine has reached operating temperature. Wait until you have good visibility before driving off.
- Always make sure you know how to properly use the heating and ventilation systems as well as the rear window defroster that you will need for good visibility.
- Never use air recirculation for long periods of time. When the air conditioner is off and recirculation mode is on, condensation can quickly form on the windows and greatly reduce visibility.
- Always switch off recirculation mode when it is not needed.

### ⚠ WARNING

Stale air causes driver fatigue and reduces driver alertness, which can cause accidents, collisions and serious personal injury.

- Never switch off the fan for a long period of time and never use air recirculation a long period of time because no fresh air will come into the passenger compartment.

### ! NOTE

- If you think the air conditioner is not working properly or may be damaged, switch it off to help prevent more damage. Have the air conditioner checked by an authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility.
- Air conditioner repair requires specialized knowledge and special tools. Volkswagen recommends that you see an authorized Volkswagen dealer or an authorized Volkswagen Service Facility.
- Do not smoke when air recirculation is switched on. Smoke drawn into the ventilation system can leave residue on the evaporator and on the dust and pollen active carbon filter, resulting in permanent odors whenever the air conditioner is switched on.



When it is very hot and humid outside, **water condensation** can drip from the air conditioner evaporator and form a puddle under the vehicle. This is normal and does not indicate a leak.



Keep the air intake slots in front of the windshield free of ice, snow and leaves in order to maintain proper functioning of the heating and ventilation systems.



Maximum heating output and defrosting performance are not possible until the engine has reached operating temperature.



Emergency starting and starting the engine with a very weak vehicle battery or after the vehicle battery has been replaced may change or delete system settings (including time, date, personal convenience settings and programming). Check the settings and correct as necessary once the vehicle battery has built up a sufficient charge.



If the air conditioner is switched off, the fresh outside air will not be dehumidified. To help keep the windows from fogging over, Volkswagen recommends leaving the air conditioner (compressor) switched on. Press the **A/C** button. The indicator light in the button must come on.

## Climatronic controls

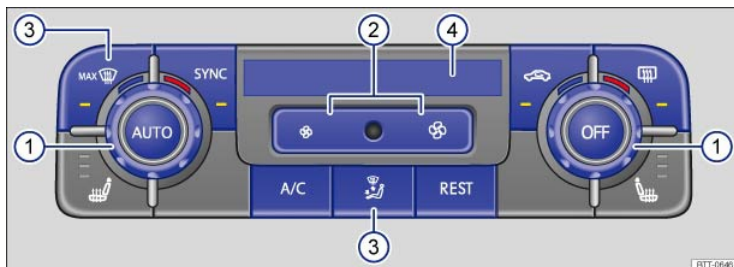








Fig. 172 In the front center console: Climatronic controls.

📖 Read and follow the introductory information and safety information first ⇒ ⚠ *Introduction to the subject*

Press the corresponding button to switch a feature on or off. The respective button needs to be pushed several times for adjustable functions. The indicator lights in the buttons and the information shown in the Climatronic control display ⇒ Fig. 172④ and on the Infotainment System screen provide feedback on the activation of the selected functions.

The LEDs in a particular button lights up to show that the feature is activated.

Button/Knob	More information. Front Climatronic controls ⇒ Fig. 172.

Button/Knob	More information. Front Climatronic controls ⇒ Fig. 172.
① 	Temperature: Left and right sides separately and continuously adjustable. Turn the knob to set the temperature. Temperature is shown in the Climatronic display.
② 	Fan: Manual fan speed adjustment. Setting 0: fan and Climatronic switched off.
	Defog / defrost button: The incoming outside air is directed to the windshield, and air recirculation is automatically disabled. At temperatures above +38 °F (+3 °C), the air is dehumidified and the fan is set a to high speed so as to defog/defrost the windshield as quickly as possible.
<b>SYNC</b>	Apply the driver settings to all climate zones ⇒ <i>Applying driver settings to all climate zones</i> .
	Air recirculation ⇒ <i>Air recirculation</i> .
	Rear window defroster: works only when the engine is running; switches itself off after 10 minutes at the latest.
<b>A/C</b>	Switch cooling system on and off.
	Air distribution to the windshield, the upper body, and the footwells. Push the button repeatedly until you get the setting you want; the selected setting is shown in the front Climatronic display.
<b>REST</b>	Residual heat mode ⇒ <i>Residual heat mode</i> .
<b>AUTO</b>	Automatic temperature, fan, and air distribution control.
<b>OFF</b>	Switch off: Press <b>OFF</b> button or adjust manually to 0. This switches Climatronic off entirely. <b>OFF</b> lights up in the front Climatronic display.

### ⚠ WARNING

Stale air causes driver fatigue and reduces alertness, which can cause accidents, collisions and serious personal injury.

- Never switch off the fan for a long time and never use air recirculation a long period of time because no fresh air will enter the passenger compartment.

## Operation via the Infotainment System



Fig. 173 Infotainment System: Front climate control settings.







 Read and follow the introductory information and safety information first ⇒  *Introduction to the subject*

You can use the Infotainment System to control Climatronic. To access the main menu, push the **CLIMATE** Infotainment button.


Tap the appropriate function key to switch a feature on or off. Feedback on the activation of the selected feature will appear in the Infotainment System screen.

A feature is turned on if its function key check box  is checked.

Function key	More information. Front Climatronic controls ⇒ Fig. 173.
--------------	--

Function key	More information. Front Climatronic controls ⇒ <a href="#">Fig. 173</a> .
	Air distribution to the windshield.
	Air distribution to the upper body.
	Air distribution in the footwells.
	Air distribution to the upper body and the footwells.
	Air distribution to the windshield and footwells.
	Heated steering wheel: The steering wheel is heated to about +77 °F (+25 °C) and held constant at about this temperature.
<b>AUTO</b>	Automatic temperature, fan, and air distribution control. By tapping the function key repeatedly, you can select from the air conditioning profiles Low, Medium, and High in AUTO mode.
Fan switch	Manual fan speed adjustment. Setting 0: fan and Climatronic switched off.
Extras	Depending on equipment version, the following adjustments are possible after tapping the function key Extras:
	Air conditioning profile feature key for setting fan speed in AUTO mode. You can choose between Low, Medium, and High.
	Automatic air recirculation feature key ⇒ <a href="#">Air recirculation</a> .

## Operation

 Read and follow the introductory information and safety information first ⇒ [Introduction to the subject](#)

The air conditioner works only when the ignition is switched on. The cooling system for the passenger compartment works only when the engine is running and the fan is on.

When the ignition is switched off, you will only be able to switch on the residual heat feature.

The air conditioning system is most efficient when the windows and the power sunroof are closed. If the vehicle is not moving and the passenger compartment becomes very hot due to sunlight, briefly opening the windows may speed up the cooling process.

Keep the air intake slots in front of the windshield free of ice, snow and leaves so that the heating and ventilation systems can work properly.

The front seating positions are referred to as climate zones. Different climate control settings may be used for each climate zone.

### Settings for optimum visibility

When you switch on the cooling system, both the temperature and humidity in the vehicle are reduced. This will help make passengers feel more comfortable and prevent windows from fogging up.

- Press the **AUTO** button.
- Set temperature to +72 °F (+22 °C).
- Open air vents in the instrument panel ⇒ [Air vents](#).

### Heating

Maximum heating output and fast defrosting will only be possible after the engine has reached operating temperature.

### Switching between Fahrenheit and Celsius in Climatronic

You can switch between Celsius and Fahrenheit for the temperature display using the Setup menu in the Infotainment System.

- Press the **SETUP** Infotainment button.
- Press the System feature key.
- Press the Units feature key.

- Select the desired unit.

### Automatic window fog detection

Automatic window fog detection checks whether the windows are fogged up and if necessary automatically adjusts the air flow to the windshield and side windows or switches on the windshield heating. If the fan or the air conditioner **A/C** is turned off, automatic window fog detection cannot work properly.

### Residual heat mode

The residual engine heat can be used for a limited time to heat the passenger compartment when the ignition is switched off.

- Switch off the ignition.
- Push the **REST** button. The feature will appear in the Climatronic display.
- Press the **REST** button again to switch the feature off early.

The feature is switched off if it is draining the battery too much, and it does not turn off automatically after 30 minutes. The fan speed is reduced to save energy.

### Applying driver settings to all climate zones

The driver-side settings for temperature, fan speed, and air distribution can be applied to all of the other climate zones.

- Push the **SYNC** button. The indicator light in the button lights up and the changes are applied to all climate zones.
- Push the **SYNC** button again to cancel the feature.

The synchronization feature is deactivated if individual settings are entered for one of the other climate zones using the Climatronic control unit. In this case, the indicator light in the **SYNC** button goes out.

### Air conditioner does not work

The air conditioner may not switch on for one of the following reasons:

- The engine is not running .
- The fan is turned off.
- The air conditioner fuse has blown.
- The ambient air temperature is colder than +38 °F (+3 °C).
- The air conditioner compressor has been temporarily switched off due to excessive engine coolant temperature.
- There is another malfunction in the vehicle. Have the air conditioner checked by an authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility.

### Special considerations

When it is very hot and humid outside, **water condensation** can drip from the air conditioner evaporator and form a puddle under the vehicle. This is normal and does not indicate a leak.



The climate control system adjusts the passenger compartment temperature as fast as possible considering the outside temperature.



Due to residual moisture in the air conditioner, the windshield may fog up after the engine is started. Switch on the windshield defroster to help evaporate the condensation as quickly as possible.



The air coming out the vents and flow through the passenger compartment and out through the vents below the rear window. Do not cover these slots with clothing or other objects.

## Air vents



Fig. 174 Air vents in the instrument panel.

Read and follow the introductory information and safety information first ⇒ *Introduction to the subject*

### Air vents

To help ensure sufficient heating, cooling and ventilation in the passenger compartment, never close the air vents ⇒ Fig. 174① completely.

- To open and close the air vents, turn the thumbwheel below the vents in the desired direction.
- Use the lever on the vent grille to adjust the airflow direction.

Additional, non-adjustable air vents → Fig. 174② are located in the door pillars and the instrument panel, in the footwells, as well as in the rear area of the passenger compartment.

### Indirect ventilation


Indirect ventilation is provided via generously proportioned vents in the top of the instrument panel → Fig. 174③.

When the air conditioner is in automatic mode, indirect ventilation is controlled automatically. If necessary, it is switched to direct ventilation in order to reach the desired interior temperature.



### NOTE

Do not place food, medications, or other heat-sensitive things in front of the air vents. Food, medications, and other things that are sensitive to heat or cold can be damaged or made unusable by the air flow from the vents.

## Air recirculation

 Read and follow the introductory information and safety information first → [Introduction to the subject](#)

### General information

There are different types of air recirculation:	
	Manual air recirculation.
	Automatic air recirculation.

The air recirculation mode helps prevent outside air from entering the vehicle interior.

In very hot or cold outside temperatures, temporarily switch to manual air recirculation in order to cool or heat the vehicle interior faster.

For safety reasons, air recirculation is switched off if you push the **MAX**  button → .

### Switching air recirculation on and off manually

*Switching on:* Press the  button repeatedly until the indicator light in the button comes on.

*Switching off:* Press the  button repeatedly until the indicator light in the button goes out.

### Switching air recirculation on and off automatically

- Press the **CLIMATE** Infotainment button.
- Tap the Extras function key.
- Switch automatic air recirculation on or off by tapping the Automatic air recirculation function key.

If the check box in the function key is checked , automatic air recirculation is switched on.

### Automatic air recirculation

In automatic air recirculation mode, fresh air will enter the passenger compartment. If the system detects an increased concentration of pollutants in the outside air, it automatically switches to air recirculation. As soon as the pollutant level is back in the normal range, air recirculation is switched off.

Unpleasant odors cannot be detected by the system.

To keep the windows from fogging up, automatic air recirculation is **not** switched on automatically in certain circumstances.

### WARNING

Stale air causes driver fatigue and reduces driver alertness, which can cause accidents, collisions and serious personal injury.

- Never use air recirculation mode over an extended period of time, since no fresh air will enter the passenger compartment.
- When the air conditioner is off and recirculation mode is on, condensation can quickly form on the windows and greatly reduce visibility.
- Always switch off recirculation mode when it is not needed.

### NOTE



Do not smoke when air recirculation is switched on. Smoke drawn into the ventilation system can leave residue on the evaporator and on the dust and pollen active carbon filter, resulting in permanent odors whenever the air conditioner is switched on.



When backing up and while the automatic wiper/washer is operating, air recirculation is briefly activated to avoid unpleasant odors in the passenger compartment. This feature only works if automatic air recirculation is enabled ⇒ [Switching air recirculation on and off automatically](#).

## Heated steering wheel

Read and follow the introductory information and safety information first ⇒ [Introduction to the subject](#)

The heated steering wheel function only works when the engine is running

The steering wheel gets heated to about 77 °F (+25 °C) and holds the temperature there.

Switching the heated steering wheel function on and off

- Press the button in the upper center console.
- **OR:** Press the button **CLIMATE** on the infotainment screen and the touch the button to switch on or off.

Automatic deactivation

The heated steering wheel function switches off automatically, if:

- The engine is switched off.
- When the overall energy consumption is too high, like when too many devices and functions are activated in the vehicle.
- The heated steering wheel system malfunctions.

### WARNING

Certain medical conditions, such as paralysis and diabetes, and certain medications can increase the risk of serious burns when the heated steering wheel function is switched on.

- Never use the heated steering wheel function if you or your passengers are at risk of being burned because of a medical condition. Take regular breaks and get out of the vehicle, particularly on long trips. Consult your doctor for advice regarding your specific condition.

## At the gas station

### Refueling

[Introduction to the subject](#)

In this chapter you will find information on the following subjects:

⇒ [Indicator lights and fuel gauge](#)

⇒ [Refueling](#)

⇒ [Misfueling guard for diesel vehicles](#)

⇒ [Fuel capacities](#)

⇒ [Refueling checklist](#)

The fuel filler flap is located on the rear right side of the vehicle ⇒ [Fig. 1](#).

### WARNING

Improper refueling or handling of fuel is dangerous and can cause fire, explosion, and severe burns.

- Always make sure that the fuel filler cap is screwed on all the way. This helps keep fuel from spilling out or evaporating.
- Fuel is highly flammable and explosive; it can cause severe burns and other severe injuries.
- Failure to shut the engine off while refueling and/or to insert the pump nozzle all the way into the fuel filler neck can cause fuel to overflow and to spray out. Fuel spray and overflowing fuel are dangerous because they can cause fire and serious personal injury.
- During fueling, the engine, and the ignition must be switched off for safety reasons.
- Never use a cellular telephone, CB radio, or other radio equipment while refueling. The electromagnetic radiation can cause sparks that can ignite fuel vapors and cause a fire.
- Never get back into your vehicle while refueling. If in exceptional circumstances you must get back in your vehicle while refueling, make certain that you

close the door and touch metal to discharge static electricity before touching the filler nozzle again. This helps avoid the build-up of static electricity, which can cause sparks that can ignite fuel vapors released during refueling. Sparks can cause a fire while refueling.

- Never smoke or have an open flame (or sparks, cigarettes, or other smoldering objects) anywhere in or near your vehicle when refueling or filling a portable fuel container.
- Follow all safety instructions and procedures that apply at the service station where you refuel.
- Never spill fuel in the vehicle or the luggage compartment.

#### ⚠ WARNING

- Even if empty, portable fuel containers can leak and cause a fire and serious personal injuries, especially in a crash.
- If, under exceptional circumstances, you must transport a portable fuel container, please observe the following: For your safety, we strongly recommend that you do not travel with a portable fuel container in your vehicle.
  - Never fill a portable fuel container while it is anywhere in or on the vehicle (for example, in the luggage compartment or on the trunk lid). Static electricity can build up while filling and can ignite fuel vapors, causing a fire.
  - Always place a portable fuel container on the ground before filling. Never spill fuel inside the vehicle or luggage compartment. Fuel vapors are highly flammable.
  - Always keep the filler nozzle completely inside the portable container before and during filling.
  - If filling a portable container made of metal, the filler nozzle must always be in contact with the container. This will help prevent static electricity from discharging and causing a fire.
  - Always observe local and state or provincial laws about the use, storage, and transportation of portable fuel containers.
  - Make certain that the portable fuel container meets industry standards, such as ANSI/ASTM F852-86.

#### ! NOTE

- Remove fuel spills from the vehicle immediately to help prevent damage to the paint, tires, and wheel housings.
- Refueling with gasoline when your vehicle has a diesel engine or refueling with diesel fuel when your vehicle has a gasoline engine can cause very serious and expensive engine and fuel system damage that is not covered by any Volkswagen Limited Warranty.
- If you put any amount of incorrect fuel in the fuel tank, do not start the engine under any circumstances. Immediately contact the nearest authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility for assistance. These fuels contain substances that can severely damage the fuel system and the engine if the engine is started.
- Vehicles with diesel engines must **never** be refueled or driven with gasoline, kerosene, heating oil, or other non-specified fuels that have not been expressly approved for use with the diesel engine. Other kinds of fuel will cause serious damage to the fuel system and the engine that is not covered by any Volkswagen Limited Warranty.

🌿 Fuels can pollute the environment. Spilled fuel must be collected and disposed of properly, following all applicable environmental regulations.



There is no emergency release for the fuel filler flap. Contact an authorized Volkswagen dealer or an authorized Volkswagen Service Facility for assistance if necessary.

## Indicator lights and fuel gauge

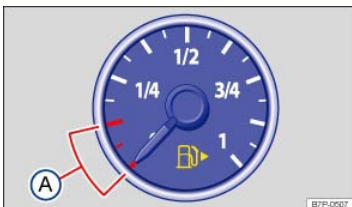


Fig. 175 In the instrument cluster: Fuel gauge for gasoline and diesel fuel.



Read and follow the introductory information and safety information first ⇒ [Introduction to the subject](#)

Lights up



Gauge position

⇒ Fig. 175

Possible cause or meaning ⇒ ⚠


Proper response

Fuel tank almost empty.


Lights up	Red range (arrow) Gauge position ⇒ Fig. 175	Possible cause or meaning ⇒ ⚠	Time to refuel ⇒ ⓘ. Proper response
		Running on reserve ⇒ <i>Fuel capacities</i> .	Take the vehicle to an authorized Volkswagen dealer or an authorized Volkswagen Service Facility and have the system checked.
		Fuel tank system malfunction.	
		Fuel filler cap not properly closed.	Stop and closer fuel filler cap properly.


When the ignition is switched on, several warning and indicator lights come on briefly for a function check. They go out after a few seconds.

#### Fuel filler cap not properly closed

If the indicator light  comes on or you see a text message in the instrument cluster display indicating that the fuel filler cap is not properly closed, stop the vehicle in a safe place and switch off the engine and the ignition.

Open the fuel filler flap and take the fuel filler flap off the filler neck. Then put the fuel tank cap back on the filler neck and screw it on clockwise until you clearly hear a clicking sound. Close the fuel filler flap.

After switching on the ignition, the indicator light  may stay on or the text message may still appear in the instrument cluster display, even if the fuel filler cap is now properly closed. This is normal and no reason to take your vehicle in for service.

If, however, the malfunction indicator light  also comes on, drive to your nearest authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility and have the fuel system and the engine checked.


### WARNING

Driving with a fuel tank that is almost empty can lead to stalling in traffic, a collision, and serious personal injuries.

- When the fuel tank is almost empty, fuel supply to the engine can be interrupted, especially when driving up an down hills. The interruption in fuel flow could stall the engine during a maneuver in difficult terrain and make you lose control of the vehicle.
- Steering and braking assistance as well as ESC and related systems will not work if the engine sputters or stalls due to lack of fuel.
- Always refuel when the tank is 1/4 full to reduce the risk of running out of fuel and stalling in traffic.

### NOTE

- Failure to heed warning lights or text WARNINGS can result in vehicle damage.
- Never drive until the fuel tank is completely empty. The irregular fuel supply can cause the engine to misfire. This allows unburned fuel to get into the exhaust system and damage the catalytic converter or the diesel particulate filter.

 The small arrow next to the gas pump symbol in the fuel gauge shows the side of the vehicle with the fuel filler flap.

## Refueling

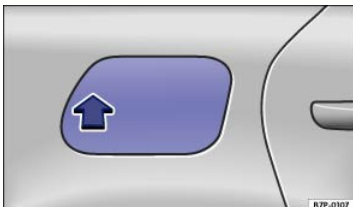


Fig. 176 In the right rear fender: Opening fuel filler flap.

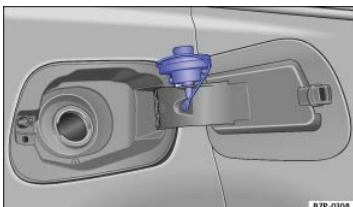


Fig. 177 Fuel cap placed on the open fuel filler flap.

 Read and follow the introductory information and safety information first ⇒ [▲ Introduction to the subject](#)


**Before** refueling, always switch off the engine, the ignition and all mobile phones, and leave them switched off until refueling is complete.

#### Opening the fuel filler cap

- The fuel filler flap is located at the right rear of the vehicle.
- Push on the fuel tank flap in the right rear fender ⇒ [Fig. 176](#) (arrow) and fold open.
- Unscrew the fuel filler cap counterclockwise remove. Use the receptacle on the filler flap hinge to hold the cap while refueling ⇒ [Fig. 177](#).

#### Refueling

The correct fuel grade for your vehicle ⇒ page 489 is listed on a sticker on the inside of the fuel filler flap ⇒ [Fuel](#).

- The fuel tank is *full* when the automatic filler nozzle pump switches off the first time ⇒ .
- Do not try to add fuel after the pump stops! Topping off the tank in this way may fill the expansion space that the tank needs and cause fuel to overflow, for example, if it gets warmer outside.

#### Closing the fuel filler cap

- Screw the fuel cap clockwise onto the fuel filler neck until you hear it click into place.
- Close the fuel filler flap until you hear it latch shut. The fuel filler flap must be flush with the vehicle body.

#### WARNING

Spilled fuel can cause fires, explosions, burns, and other severe injuries.

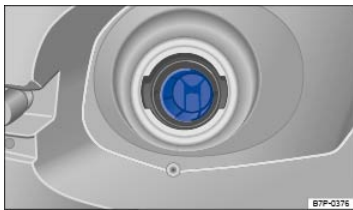
- Always stop refueling once the pump nozzle switches off so that the tank does not overflow.

#### NOTE


Remove fuel spills from all vehicle surfaces immediately to help prevent damage to the paint, tires, and wheel housings.

 Fuel spills may pollute the environment.

### Misfueling guard for diesel vehicles



[Fig. 178](#) With open fuel cap: Misfueling guard in the fuel filler neck.

 Read and follow the introductory information and safety information first ⇒ [▲ Introduction to the subject](#)

The fuel filler neck of diesel vehicles is equipped with a misfueling guard ⇒ [Fig. 178](#). If you have problems inserting a fuel nozzle, first check to make sure you are using the correct diesel fuel. If you are, go to a pump with the standard diesel nozzle. The misfueling guard helps prevent filling the fuel tank of a diesel vehicle with gasoline, because the guard makes it difficult to insert any type of filler nozzle other than the type commonly used for diesel fuel.

Damaged, worn out, or incorrect nozzles, as well as other means of refueling (portable fuel containers, for example) will generally not open the misfueling guard and fuel from these sources cannot easily flow into the tank. Using these incorrect or non-standard nozzles to refuel your diesel vehicle can cause fuel spills, which can cause fires, explosions, burns, and other severe injuries.

The misfueling guard can generally only be properly opened with a correct nozzle from a standard diesel fuel pump. Under certain circumstances it may be necessary to turn the nozzle back and forth slightly with light pressure to open the misfueling guard. If the misfueling guard cannot be opened this way, see the nearest authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility and have the fuel system checked.

#### WARNING

Spilled fuel can cause fires, explosions, burns, and other severe injuries.

- Do not refuel from devices other than correct, undamaged standard diesel fuel pump nozzles.
- Always stop refueling once the pump nozzle switches off so that the tank does not overflow.


#### NOTE

- It is your responsibility to put the right fuel in your vehicle and any damage that results from using the wrong fuel is not covered under the Emissions warranties or any other Volkswagen Limited Warranty.
- If you put any amount of the wrong fuel in the fuel tank, do not start the engine under any circumstances. Immediately contact the nearest authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility for assistance.
- If diesel fuel should get on any rubber hose, it must be wiped off immediately. The same applies if diesel fuel gets onto other parts of the vehicle, especially paint, tires, or a plastic part. Wash the contaminated vehicle parts right away with soap and warm water to help prevent leaks and serious damage.

#### NOTE


- Never force a fuel nozzle in the misfueling guard. Forcing a fuel nozzle in the misfueling guard can damage it so that it can no longer help prevent misfueling.
- If you have problems inserting a diesel fuel nozzle, please check to make sure you are using the right kind of diesel fuel.
- If you must refuel with a non-standard diesel fuel nozzle, an adapter is available from Volkswagen to allow refueling. Contact an authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility for assistance. Only use an adapter approved by Volkswagen for your vehicle.
- Remember that the nozzle on a portable fuel container will generally not open the misfueling guard. If you must refuel with a portable fuel container in an emergency, you can pour diesel fuel very slowly from a portable container into the fuel filler neck of your vehicle. The fuel will flow slowly past the misfueling guard and into the tank.

## Fuel capacities

 Read and follow the introductory information and safety information first ⇒ [Introduction to the subject](#)

	Fuel tank capacity
<b>Gasoline engines</b>	26.41 gal (100.0 l)
	of which about 3.96 gal (15.0 l) reserve
<b>Diesel engines</b>	26.41 gal (100.0 l)
	of which about 3.17 gal (12.0 l) reserve

## Refueling checklist

 Read and follow the introductory information and safety information first ⇒ [Introduction to the subject](#)

The engine compartment of any motor vehicle is a hazardous area. Never do any work on the engine or in the engine compartment unless you.

- Know exactly how to carry out the job,
- have the correct technical information and the proper tools and supplies, and
- are familiar with the necessary safety precautions ⇒ [Working in the engine compartment](#).

## Checklist

**If you are uncertain in any way, have the work done by an authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility. Serious personal injury may result from improperly performed work. Make sure that you check the following items regularly. The best thing is to check them every time you refuel:**

- ✓ Windshield washer fluid level Windshield wiper and washer
- ✓ Engine oil level Engine oil
- ✓ Engine coolant level Engine coolant
- ✓ Brake fluid level Braking and parking
- ✓ Tire pressure Tires and wheels

Vehicle lighting necessary for driving safety:

- Turn signals
- Parking lights, low beams and high beams
- Taillights
- Brake lights

- License plate light

Information regarding replacing light bulbs ⇒ [Replacing light bulbs](#).

### WARNING

Disregarding the safety-related checklist may lead to accidents and injuries.

- Please note and follow the points listed in the checklist.

## Fuel

### Introduction to the subject

In this chapter you will find information on the following subjects:

⇒ [Gasoline](#)

⇒ [Gasoline additives](#)

⇒ [Diesel fuel](#)

The correct fuel grade for your engine is shown on a sticker located on the inside of the fuel filler flap ⇒ [Fig. 177](#).


Bad or poor quality fuel reduces operating performance, efficiency and service life of the engine. If you notice any symptoms like rough engine idle or performance or “bucking”, immediately reduce the vehicle speed, accelerate slowly and keep the engine speed in the middle of the rpm range. Avoid high rpm and rapid acceleration. If these symptoms should appear right after refueling, switch off the engine. In both cases contact an authorized Volkswagen dealer or an authorized Volkswagen Service Facility to have the engine checked.

### WARNING

Improper refueling or handling of fuel can cause fire, explosion, and severe burns.

- Fuel is highly explosive and flammable and can cause severe burns and other injuries.
- Heed applicable safety warnings and obey local fuel handling regulations.
- Always make sure the fuel cap is screwed on all the way. This keeps fuel from spilling out and from evaporating.
- Failure to shut the engine off while refueling and/or to insert the pump nozzle fully into the vehicle's filler neck could cause fuel overflow and fuel spray. Fuel spray and overflowing fuel are dangerous because they can cause fire or serious injury.
- For safety reasons, the engine must be turned off when refueling.
- Never get back into your vehicle while refueling. If in exceptional circumstances you must get back in your vehicle while refueling, make certain that you close the door and touch metal to discharge static electricity before touching the filler nozzle again. Static electricity can cause sparks that can ignite fuel vapors released during refueling.

## Gasoline

 Read and follow the introductory information and safety information first ⇒ [Introduction to the subject](#)

### Octane rating

Octane rating indicates a gasoline's ability to resist engine-damaging “knock” caused by pre-ignition. Using gasoline that does not meet minimum octane requirements can affect engine performance, while the use of poor quality gasoline or gasoline with octane levels below 87 can also cause engine damage. If Regular gasoline is recommended for your engine, you may be able to enhance engine performance by using Premium gasoline.

The recommended gasoline octane rating for your engine is listed on a label inside of the fuel filler flap. This rating may be specified according to AKI (CLC) or ROI (ROZ) standards.

Regardless of whether unleaded Regular or Premium grade gasoline is specified for your vehicle, Volkswagen recommends using TOP TIER Detergent Gasoline with a minimum octane rating of 87 AKI (91 RON) for Regular gasoline, and 91 AKI (95 RON) for Premium gasoline. For more information on TOP TIER Detergent Gasoline, please go to the official website, <http://www.toptiergas.com>.

The gasoline grades most commonly sold in the United States and Canada have the following octane ratings, which can usually be found on the filler pump:

- Regular grade: 87 to 90 AKI
- Premium grade: 91 to 96 AKI

### Unleaded gasoline

Unleaded gasoline is available throughout the USA and Canada. Volkswagen recommends that you do not take your vehicle to places where unleaded gasoline may not be available.

## Gasoline containing alcohol or MTBE

You may use unleaded gasoline blended with alcohol or MTBE (methyl tertiary butyl ether), commonly referred to as oxygenated fuels, if the blended mixture meets the following criteria:

### Blends of gasoline and methanol (wood alcohol or methyl alcohol):

- Anti-Knock Index (AKI) must be 87 or higher.
- Blend must contain no more than 3% methanol.
- Blend must contain more than 2% co-solvents.

### Blends of gasoline and ethanol (grain alcohol or ethyl alcohol):

- Anti-Knock Index (AKI) must be 87 or higher.
- Blend must contain no more than 15% ethanol.

### Blends of gasoline and MTBE:

- Anti-Knock Index (AKI) must be 87 or higher.
- Blend must contain no more than 15% MTBE.

## Seasonally adjusted gasoline

Many fuels are blended especially for winter or summer conditions. When seasons change, Volkswagen suggests that you buy fuel at busy stations where the seasonal adjustment is more likely to be made earlier.

### WARNING

Starting fluids can explode and cause a run-away vehicle condition.

- Never use starting assist fluids.

### NOTE


- Never use fuel with an octane rating lower than 87 AKI/91 RON. Using lower octane fuel may cause expensive engine damage.
- Never use leaded gasoline! Leaded gasoline will severely damage your vehicle's catalytic converter.
- Methanol-blended fuels that do not meet the criteria listed above may cause corrosion and may damage plastic and rubber parts in the fuel system.
- Never use fuels that contain lead or other metals (check listing on the fuel pump). Even lead replacement gasoline (LRP fuels) contain metallic additives in high concentrations. They can damage the engine.
- Do not use fuels that fail to meet the criteria above, or with contents that cannot be identified.
- If you cannot tell whether a particular fuel blend meets the criteria above, ask your service station or its fuel supplier. If you notice a loss of fuel economy or drivability and performance problems using one of these fuel blends, we recommend that you switch to unblended fuel.
- Using fuels that are different from those specified above can damage your vehicle's engine and fuel system and cause performance problems.
- Damage to the engine and fuel system and performance problems caused by using fuels that are different from those specified above or by using starting assist fluids are not the responsibility of Volkswagen and are not covered under the Emission warranties or any other Volkswagen Limited Warranty.

 Even a single tank full of leaded fuel can do major damage to the catalytic converter and degrade its effectiveness in reducing polluting emissions.



If you notice a loss of fuel economy or drivability and performance problems using one of these fuel blends, we recommend that you switch to unblended fuel. Never use fuel line antifreeze offered for gasoline engines.

## Gasoline additives

 Read and follow the introductory information and safety information first ⇒ [Introduction to the subject](#)

Additives are used to improve the quality of the gasoline.

Fuel quality impacts the operating performance, efficiency and service life of the engine. Therefore, use high quality gasoline that is already blended by the fuel supplier with suitable gasoline additives that do not contain metal. The additives provide corrosion protection, clean the fuel system, and help prevent deposits on the engine.

Volkswagen recommends TOP TIER Detergent Gasoline. For more information on TOP TIER Detergent Gasoline, please go to the official Web site <http://www.toptiergas.com>.

If quality gasoline with additives that do not contain metal is not available or engine malfunctions occur, you should add the required additives while refueling ⇒ 

Not all gasoline additives are effective. Using the wrong additives can cause significant and expensive damage to the engine and the catalytic converter. Never use additives that contain metal. Please note that metal can be included in some aftermarket gasoline additives that are available to be added to gasoline during or after refueling to help improve knock resistance or increase the octane rating.


Volkswagen recommends using only additives approved by Volkswagen. Appropriate additives as well as instructions on how to use them are available from your authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility. Do not add any other gasoline additives.

#### NOTE

You can damage the engine by using incorrect additives.

- Using incorrect gasoline additives can cause extensive engine damage as well as damage to the catalytic converter.
- If you must fuel your vehicle with gasoline whose octane rating is too low, only drive with the engine speed in the middle of the rpm range and with low engine load. Avoid high rpm and heavy engine load. Otherwise, the engine could be damaged. Refuel your vehicle with gasoline with the required octane rating as soon as possible.
- Do not use fuel that is labeled at the pump as containing metal. Lead replacement fuel contains high concentrations of metallic additives. Engine damage could result.
- Fueling your vehicle just one time with leaded fuel or fuel that contains other metallic additives can affect the performance of the catalytic converter and cause extensive damage to it.

## Diesel fuel

 Read and follow the introductory information and safety information first ⇒ [Introduction to the subject](#)

Always use only Ultra Low Sulfur Diesel (ULSD) fuel No. 2 ⇒ .

The ULSD must always meet ASTM D-975 specification ⇒ .

ULSD should be clearly marked on the pump. Before filling your vehicle, please always make sure you are using ULSD. According to Federal regulations ULSD is the only diesel fuel type allowed for use in your vehicle.

Using diesel fuel with concentrations of methyl ester biodiesel higher than 5% (B5), such as B11, B20, or B100 when B5 biodiesel is available, is contrary to the terms of your New Vehicle Limited Warranty and is strictly prohibited.

ULSD diesel fuel may not be available outside the USA and Canada. Be sure to check availability before traveling to other countries.

### Winter diesel

At temperatures below 20 °F (-7 °C), wax separation in ULSD occurs. Wax may clog the fuel filter or tank filter and keep the engine from running.

To help prevent the filter from being clogged with wax, the fuel filter in your vehicle is heated with warm fuel when the engine is running (filter preheating system). Heating the fuel filter makes it possible to use your vehicle with ULSD down to about -10 °F (-24 °C).

If you expect temperatures below +5 °F (-15 °C) ask your fuel dealer if their ULSD is sufficiently winterized.

If non-winterized or insufficiently winterized diesel fuel has already thickened to the point that the engine will not start, move the vehicle to a heated garage or workshop until it has warmed up.

Cold diesel engines normally produce louder noises during winter conditions than during warmer periods. In addition, the exhaust gases may be light blue in color until the engine has warmed up. The exhaust gas volume varies depending on the outside temperature.

Do not let your diesel engine idle unnecessarily after a cold start. Driving off slowly will shorten the warm-up period.

**Biodiesel use in vehicles registered in a state that has laws or regulations for biofuels which may restrict the availability of biodiesel blends of B5 or less**

Biodiesel is a domestically produced, clean-burning and renewable partial substitute for conventional (petroleum) diesel fuel.

Your vehicle was originally designed to run on ULSD – Ultra Low Sulfur Diesel fuel [ASTM D-975 standard Grade No. 2-D (S15)] that complies with ASTM D-975 specifications and permits up to a maximum blend of 5 % biodiesel (B5).

In some states, laws or regulations for biofuels may restrict the availability of biodiesel blends of B5 or less. *If your vehicle is registered in one of these states, we want to assure you that Volkswagen will continue to honor the terms and conditions of the Volkswagen Limited Warranties that came with your vehicle.* Use only Biodiesel from high quality sources, certified by the BQ-9000 label at the fuel station and complying to ASTM D 7467 S15, B6 to B20.

Using diesel fuel with concentrations of methyl ester biodiesel higher than 20 % (B20), such as B100 is still contrary to the terms of your Emission warranties or any other Volkswagen Limited Warranty and remains strictly prohibited.

Biodiesel blends (up to B20) may be used in your vehicle; however, please be aware that biodiesel has characteristics that are different from other kinds of fuel, especially petroleum-based fuels.



Biodiesel can attract water and also deteriorate with age. Small amounts of biodiesel can get into the engine oil, but unlike petroleum diesel, it does not evaporate over time. This can cause the oil level in the engine to rise and can affect the quality of the oil.

- Routinely check the engine oil level. A good time to do this is when you refuel, especially if you regularly do a lot of short distance or stop-and-go driving. This will help you see if the engine oil level is getting higher. (A rising oil level beyond the maximum indicator means an oil change is needed due to the dilution of the oil in the system; a potential characteristic of biodiesel use) ⇒ [Checking the engine oil level and adding oil](#) .
- If you ever notice that the engine oil level has risen or is above the maximum indicator, contact your authorized Volkswagen dealer, authorized Volkswagen Service Facility or Volkswagen Customer CARE to schedule an oil change – regardless of the time or mileage that has elapsed since you last had an oil change performed.
- Continue to follow the oil change intervals found in the Warranty and Maintenance booklet that came with your vehicle, and use only engine oil that expressly complies with Volkswagen quality standard VW 507 00.
- Refuel only at trusted, commercial fueling stations that are located near main highways. These stations are more likely to have fresh biodiesel fuels that have not aged significantly.
- If your vehicle will be in storage (or not driven) for several weeks or months, please completely fill the fuel tank. If possible, fill the tank with Ultra Low Sulfur Diesel fuel [ASTM D-975 standard Grade No. 2-D (S15)].

If you have additional questions about your TDI® diesel vehicle, please call or write to us at:

Volkswagen of America, Inc.

Attn: Customer CARE3800 Hamlin Road, Auburn Hills, MI 48326  
Tel.:1-800-444-8982

#### WARNING

Starting fluids can explode and cause a run-away vehicle condition.

- Never use starting assist fluids.

#### NOTE

- The vehicle's diesel engine was designed solely for use with ULSD fuel. For this reason, never use gasoline, heating oil, or other fuels that have not been expressly approved for use with the diesel engine. These fuels contain substances that will severely damage the fuel system and the engine. Such damage will not be covered by any Volkswagen Limited Warranty.
- If you put any amount of the incorrect fuel in the fuel tank, do not start the engine under any circumstances. Immediately contact the nearest authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility for assistance.
- If diesel fuel should get on any rubber hose, it must be wiped off immediately. The same applies if diesel fuel gets onto other parts of the vehicle, especially paint, tires, or a plastic part. Wash the contaminated vehicle parts right away with soap and warm water to help prevent leaks and serious damage.
- Damage to the engine and fuel system and performance problems caused by using fuels that are different from those specified above or by using starting assist fluids are not the responsibility of Volkswagen and are not covered under the Emission warranties or any other Volkswagen Limited Warranty.
- The vehicle is warranted to run on diesel fuel containing methyl ester biodiesel in concentrations of 5 % or less. Never use methyl ester biodiesel in blend levels higher than 5 % (5 % methyl ester blends are sometimes designated or labeled as B5) unless your vehicle is registered in a state that has laws or regulations for biofuels which may restrict the availability of biodiesel blends of B5 or less. The properties of methyl ester biodiesel blends in levels greater than 5% will void coverage for related engine damage under the Emission warranties or any other Volkswagen Limited Warranty, *unless* your vehicle is registered in a state that has laws or regulations for biofuels which may restrict the availability of biodiesel blends of B5 or less.
- Biodiesel especially in concentrations higher than B5, can attract water and also deteriorate with age. Small amounts of biodiesel can get into the engine oil, but unlike petroleum diesel, it does not evaporate over time. This can cause the oil level in the engine to rise and can affect the quality of the oil and if not detected and remedied promptly, will ultimately result in engine damage.

## Selective catalytic reduction (AdBlue®)

### Introduction to the subject

In this chapter you will find information on the following subjects:

⇒ [Warning and indicator lights](#)

⇒ [AdBlue information](#)

⇒ [Refilling AdBlue](#)

AdBlue® is the brand name of a Diesel Exhaust Fluid (DEF) that is a chemical reactant to reduce nitrogen oxide (NOx) exhaust emission from your diesel engine. Volkswagen recommends AdBlue, but you can use any Diesel Exhaust Fluid that expressly conforms to International Organization for Standardization specification **ISO 22241-1**. Using a DEF that does not meet the requirements of ISO 22241 can seriously damage your vehicle's engine.

The fill level of AdBlue should be checked every time the vehicle is serviced ⇒ [Booklet Warranty and Maintenance](#)..

## ⚠ WARNING

If the AdBlue fill level is too low, the vehicle cannot be restarted after the ignition was switched off. It is also not possible to jump-start or emergency start the vehicle!

- Refill AdBlue when the AdBlue fuel range falls to about 600 miles (1000 km).
- Never let the AdBlue tank run dry.

## ⚠ CAUTION

AdBlue is an irritating and corrosive fluid that can harm skin, eyes, mucous membranes, and respiratory organs.







- Always read and heed the information on the AdBlue refill container. If you handle the AdBlue refill container according to the instructions, you will minimize the risk of coming in contact with AdBlue.
- If AdBlue gets into the eyes, flush them thoroughly with large amounts of clean water for at least 15 minutes; medical attention is recommended.
- If AdBlue is swallowed, immediately rinse the mouth for at least 15 minutes with plenty of water. Do not induce vomiting unless instructed to do so by a medical professional. Get medical attention immediately.

## ⓘ NOTE

- AdBlue corrodes surfaces such as painted vehicle components, plastics, clothing and carpets. Remove spilled AdBlue immediately with a wet cloth and plenty of cold water.
- Remove crystallized AdBlue with warm water and a sponge.

## Warning and indicator lights

📖 Read and follow the introductory information and safety information first ⇒ ⚠ *Introduction to the subject*

Lights up	Possible cause or meaning ⇒ ⚠	Proper response
	<b>No engine restart possible!</b> AdBlue fill level too low.	Stop the vehicle at a safe and appropriate place with level pavement and refuel AdBlue ⇒ <i>Refilling AdBlue</i> .
 together with	<b>No engine restart possible!</b> AdBlue system malfunction.	Have the system checked by an authorized Volkswagen dealer or an authorized Volkswagen Service Facility.
	AdBlue level is low.	Refill the AdBlue tank within the indicated number of miles or kilometers ⇒ <i>Refilling AdBlue</i> . Volkswagen recommends going to an authorized Volkswagen dealer or an authorized Volkswagen Service Facility.
 together with	AdBlue system malfunctioning or not filled standard AdBlue.	Have the system checked by an authorized Volkswagen dealer or an authorized Volkswagen Service Facility.
	AdBlue level is low.	Refill the AdBlue tank within the indicated number of miles or kilometers ⇒ <i>Refilling AdBlue</i> . Volkswagen recommends taking the vehicle to an authorized Volkswagen dealer or an authorized Volkswagen Service Facility.
 together with	AdBlue system malfunctioning or not filled standard AdBlue.	Have the system checked by an authorized Volkswagen dealer or an authorized Volkswagen Service Facility.

When the ignition is switched on, several warning and indicator lights come on briefly for a function check. They go out after a few seconds.

## ⚠ WARNING

Failure to heed warning lights and instrument cluster text messages can cause the vehicle to break down in traffic and result in a collision and serious personal injury.

- Never ignore warning lights or text WARNINGS.
- Always stop the vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so.

#### NOTE

Failure to heed warning lights or text WARNINGS can result in vehicle damage.

## AdBlue information

Read and follow the introductory information and safety information first ⇒ [Introduction to the subject](#)

In vehicles with selective catalytic reduction, a special urea solution (AdBlue) is injected into the exhaust system ahead of the catalytic converter in order to reduce nitrogen oxide emissions.

AdBlue is stored in a separate tank of the vehicle and should be refilled under normal driving conditions during service according to the maintenance schedule. The AdBlue tank holds slightly less than 5 gallons (20 liters).

AdBlue consumption depends on the individual driving style, system operating temperature, and outside air temperature. Therefore AdBlue may have to be refilled between service events.

Starting with a remaining range of about 1500 miles (2400 km), a reminder to refill AdBlue is displayed in the instrument cluster ⇒ [Refilling AdBlue](#). If you ignore the last refill reminder, it is impossible to start the engine again after it is switched off ⇒ [Warning and indicator lights](#).

Volkswagen recommends that you have the AdBlue tank refilled by an authorized Volkswagen dealer or an authorized Volkswagen Service Facility. If no authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility or other qualified workshop is available, you should refill at least 1.5 gallons (5.7 liters) of AdBlue (3 AdBlue bottles). Refill only the type of AdBlue that Volkswagen has explicitly approved for your vehicle.

If warning lights  and  both come on together, there is a malfunction. Volkswagen recommends that you take the vehicle to the closest qualified workshop.

AdBlue® is a registered trademark of the German Association of the Automotive Industry (VDA) in the United States, Germany, the European Union and in other countries. AdBlue meets International Organization for Standardization specification **ISO 22241-1**.

## Refilling AdBlue

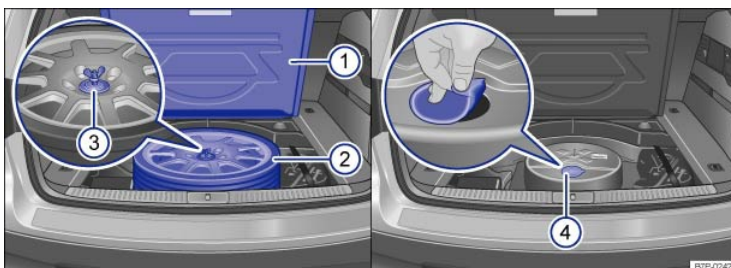


Fig. 179 Luggage compartment with collapsible spare tire and AdBlue tank.

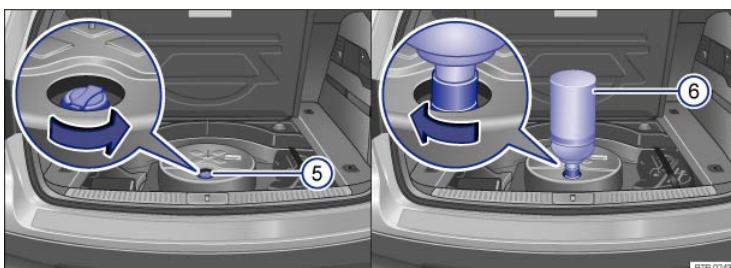


Fig. 180 AdBlue tank with filler neck cap and refill container.

Read and follow the introductory information and safety information first ⇒ [Introduction to the subject](#)

Key to ⇒ [Fig. 179](#) and ⇒ [Fig. 180](#) :

- ① Luggage compartment floor.
- ② Collapsible spare tire.
- ③ Fastening screw with washer.
- ④ Plug.
- ⑤ Cap on the tank filler neck.

## ⑥ AdBlue refill container.

When refilling AdBlue, the ignition must be switched off and the vehicle must be parked on a level surface, not on an incline or with the wheels on one side up on the curb. If the vehicle is not on level ground, the gauge that shows the fill level may not register the added quantity.

### Opening the tank filler neck

- Open the trunk lid.
- Fold up the luggage compartment floor panel ⇒ [Fig. 179①](#) and hook it open or, if you have a reversible luggage compartment floor panel, take this out ⇒ [Luggage compartment](#).
- Take out the collapsible spare tire ②- Unscrew the fastening screw ③ with washer counterclockwise and take out the collapsible spare tire.
- Pull off the plug ④ in the spare tire well.
- Unscrew the tank filler neck cap ⇒ [Fig. 180⑤](#) counterclockwise and remove.

### Refilling AdBlue

**Only use Volkswagen-approved AdBlue or any Diesel Exhaust Fluid that expressly conforms to International Organization for Standardization specification ISO 22241-1. Using a DEF that does not meet the requirements of ISO 22241-1 can seriously damage your vehicle's engine. Only use fluid in original, unopened packaging.**

- Switch off the ignition.
- Read and heed the information provided by the AdBlue refill manufacturer ⇒ [!](#).
- Note the expiration date.
- Unscrew the cap of the refill container.
- Vertically insert the neck of the refill container ⑥ into the tank filler neck and turn clockwise to hand-tighten.
- Press the refill container down into the tank filler neck and hold it there.
- **Add at least 1.5 gallons (5.7 liters) of AdBlue which is 3 refill bottles.** Adding a smaller amount is not sufficient.
- Wait until the contents of the refill container has flowed into the AdBlue tank. Do not squeeze or damage the refill container!
- Unscrew the refill container counterclockwise and lift it out carefully ⇒ [!](#).
- AdBlue stops flowing from the refill bottle when the AdBlue tank is completely full.

### Closing the fuel filler neck

- Screw in the fuel filler neck cap ⇒ [Fig. 180⑤](#) clockwise until the cap locks into place.
- Put the plug ⇒ [Fig. 179④](#) back in the spare wheel recess and make certain it is properly placed and secure.
- Put the collapsible spare tire ② back in the spare wheel recess and secure it with the fastening screw ③ and washer.
- Unhook the luggage compartment floor panel ① and fold down or, if you have a reversible luggage compartment floor panel, put this back in ⇒ [Luggage compartment](#).

### Things to do before driving again

- After refilling, switch on **only** the ignition.
- Leave the ignition switched on for at least 30 seconds so that system can detect the refill.
- Do not start the engine for 30 seconds!


## WARNING

Store AdBlue only in its closed original container and in a safe place.

- To reduce the risk of poisoning, never keep AdBlue in empty food or beverage containers that might mislead someone into drinking from them.
- Always store AdBlue outside the reach of children.

## NOTE

- Use only AdBlue® or any Diesel Exhaust Fluid that expressly conforms to International Organization for Standardization specification ISO 22241-1. Using a DEF that does not meet the requirements of ISO 22241-1 can seriously damage your vehicle's engine.
- Never mix water or any other substances or additives with AdBlue. Damage caused by such additives will not be covered by any Volkswagen Limited Warranty.
- Never put AdBlue into the diesel fuel tank! Otherwise the engine may be damaged!
- Do not carry a refill container in the vehicle all the time or routinely. Due to temperature fluctuations and damage, the container could start leaking and the AdBlue could damage the vehicle interior.

 Dispose of the refill container in an environmentally-responsible manner.



Appropriate AdBlue refill containers can be obtained from an authorized Volkswagen dealer or an authorized Volkswagen Service Facility.

## Off-road driving

### Some basics

#### Introduction to the subject

In this chapter you will find information on the following subjects:

⇒ *Rollover warning*

⇒ *Before driving off-road*

⇒ *General rules and good driving practices*


⇒ *Technical terms explained*

⇒ *Useful off-road driving equipment*

⇒ *Safety and off-road driving*

Your vehicle can be driven on and off-road. In this chapter you will find important information on driving your vehicle. It is very important to review this chapter before taking your vehicle off-road.

Driving off the beaten path is challenging - for the driver, the passengers, and the vehicle itself.

It requires special knowledge and skills different from those needed for highway driving. Successful off-roading comes from a combination of theory and practice. This includes knowing the right way to handle the expected and the unexpected ⇒ .

Safety must always have top priority. Never overestimate your own abilities or underestimate the difficulties that come with driving off-road. Never let determination get the better of your common sense. If the going gets too difficult, turn back and find a better route to your destination.

The wide range of terrain you can come up against, and the many risks and dangers the terrain may hide, make it impossible to foresee and deal in this Manual with every conceivable off-road situation you may face. For this reason, it is vital for you to know what lies ahead and evaluate possible dangers before trying to drive over difficult or unfamiliar terrain.

The vehicle is not designed for trips with an expedition-like character.

#### WARNING

Inadequate experience and knowledge of the demands of off-road driving can lead to critical situations and cause serious personal injury.

- Never take routes or risks that could put you or your passengers in danger. If you cannot go on, or have doubts about the safety of your route, turn back and take a new route.
- The intelligent technology of the vehicle cannot change the laws of physics. Despite the ABS, adverse terrain can cause instability through blocked wheels – for example, if you brake hard when driving on a loose gravel road. Difficult terrain may also prevent the ESC from doing its job.
- Never operate the vehicle at the limit of its performance ability. Always leave a good safety margin.
- To reduce the risk of loss of control and serious personal injury, never use the cruise control when driving off-road.
- Even terrain that looks easy can be difficult and dangerous, putting you and your passengers in a critical situation. It is often best to check an area out on foot first.
- Drive with special care and think ahead in off-road terrain. If you drive too fast, or fail to maneuver the vehicle properly, you could cause personal injury and damage the vehicle.
- Never drive faster than is appropriate for the prevailing terrain and the road, traffic, and weather conditions.
- Never drive too fast across embankments, ramps, or slopes. The vehicle could become airborne. If that happens, you will not be able to steer and can lose control.
- If your vehicle becomes airborne, always keep the front wheels pointing straight ahead. If the wheels are not pointing straight ahead when the vehicle lands, it could roll over.
- Never allow people to stand in front of or behind the vehicle if you have put items such as stones or pieces of wood under the wheels to improve traction on slippery ground. Spinning wheels can turn these items into dangerous flying objects causing serious personal injury.
- Even areas that look harmless can be dangerous. Potholes, ditches, trenches, drop-offs, different kinds of obstacles, and soft or swampy ground often cannot be seen and can be partially or fully covered by water, grass, branches, or other things. Driving over such terrain can cause accidents and severe injuries. Before crossing an unknown area, carefully explore the route you plan to take on foot.

## ⚠ WARNING

Never drive off-road if you are low on fuel. Too little fuel in the tank can cause an accident and serious injuries. You can also run out of fuel in a remote area where getting help is difficult or impossible.

- When the fuel tank is almost empty, fuel supply to the engine can be interrupted, especially when driving over bumps, across slopes, and up and down hills. The interruption in fuel flow could stall the engine during a maneuver in difficult terrain and make you lose control of the vehicle.
- Steering and braking assistance as well as ESC and related systems will not work if the engine sputters or stalls due to lack of fuel. This can cause loss of vehicle control, especially in difficult terrain.
- Always refuel when the tank is 1/4 full to reduce the risk of running out of fuel.

## ! NOTE

If the power sunroof or the windows are open when it rains or snows, the interior of the vehicle will get wet and the vehicle may be damaged. Always keep the windows and the power sunroof closed when driving off-road.

## Rollover warning

📖 Read and follow the introductory information and safety information first ⇒ [▲ Introduction to the subject](#)

A vehicle's **center of gravity** affects its rollover characteristics. Since vehicle has higher ground clearance for off-road driving, its center of gravity is also higher than that of standard passenger cars. The higher center of gravity increases the risk of vehicle rollover while driving. Always keep this in mind when driving. Heed the safety information and warnings in this Manual.

## ⚠ WARNING

Utility vehicles have a significantly higher rollover rate than other types of vehicles.

- In a rollover crash, an unbelted person is significantly more likely to die than a person wearing a safety belt.
- Your vehicle has a higher center of gravity and an increased risk of rollover while driving than a standard passenger vehicle that is not suitable for occasional off-road use.
- Never drive too fast, particularly through curves, and never attempt extreme driving maneuvers.
- Always adjust your speed and driving style to road, terrain, traffic, and weather conditions.
- Transporting luggage or other objects on top of your vehicle raises the center of gravity and can further increase the risk of rollover.
- Always avoid driving crosswise on a slope ⇒ [Driving crosswise on a slope](#) .
- If stopped crosswise on a slope, never get out of the vehicle using the doors that face downhill. The combined center of gravity of the vehicle and its contents (passengers and load) can shift, causing the vehicle to tip over and roll down the slope. Always exit the vehicle calmly using the doors that face uphill ⇒ [Driving crosswise on a slope](#) .

## Before driving off-road

📖 Read and follow the introductory information and safety information first ⇒ [▲ Introduction to the subject](#)

## Checklist

**For your own safety and that of your passengers, carry out each of the following steps in the order listed before every off-road trip ⇒ ▲ :**

- ✓ Inform yourself thoroughly before exploring nature and the terrain you plan to visit.
- ✓ Do not plan extensive day trips. Consider the increased fuel consumption during off-road driving.
- ✓ Fill the fuel tank completely. Off-road driving consumes significantly more fuel than driving on the road.
- ✓ Check whether the tires are suitable for the off-road trip you are planning. For difficult terrain, always use special off-road tires.
- ✓ Check, and if necessary correct, the cold tire inflation pressure in all tires, including the collapsible spare tire (if any).
- ✓ Fill engine oil up to the MAX mark so the engine can be properly lubricated. This is especially important when driving through potholes and up and down hills.
- ✓ Completely refill the windshield washer reservoir with water and window washer fluid.
- ✓ Install a towing eye in the front and back of the vehicle. Once the vehicle gets stuck, it may no longer be possible to install a towing eye.
- ✓ Check the vehicle tool kit. Add tools and other gear based on the special requirements of the trip you will be taking Useful off-road driving equipment.
- ✓ Stow luggage as low and flat as possible in the vehicle. Safely secure all loose objects.

## Before driving off-road the first time

Before you drive your vehicle off-road, we urge you to take an appropriate off-road driving course. Taking a course is especially important if you have little or no

experience driving off-road. Even more experienced off-roaders can benefit from an off-road driving course.


A good course can show you how to handle the vehicle in a wide range of off-road situations and how to more safely deal with difficult terrain. Driving off-road demands a different attitude and very different skills compared with highway driving. Your safety and that of your passengers will depend on your knowledge, skill, and caution as a driver ⇒ ▲.

#### WARNING

Disregarding the safety-related checklist may lead to accidents and serious personal injuries.

- Always review and follow the checklist above. Follow commonly accepted safety practices and use common sense.
- All occupants must sit properly and wear safety belts whenever the vehicle is moving.

## General rules and good driving practices

 Read and follow the introductory information and safety information first ⇒ ▲ *Introduction to the subject*

### Off-road rules of conduct

Always be responsible and respect the environment when driving off-road. Driving through undergrowth and over meadows can destroy areas where animals live.

- Only drive where it is permitted.
- Keep noise and dust to a minimum.
- Leave nature as you found it.
- Always stay on designated trails and paths.
- Avoid sensitive natural habitats.
- Yield to drivers who are driving uphill or passing.

### Good driving practices

Special rules apply to off-road driving ⇒ ▲:

- Never drive off-road alone. At least 2 off-road vehicles should travel together. Unexpected situations can occur. For this reason, take along the equipment you need to call for help in case of an emergency.
- Stop and explore the route on foot wherever necessary and always before traveling over difficult trails or terrain.
- Drive over hill crests slowly. Otherwise, the vehicle can tip and be damaged and disabled.
- Drive slowly through difficult terrain segments. On slippery surfaces, upshift and keep the vehicle moving.
- Look for terrain that is firm and stable. Off-road ground is frequently soft, and the tires can sink into it. This reduces ground clearance and fording depth.
- Even at low speeds, always follow other vehicles at a safe distance. If the first vehicle suddenly gets stuck, the second vehicle can still stop in time without getting stuck as well.


#### WARNING

Off-road driving can be dangerous, can lead to accidents, vehicle damage, stranding in remote areas, and serious personal injury.

- Never drive too fast or for terrain and weather conditions.
- Always adjust your speed and driving style to road, terrain, traffic, and weather conditions.
- Always avoid sudden, sharp maneuvers that increase the risk of loss of vehicle control or getting stuck.
- When driving off-road look and think ahead, expect the unexpected.
- To reduce the risk of loss of control and serious personal injury, never use the cruise control when driving off-road. Cruise control is designed for highway use. It is completely unsuitable for off-road situations and can even be dangerous when used off-road.

#### NOTE

Always make sure the vehicle has enough ground clearance. Severe damage to the underbody can occur if the vehicle bottoms out. The damage could disable the vehicle and leave you stranded.

 Tread lightly is an educational program designed to increase public awareness of land use regulations and responsibilities in our nation's wilderness areas. Volkswagen supports the U.S. Forest Service and the Bureau of Land Management in encouraging you to preserve our national forests and other public and private lands by treading lightly.

## Technical terms explained

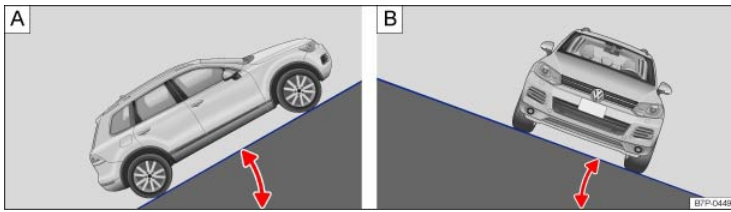


Fig. 181 Illustration of grade (gradient angle) A and lateral angle B.

Read and follow the introductory information and safety information first ⇒ [Introduction to the subject](#)

**The technical data in the table below only apply to ideal conditions. The values were determined on flat, firm, and non-slippery road surfaces and under dry weather conditions.**

Changes in vehicle load and the condition of the ground and the surroundings will affect the stated maximum values. The maximum values do not apply, for example, to off-road situations and will also be lower on hard, firm surfaces if ideal conditions do not exist. As the driver, you are always responsible for deciding whether your vehicle is able to handle a particular situation ⇒ [▲](#).

Term	Explanation	Technical data
Ground clearance	This is the vertical distance between the level ground and the lowest part on the vehicle.	Front: maximum 8.6 inches (214 mm). Rear: maximum 10.4 inches (261 mm).
Fording depth in standing water	Distance between the point on the ground that touches the tire and the engine air intake duct.	Maximum 20 inches (500 mm).
Gradient angle	The number of feet (meters) in altitude gained when traveling 100 ft (30.48 m) is given as a percentage or in degrees ⇒ <a href="#">Fig. 181 A</a> .  Information on the maximum slope the vehicle can climb unassisted (depends on road surface and engine power).	Maximum permissible 31 degrees (corresponds to 60 %).
Lateral angle (vehicle slope)	The maximum angle the vehicle may be driven across terrain without the vehicle rolling over (depends on height of center of gravity)  ⇒ <a href="#">Fig. 181 B</a> .	Maximum permissible 35 degrees.
Breakover angle	Maximum permitted angle given in degrees that a vehicle driven at low speed can clear a ramp without the underbody of the vehicle scraping the ramp	Maximum 20 degrees.
Approach/departure angle	Transition from horizontal plane to a slope, or from a slope to flat ground.  Maximum angle in degrees the vehicle can be driven at low speed along an embankment without the bumper or underbody scraping.	Front: maximum 25 degrees. Rear: maximum 26 degrees.
Fall line	This is the vertical drop route.	
Articulation	Articulation capability of the vehicle while driving on one side over an object.	



## ⚠ WARNING

Never exceed the recommended maximum values in the above table. Exceeding these values will result in serious personal injury and/or damage to your vehicle.

- All values listed above are for ideal conditions and assume firm, even surfaces that are dry and not slippery.
- Off-road conditions will always be less than ideal. Always reduce the maximum values listed in the table above to allow an adequate margin of safety between the ideal maximum value and your vehicle's actual off-road situation.

## Useful off-road driving equipment

📖 Read and follow the introductory information and safety information first ⇒ [⚠ Introduction to the subject](#)

The checklist lists only a few of the items that could be very helpful when driving off-road ⇒ [⚠](#). If you have user's manuals or assembly instructions for the listed extra equipment, take them with you off-road and heed them.

## Checklist

**Checklist: Useful off-road driving equipment** ⇒ [⚠](#) :

- ✓ Water, compass, maps, flashlight and spare batteries.
- ✓ Cable winch, tow rod or tow rope strong enough for your vehicle.
- ✓ Mobile phone, shovel, blankets, and rubber boots, tape measure, and yardstick.
- ✓ Vehicles without tire mobility set: Electric air compressor to connect to the 12 Volt socket in the vehicle for inflating the tires.
- ✓ A wooden plank about 2 inches thick and 3 feet long or similar aluminum frame as traction aid for a stuck vehicle or as a base for the vehicle jack.
- ✓ Snow chains for all 4 tires, additional spare tires, and tire mobility set.

## ⚠ WARNING

Accidents and severe personal injury can result from the improper use of tools or equipment as well as from the use of tools or equipment that are damaged or not right for the job to be done.

## Safety and off-road driving

📖 Read and follow the introductory information and safety information first ⇒ [⚠ Introduction to the subject](#)

Proper seating position and safety belt use is always important, regardless of whether you are on the highway or driving off-road.

- Every person in the vehicle must sit properly and wear his or her safety belt whenever the vehicle is moving ⇒ [Adjusting the seating position](#).
- Every occupant must properly fasten the safety belt belonging to the seat he or she occupies and keep the belt properly fastened while riding in the vehicle. This applies to the driver and all passengers, even when driving off-road ⇒ [Safety belts](#).

Safety belts save lives – on the road and off.

### Distance to the steering wheel

When driving off-road, you may want to sit a little differently than you would for normal highway driving.

Depending on the terrain, you may need more strength to control the steering wheel because of the higher forces that can come up from the front wheels.

Sit so that you can clearly see the terrain in front of you, especially when you are driving up or down slopes. Never sit so that the distance from the center of your breast bone to the center of the airbag cover on the steering wheel is less than 10 inches (25 cm) ⇒ [Adjusting the seating position](#).

### Suitable shoes

Never wear shoes with a slippery sole or high-heels when driving off-road, and never drive off-road barefoot. Always wear shoes that support your feet properly and give you a good feel for the pedals.

## ⚠ WARNING

Not wearing safety belts, or wearing them improperly will increase the risk of serious injuries when driving off-road. Holding the steering wheel improperly will reduce your ability to control the vehicle and can also increase the risk of injury when driving off-road.

- Properly worn safety belts are the single most effective means of reducing the risk of serious injury and death during sudden braking or driving maneuvers and in automobile accidents. For this reason, always wear your safety belt properly and make sure all passengers wear their safety belts properly as well whenever the vehicle is moving.
- Never wrap your thumbs around the steering wheel rim. When driving off-road, obstacles in front of the wheels can make the steering wheel jerk suddenly in your hands and cause personal injury. Rest your thumbs pointing up on the on the surface of the steering wheel at the 3 and 9 o'clock positions.

## Off-road driving situations

### Introduction to the subject

In this chapter you will find information on the following subjects:

⇒ *Selecting the right gear*

⇒ *Off-road mode*

⇒ *Driving in rough terrain*

⇒ *Driving through water*

⇒ *Driving over snow-covered terrain*

⇒ *Driving in steep terrain*

⇒ *Driving crosswise on a slope*

⇒ *Avoiding deep ruts and depressions*

⇒ *Crossing ditches*

⇒ *Driving in sand and mud*

⇒ *If the vehicle is stuck*

⇒ *After driving off-road*

Driving off-road: Drive at a crawl; don't speed! Even harmless-looking areas can be dangerous ⇒ .

Volkswagen recommends that you get out of the vehicle and explore the terrain personally before trying to cross it. Walk the area and make sure that the ground is firm enough. Check for obstacles or other hidden dangers. Always obey local requirements and regulations; follow commonly accepted safety practices and use common sense ⇒ .

The examples discussed in this chapter are intended to help you drive safely off-road. But the situation facing you may not fit any of these examples.

The wide range of terrain you can come up against, as well the risks and dangers it may hide, make it impossible to deal with every conceivable situation in this Manual. The examples in this chapter are only general guidelines to help you drive safely off-road. The guidelines may not apply in every situation you encounter. Therefore, it is vital that you know what lies ahead and evaluate possible dangers before you try to drive over difficult or unfamiliar terrain. This will help you to evaluate and prepare for possible dangers.



If necessary, use traction assistance systems while driving off-road but do not use any other driver assistance systems. All other driver assistance systems were designed only for driving on paved roads and must not be used for off-road driving.

### WARNING

Areas that look harmless can, in fact, be very dangerous. Potholes, ditches, trenches, drop-offs, different kinds of obstacles, and soft or swampy ground often cannot be seen and can be partially or fully covered by water, grass, branches, or other things. Driving over such terrain can cause accidents and severe injuries.

- Before crossing an unknown area, carefully explore the route you plan to take on foot.
- Never choose a risky route or run a risk that will endanger you and your passengers. If you have any doubts as to whether the route is safe, turn around use a different route.
- Always adapt driving speed and style to load, terrain, visibility, and weather conditions.

## Selecting the right gear

 Read and follow the introductory information and safety information first ⇒  *Introduction to the subject*

Different kinds of terrain require different gears. Selecting the right one helps you to get through safely.

Before driving over a difficult section, think carefully about which gear you should select. With time, you will learn which gear is best for various types of terrain.

### Basics

- If you select the right gear you will usually not have to slow the vehicle down with the foot brake when driving down slopes - the engine will brake the vehicle. You will then only have to use the brake when the braking power of the engine is not enough.

- Never accelerate more than necessary when driving off-road. If you accelerate too hard, the wheels could lose traction and you could lose control of the vehicle.

#### Automatic transmission

- Use selector lever position **(D)** when driving on ordinary level areas.
- Use Tiptronic mode and put the vehicle in **2nd** or **3rd** gear when driving through moderately difficult off-road terrain, for example mud, sand, water, or hills ⇒ *Shifting*.
- Use Tiptronic mode and shift into **1st** gear when driving up or down steep hills ⇒ *Shifting*. Use Hill Start Assist (Hill Hold) ⇒ *Starting assistance systems*.
- On soft or slippery surfaces, drive at an appropriate speed and in the highest possible driving range of the Tiptronic.

#### Off-road mode



Fig. 182 In the lower front center console: Rotary knob (4MOTION).

Read and follow the introductory information and safety information first ⇒ [Introduction to the subject](#)

*Off-road mode* is a special driving mode that adjusts the vehicle's performance for off-road driving situations ⇒ . This setting affects the following systems and features:

- ESC, ASR, EDL, and ABS.
- Hill Descent Control.

The speeds at which the automatic transmission shifts gears are affected.

#### Switching off ASR and ESC on some models

On all models, you can switch off Anti-Slip Regulation (ASR) by pushing the button in the lower front center console (see ⇒ *Braking and parking*).

On some models, you can also use this button to switch off the entire Electronic Stability Control (ESC) when the vehicle is in *Off-road mode*.

Press and hold button	Status
Up to 3 seconds	ASR switched off.
3 to 10 seconds	ESC switched off.

If you switch from *Off-road mode* back to *On-road mode*, ESC is automatically switched back on again if it was off. However, ASR remains disabled.

#### WARNING

Never drive on paved roads in *Off-road mode*. This can cause dangerous driving situations, accidents, and severe personal injuries.

- This mode is designed solely for off-road driving. If used on paved roads, the ESC, ASR, EDL, and ABS systems can affect vehicle handling and make it unstable.
- Always make sure to switch off *Off-road mode* as soon as you are back on a paved road.

#### Driving in rough terrain

Read and follow the introductory information and safety information first ⇒ [Introduction to the subject](#)

#### Driving tips


- Drive no faster than a crawl over rocky sections.
- Drive around obstacles such as rocks wherever possible. If this is not possible:
- Carefully advance until one front wheel is *on* the rock and then slowly drive over it ⇒ .

#### NOTE


- If you are facing a large rock or tree stump or other large obstacle, do not attempt to drive straight over it or to climb over it with just 2 wheels. A rock or other obstacle that is too high for your vehicle to clear will damage and may disable the vehicle if you try to drive over it. You could be stranded far away

from help. Never let large obstacles pass under the vehicle. If there is no way around them and they are too large to drive over, back up and find another route.

- Even obstacles that are lower than your vehicle's ground clearance can come into contact with the underbody and damage or disable your vehicle. Such obstacles are especially dangerous when the ground around them is soft or there is a dip right in front of or behind them. They are also dangerous if you drive over them too quickly and the shock absorbers are compressed.

 Leaking engine oil and brake fluid can pollute the environment. Collect leaking operating fluids and dispose of them properly in accordance with applicable environmental laws and regulations.


## Driving through water


 Read and follow the introductory information and safety information first ⇒ [▲ Introduction to the subject](#)

Important factors when deciding whether to drive through water:


- Water depth.
- Strength of the current.
- Firmness of stream bed and bank.
- Shape of the bank.
- Objects in the water.
- Maximum fording depth of the vehicle .

Before driving through water

Stop, get out of the vehicle, and assess the situation ⇒ :

- Measure water depth from one side to the other. Check the firmness of the bed and banks; check for drop-offs and obstacles in the water ⇒ .
- Make sure it is possible to enter and exit the water safely.
- Check the angle of the embankment and the firmness of the ground on each bank.
- Switch to off-road mode.

Driving through standing and slow-moving water


The vehicle can drive through standing water if the ground under the water is firm enough ⇒ . Never exceed maximum fording depth .

- Drive slowly into a river in the direction of the flow. Never exceed the departure/approach angle and lateral angle (vehicle slope).
- Always drive at a constant speed to the other side.

This will help prevent engine damage from the water. It also allows an air pocket to form in front of the engine that can supply it with the necessary air.

Entering the water quickly or driving too fast through the water will create a bow wave. A bow wave can force its way into the engine air intake duct and seriously damage the engine.

Driving through fast-moving water

Driving through fast-moving water is very dangerous ⇒ .

The vehicle can be swept away by the current. Even vehicles with high ground clearance can get stuck if the ground is washed out from under the tires. Fast-moving water will build up against the side of your vehicle. This will make the water deeper. Always think about this before entering the water. Water volume, speed and depth can be very unpredictable and dangerous.

If you are uncertain how fast the water is flowing, look for a shallower place where you can cross in safety. If you cannot find a safe place to cross, turn back.

Headlight washer system instructions

Do not use the headlight washer system when driving through water. Things in the water can enter into the openings when the washer nozzles are extended. This can prevent the washer nozzles from retracting to their normal position. If this should happen, carefully remove the objects.

After driving through water

- After crossing through deep water, stop the engine and check the oil dipstick. If there are beads of water on the oil dipstick or the oil level has increased, do not start the engine. Change the engine oil immediately. Depending on the amount of water in the oil, running or starting the engine can result in engine failure or serious engine damage.
- Always dry the brakes by braking a couple of times.
- After driving through water, have the vehicle drive train and electrical system thoroughly inspected for damage by an authorized Volkswagen dealer or an authorized Volkswagen Service Facility.

## ⚠ WARNING

Flowing water is very powerful and can sweep your vehicle away. This can lead create an extremely dangerous situation and cause an accident with serious personal injuries.

- Never take routes or risks that could put you or your passengers in danger. If you cannot go on or have doubts about the safety of your route, turn back and take a new route.
- Never stop in the water.
- If water gets into the engine, your vehicle can break down. You will lose control of a broken down vehicle, and it can be swept away.
- Soft surfaces, mud, underwater obstacles, and holes can cause accidents and can cause the vehicle to break down in the water. This can lead pose extreme danger.
- Rapidly flowing water can develop strong forces that can pull the vehicle downstream. This can cause accidents and fatal injuries.
- Drive through water only where the banks and bottom are firm enough and the water is shallower at all points than the maximum permissible fording depth for your vehicle .

## ℹ NOTE

- Vehicle components such as the engine, drive train, suspension or electrical system may be severely damaged by driving through water.
- Avoid stopping in deep water. This can let water get inside the vehicle.
- On soft ground, the tires dig into the surface. This reduces fording depth. Make sure that the ground is sufficiently firm.
- Avoid creating a bow wave in front of the vehicle while driving through water. A bow wave could force its way into the engine air intake duct and seriously damage the engine.
- If you even briefly exceed the maximum fording depth when driving through water, severe engine damage will result. This engine damage will lead to a vehicle breakdown. This can disable the vehicle in the water.
- Never drive over salt flats or through salt or salty water. Salt causes vehicle corrosion. Rinse all parts of the vehicle that were exposed to salt or salt water right away with fresh water.

## Driving over snow-covered terrain

📖 Read and follow the introductory information and safety information first ⇒ [▲ Introduction to the subject](#)

Install snow chains on all 4 tires before driving over snow-covered terrain.

Snow-covered terrain may look harmless but the snow can hide many dangers. This is particularly true for stretches where you can't see the tracks left by other vehicles.

## ⚠ WARNING

Driving through snow-covered terrain is very dangerous.

- Never take routes or risks that could put you or your passengers in danger. If you cannot go on or have doubts about the safety of your route, turn back and take a new route.
- Potholes, ruts, ditches, drop-offs, and other obstacles are often partially or completely hidden by the snow, especially when it is deep.
- Snow-covered dangers can lead to an accident, serious personal injury, or stranding under extreme weather conditions.
- Always adapt driving speed and style to load, terrain, visibility, and weather conditions.

## Driving in steep terrain

📖 Read and follow the introductory information and safety information first ⇒ [▲ Introduction to the subject](#)

Driving on slopes

**Before** driving up or down a slope, get out of the vehicle, explore the terrain, and assess the situation.

- Walk the grade you intend to drive, check the stretch for firmness and obstacles or other hidden dangers ⇒ [▲](#).
- Find out how the route continues at the end of a steep angle.
- If the route is too steep or too uneven or the ground is too loose, do not drive this route. Find an alternative.
- Drive at a constant speed straight up or down a slope.
- Use just as much power as needed to get up the slope. Too much power makes the tires slip, spin, or lose traction. This can increase your risk of losing control. However, too little power will increase the likelihood of stalling.
- Never stop or try to turn around on a slope.

- Do not let the engine stall.
- Do not change gears while climbing the slope.

If you get stuck while driving up a slope

- Never try to turn around.
- If your engine stalls, apply the foot brake and restart the engine.
- Shift into reverse and back your vehicle carefully straight down the slope.
- Use the brake to keep the speed steady when backing down to a safe place.

Driving down a slope

Never exceed the vehicle's maximum lateral angle (vehicle slope). If an emergency forces you to cross the slope and the vehicle threatens to roll over, immediately steer the vehicle downhill along the fall line.

There is an increased risk of rollover when driving down a slope. For this reason, concentrate on steering safely down the slope.

Use Hill Descent Control on steep descents.

- Drive down steep slopes in first gear.
- Gently apply the foot brake to help keep the vehicle under control.
- If it is possible and if it is not dangerous, drive straight down the fall line (maximum slope).
- Do not shift into Neutral **(N)**.

### ⚠ WARNING

Never try to drive up or down slopes that are too steep for your vehicle. The vehicle could slide away, tip over, or roll over.

- Never take routes or risks that could put you or your passengers in danger. If you cannot go on or have doubts about the safety of your route, turn back and take a new route.
- The lateral angle must never be more than the maximum angle approved for the vehicle.
- Always drive along the fall line when driving up or down a slope.
- Never try to turn the vehicle around on a slope. The vehicle could tip over or roll down the slope.
- If the engine stalls or you can no longer drive up the slope for any reason, stop and apply the foot brake. If stalled, apply the foot brake and restart the engine. Then shift into Reverse **(R)** and carefully back your vehicle straight down the slope along the fall line. Keep the vehicle speed slow and even.
- If the engine will not restart, apply constant pressure to the foot brake and carefully back straight down the slope the same way you drove up. Keep the vehicle speed slow and even.
- If the engine is running, select Reverse and carefully back straight down the slope the same way you drove up. Use engine braking power and the foot brake to keep the vehicle speed slow and even.
- Never just roll down a slope with the transmission in Neutral **(N)**. You could lose control of the vehicle.

## Driving crosswise on a slope



Fig. 183 Steer downhill along the fall line.

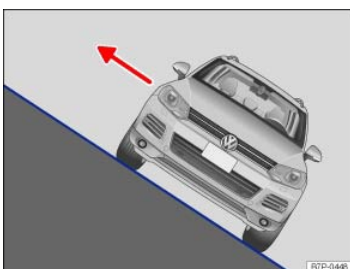




Fig. 184 On a slope, always exit on the uphill side of the vehicle.

 Read and follow the introductory information and safety information first ⇒ [▲ Introduction to the subject](#)

Driving crosswise on a slope is one of the most dangerous off-road driving situations ⇒ .

Even if it seems harmless, never underestimate the difficulties and hazards when driving crosswise on a slope. A vehicle perpendicular to the slope of the hill can become uncontrollable and slide away, tip, or roll over. This could cause severe or fatal injuries to all occupants.


#### Driving at an angle to the slope

**Before** driving crosswise on a slope, check whether there is a different, safer route.

If you have to drive across a slope, first make sure the ground is firm and even along your route. If the ground is soft or slippery, the vehicle is more likely to slip away to the side. Make sure that the angle does not become too great due to surface unevenness. This can make the vehicle tip and roll over.

The steeper the slope across which the vehicle is moving, the more important it becomes to make sure the wheels on the lower side do not run over holes or depressions. The wheels on the high side must never run over protruding rocks, tree stumps, or other obstacles.

If the vehicle threatens to tip, immediately steer downhill into the fall line and gently accelerate ⇒ [Fig. 183](#). If it is not possible to steer down the fall line, steer uphill and gently accelerate.

The vehicle center of gravity should be as low as possible. The weight of all passengers should be evenly distributed. Taller or heavier passengers should sit on the higher side of the vehicle. Luggage on the roof should be removed and heavy objects should be secured, as the vehicle could tilt due to the sudden shifting of objects in the vehicle ⇒ .

While driving across the slope, passengers on the rear bench should always sit on the uphill side of the vehicle. In extreme cases, passengers on the downhill side must get out of the vehicle until the hill has been safely crossed.

#### Exiting on a hillside

If the vehicle comes to a standstill at a significantly tilted angle on the hillside, all passengers should exit the vehicle on the uphill side ⇒ [Fig. 184](#). This applies even if the uphill door is hard to open. The uphill-side door may swing shut due to its weight or carelessness.

### WARNING

Never try to drive crosswise on a slope, especially one that is too steep for your vehicle. The vehicle could slide sideways and tumble down the slope. To reduce the risk of accidents and serious injuries:

- Never underestimate the difficulties and dangers of driving crosswise on a slope. Never take routes or risks that could put you or your passengers in danger. If you cannot go on or have doubts about the safety of your route, turn back and take a different route.
- When driving crosswise on a hill, the vehicle can lose its hold, slide sideways, tip or turn over and roll down the hill.
- Make certain that the wheels on the downhill side of the vehicle do not run over holes or depressions. Make certain that the wheels on the high side of the vehicle do not run over rocks, tree stumps, or protruding objects.
- Before driving crosswise on a hill, check whether it is possible to steer into the fall line along the selected route. If this is not possible, select a different route. If the vehicle threatens to tip, immediately steer downhill into the fall line and gently accelerate ⇒ [Fig. 183](#).
- If the vehicle is stopped a hillside and is laterally tilted, avoid sudden and uncontrolled movement in the vehicle. The vehicle can lose its hold, slide sideways, tip, or turn over and roll down the hill.
- If the vehicle is stopped at while pointed crosswise on a steep slope, make certain that no one exits the vehicle through a door on the downhill side. This can shift the vehicle center of gravity to the downhill side. The can tilt or roll over and roll down the hill. To help minimize this risk, always exit the vehicle through the doors that are facing uphill ⇒ [Fig. 184](#).
- When getting out, make certain that doors opened on the uphill side are not closed carelessly and do not swing shut due to their own weight and injure anybody.

## Avoiding deep ruts and depressions

 Read and follow the introductory information and safety information first ⇒ [▲ Introduction to the subject](#)

Ruts are very common on forest trails, in grassland and fields, as well as on much-used cross-country lanes.


If the ruts and depressions are firm and shallow, simply follow the ruts.


Do not drive in ruts and depressions that are too deep ⇒ . If deep ruts and depressions cannot be avoided, turn around.

### NOTE

If ruts and depressions become too deep, the vehicle underbody can bottom out and get stuck. This can damage or even disable the vehicle.

## Crossing ditches

 Read and follow the introductory information and safety information first ⇒ [Introduction to the subject](#)

- Check whether the approach/departure angle and the lateral angle (tilt) are small enough to allow the vehicle to cross the ditch.
- If possible, cross the ditch at an acute angle ⇒ .
- This is only possible if the lateral angle (side-to-side tilt) is not too large.


#### WARNING

If the approach/departure angle or the lateral angle of the ditch are too steep for the vehicle, do not attempt to cross the ditch. The vehicle can fall over on its side, slide sideways, or turn over.



#### NOTE

If you enter at right angles to the ditch, the front wheels will fall into the ditch. The underbody of the vehicle can get stuck and the vehicle can be damaged or disabled. Getting out of a ditch without assistance is rarely possible, even with all-wheel drive.

## Driving in sand and mud


 Read and follow the introductory information and safety information first ⇒ [Introduction to the subject](#)

Always drive at a constant speed through sand and mud; do not shift gears manually and do not stop.

- Check whether ESC is active. The indicator light  or  in the instrument cluster must both be off ⇒ [Braking and parking](#).
- Select a suitable gear and remain in this gear until solid ground is reached ⇒ [Selecting the right gear](#).
- Always keep the vehicle moving.

Never drive too fast through sand and mud. The wheels may spin and the vehicle can get stuck. If the tires no longer grip, turn the steering wheel back and forth slightly in short, quick movements. This can improve front wheel traction when driving in sand and mud.

### Driving through sand

Never reduce tire inflation pressure before driving through sand ⇒ . If you have reduced the tire pressure to drive through sand, make sure to correct the tire pressure afterwards before driving any farther. Driving with reduced tire pressure can make you lose control of the vehicle and increase the risk of serious or fatal injuries.

### Driving through mud

Do not change your speed or your direction. The tires can lose their grip in mud. If the vehicle skids, steer in the direction the vehicle is sliding to try to get it back under control.

#### WARNING

Driving through sand and mud can be dangerous. The vehicle can skid out of control and crash, causing serious injuries. Always drive carefully when driving in sand and mud.

- Never take routes or risks that could put you or your passengers in danger. If you cannot go on or have doubts about the safety of your route, turn back and take a different route.

#### WARNING

Driving on tires that are not inflated to the correct cold tire inflation pressure can cause an accident with serious or fatal injuries.

- If the tires are not inflated to the correct pressure, they will wear out faster and the vehicle will not handle as well.
- Incorrect tire pressure can make tires overheat, resulting in tire damage including tire tread separation and sudden blowouts that can make you lose control of the vehicle.

## If the vehicle is stuck

 Read and follow the introductory information and safety information first ⇒ [Introduction to the subject](#)

It takes experience and a fine touch to rock a vehicle back and forth to get it going when it is stuck.

If you go about it the wrong way, you'll dig the vehicle in even deeper and need someone to tow you free.

### If the vehicle won't budge

- Carefully dig out all 4 wheels and make sure that no other parts of the vehicle are stuck in the sand.
- Select reverse gear.



- Carefully accelerate and try to back up in your own track.

If this doesn't help, try placing brushwood, floor mats, or burlap sackcloth directly in front of the tires to improve grip and traction ⇒ ▲.

### Rocking the vehicle free

Don't spin the wheels. It's unlikely to help you get going and all but certain to dig you in even deeper if you do it too much ⇒ ▲.

- Switch off Anti-Slip Regulation (ASR) ⇒ *Braking and parking*.
- Switch to *off-road mode*.
- Turn the steering wheel so that it points straight ahead.
- Shift into reverse and accelerate just to the point where the wheels first start to spin.
- Immediately engage first gear and accelerate again until the wheels just begin to spin.
- Repeat this process to get the vehicle to rock back and forth and then hopefully develop enough forward momentum to get going again.
- Once the vehicle is free, switch ASR back on ⇒ *Braking and parking*.

### ⚠ WARNING

Make sure there are no people or animals in front of or behind the vehicle, especially when it is stuck and you are trying to rock it loose.

- Stones, brush, pieces of wood, and other objects under the wheels can be thrown at great velocity when they spin. This can cause serious or even fatal injuries.
- If the stuck vehicle suddenly regains traction, it will lurch forward and can run over anybody who is standing too close to it in the front or in the back.

### After driving off-road

📖 Read and follow the introductory information and safety information first ⇒ ▲ *Introduction to the subject*

After an off-road drive, you always need to check the vehicle's underbody for damage and may need to clean the radiator grille ⇒ ▲.

### Checklist

**Checklist: Perform after every off-road drive** ⇒ ▲ :

- ✓ Turn the rotary knob in the front center console back to On-road mode and switch ASR/ESC back on Braking and parking.
- ✓ Clean the turn signal lights, the headlights and taillights, the license plate, and all windows.
- ✓ If required, remove the towing eye(s) and snow chains.
- ✓ Check tires, suspension struts, and axles for damage and remove coarse dirt, stones, and foreign objects from the tire tread.
- ✓ Examine the vehicle underbody and remove objects such as twigs, leaves, or bits of wood that have gotten stuck in the brake system, the wheels, the suspension, the exhaust system, of the engine . If damage or leaks are detected, see an authorized Volkswagen dealer or an authorized Volkswagen Service Facility.
- ✓ Remove coarse dirt from the radiator grille and the vehicle underbody Exterior care and cleaning.
- ✓ Check the engine compartment to for dirt that interferes with engine operation Working in the engine compartment.
- ✓ After driving in sandy or dusty areas, have the air cleaner checked, and if necessary cleaned by an authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility so that dust, sand, and grit does not get drawn into the engine.

### ⚠ WARNING

Objects trapped under the vehicle floor can damage the brake system, fuel lines, gaskets, and other underbody parts. Such objects can also ignite on contact with hot vehicle components. You must check after each off-road outing to see whether any foreign objects have gotten stuck in the vehicle underbody.

- Never drive the vehicle if any foreign objects are stuck in the brake system, the wheels, the suspension, the exhaust system, or the engine or engine compartment.
- Flammable materials such as dry leaves or twigs can catch fire from contact with hot vehicle components. A fire can cause serious personal injuries.
- Trapped objects can damage or block the fuel lines, the brake system, gaskets, and other parts of the suspension system. This can cause you to lose control of the vehicle and have an accident.

### ! NOTE

Dust, sand, grit, and other material that has collected in the air filter after driving in certain kinds of off-road terrain can be drawn into the engine and cause expensive damage. After driving off-road where it is very dusty or sandy, be sure to have the air filter checked and, if necessary, cleaned by an authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility.

# Care, cleaning, maintenance

## In the engine compartment

### Working in the engine compartment

#### Introduction to the subject

In this chapter you will find information on the following subjects:


⇒ *Warning light*

⇒ *Preparing to work in the engine compartment*

⇒ *Opening and closing the engine compartment*

Always position the vehicle on a firm and level surface before doing any work in the engine compartment.

The engine compartment of a vehicle is a hazardous area. Never do any work on the engine or in the engine compartment unless you

- know exactly how to carry out the job,
- have the correct technical information and the proper tools and supplies, and
- are familiar with the necessary safety precautions ⇒  !

If you are uncertain in any way, have the work done by an authorized Volkswagen dealer or an authorized Volkswagen Service Facility. Serious personal injury may result from improperly performed work.

#### WARNING

Unintended vehicle movement during maintenance work can cause serious personal injuries.

- Never work under the vehicle unless you have safely secured the vehicle from moving. If you must work under the vehicle with the wheels on the ground, always make sure that the vehicle is on level ground, that all 4 wheels are chocked to keep them from moving, and that the key is not in the ignition.
- If you must work under a vehicle raised on a floor jack, always make sure that the vehicle is safely supported on safety stands intended for that purpose that are strong enough to support the weight of the vehicle. The jack supplied with the vehicle is not strong enough for this purpose and can collapse causing serious personal injury.

#### WARNING

The engine compartment of any motor vehicle is a potentially dangerous area and can cause serious personal injury.

- Always use extreme caution when doing any work in the engine compartment. Always follow commonly accepted safety practices and use common sense. Never risk personal injury.
- Never perform any work in the engine compartment unless you know exactly how to carry out the job and have the correct technical information and the correct tools.
- If you are uncertain about what to do, have the work performed by an authorized Volkswagen dealer, an authorized Volkswagen Service Facility, or another qualified workshop. Serious personal injury may result from improperly performed work.
- We strongly recommend that you always have HID – High Intensity Discharge (Xenon) headlights and H7 bulbs replaced by a qualified technician. Serious personal injury may result from improperly performed work.
- Never open or close the engine hood if steam or coolant is escaping. Hot steam or coolant can cause serious burns. Always wait until you no longer see or hear steam or coolant escaping from the engine.
- Always let the engine cool down completely before carefully opening the hood.
- Hot parts of the engine and the exhaust system will burn skin on contact.
- When the engine has cooled down and you are ready to open the hood:
  - Apply the electronic parking brake and shift the transmission into Park **(P)**.
  - Take the vehicle key out of the ignition.
  - On vehicles with Keyless Access, make sure that the remote control vehicle key is out of range of the vehicle and that the vehicle cannot be started by depressing the starter button.
  - Always keep children and others away from the engine compartment and never leave them unsupervised.
- The engine coolant system is under pressure when the engine is hot. Never unscrew the coolant expansion tank cap when the engine is hot. Hot coolant can spray out and cause severe burns and other serious injuries.
  - Turn the cap slowly and very carefully in a counterclockwise direction while applying light downward pressure on the top of the cap.

- Always protect your face, hands, and arms from hot escaping coolant or steam by covering the cap with a large, thick rag.
- Never spill fluids on the engine or exhaust system when refilling. Spilling fluids onto hot parts of the engine or exhaust system can cause a fire.

#### WARNING

High voltage systems in the engine compartment can cause electrical shocks or even electrocution, severe burns, other serious injuries, and even death!

- Never short-circuit the electrical system. Be especially careful when using jumper cables. The vehicle's battery could explode!
- To reduce the risk of electrical shock and personal injury while the engine is running or being started:
  - Never touch ignition cables. Never touch other components of the high-voltage electronic ignition system.
  - Never touch the wiring of the HID – High Intensity Discharge (Xenon) headlights.
- Read and heed the important information and warnings on cleaning the engine compartment [Cleaning the engine compartment](#).

#### WARNING

Moving parts in the engine compartment can cause serious personal injury on contact.

- Never reach into the area around or touch the radiator fan. Contact with the blades can cause serious personal injury. Always remember that the radiator fan is temperature-controlled and can come on suddenly even when the engine has been switched off for a while and the key has been removed from the ignition.
- If you have to perform a check or repair when the engine is running, there are more risks from the rotating parts, such as the drive belts, alternator, radiator fan, etc., and from the high-voltage ignition system. Always use extreme care.
  - Always make sure that jewelry, loose clothing and long hair do not get caught in rotating engine parts. Before starting any work remove your jewelry, take off your necktie, tie back and cover your hair, and do not wear clothing that can hang down and get caught in moving engine parts.
  - Always use extreme caution if the accelerator pedal has to be depressed to perform a check. The vehicle will start to move even if the parking brake is on.
- Never leave any objects in the engine compartment, for example cleaning rags and tools. Objects left behind can cause malfunctions, engine damage, and even fires.


#### WARNING

Operating fluids and some materials in the engine compartment can catch fire easily, causing burns and other serious personal injuries!


- Do not smoke.
- Never work next to open flames or sparks.
- Never pour or spill operating fluids or other flammable liquids on the engine. These fluids can ignite on hot engine parts and cause injuries.
- If work on the fuel system or the electrical system is necessary:
  - Always disconnect the 12 Volt vehicle battery. Make sure the vehicle is unlocked when you disconnect the battery, or the alarm will go off. Never touch the electrical wiring of the ignition system.
  - Never work near heaters, water heaters, or other open flames.
- Always have a functional, approved fire extinguisher nearby.

#### NOTE

When changing or topping off fluids, make sure that you pour the fluids into the correct reservoirs. Adding the wrong type of operating fluids will cause serious malfunctions and engine damage!

 Fluid leaks are harmful to the environment. Regularly check the ground underneath your vehicle for this reason. If you find spots of oil or other fluids, have your vehicle checked by your authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility. Dispose of leaked operating fluids properly.

## Warning light

 Read and follow the introductory information and safety information first ⇒ [Introduction to the subject](#)

Lights up	Possible cause	Proper response
-----------	----------------	-----------------


Lights up	Possible cause	Proper response
-----------	----------------	-----------------

**Stop!**

**Engine hood not properly closed.**

Close the engine hood.

When the ignition is switched on, several warning and indicator lights come on briefly for a function check. They go out after a few seconds.

If the engine hood is open or not closed properly, the warning light  comes on in the instrument cluster.


Depending on your vehicle's equipment and options, a symbol showing that the hood is not properly closed may appear in the instrument cluster display instead of the warning light. The symbol will still be displayed even after the ignition is switched off. The display goes out about 15 seconds after the vehicle has been locked with the doors closed.

**WARNING**

Failure to heed warning lights and instrument cluster text messages can cause the vehicle to break down in traffic and result in a collision and serious personal injury.

- Never ignore warning lights or text WARNINGS.
- Always stop the vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so.

### Preparing to work in the engine compartment

 Read and follow the introductory information and safety information first ⇒ [Introduction to the subject](#)

### Checklist

**Before any work in the engine compartment, carry out the following steps in the order in which they are listed ⇒  :**

- ✓ Park the vehicle in a safe place on a firm, level surface.
- ✓ Hold the brake pedal down until the engine is switched off.
- ✓ Apply the electronic parking brake to help prevent the vehicle from moving Braking and parking.
- ✓ Shift the transmission into Park (P) Shifting.
- ✓ Stop the engine and remove the key from the ignition switch Starting and stopping the engine.
- ✓ Let the engine cool down sufficiently.
- ✓ Keep children and others away from the vehicle.
- ✓ Make sure the vehicle cannot move unexpectedly.

**WARNING**

Disregarding the safety-related checklist may result in serious injuries.

- Always review and follow the checklist. Follow accepted safety practices and use common sense.

### Opening and closing the engine compartment



Fig. 185 Inside hood release lever in the footwell on the driver side.

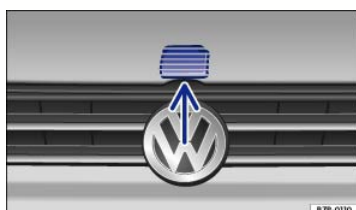






Fig. 186 Outside hood release in the radiator grille.

 Read and follow the introductory information and safety information first ⇒ [Introduction to the subject](#)

### Opening the engine hood

- Before you open the hood, make sure that the windshield wiper arms are resting on the windshield ⇒ .
- Open the driver door and pull the inside hood release lever in the direction of the arrow ⇒ [Fig. 185](#).
- The engine hood is released from its latch by a spring ⇒ .
- Push the outside hood release lever ⇒ [Fig. 186](#) (arrow) and lift the hood all the way up. A gas-filled strut will hold the hood up.

### Closing the engine hood

- Pull the hood down to overcome the resistance of the gas-pressure strut ⇒ .
- Let the engine hood drop into the hood latch – do *not* press it afterwards!

If the hood does not close completely, open it again and close it properly.

When the hood is properly closed, you can see that it fits flush with the other body parts. The indicator light in the instrument cluster will go out ⇒ [Warning light](#).

### WARNING

If the hood is not closed properly, it could fly up and block your view while you are driving. This can lead to a crash and serious personal injuries.

- After closing the engine hood, check that the hood release lever is properly latched into the hood latch. The engine hood must be flush with the surrounding auto body parts.
- If you ever notice that the hood latch is not properly secured when the vehicle is moving, stop at once and close it.
- Never let anyone get in the way of the hood when closing it.

### NOTE

- Make sure the windshield wipers are switched off and the windshield wiper arms are resting on the windshield before you open the hood. Otherwise, the windshield wipers and the hood may be damaged.
- Always put the windshield wiper arms down against the windshield before driving the vehicle.

### NOTE

Before opening or closing the engine hood, make sure there is enough room to do so, for example when the vehicle is in a garage.

## Engine oil

### Introduction to the subject

In this chapter you will find information on the following subjects:

⇒ [Warning and indicator lights](#)

⇒ [Engine oil specifications](#)

⇒ [Engine oil capacities](#)

⇒ [Checking the engine oil level and adding oil](#)


⇒ [Engine oil consumption](#)

⇒ [Changing engine oil](#)

### WARNING


Improper handling of engine oil can cause severe burns and other serious injuries.






- Always wear eye protection.
- Engine oil is poisonous and must be stored out of the reach of children.
- Store engine oil only in the closed original container. This also applies to used oil until disposal.
- To reduce the risk of poisoning, never drain the oil into empty food or beverage containers that might mislead someone into drinking from them.
- Continuous contact with used engine oil is harmful to your skin. Always protect your skin by washing thoroughly with soap and water.
- Engine oil becomes extremely hot when the engine is running and can cause severe burns. Always let the engine cool down to the touch.

 Like all other operating fluids, engine oil can pollute the environment. Collect leaked or spilled operating fluids and dispose of them properly in accordance with

applicable environmental laws and regulations.

## Warning and indicator lights

 Read and follow the introductory information and safety information first ⇒ [▲ Introduction to the subject](#)

Lights up	Possible cause	Proper response
	Engine oil pressure too low.	<p> <b>Stop!</b></p> <p>Switch off the engine. Check the engine oil level ⇒ <a href="#">Checking the engine oil level and adding oil.</a></p> <p>– If the warning light flashes although the oil level is normal, <i>do not</i> continue driving or let the engine idle. Otherwise, the engine could be damaged.</p>
	Engine oil level too low.	<p>Stop the engine. Check the engine oil level ⇒ <a href="#">Checking the engine oil level and adding oil.</a></p>
	Engine oil pressure too low.	<p>Without exceeding the maximum engine speed (rpm) shown in the instrument cluster display, drive to a qualified workshop and have the system checked.</p>
Flashes	Possible cause	Proper response
	Engine oil system malfunction.	<p>Have the engine oil sensor checked by an authorized Volkswagen dealer or an authorized Volkswagen Service Facility.</p>

When the ignition is switched on, several warning and indicator lights come on briefly for a function check. They go out after a few seconds.

### WARNING

Failure to heed warning lights and instrument cluster text messages can cause the vehicle to break down in traffic and result in a collision and serious personal injury.

- Never ignore warning lights or text WARNINGS.
- Always stop the vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so.

### NOTE

Failure to heed warning lights or text WARNINGS can result in vehicle damage.

## Engine oil specifications

 Read and follow the introductory information and safety information first ⇒ [▲ Introduction to the subject](#)

The engine oil used must conform to exact specifications.

Using the proper engine oil is important for the functionality and service life of the engine. Your engine was factory-filled with a high-quality multi-grade oil which can usually be used throughout the entire year.

Engine oils are constantly being improved. Authorized Volkswagen dealers and authorized Volkswagen Service Facilities are always up-to-date regarding new developments and changes. Volkswagen therefore recommends that you have the engine oil changed by an authorized Volkswagen dealer or an authorized Volkswagen Service Facility.

Engine oil quality is based not only on requirements for engines and exhaust treatment systems, but also on fuel quality. Engine oil comes into contact with fuel and fuel residue in all internal combustion engines, causing engine oil to age and its lubricating qualities to deteriorate.

Your engine was factory-filled with a high-quality, synthetic all-season engine oil that meets strict Volkswagen oil quality standards and has a viscosity grade of SAE 5W-40. You can use this oil for normal driving in all temperatures.

If you need to add oil between oil changes, use only a high quality oil that expressly complies with the Volkswagen oil quality standard specified for your vehicle's engine:

Engines	Engine oil specification
	VW 502 00,
Gasoline engines	VW 503 00,  VW 504 00  VW 504 00,
Diesel engines	VW 507 00

At the time this Manual was printed, the engine oils available in the U.S. that meet these Volkswagen standards are synthetic oils. This does not mean, however, that any synthetic engine oil will meet Volkswagen standards. Always use an approved oil that expressly complies with the Volkswagen oil quality standard that applies to your vehicle's engine.

#### General recommendations:


If synthetic oil that meets the applicable Volkswagen oil quality standard with viscosity grade SAE 5W-40 or SAE 5W-30 is not available in your area, be sure to use a viscosity grade suitable for the climate, season, and operating conditions that exist where the vehicle is used. Make sure the oil meets the quality standard listed in this manual.

Engine oils are constantly being improved. Authorized Volkswagen dealers and authorized Volkswagen Service Facilities are always up-to-date regarding new developments and changes. Volkswagen therefore recommends that you have the engine oil changed by an authorized Volkswagen dealer or an authorized Volkswagen Service Facility.

#### NOTE

- If you need to add oil and there is none available that meets the Volkswagen oil quality standard your engine requires, you may add **a total of no more than 1/2 quart (0.5 liter)** of a high-quality synthetic oil that meets ACEA A3 specifications and has a viscosity grade of SAE 5W40 or SAE 5W30.
- Use only a high quality engine oil that expressly complies with the Volkswagen oil quality standard specified for your vehicle's engine. Using any other oil can cause serious engine damage that will not be covered by any Volkswagen Limited Warranty.
- Do not mix any lubricants or other additives into the engine oil. Doing so can cause engine damage! Damage caused by these kinds of additives are not covered by any Volkswagen Limited Warranty.

## Engine oil capacities

 Read and follow the introductory information and safety information first ⇒ [Introduction to the subject](#)

Engines	Engine oil capacity (with filter)
Gasoline engines	About 7.1 quarts (6.7 liters)
Diesel engines	About 8.1 quarts (7.7 liters)

## Checking the engine oil level and adding oil

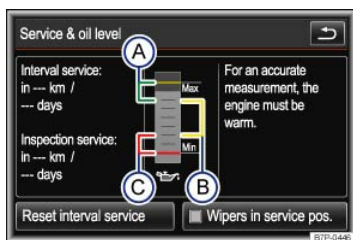


Fig. 187 Infotainment System: Engine oil level display.



Fig. 188 In the engine compartment: Engine oil filler cap.

Read and follow the introductory information and safety information first ⇒ [Introduction to the subject](#)

## Checklist

Perform the steps in the order listed ⇒ :

- ✓ With the engine at operating temperature, park the vehicle on a level surface to help prevent an incorrect oil level reading.
- ✓ Switch off the engine and wait a few minutes for the engine oil to flow back into the oil pan.

The vehicle has no engine oil dipstick under the engine compartment. The current engine oil level can be viewed through the Infotainment screen by following these steps :

- Switch on the ignition.
- Press the **CAR** Infotainment button.
- Tap the Service function key on the screen.
- **OR:** Press the Settings and then press the Service/Control.

Required steps after reading the engine oil level : **(A):** Do not add any oil . Continue with step 12. **(B):** Oil may be added (about 1 pint / 0.5 liter). Continue with step 6 to step 12. **(C):** You must add oil (about 1 quart / 1.0 liter). Continue with step 6 to step 12.

- ✓ Open the engine hood .
- ✓ The engine oil filler opening can be identified by the symbol on its cap . If you are not sure where it is, contact your authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility.
- ✓ Remove the cap on the engine oil filler opening .
- ✓ Only add engine oil that Volkswagen has approved for that engine. Add the oil gradually in small quantities (no more than 1 pint / 0.5 liter).
- ✓ To avoid overfilling, you must wait about 1 minute each time you add oil so that the oil can flow into the oil pan.
- ✓ Recheck the engine oil level through the Infotainment screen, after adding oil, the level must at least be in the center of the **(B)** area, but never above **(A)** . Never add too much oil.
- ✓ After adding oil, securely install the cap on the engine oil filler opening. Otherwise, oil could leak out while the engine is running.
- ✓ Close the hood .

### Engine oil level ranges

⇒ Fig. 187	Required action according to the respective engine oil level:
Range <b>(A)</b>	Do <b>not</b> refill oil ⇒  .
Range <b>(B)</b>	<b>You may</b> add oil (about 1 pint / 0.5 liters). The oil level may go into the <b>(A)</b> range, but not above the <b>(A)</b> range.
Range <b>(C)</b>	<b>You must</b> add oil (about 1 quart / 1.0 liter). After adding oil, make sure that the oil level is about in the middle of the <b>(B)</b> range.

### WARNING


Engine oil can ignite when it touches hot engine parts. This can cause fires, burns, and other severe injuries.




- Never spill oil on the engine. Oil spilled on a cold engine can also cause a fire when the engine warms up.
- Always make certain that you screw the cap of the engine oil filler opening back on tightly after adding oil. This helps prevent engine oil from leaking onto the hot engine when the engine is running.

#### NOTE

- Do not start the engine if the engine oil level is above range ⇒ *Fig. 187A*. Contact an authorized Volkswagen dealer or an authorized Volkswagen Service Facility. Otherwise the catalytic converter and engine can be damaged!
- When changing or topping off fluids, make sure that you pour the fluids into the correct reservoirs. Adding the wrong type of operating fluids will cause serious malfunctions and engine damage.

 The engine oil level should never be above range ⇒ *Fig. 187A*. Otherwise oil can be drawn in by the crankcase ventilation system and enter the atmosphere via the exhaust system.

## Engine oil consumption

 Read and follow the introductory information and safety information first ⇒ *Introduction to the subject*

To provide effective lubrication and cooling for internal engine parts, all internal combustion engines use some oil. Oil consumption varies from engine to engine and may change over the life of the engine. Engines tend to use more oil during the break-in period than they do afterward, when oil consumption has stabilized.

Under normal conditions, the rate of oil consumption depends on oil quality as well as viscosity, engine speed (rpm), outside temperature, road conditions, the amount of oil dilution caused by condensed water or fuel residue, and oxidation of the oil. Oil consumption may increase with engine wear over time, until replacement of worn engine parts may become necessary.

Volkswagen recommends that you to check the engine oil level at regular intervals, preferably every time you fill the fuel tank, and always before a long trip. Your vehicle may consume engine oil depending on several variables. A maximum of 1 quart per 1200 miles (1 liter per 2000 km) would be considered normal. New vehicles may consume more oil over the first 3000 miles (5000 km).


**The oil pressure warning light is not an indicator of low engine oil level. If the warning light stays on or flashes while driving (above 1500 rpm), a chime will sound. It indicates that the oil pressure is too low. Stop the engine immediately, check the engine oil level and add oil if necessary. If the engine oil level is normal, but the light continues to flash, do not keep driving or let the engine idle, as damage may occur.**

If you believe your engine uses too much oil, we recommend that you consult your authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility so that the cause of your concern can be properly diagnosed. Please keep in mind that accurate measurement of oil consumption requires great care and may take some time. Your authorized Volkswagen dealer and authorized Volkswagen Service Facility have instructions for how to measure oil consumption accurately.



Depending on the way the vehicle is driven and the operating conditions, oil consumption can be up to 1 quart per 1200 miles (0.5 liter per 1000 km). Consumption may be higher for new vehicles during the first 3000 miles (5000 km).

## Changing engine oil

 Read and follow the introductory information and safety information first ⇒ *Introduction to the subject*

The engine oil must be changed according to the intervals specified in your ⇒ *Booklet Warranty and Maintenance*.

Changing oil at regular intervals is very important because the lubricating properties of oil decrease gradually during normal vehicle use. If you are not sure when to have the oil changed, ask your authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility.

Sometimes, engine oil should be changed more often than specified for normal use. Change oil more frequently if you often drive short distances, in dusty areas or in stop-and-go traffic, or if you use your vehicle where temperatures stay below freezing for long periods.

Volkswagen recommends that you have your oil and oil filter changed by an authorized Volkswagen dealer or an authorized Volkswagen Service Facility ⇒ *Introduction to the subject*. They have the required expertise and special tools and will dispose of the old oil properly.

Detergent additives in the oil will make fresh oil look dark after the engine has been running a short time. This is normal and no reason to change engine oil more often.

#### WARNING

If you must change the engine oil yourself, be sure to take the following precautions:

- Always wear eye protection.
- To reduce the risk of burns from hot engine oil, let the engine cool down completely before beginning.
- When removing the oil drain plug with your fingers, stay as far away as possible. Always keep your forearm parallel to the ground to help prevent hot oil

from running down your arm.

- Drain the oil into a container designed for this purpose, one large enough to hold at least the total amount of oil in your engine.
- To reduce the risk of poisoning, never drain the oil into empty food or beverage containers that might mislead someone into drinking from them.
- Engine oil is poisonous and must be stored out of the reach of children.
- Continuous contact with used engine oil is harmful to your skin. Always protect your skin by washing thoroughly with soap and water.

✿ Before changing the oil, first make sure you know where you can properly dispose of the old oil.

✿ Dispose of the old oil an environmentally-responsible manner. Never dump the old oil on garden soil, in wooded areas, in the street, into streams, rivers, or bodies of water, or down sewage drains.

✿ Recycle used oil by taking it to a collection facility for used engine oil in your area, or contact an authorized Volkswagen dealer or an authorized Volkswagen Service Facility.

✿ Volkswagen recommends that you always have your oil and oil filter changed by an authorized Volkswagen dealer or an authorized Volkswagen Service Facility. They have the required expertise and special tools and will dispose of the old oil properly.

## Engine coolant

### Introduction to the subject

In this chapter you will find information on the following subjects:

⇒ *Warning light and engine coolant temperature gauge*

⇒ *Engine coolant specifications*

⇒ *Checking engine coolant level and topping off*

Never do any work on the coolant system unless you

- know exactly how to carry out the job,
- have the correct technical information and the proper tools, supplies, and operating fluids, and
- are familiar with the necessary safety precautions ⇒ ⚠ !

If you are uncertain in any way, have the work done by an authorized Volkswagen dealer or an authorized Volkswagen Service Facility.

Serious personal injury may result from improperly performed work.

### WARNING

Engine coolant is poisonous!

- Always keep the coolant in its original container stored in a safe place.
- To reduce the risk of poisoning, never store engine coolant in empty food or beverage containers or in any other containers that might mislead someone into drinking from them.
- Always keep engine coolant out of reach of children.
- Always make sure there is enough of the correct coolant additive to provide proper antifreeze protection at the coldest temperatures that can be expected where the vehicle will be used.
- At extremely cold temperatures, the coolant could freeze, causing the vehicle to break down. The heater would also not work, and vehicle occupants could be without protection at subfreezing temperatures.

✿ Coolant and coolant additives can pollute the environment. Collect leaking operating fluids and dispose of them properly in accordance with applicable environmental laws and regulations.

## Warning light and engine coolant temperature gauge

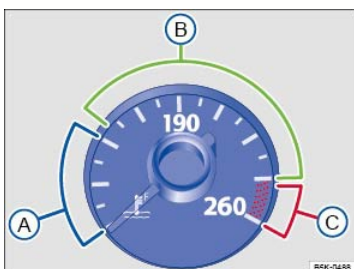




Fig. 189 Engine coolant temperature gauge in the instrument cluster: Ⓐ Engine cold, Ⓑ normal temperature range, Ⓒ warning zone.

 Read and follow the introductory information and safety information first ⇒ [Introduction to the subject](#)

If the indicator in the engine coolant temperature gauge is located in the cold range Ⓐ, the engine has not reached operating temperature. High engine speeds and heavy engine loads should be avoided.

Under normal driving conditions, the needle should be in the middle of the gauge. The temperature may go higher when the engine is working hard, especially in hot weather.

When the ignition is switched on, several warning and indicator lights come on briefly for a function check. They go out after a few seconds.

The following table explains what to do if the engine coolant warning light  does not go out a few seconds after the engine is started or lights up or starts flashing while driving.

Flashes	Temperature gauge needle ⇒ Fig. 189	Possible cause	Proper response
---------	--	----------------	-----------------

 **Stop!**

Pull off the road and stop as soon as you can do so safely. Stop the engine and let it cool down until the temperature needle is in the normal range again. Check the engine coolant level and add coolant if needed ⇒ [Checking engine coolant level and topping off](#) .

Ⓒ

Engine coolant temperature too high.

Warning zone

If the engine coolant level is correct or the problem continues after adding coolant and driving a short distance, **do not drive any farther** . Contact the nearest authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility.

If the coolant level is correct, the overheating may be caused by a radiator fan fault. Check the fuses and replace as necessary ⇒ [Fuses](#).

Check the engine coolant level after the engine has cooled down and add engine coolant if low ⇒ [Checking engine coolant level and topping off](#).




Ⓑ

Engine coolant level too low.

Normal range

If the engine coolant level is correct or the problem continues after adding coolant, **do not drive any farther** . Contact an authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility.

These instructions apply only when the coolant temperature stays in the normal range. Stop immediately if the needle goes into the red warning zone ⇒ [Fig. 189Ⓒ](#).

Flashes	Temperature gauge needle ⇒ Fig. 189	Possible cause	Proper response
	–	Engine coolant system malfunction.	 <b>Stop!</b> Get assistance from an authorized Volkswagen dealer, an authorized Volkswagen Service Facility, or another qualified workshop.
	Ⓐ	The engine has not yet warmed up.	Do not drive at high engine speeds or with heavy engine loads until the engine warms up.
	– Cold range		

When the ignition is switched on, several warning and indicator lights come on briefly for a function check. They go out after a few seconds.

#### WARNING


Failure to heed warning lights and instrument cluster text messages can cause the vehicle to break down in traffic and result in a collision and serious personal injury.

- Never ignore warning lights or text WARNINGS.
- Always stop the vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so.

#### NOTE

Failure to heed warning lights or text WARNINGS can result in vehicle damage.

## Engine coolant specifications


 Read and follow the introductory information and safety information first ⇒ [Introduction to the subject](#)


The engine cooling system is filled at the factory with a mixture of specially conditioned water and at least 40 percent of Volkswagen engine coolant additive **G13** (TL-VW 774 J). This engine coolant additive is pink.

This mixture provides antifreeze protection down to -13 °F (-25 °C). It also helps to protect the light alloy parts in the engine cooling system against corrosion. In addition, the mixture helps prevent calcium deposits and increases the boiling point of the engine coolant.

To protect the engine, the mixture must *always contain at least 40% coolant additive* even in warm weather or climates where antifreeze protection is not needed.

If more antifreeze protection is needed for climate conditions, the percentage of coolant additive can be increased. However, the coolant additive percentage must never be more than 60%; otherwise, antifreeze protection is reduced and the ability of the mixture to cool the engine is also reduced.

When adding engine coolant, use a mixture of **distilled** water and at least 40% coolant additive - G 13 - or - G 12 plus-plus - (TL-VW 774 G) for optimum corrosion protection ⇒ .

Do not mix - G 13 - with - G 12 plus -, or - G 11 -. Mixing these coolant additives together significantly reduces corrosion protection ⇒  and can lead to engine damage that is not covered by any Volkswagen Limited Warranty.

#### WARNING


Too little antifreeze protection in the engine cooling system can cause engine failure and severe injuries.

- Always make sure there is enough of the correct coolant additive to provide proper antifreeze protection at the coldest temperatures that can be expected where the vehicle will be used.
- At extremely cold temperatures, the coolant could freeze, causing the vehicle to break down. The heater would also not work, and vehicle occupants could be without protection at subfreezing temperatures.

#### NOTE

Never mix original Volkswagen engine coolant additives with other additives not approved by Volkswagen. Mixing Volkswagen coolant additives with coolant additives made by other manufacturers can seriously damage the engine and the engine cooling system.

- If the fluid in the engine coolant reservoir is **any color but pink**, then - G 13 - was mixed with a different engine coolant. If this is the case, the engine coolant must be replaced immediately. Otherwise serious malfunctions or engine damage can occur!

 Engine coolant and engine coolant additives can pollute the environment. Collect leaking operating fluids and dispose of them properly in accordance with applicable environmental laws and regulations.

## Checking engine coolant level and topping off

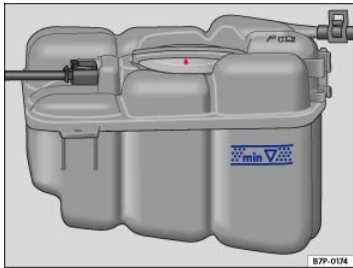


Fig. 190 Coolant expansion tank in the engine compartment.

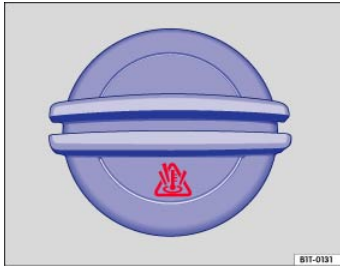






Fig. 191 Coolant expansion tank cap in the engine compartment.

 Read and follow the introductory information and safety information first ⇒ [Introduction to the subject](#)

If the coolant level drops too low, the engine coolant level/temperature warning light lights up.





### Preparations

- Park the vehicle on level ground.
- Always let the engine cool down ⇒ .
- Open the engine hood  ⇒ .
- There is a  symbol on the cap of the engine coolant expansion tank ⇒ [Fig. 191](#).

### Checking engine coolant level

- When the engine is cold, check the engine coolant level relative to the marking on the side of the expansion tank ⇒ [Fig. 190](#).
- If the coolant level in the tank is below the minimum mark (min), add coolant. When the engine is warm, the engine coolant level may be slightly above the upper edge of the marked range.

### Adding engine coolant

- Always protect face, hands and arms from hot escaping coolant or steam by covering the cap with a large, thick rag.
- Carefully unscrew the cap ⇒ .
- Add only **new** engine coolant according to Volkswagen specifications (⇒ [Engine coolant specifications](#)) ⇒ .
- The engine coolant level must be inside the marks on the side of the reservoir ⇒ [Fig. 190](#). **Do not fill above the top edge of the filling range!** ⇒ .
- Screw the lid tightly.
- Even in an emergency, **do not** use any other kind of coolant additive if engine coolant meeting Volkswagen specifications (⇒ [Engine coolant specifications](#)) is unavailable! Instead, add **distilled water only** ⇒ . As soon as possible, have the correct coolant ratio restored using engine coolant that meets Volkswagen specifications ⇒ [Engine coolant specifications](#).

### WARNING

Hot steam and hot engine coolant can cause serious burns.

- Never open the hood if you see steam or coolant escaping from the engine compartment. Always wait until you no longer see or hear steam or coolant escaping from the engine.
- Always let the engine cool down completely before carefully opening the hood. Hot components will burn skin on contact.
- When the engine has cooled down and you are ready to open the hood:
  - Apply the electronic parking brake and shift the transmission into Park (P).

- Take the vehicle key out of the ignition.
- On vehicles with Keyless Access , make sure that the remote control vehicle key is out of range of the vehicle and that the vehicle cannot be started by depressing the starter button ⇒ *Starter button*.
- Always keep children and others away from the engine compartment and never leave them unsupervised.
- The engine coolant system is under pressure when the engine is hot. Never unscrew the coolant expansion tank cap when the engine is hot. Hot coolant can spray out and cause severe burns and other serious injuries.
  - Turn the cap slowly and very carefully in a counterclockwise direction while applying light downward pressure on the top of the cap.
  - Always protect your face, hands, and arms from hot escaping coolant or steam by covering the cap with a large, thick rag.
- Never spill fluids on the engine or exhaust system when refilling. Spilling fluids onto hot parts of the engine or exhaust system can cause a fire. Under some conditions, the ethylene glycol in engine coolant can catch fire.

#### NOTE

- Use distilled water only when adding coolant! All other types of water contain chemical compounds that can cause extensive corrosion damage to the engine. This can even lead to engine failure. If you have added non-distilled water, take the vehicle immediately to an authorized Volkswagen dealer or an authorized Volkswagen Service Facility to have the coolant system drained, flushed, and refilled completely with the proper coolant.
- Refill engine coolant only up to the top edge of the marked fill range ⇒ *Fig. 190*. Excess engine coolant may be forced out of the engine cooling system when it gets hot and cause damage.
- In the case of significant engine coolant loss, refill engine coolant only when the engine is *completely cooled down*. Significant engine coolant loss is a sign of leaks in the cooling system. Have the engine cooling system checked immediately by an authorized Volkswagen dealer or an authorized Volkswagen Service Facility. Otherwise the engine may be damaged!
- When changing or topping off operating fluids, make sure that you pour the fluids into the correct reservoirs. Serious malfunctions and engine damage can result if you pour operating fluids into the wrong reservoir.

## 12 Volt vehicle battery

### Introduction to the subject


In this chapter you will find information on the following subjects:

⇒ *Warning light*

⇒ *Charging, replacing, disconnecting and connecting the 12 Volt vehicle battery*

The standard 12 Volt vehicle battery is part of the vehicle electrical system.

Never do any work on the vehicle electrical system unless you





- know exactly how to carry out the job,
- have the correct technical information and the proper tools, and
- are familiar with the necessary safety precautions ⇒  !


If you are uncertain in any way, have the work done by an authorized Volkswagen dealer or an authorized Volkswagen Service Facility. Serious personal injury may result from improperly performed work.

#### Location of the vehicle battery

The 12 Volt vehicle battery is located under the left front seat.

#### Explanation of the warnings on the vehicle battery

Symbol	Meaning
	Always wear eye protection!
	Battery acid is highly corrosive. Always wear protective gloves and eye protection!
	Fire, sparks, open light and smoking are prohibited!
	When a battery is charged, it produces hydrogen gas which is highly explosive!

Symbol	Meaning
	Always keep children away from battery acid and vehicle batteries!

### WARNING

Working on the batteries or the electrical system in your vehicle can cause serious acid burns, fires, explosions, or electrical shocks. Always read and heed the following WARNINGS and safety precautions before working on the batteries or the electrical system.

- Before working on the electrical system, always switch off the ignition and all electrical consumers and disconnect the negative cable (-) from the standard 12 Volt vehicle battery.
- When you change a light bulb, always switch off the light first.
- Always keep children away from battery acid and vehicle batteries in general.
- Always wear eye protection. Never let battery acid or lead particles come into contact with your eyes, skin, or clothing.
- Sulfuric battery acid is very corrosive. It can burn unprotected skin and cause blindness. Always wear protective gloves and eye protection. To reduce your risk of injury, never tilt the batteries, as this could spill acid through the vents and burn you.
- If you get battery acid in your eyes or on your skin, immediately rinse with cold water for several minutes and then get immediate medical attention. If you swallow any battery acid, get medical attention immediately.
- When disconnecting the batteries from the vehicle electrical system, always disconnect the negative cable (-) first and then the positive cable (+).
- Always switch off all electrical consumers before reconnecting 12 Volt vehicle batteries. Reconnect the plus cable (+) first and then the negative cable (-). Never reverse the polarity of the connections. This could cause a fire.
- A highly explosive mixture of gases is given off when the battery is being charged.
- Do not smoke and avoid fires, sparks, and open flames when working. Never create sparks or electrostatic charges when handling cables and electrical equipment. Never short circuit the battery terminals. High-energy sparks can cause serious personal injury.
- Never use or attempt to charge a damaged or frozen battery, or a battery that was frozen but has thawed. Charging a frozen or thawed battery could cause explosions and chemical burns! Replace damaged or frozen vehicle batteries immediately. A dead battery can freeze at temperatures around +32 °F (0 °C).
- If the battery has a vent line or tube, make sure that this it is properly connected to the battery.
- Always make sure that the vent line is securely attached to a vehicle battery that is located in the luggage compartment.

### WARNING

California Proposition 65 Warning

- Battery posts, terminals, and related accessories contain lead and lead components, chemicals known to the State of California to cause cancer and reproductive harm. Wash your hands after handling.



### NOTE


- Do not expose the vehicle battery to direct sunlight for an extended period of time as ultraviolet rays may damage the battery housing.
- If the vehicle is left standing in the cold for a long time, protect the vehicle battery from freezing. A battery will be permanently damaged by freezing.




Emergency starting and starting the engine with a very weak vehicle battery or after the vehicle battery has been replaced may change or delete system settings (including time, date, personal convenience settings and programming). Check the settings and correct as necessary once the vehicle battery has built up a sufficient charge.

## Warning light

 Read and follow the introductory information and safety information first ⇒  [Introduction to the subject](#)

Lights up	Possible cause	Proper response
	Alternator malfunction.	See an authorized Volkswagen dealer or an authorized Volkswagen Service Facility. Have the electrical system checked.  Switch off all electrical consumers that are not needed. The vehicle battery will not be charged by the alternator as you drive.

Lights up	Possible cause	Proper response
	Deactivation of electrical consumers.	<p>Drive for a longer distance at a somewhat higher than normal engine speed (rpm). While doing this, do not switch on features that consume a lot of electricity (such as the rear window defroster).</p> <p>If the indicator light still stay on, see an authorized Volkswagen dealer or an authorized Volkswagen Service Facility and have the electrical system checked.</p>

When the ignition is switched on, several warning and indicator lights come on briefly for a function check. They go out after a few seconds.

### WARNING


Failure to heed warning lights and instrument cluster text messages can cause the vehicle to break down in traffic and result in a collision and serious personal injury.

- Never ignore warning lights or text WARNINGS.
- Always stop the vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so.


### NOTE

Failure to heed warning lights or text WARNINGS can result in vehicle damage.

## Charging, replacing, disconnecting and connecting the 12 Volt vehicle battery

 Read and follow the introductory information and safety information first ⇒ [Introduction to the subject](#)

### Charging the vehicle battery

Vehicle batteries should be charged by an authorized Volkswagen dealer or an authorized Volkswagen Service Facility because the factory-installed battery requires a charger with overload protection ⇒ .

### Replacing the vehicle battery

The battery in your vehicle is specially developed for its location, with special dimensions and safety features. Before buying a new battery, ask an authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility what batteries are suitable with regard to electro-magnetic compatibility, dimensions, required maintenance, performance, and safety specifications. Have the battery replaced by an authorized Volkswagen dealer or an authorized Volkswagen Service Facility.


Only use maintenance-free vehicle batteries meeting standards TL 825 06 and VW 7 50 73. These standards must date from July 2012 or later.

### Checking the electrolyte level


The 12 Volt vehicle battery is located under the left front seat. Do not check the electrolyte level. Specialized knowledge and tools are required to access the vehicle battery. For this reason, have an authorized Volkswagen dealer or an authorized Volkswagen Service Facility check the electrolyte level of the vehicle battery for you.

### Disconnecting the vehicle battery

If the battery must be disconnected from the vehicle's electrical system, note the following:

- Switch off all electrical systems and devices and the ignition.
- Unlock the vehicle before disconnecting the battery; otherwise the alarm system will go off.
- First disconnect the negative cable (-) and then the positive cable (+) ⇒ .

### Connecting the vehicle battery

- Prior to reconnecting the battery, switch off all electrical systems and devices and the ignition.
- Connect the positive cable (+) first and then the negative cable (-) ⇒ .

After the battery is connected and the ignition is switched on, different indicator lights may come on. They should go out after you drive a short distance at 10 – 12 mph (15 – 20 km/h). If the indicator lights do not go out, contact an authorized Volkswagen dealer or an authorized Volkswagen Service Facility and have the vehicle checked.

If the battery was disconnected for a long time, the next scheduled service may not be correctly calculated and displayed ⇒ [Service reminder display](#). The maximum permissible service and maintenance intervals are shown in the ⇒ [Booklet Warranty and Maintenance](#).



## Vehicles with Keyless Access

If the ignition will not start after reconnecting the vehicle battery, lock the vehicle from the outside and unlock it again ⇒ [Power locking system](#). Then try to start the ignition again. If the ignition cannot be switched on, contact an authorized Volkswagen dealer, an authorized Volkswagen Service Facility, or another qualified workshop for assistance.

## Automatic electrical load deactivation

If the vehicle battery drain is high, the intelligent on-board electrical system management automatically takes steps to help prevent battery drain.

- The idle speed is increased so that the alternator provides more power.
- The power to devices that consume a lot of electricity is cut back or switched off completely.
- When the engine is started, the power supply to the 12 Volt sockets and the cigarette lighter is temporarily interrupted.

The on-board electrical system management cannot always keep the battery from being drained. For example, the battery will drain if the engine is not running, but the ignition is switched on or the parking lights are left on for a long time when parked.

## Battery disconnection in an accident with airbag deployment

In vehicles with a battery in the luggage compartment, the electrical connection to the battery is disconnected automatically in a collision with airbag deployment. This helps to prevent a short-circuit.

## What drains the vehicle battery?

- Long periods when the engine is not running, especially when the ignition is on.
- Using electrical systems or devices when the engine is switched off.
- Leaving the vehicle unlocked for several days when not in use.
- The selector lever is left for a long period of time in any position other than **(P)** when the ignition is switched off ⇒ [Automatic transmission: Selector lever](#).

### WARNING

Failure to use the proper battery with proper mounting and connections may cause short circuits, fires, and serious personal injuries.

- Always use only maintenance-free or cycle-free, leak-proof batteries with the same specifications and dimensions as the original equipment battery. Specifications are listed on the battery housing.


### WARNING


When the vehicle battery is charged, it produces highly explosive hydrogen gas.

- Charge vehicle batteries only in well-ventilated areas.
- Never charge a frozen or thawed battery. A dead battery can freeze at temperatures around +32 °F (0 °C). Always replace a battery that has frozen.
- You must replace the vehicle battery if it was frozen.
- Incorrectly connected cables can cause a short-circuit. First connect the positive cable (+) and then the negative cable (-).

### NOTE

- Never disconnect a vehicle battery or connect 2 vehicle batteries to each other when the ignition is switched on or the engine is running. Using the wrong battery can damage the electrical system or electronic components and cause electrical malfunctions.
- Never use a vehicle battery that does not meet specifications for the vehicle battery for your vehicle. Using the wrong battery can damage the electrical system or electronic components and cause electrical malfunctions.
- Never connect power generating equipment, such as a solar panel or battery charger, to the 12 Volt socket in order to charge the vehicle battery. This can damage the vehicle's electrical system.

 Dispose of the vehicle battery according to regulations. Vehicle batteries contain poisonous substances such as sulfuric acid and lead.

 Battery acid can pollute the environment. Catch leaking operating fluids and dispose of them properly.

# Vehicle care and maintenance

## Exterior care and cleaning

### Introduction to the subject

In this chapter you will find information on the following subjects:

⇒ [Washing the vehicle](#)

⇒ [Washing with a power washer](#)

⇒ *Cleaning windows and outside mirrors*

⇒ *Cleaning and changing the windshield wiper blades*

⇒ *Waxing and polishing vehicle paint*

⇒ *Caring for and cleaning chrome and aluminum parts*

⇒ *Cleaning wheel rims*

⇒ *Caring for rubber door and window seals*

⇒ *Deicing door lock cylinders*

⇒ *Cleaning the power sunroof and the sunshade*

⇒ *Undercoating*

⇒ *Cleaning the engine compartment*

Regular and expert care helps to **preserve the value** of your vehicle. Such expert care may also be one of the requirements of your New Vehicle Limited Warranty if corrosion repair or repainting is necessary.

Vehicle care products are available from your authorized Volkswagen dealer or Authorized Volkswagen Service Facility.

#### WARNING

Vehicle care products can be dangerous. Improper use can cause accidents, burns, poisoning, or other serious personal injuries.

- Always store vehicle care products only in original containers that are securely closed.
- Always read and heed all the instructions and all WARNINGS on the package.
- To reduce the risk of poisoning, never use empty food or beverage containers that might mislead someone into drinking from them.
- Always keep vehicle care products out of the reach of children.
- Always use such products outdoors or in well-ventilated areas, because harmful vapors may be released when these products are used.
- Never use fuel, turpentine, engine oil, nail polish remover or other volatile fluids for vehicle care. They are poisonous and highly flammable.




#### WARNING

Improper care and cleaning of vehicle components can impact the safety features of the vehicle and cause severe injuries.


- Always clean and maintain vehicle components according to manufacturer's instructions.
- Only use approved or recommended cleaners.

#### NOTE

Vehicle care products containing solvents can damage plastics and other vehicle materials.


-  Wash the vehicle only at specifically designated wash locations to prevent water contaminated with oil, grease and fuel from entering the storm drain sewer system. In some areas it is against the law to wash motor vehicles anywhere other than at specified designated car washing locations.
-  When buying vehicle care products, try to choose those that are not harmful to the environment.
-  Never throw out vehicle care products with ordinary household waste. Always read and heed all the instructions and all WARNINGS on the package.

## Washing the vehicle

 Read and follow the introductory information and safety information first ⇒  *Introduction to the subject*

The longer insect splatter, bird droppings, tree sap, road dirt, industrial deposits, tar, soot, road salt, and other aggressive materials stay on your vehicle, the more damage they do to the paint finish. High temperatures (including strong sunlight) increase the corrosive effects. The vehicle **underbody** should also be washed regularly and thoroughly.

### Car wash

**Pay close attention to the information provided by the car wash operator.** Before going through a car wash, be sure to take the usual precautions to help prevent damage, such as closing the windows, folding back the outside mirrors, etc. If you have installed additional accessories on the vehicle, such as spoiler, a roof rack, or an antenna, always ask the car wash operator, if this poses a problem ⇒ .

The paint finish is tough enough that the vehicle can normally be washed without problems in an automatic car wash. However, the effect on the paint depends to a large extent on the type of car wash. Volkswagen recommends using brushless car wash facilities.

To remove wax residue from the windows and avoid jerky windshield wiper movement, heed the following tips ⇒ [Cleaning windows and outside mirrors](#).

### Washing by hand

When washing by hand, first soften the dirt with plenty of water and then rinse off as much dirt as possible.

Then clean the vehicle with a soft **sponge**, a **washing glove** or **brush** using only light pressure. Start on the roof and work down. Use special **shampoo** only on hard-to-remove dirt or grime.

Rinse the sponge or glove thoroughly and often.

Clean the wheels and under the door sills last. Use a different sponge or wash mitt.

### ⚠ WARNING

After the vehicle has been washed, the wet brakes or, in winter, brake discs or pads coated with ice, react slower and need longer stopping distances.

- Always dry the brakes and clean off any ice coatings with a few careful applications of the brake. Make sure not to endanger other motorists or cyclists or disobey legal requirements.

### ⚠ CAUTION

Sharp edges under the vehicle can cut exposed skin.

- Always protect your hands and arms from cuts on sharp metal edges when cleaning the underbody, the inside of the wheel housings, etc.

### ! NOTE


- The water temperature must not be more than +140 °F (+60 °C).
- To help prevent damage to the paint, do not wash the vehicle in direct sunlight.
- Do not use insect sponges, abrasive kitchen sponges or similar things to clean the vehicle. These can damage the paint finish.
- Never clean headlights with a dry cloth or sponge. Always use a wet cloth or sponge. For best results use soapy water.
- When washing or rinsing the vehicle in cold weather, do not let water get into the lock cylinders or point the hose at gaps around the doors, hood or trunk lid. The water could freeze on the locks and seals and make it difficult to open the vehicle!

### ! NOTE

To help prevent vehicle damage in a **car wash**:

- Compare the vehicle track width with the dimensions of the guide rails in the car wash to help prevent damage to wheel rims and tires!
- Switch off the rain sensor before driving through a car wash.
- Make sure there is enough clearance for the height and width of the vehicle.
- To help prevent paint damage to the engine hood, place wiper blades against the windshield after they have dried. Do not let them snap back into place.
- Fold the outside mirrors toward the vehicle body. Do not fold power mirrors manually!
- Lock the trunk lid to prevent unintentional opening in the car wash.

## Washing with a power washer

 Read and follow the introductory information and safety information first ⇒ [Introduction to the subject](#)

Always follow the instructions for the power washer. This especially applies to the **pressure** and **spraying distance** ⇒ [▲](#).

Make sure there is enough distance to soft materials such as rubber hoses or insulating material as well as the sensors of the Park Distance Control system. The park distance control system sensors are in the rear and front bumper ⇒ [!](#) .

Never use **concentrated jet nozzles** or so-called **dirt blasters** ⇒ [▲](#).

Never use a power washer to clean the engine compartment ⇒ [Cleaning the engine compartment](#).

### ⚠ WARNING

Improper use of power washers can cause serious invisible permanent damage leading to tire failure and loss of vehicle control. This can cause accidents and severe personal injury.

- Keep sufficient distance between water jet and tires. Never wash tires with a nozzle that sprays the water out in a direct stream regardless of the distance to the tire and even for a very short time.
- Never use dirt blasters to clean tires. Even spraying from a relatively long distance for a very short time can do visible or invisible damage to tires.

#### WARNING


After the vehicle has been washed, the wet brakes or, in winter, brake discs or pads coated with ice, react slower and need longer stopping distances.

- Always dry the brakes and clean off any ice coatings with a few careful applications of the brake. Make sure not to endanger other motorists or cyclists or disobey legal requirements.

#### NOTE

- Water temperature should not be more than 140° F (60° C).
- To help prevent damage to the paint, do not wash the vehicle in direct sunlight.
- In order for Park Distance Control to work correctly, the sensors in the bumpers must be kept clean and clear of snow and ice.
- When using a power washer or steam cleaner, only spray the Rear View Camera System sensors directly for a short period of time and always keep the nozzle at least 4 inches (10 cm) from the sensor.
- Do not clean icy or snow-covered windows with a power washer.
- When washing or rinsing the vehicle in cold weather, do not let water get into the lock cylinders or point the hose at gaps around the doors, hood or trunk lid. The water could freeze on the locks and seals and make it difficult to open the vehicle!

## Cleaning windows and outside mirrors

 Read and follow the introductory information and safety information first ⇒ [Introduction to the subject](#)

### Cleaning windows and outside mirrors


Spray windows and outside mirrors with a commercially available alcohol-based window cleaner.

Dry windows and mirrors with a clean chamois or a lint-free cloth. Do not use a chamois that has been used to wipe painted surfaces because it will have absorbed an oily residue that will smear the glass surfaces.

Use window cleaner or a silicone remover to remove rubber, oil, grease and silicone deposits ⇒ .

### Removing wax residue

Automatic car washes and vehicle care products can leave a **wax residue** on all glass surfaces. These wax residues can only be removed with special cleaners or cleaning cloths. Wax residue left on the windshield can cause the windshield wipers to grab and squeak instead of gliding smoothly. We recommend that after every car wash you remove any wax residue left on the windshield with a cleaning cloths/chamois - G 052 522 A1 - or equivalent.

Windshield wiper squeak and grab can be reduced by filling the windshield washer fluid tank with a wiper fluid containing wax-removing agents. Make sure to maintain the proper mixing ratio when refilling the washer fluid tank. Grease-removing cleaning agents cannot remove wax residue ⇒ .

Special cleaners or cleaning cloths are available from your authorized Volkswagen dealer and authorized Volkswagen Service Facility.

### Removing snow

Remove snow from all windows and outside mirrors with an appropriate brush.

### Removing ice

The best way to remove ice is with a deicer spray. When using an ice scraper always scrape in one direction, **never** back and forth. Dirt can scratch the window when moving the scraper backward.

#### WARNING

Dirty or fogged up windows reduce visibility and increase the risk of accidents and severe injuries.

- Don't drive until you have clear visibility through all windows.
- Remove ice, snow and condensation from all inside and outside window surfaces.

#### NOTE

- Never mix recommended cleaning agents with other cleaning agents in the windshield washer reservoir. If you do, this could cause sediments or other by-products that can clog the windshield wiper nozzles.
- Never use warm or hot water to remove snow and ice from windows and mirrors. This could cause the glass to crack!
- The heating elements for the rear defroster are on the inside of the rear window. Do not put stickers over the heating elements on the inside of the rear

window and never clean the inside of the windows with corrosive or acidic cleaning agents or other chemicals that could damage the heating elements.

- Antennas installed on the insides of windows can be damaged by abrasive objects or by corrosive or acidic cleaning agents or other chemicals. Do not place any stickers on the windshield-integrated antenna and never clean the antenna with corrosive or acidic cleaning agents or other chemicals.

## Cleaning and changing the windshield wiper blades

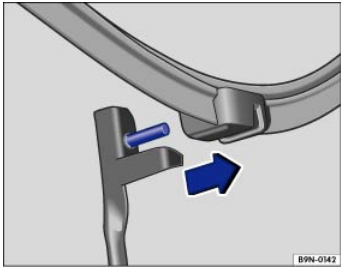


Fig. 192 Changing the windshield wiper blades.

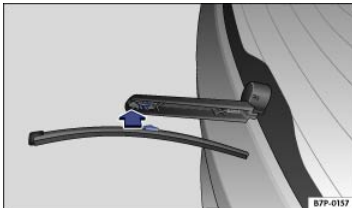



Fig. 193 Changing the rear window wiper blades.

 Read and follow the introductory information and safety information first ⇒ [Introduction to the subject](#)

Factory-installed wiper blades have a graphite coating. The graphite coating lets the wiper blades glide smoothly over the windshield. If this coating is worn or damaged, the wipers may grab or squeak.

Check all wiper blades regularly. **Wiper blades that grab and squeak** must be replaced if worn or damaged and cleaned if dirty ⇒ .

Replace worn or damaged wiper blades immediately. Replacement blades may be purchased from any authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility.


### Lifting and tilting windshield wiper arms

Move the wiper arms into the service position before lifting them away from the windshield ⇒ [Windshield wiper and washer](#).

It is not possible to lift the wiper arms away from the windshield when they are not in the service position.

When lifting or replacing a wiper blade on a window, grip it **only** by its mounting and not by the blade itself.

### Cleaning the wiper blades

- Lift the wiper arm(s) away from the windshield/rear window.
- Using a soft cloth, carefully remove dust and dirt from the wiper blades.
- If the blades are very dirty, carefully clean them with a sponge or cloth ⇒ .
- Carefully fold the wiper arm back down onto the window.

### Changing wiper blades

- Lift the wiper arm(s) away from the windshield.
- Tilt the wiper blade 90 ° clockwise to the wiper arm and pull off the wiper blade ⇒ [Fig. 192](#).
- Install a new wiper blade of **same length and type** onto the wiper arm by pushing in the opposite direction of the arrow until it latches.
- Carefully fold the wiper arm back down onto the windshield.

### Changing the rear window wiper blade

- Lift the wiper arm away from the rear window.
- Pull the wiper blade and the retainer out of the holder.
- Install a new wiper blade of **same length and type** onto the wiper arm by pushing in the opposite direction of the arrow ⇒ [Fig. 193](#) until it latches.
- Carefully fold the wiper arm back down onto the rear window.


Worn or dirty wiper blades reduce visibility and increase the risk of accidents and severe injuries.

- Always change wiper blades if they are damaged or worn, and if they cannot clean the windows sufficiently.

#### NOTE

- Damaged or dirty wiper blades can scratch the windshield and the rear window.
- Solvents, abrasive sponges and sharp-edged objects will damage the graphite coating on the wiper blades.
- Do not clean the windows with gasoline, nail polish remover, paint thinner or similar fluids.
- To help prevent damage to the engine hood and the windshield wiper arms, lift the wiper arms away from the windshield only when they are in the service position.

## Waxing and polishing vehicle paint

 Read and follow the introductory information and safety information first ⇒ [Introduction to the subject](#)

### Waxing

A good coat of wax helps to protect the vehicle paint. When water no longer forms small drops and **runs off** when the paint is *clean*, apply a new coat of good **ha wax** to protect the vehicle again.

Even if a **wax solution** is used regularly at the car wash, Volkswagen recommends applying a coat of hard wax at least twice a year to protect the paint.

### Polishing


Polish your vehicle if the paint has lost its shine and the gloss cannot be brought back with wax.

The vehicle must be waxed after polishing if the polish used does not contain wax compounds to seal the paint.

#### NOTE

- To help prevent damage, do not use hard wax or polish on matte-finished parts, plastic parts, headlights or rear lights.
- Do not wax or polish your vehicle if it is dirty, or in a sandy or dusty place.

## Caring for and cleaning chrome and aluminum parts

 Read and follow the introductory information and safety information first ⇒ [Introduction to the subject](#)

- Clean the surface using a clean, soft, lint-free cloth dampened with water.
- If the surface is especially dirty, use a special **solvent-free** cleaning material.
- Then polish chrome and aluminum parts with a soft, dry cloth.

#### NOTE


To help prevent damage to chrome and aluminum parts:

- Do not clean or polish in direct sunlight.
- Do not clean or polish in sandy or dusty places.
- Do not use abrasive cleaners or abrasive sponges.
- Do not polish dirty surfaces.
- Do not use cleaning materials that contain solvents.
- Do not use hard wax.

#### NOTE

Chrome wheel covers and hubcaps can have an extra coating. Do not treat them with chrome care or polishing products. Use regular paint care and polishing products.

## Cleaning wheel rims

 Read and follow the introductory information and safety information first ⇒ [Introduction to the subject](#)

### Cleaning steel wheels

Stubborn brake dust can be removed with an industrial cleaner. Clean steel wheels regularly with a separate sponge.

Repair any paint damage on steel wheels before rust begins to form.

### Cleaning alloy wheels


**Every 2 weeks:** Wash road salt and brake dust off alloy wheels, and clean the wheels with an acid-free detergent. **Every 3 months:** Volkswagen recommends applying a hard wax compound to the wheels.

If road salt and brake dust are not removed regularly, they can corrode the metal.

Use an acid-free detergent specifically designed for light alloy wheels. Do not use car polish or other abrasive products.

If the protective coating is damaged, for example by stone impact, repair the damaged area right away.

## Caring for rubber door and window seals

 Read and follow the introductory information and safety information first ⇒ [Introduction to the subject](#)


The rubber seals around the doors and windows will stay soft and flexible, seal better and last longer if the seals are treated regularly with a suitable rubber care product.

Before applying the treatment, use a soft cloth to remove dust and dirt from the rubber seals.



**Do not** apply any rubber care products to the rubber seals on the body in the areas around the windows in the driver and front passenger doors. The product could run down onto the windows and smudge them.

## Deicing door lock cylinders

 Read and follow the introductory information and safety information first ⇒ [Introduction to the subject](#)

Volkswagen recommends using only genuine Volkswagen deicer spray with lubricating and anti-corrosive properties to deice door lock cylinders.

### NOTE

Lock deicers that contain grease solvents can cause the lock cylinder to rust.

## Cleaning the power sunroof and the sunshade

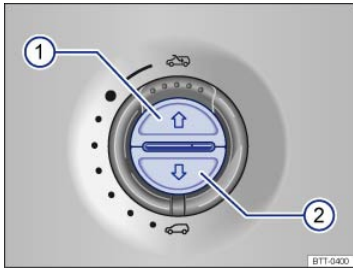



Fig. 194 In the headliner: Buttons for sunshade.

 Read and follow the introductory information and safety information first ⇒ [Introduction to the subject](#)

Dirt and debris can impair the function of the power sunroof.

The power sunroof only works when the ignition is on. You can still open or close the power sunroof for several minutes after you switch off the ignition, as long as the driver or front passenger door has not been opened.

### Moving the sunshade to the cleaning position

- Park the vehicle safely.
- Open the power sunroof completely ⇒ [Power sunroof](#).
- Press and hold the button ⇒ [Fig. 194](#) ② for about 5 seconds until the sunshade is completely closed.
- If the sunshade is heavily soiled, carefully clean it with a cloth and warm water.

### NOTE

Close the power sunroof completely before driving off. Driving with the sunshade in the cleaning position can lead to damage to the vehicle.

## NOTE

Do not attempt to clean the drain tubes for the power sunroof. This could result in vehicle damage caused by punctured or damaged drain tubes.



Remove leaves and other objects from the sunroof guide rails regularly either by hand or using a vacuum cleaner.

## Undercoating

Read and follow the introductory information and safety information first ⇒ [Introduction to the subject](#)

The vehicle underbody is coated to help protect it from corrosion and damage. The undercoating could be damaged during normal use. We therefore recommend that you have the protective coatings on the underbody and suspension inspected regularly, and repaired if necessary.

## WARNING

Undercoating and rustproofing products can catch fire on the hot exhaust system or any other hot engine component.

- Never apply additional undercoating or rustproofing on or near the exhaust manifold, the exhaust pipes, the catalytic converter, the heat shields, or any other hot vehicle component.

## Cleaning the engine compartment

Read and follow the introductory information and safety information first ⇒ [Introduction to the subject](#)

The engine compartment of a vehicle is a dangerous area ⇒ [Working in the engine compartment](#).

If necessary, the engine compartment should be cleaned by an authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility. Incorrect cleaning procedures could remove corrosion protection and damage electrical components, among other things. In addition, water could enter directly into the vehicle interior through the plenum chamber ⇒ .

Never use a power washer to clean the engine compartment ⇒ .

If the engine compartment is extremely dirty, have it cleaned professionally by your authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility.

### Plenum chamber

The plenum chamber is located in the engine compartment between windshield and engine, under a perforated cover. Outside air is taken into the vehicle interior from the plenum chamber via the climate control system.

Regularly remove leaves and other loose objects from the plenum chamber cover by hand or with a vacuum cleaner.

## WARNING

Injuries, scalding, electric shock, accidents and fire hazards can occur while working on the engine or in the engine compartment!

- Before working in the engine compartment, be sure to familiarize yourself with the necessary procedures and generally accepted safety precautions ⇒ [Working in the engine compartment](#).
- Volkswagen recommends having the work performed by an authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility.

## NOTE

Spraying or pouring water (e.g. with power washer) into the plenum chamber can cause severe damage to the vehicle.



Wash the engine compartment only in special wash bays so that the oily dirt and fuel residue that are washed off the vehicle will not enter the sewage system. In some areas it is illegal to wash the engine compartment anywhere other than at such specified locations.

## Interior care and cleaning

### Introduction to the subject

In this chapter you will find information on the following subjects:

⇒ [Caring for upholstery](#)

⇒ [Cleaning upholstery, fabric trim, and microfiber fabric](#)

⇒ [Care and cleaning of leather upholstery](#)



⇒ *Cleaning leatherette*

⇒ *Cleaning storage compartments and cup holders*

⇒ *Care and cleaning of plastic components, wood trim, and instrument panel*

⇒ *Cleaning the safety belts*

Modern clothing fabrics such as dark denim may not be completely colorfast. Even with normal use, dye from these and other fabrics can rub off on seat upholstery and leave visible discolorations (especially on light-colored seat upholstery). This is caused by a lack of colorfastness in the clothing fabric, not by any fault in the seat upholstery fabric. To help prevent damage to the seat upholstery, always make sure your clothing is colorfast. Volkswagen recommends having a qualified specialist remove any discolorations from the seat upholstery.

The longer stains, dirt and other deposits remain on the surfaces of vehicle components and upholstery, the more difficult it may be to clean them. If stains, dirt and deposits are left untreated for a long period of time, they may become impossible to remove.

#### WARNING

Vehicle care products can be dangerous. Improper use can cause accidents, burns, poisoning, or other serious personal injuries.

- Always store vehicle care products only in original containers that are securely closed.
- Always read and heed all the instructions and all WARNINGS on the package.
- To reduce the risk of poisoning, never use empty food or beverage containers that might mislead someone into drinking from them.
- Always keep vehicle care products out of the reach of children.
- Always use such products outdoors or in well-ventilated areas, because harmful vapors may be released when these products are used.
- Never use fuel, turpentine, engine oil, nail polish remover or other volatile fluids for vehicle care. They are poisonous and highly flammable.

#### WARNING

Improper care and cleaning of vehicle components can compromise the vehicle's safety features and cause severe injuries.

- Always clean and maintain vehicle components according to manufacturer's instructions.
- Only use approved or recommended cleaners.



#### NOTE

- Vehicle care products containing solvents can cause irreparable damage to damage plastics and other vehicle the materials.
- Stains, dirt and other deposits that contain aggressive substances or solvents can corrode vehicle materials and cause permanent damage, even after brief contact with the surface.
- Remove stains, dirt, and other deposits as quickly as possible and do not allow them to dry.
- To help prevent damage, have stubborn stains removed by a professional who has the necessary expertise and experience.



Suitable care products are available from authorized Volkswagen dealers and authorized Volkswagen Service Facilities.

## Caring for upholstery

 Read and follow the introductory information and safety information first ⇒  *Introduction to the subject*

## Checklist

**Please note the following when it comes to the care and preservation of the upholstery** ⇒  :

- ✓ Open Velcro® fasteners can damage upholstery, fabric, and trim. Before you get into the vehicle, close all Velcro® fasteners that could come into contact with upholstery fabrics and cloth trim.
- ✓ Sharp-edged objects and items on clothing and belts (such as belt clips, mobile phone cases, zippers, rivets, and rhinestones) can damage upholstery material and fabric trim. To help prevent damage, do not let such items come into direct contact with the upholstery and fabric trim.
- ✓ Dust and dirt particles in pores, folds, and seams can have a scouring effect on material and damage the surface. Remove dust and dirt regularly to help prevent permanent surface damage.
- ✓ Check clothing for color-fastness to help prevent upholstery discoloration, especially to light-colored upholstery.

#### NOTE

Disregarding the upholstery-related checklist may lead to damage or discoloration of upholstery and fabric trim.

- Please note and follow the points listed in the checklist.



Volkswagen recommends having any discoloration removed by an authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility.

## Cleaning upholstery, fabric trim, and microfiber fabric

Read and follow the introductory information and safety information first ⇒ [▲ Introduction to the subject](#)

### Cleaning upholstery on heated seats and power seats or seats with airbag components

Airbag components and electrical connectors may be installed in the driver seat, the front passenger seat, and in the outer rear seats. Damaging, cleaning and handling incorrectly, or wetting or soaking these seat surfaces and backrests can damage the vehicle electrical system and prevent the airbag system from working properly ⇒ [▲](#).

Electrical components and connectors that could be damaged by incorrect cleaning or handling are installed in power seats and heated seats ⇒ [ⓘ](#). This can also result in damage to other parts of the vehicle electrical system.

For this reason, read and follow these cleaning instructions:

- Do not use power washers, steam cleaners, or cooling spray.
- Do not use detergent pastes or mild detergent solutions.
- Do not wet the surface completely.
- Only use cleaning products approved by Volkswagen.
- If you have questions or concerns, consult a professional cleaner.
- Before using any cleaning agent, familiarize yourself with instructions and warnings on the packaging.
- Vacuum upholstery, fabric trim, microfiber fabric, upholstery, and carpeting regularly with a suitable brush attachment.
- A soft sponge or a commercially available lint-free microfiber cloth may be used for general cleaning ⇒ [ⓘ](#).
- Clean microfiber fabric surfaces with a damp cotton or wool cloth or a commercially available lint-free microfiber cloth ⇒ [ⓘ](#).

Upholstery and fabric trim with light generalized soiling can be cleaned with a commercially available dry-foam cleaner.

If the upholstery and fabric trim pieces are heavily soiled, see your authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility before you begin cleaning to learn about suitable cleaning options. If necessary, have the cleaning done by a professional.

### Cleaning upholstery on non-heated seats, manual seats, or seats without airbag components

- Before using any cleaning agent, familiarize yourself with instructions and warnings on the packaging.
- Vacuum upholstery, fabric trim, microfiber fabric, and carpeting regularly with a suitable brush attachment.
- Do not use power washers, steam cleaners, or cooling spray.
- A soft sponge or a commercially available lint-free microfiber cloth may be used for general cleaning ⇒ [ⓘ](#).
- Clean microfiber fabric surfaces with a damp cotton or wool cloth or a commercially available lint-free microfiber cloth ⇒ [ⓘ](#).

Upholstery and fabric trim with light generalized soiling can be cleaned with a commercially available dry-foam cleaner.

If the upholstery and fabric trim pieces are heavily soiled, see your authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility before you begin cleaning to learn about suitable cleaning options. If necessary, have the cleaning done by a professional.

### Treating stains

When treating stains, it may be necessary to clean the entire surface and not just the stain itself. This is especially true if the entire surface has become dirty from normal use. Otherwise, the area that is treated may become lighter than the untreated area. If you have questions or concerns, consult a professional cleaner.

Type of stain	Recommended cleaning for fabric and upholstery
<i>Water-based stains</i> , such as coffee or fruit juice.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>– Moisten a sponge with water and rub the stain gently with a circular motion.</li> <li>– Wipe dry with an absorbent cloth.</li> </ul>

Type of stain	Recommended cleaning for fabric and upholstery
<i>Persistent stains</i> , such as chocolate or make-up.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>– Use only Volkswagen-approved cleaning products.</li> <li>– If necessary, have the fabric or upholstery professionally cleaned.</li> </ul>
<i>Grease-based stains</i> , such as oil, lipstick, etc.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>– Use only Volkswagen-approved cleaning products.</li> <li>– If necessary, have the fabric or upholstery professionally cleaned.</li> </ul>

#### WARNING

If there is a malfunction in the airbag system, the airbag may not deploy correctly or at all, or it may deploy unexpectedly. This could cause fatal injuries.

- Have the airbag system inspected immediately by your authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility.

#### NOTE

If the upholstery on power seats, heated seats, or seats with airbag components is wet, electrical components and the vehicle electrical system could be damaged.

- If the seating surface becomes soaked, have it dried and the system components checked immediately by an authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility.
- Do not use steam cleaners because the steam could cause the dirt to penetrate deeper into the fabric and make it impossible to remove.
- Power washers and cooling sprays can damage the upholstery.

#### NOTE

- Clean only the carpet and floor mats with brushes. Other textile surfaces can be damaged by brushes.
- If detergent pastes or mild detergent solutions are applied with a damp cloth or sponge, the surfactants in the detergent may cause visible lines to form at the edges of the area where the detergent was applied. These lines are generally difficult or impossible to remove.

#### NOTE

- Do not soak microfiber fabric.
- Do not treat microfiber fabric with leather care products, solvents, floor wax, shoe polish, stain remover or similar products.
- Do not use brushes for damp cleaning, because they can damage upholstery surfaces.
- Do not use a steam cleaner, because dirt will penetrate deeper into the fabric.


## Care and cleaning of leather upholstery

 Read and follow the introductory information and safety information first ⇒ [Introduction to the subject](#)

If you have questions regarding the care and cleaning of the leather upholstery in the vehicle, please contact an authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility.

### Care and treatment

Natural leather requires special attention and care. Napa leather has a smooth surface. The intensity of the color application determines the leather's appearance and texture. If you can see the leather grain and other natural characteristics, this is an untreated napa leather that will provide very comfortable seating. Delicate veins, closed scars, insect bites, folds, and a slightly clouded color remain visible and represent authentic characteristics of the natural material. Untreated napa leather has no protective coating. It is therefore more susceptible to damage. You should keep this in mind if the leather is going to be exposed to severe wear from children, animals, or other factors. By contrast, leather that has a protective coating is more robust. This has a positive effect on the leather's durability in daily use. The typical natural characteristics are hardly visible or no longer visible at all, but that has no impact on the quality of the leather itself. The typical characteristics of untreated leather are much more distinctive than those of a surface-treated leather.

- After each cleaning, apply cream that waterproofs the leather and protects it against the sun. Such creams also nourish the leather, let it breathe, keep it flexible and moisturized. At the same time it protects the surface.
- Clean leather every 2 to 3 months and remove any new stains.
- Treat leather with a suitable leather-care product twice a year ⇒ .

- Apply cleaning and conditioning materials sparingly and always with a dry, lint-free cotton or wool cloth. Do not apply cleaning and conditioning materials directly to the leather.
- Remove fresh stains such as ballpoint pen, lipstick, ink, shoe polish, etc. as soon as possible.
- Preserve the leather's color. If necessary, refresh fading spots with a specially-colored leather cream.
- Wipe the leather with a soft cloth.

## Cleaning

Volkswagen recommends using a slightly moistened cotton or wool cloth for general cleaning.

It is important not to let water soak through the leather or penetrate into seams.

**Before cleaning** leather surfaces, read and heed the information ⇒ *Cleaning upholstery, fabric trim, and microfiber fabric*.

Type of stain	Cleaning
<i>Heavy stains</i>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>– Apply a mild soapy solution with a cloth that has been wrung nearly dry <sup>a)</sup>.</li> <li>– Dab dry with an absorbent cloth.</li> </ul>
<i>Water-based stains</i> , such as coffee, tea, juice, or blood.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>– Remove fresh stains with an absorbent cloth.</li> <li>– If the stains are already dry, use an appropriate cleaning agent ⇒ ⓘ.</li> </ul>
<i>Grease-based stains</i> , such as oil, lipstick, etc.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>– Remove fresh stains with an absorbent cloth.</li> <li>– Use an appropriate cleaning agent on stains that have not yet penetrated the surface ⇒ ⓘ.</li> </ul>
<i>Special stains</i> , such as ballpoint pen, marker, nail polish, latex paint, or shoe polish.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>– Dab dry with an absorbent cloth.</li> <li>– Clean with a special stain remover designed for leather.</li> </ul>

### ⓘ NOTE

- Stains that have been left in place too long will penetrate the surface of the leather and cannot be removed.
- Never treat leather with solvents, floor wax, shoe polish, stain remover or similar products.
- Wipe up spilled liquids immediately with an absorbent cloth. Liquid can penetrate leather surfaces and seams within a few seconds.
- If the vehicle is left in the sun for a long time, cover the upholstery to protect the leather from direct sunlight and to help prevent fading and discoloration.



Slight discoloration caused by wear and tear is normal.

<sup>a)</sup> Mild soap solution: 2 tablespoons of liquid soap in 1 quart (liter) of water.

## Cleaning leatherette

Read and follow the introductory information and safety information first ⇒ *Introduction to the subject*

Clean leatherette upholstery only with water and a mild soap solution.

**Before cleaning** leatherette surfaces, read and heed the information ⇒ *Cleaning upholstery, fabric trim, and microfiber fabric*.

### ⓘ NOTE

- Do not clean leatherette with solvents, floor wax, shoe polish, stain remover, or similar products.
- These can cause the material to become brittle and break. Sharp-edged objects and items on clothing and belts (such as belt clips, mobile phone cases, zippers, rivets, and rhinestones) can damage upholstery material and fabric trim.

- If the vehicle is left in the sun for a long time, cover the upholstery to protect the leatherette from direct sunlight and to help prevent fading or discoloration.

## Cleaning storage compartments and cup holders

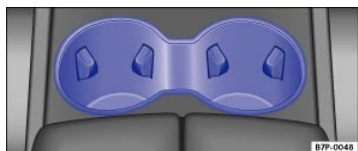



Fig. 195 In the lower front center console: Front cup holders.


 Read and follow the introductory information and safety information first ⇒ [▲ Introduction to the subject](#)

### Cleaning storage compartments and cup holders

Some storage compartments and cup holders ⇒ [Fig. 195](#) have a removable rubber insert at the bottom.

- Moisten a clean, lint-free cloth with water and clean the parts.
- If this is not sufficient, then use a special **solvent-free** care and cleaning product designed for plastics.

## Care and cleaning of plastic components, wood trim, and instrument panel

 Read and follow the introductory information and safety information first ⇒ [▲ Introduction to the subject](#)


- Moisten a clean, lint-free cloth with water and clean the parts.
- Clean *plastic components (inside and outside of the vehicle) and the instrument panel only* with a **solvent-free** care and cleaning product that is specifically designed for plastics and approved by Volkswagen ⇒ [▲](#).
- Clean *wood trim* with a mild soap solution.

### WARNING

Using solvents or other improper cleaning products on surfaces where airbags are located can change the way airbags deploy in a crash.

- Products containing solvents will change the properties of the plastics and may cause plastic parts to break and fly around when the airbag deploys in a crash, causing injury.
- Never use solvents or cleaners on the steering wheel horn pad or on the instrument panel because they can damage the airbag cover or change the stiffness or strength of the material so that the airbag cannot deploy and protect properly.
- When cleaning the horn pad and instrument panel, use only a soft, dry cloth or a cloth moistened with plain water.

## Cleaning the safety belts

 Read and follow the introductory information and safety information first ⇒ [▲ Introduction to the subject](#)

If a safety belt is dirty, this can prevent the belt from working properly. Keep safety belts clean and regularly check all safety belts for damage.

Safety belts must never be taken apart for cleaning.

- Remove coarse dirt with a soft brush ⇒ [▲](#).
- Carefully pull the dirty safety belt out of the retractor and keep it out.
- Clean the safety belt with a *mild* soap solution.
- After cleaning, always give the safety belts time to dry thoroughly before letting them retract. This helps prevent damage to the retractor.
- Do not let the safety belts retract until they are completely dry.

### WARNING

Damage to safety belts reduces their overall effectiveness and increases the risk of serious personal injury and death whenever the vehicle is being used.

- Check the condition of all safety belts regularly. If you notice that the safety belt webbing, hardware, retractor, buckle, or any other part of the safety belts is damaged, immediately have an authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility replace the safety belt with the correct replacement belt for your vehicle model and model year.
- Never use chemical cleaning agents, solvents, or any substance that may damage or weaken the safety belt webbing or any other parts of the safety belt. Never let the belts come into contact with corrosive fluids or sharp objects. Otherwise, the safety belt webbing will be significantly weakened.
- After cleaning, always give the safety belts time to dry completely before letting them retract. The moisture can damage the retractor and keep it from working properly.

- Never let foreign objects or liquids get into the safety belt latch. This could prevent the belt buckles and safety belts from working properly.
- Damaged safety belts must be replaced; they cannot be repaired.
- Never try to repair a damaged safety belt yourself. Never remove or modify the safety belts in any way.
- Safety belts that were subject to stress in an accident and stretched must be replaced with a correct, new safety belt, preferably by an authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility.
- Replacement after a crash may be necessary even if a safety belt shows no visible damage. Anchorages that have been loaded must also be inspected.

## Parts, accessories, repairs and modifications

### Introduction to the subject

In this chapter you will find information on the following subjects:

⇒ *Break-in period*

⇒ *Parts and accessories*

⇒ *Operating fluids and equipment*

⇒ *Repairs and technical modifications*

⇒ *Repairs and other things that can affect Advanced Airbag performance*

⇒ *Notice about data recorded by the Event Data Recorder and vehicle control modules*


⇒ *Using the mobile phone without a vehicle integrated antenna - some important things to know*

### WARNING

Inappropriate spare parts and accessories as well as unprofessionally performed work, modifications and repairs can cause vehicle damage, accidents and serious personal injuries.

- Volkswagen strongly recommends to only use accessories approved by Volkswagen and Genuine Volkswagen Parts<sup>®</sup>. These parts and accessories have been evaluated by Volkswagen for their suitability, reliability and safety.
- Have repairs and vehicle modifications performed by an authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility. Authorized Volkswagen dealers and authorized Volkswagen Service Facilities have the required tools, diagnostic equipment, repair information, and trained personnel to properly replace any airbag in your vehicle and assure system effectiveness in a crash.
- Only install parts on the vehicle that are consistent with factory-installed parts with respect to design and characteristics.
- Never store, mount or attach objects, such as cup or phone cradles, on or next to the airbag module covers or within the airbags deployment zones.
- Only use wheel rim/tire combinations approved by Volkswagen for the respective vehicle type.

## Break-in period

 Read and follow the introductory information and safety information first ⇒  *Introduction to the subject*

Note applicable requirements for breaking in new parts.

### Breaking in a new engine

A new engine must be carefully broken in during the first 1,000 miles (1,600 kilometers). During the first few hours of driving, the engine's internal friction is higher than later when all moving parts have been broken in.


Engine life is influenced by how you drive the vehicle for the first 1,000 miles (1,500 km). Even afterwards, driving at moderate engine speeds, especially when the engine is cold, will tend to reduce engine wear and help the engine to last longer and go farther. But do not drive at an excessively low engine speed, either. Always downshift if the engine is not running smoothly. **For the first 600 miles (1000 km):**

- Do not use full throttle.
- Don't let the engine speed get above 2/3 of the maximum speed.
- Do not tow a trailer.


**From 600 to 1000 miles (1000 to 1600 km):** Speed may *gradually* be increased to maximum permissible road and engine speed.

### New tires and brake pads

- New tires and replacement tires ⇒ *Tires and wheels*
- Brakes ⇒ *About the brakes*

 Breaking in a new engine gently, will increase service life and reduce oil consumption.

## Parts and accessories

 Read and follow the introductory information and safety information first ⇒ [▲ Introduction to the subject](#)


Volkswagen recommends that you consult an authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility before purchasing accessories, spare parts or other equipment. Always do so if you want to install additional accessories or replace parts. Your authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility can provide information about legal requirements and factory-recommended accessories, spare parts, and other equipment.

### WARNING

Improper vehicle modifications and repairs affect the performance of the airbag system and cause malfunctions and severe personal injuries.

- Never store, mount or attach objects, such as cup holders or phone cradles, on or next to the airbag module covers or within the airbag deployment zones.
- Objects on or near the surface where airbags are located can come loose and cause serious personal injury if the airbag deploys.

## Operating fluids and equipment

 Read and follow the introductory information and safety information first ⇒ [▲ Introduction to the subject](#)

**Operating fluids and parts that wear out with use** (such as timing belts, tires, engine coolants, engine oils, spark plugs, and vehicle batteries) are constantly being improved. For this reason, it is important to have operating fluids changed and wearing parts replaced by an authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility. Authorized Volkswagen dealers and authorized Volkswagen Service Facilities are always up-to-date regarding new developments and changes.


### WARNING

Improper use of operating fluids and equipment can cause accidents, serious personal injuries, burns and/or poisoning.


- Always store vehicle care products in a safe place in original containers that are securely closed.
- To reduce the risk of poisoning, never use empty food or beverage containers that might mislead someone into drinking from them.
- Always keep vehicle care products out of the reach of children.
- Always read and heed all the instructions and all WARNINGS on the package before using vehicle care products.
- When using products that give off harmful fumes, always work outdoors or in a well ventilated area.
- Never use fuel, turpentine, engine oil, nail polish remover or other volatile fluids for vehicle care. They are poisonous and highly flammable. They could cause fires and explosions!

### NOTE

- Only refill with suitable operating fluids. When changing or topping off fluids, make sure that you pour the fluids into the correct reservoirs. Adding incorrect fluids will cause serious malfunctions and engine damage! Under no circumstances should you mix up operating fluids. Otherwise serious malfunctions and engine damage can occur!
- Accessories and other things installed in front of the cooling air intakes impair the efficiency of the engine coolant. The engine can overheat under high ambient temperatures or under high engine loads!

 Leaking operating fluids can pollute the environment. Collect leaking operating fluids in suitable containers and dispose of them properly in accordance with applicable environmental laws and regulations.

## Repairs and technical modifications

 Read and follow the introductory information and safety information first ⇒ [▲ Introduction to the subject](#)

**Volkswagen guidelines for repairs and technical modifications must be followed ⇒ ▲ !**

Changes to electronic components and related software can cause malfunctions. These malfunctions can also affect other systems that are related to the component or software that was modified. The vehicle's operational safety can be seriously jeopardized, increased vehicle component wear can occur, and the vehicle may no longer meet applicable emissions requirements.

Volkswagen recommends having all repairs and technical modifications performed by an authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility using **Genuine Volkswagen Parts®**.

Damage that is caused by improper repairs or unapproved technical modifications will not be covered by any Volkswagen Limited Warranty.

## ⚠ WARNING

Improperly performed repairs and modifications can cause vehicle damage and malfunctions, and can impair the efficiency of driver assistance systems. This can lead to accidents and severe personal injuries.

- Have repairs and vehicle modifications done by an authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility.

## ⓘ NOTE

Improperly performed repairs and modifications can cause increased component wear and result in vehicle emissions that no longer meet applicable requirements.

## Repairs and other things that can affect Advanced Airbag performance

📖 Read and follow the introductory information and safety information first ⇒ [Introduction to the subject](#)

Repairs and modifications of front bumpers, doors, front seats, headliners and the chassis can affect proper airbag performance and should be performed by an authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility. These vehicle areas can contain important parts of the airbag system.

Components of the airbag system can be damaged during removal, assembly and repair activities on the airbag system itself or related components. Damage to airbag parts can prevent the system from working properly in a collision.

Observe all regulations so that the effectiveness of the airbag is not affected and to prevent disassembled parts from causing injuries and pollution. Authorized Volkswagen dealers, authorized Volkswagen Service Facilities, and other qualified workshops are familiar with these regulations.

Changing the vehicle's suspension system can change the way that the airbag system works in a crash. For example, using tire-rim combinations not approved by Volkswagen, lowering the vehicle, changing the stiffness of the suspension, including the springs, suspension struts, shock absorbers etc. can change the forces that are measured by the airbag sensors and sent to the electronic control unit. Some suspension changes can, for example, increase the force levels measured by the airbag sensors and send to the electronic control unit and make the airbag system deploy in crashes in which it would not deploy if the changes had not been made. Other kinds of changes may reduce the force levels measured by the sensors and prevent the airbag from deploying when it should.

Never install leather upholstery on a vehicle that originally had cloth upholstery. Never install cloth upholstery on a vehicle that originally had leather upholstery. The weight-sensing mat for the Advanced Airbag system will not work properly if different upholstery is installed on the passenger seat than the upholstery originally installed on the vehicle when it was originally manufactured.

## ⚠ WARNING

Changing the vehicle's suspension including use of unapproved tire-rim combinations can change airbag performance and increase the risk of serious personal injury in a crash.

- Never install suspension components that do not have the same performance characteristics as the components originally installed on your vehicle.
- Never use tire-rim combinations that have not been approved by Volkswagen.

## ⚠ WARNING

Leaving the optional safety belt extender attached to the safety belt buckle on the front passenger seat when the safety belt is not being used will prevent the Advanced Airbag System from working properly and can increase the risk of serious personal injury in a collision.

- Leaving the extender attached to the safety belt buckle when the front seat is occupied and the safety belt is not being used will signal to the airbag control unit that the front passenger seat is occupied and that the safety belt is being used. The electronic control unit for the airbag system will then receive incorrect information that will
  - cause the safety belt pretensioner to deploy unnecessarily in collisions and
  - cause the front passenger airbag to deploy later in collisions in which the front airbag would otherwise be triggered earlier to help protect an unrestrained front seat passenger.
- Always remove the safety belt extender when it is not needed and stow it safely.
- Never use the safety belt extender to secure a child restraint.

## ⚠ WARNING

Items stored between the safety belt buckle and the center console can cause safety belt buckle to send the wrong information to the airbag control unit and prevent the Advanced Airbag System from working properly.

- Always make sure that nothing can interfere with the safety belt buckles and that they are not obstructed.


## ⚠ WARNING

Improper care and servicing, and improper modification and repair work, can increase the risk of personal injury and death by preventing an airbag from




deploying when needed or deploying an airbag unexpectedly:

- Never repair, adjust, or change any parts of the airbag system.
- All work on the airbag system, steering wheel, instrument panel, front seats or electrical system (including the installation of audio equipment, cellular telephones and CB radios, etc.) should be performed by authorized Volkswagen dealers or authorized Volkswagen Service Facilities. They have the necessary manuals, training, and special equipment.
- The airbag system can be activated only once. After an airbag has inflated, it must be replaced.
- Use only original equipment airbags approved by Volkswagen. Have them installed by a trained technician who has the necessary tools and diagnostic equipment to properly replace any airbag in your vehicle and assure system effectiveness in a crash.
- Never permit salvaged or recycled airbags to be installed in your vehicle.

 Undeployed airbag modules and safety belts pretensioners are classified as **Perchlorate Material** – Special handling may apply. Obey all legal requirements regarding handling and disposal of these components – see <http://www.dtsc.ca.gov/hazardouswaste/perchlorate>. Obey all applicable legal requirements regarding handling and disposal of the vehicle or parts of its restraint system, including airbag modules and safety belts with pretensioners. Authorized Volkswagen dealers and authorized Volkswagen Service Facilities are familiar with the requirements, and we recommend that you have them perform this service for you.

## Notice about data recorded by the Event Data Recorder and vehicle control modules

 Read and follow the introductory information and safety information first ⇒ [▲ Introduction to the subject](#)

This vehicle is equipped with an Event Data Recorder (EDR). The main purpose of an EDR is to record, in certain crash or near crash-like situations, such as an airbag deployment or hitting a road obstacle, data that will assist in understanding how a vehicle's systems performed. The EDR is designed to record data related to vehicle dynamics and safety systems for a short period of time, typically 30 seconds or less. The EDR in this vehicle is designed to record such data as:

- How various systems in your vehicle were operating;
- Whether or not the driver and passenger safety belts were buckled/fastened;
- How far (if at all) the driver was depressing the accelerator and/or brake pedal; and,
- How fast the vehicle was traveling.

These data can help provide a better understanding of the circumstances in which crashes and injuries occur. **NOTE:** EDR data are recorded by your vehicle only a non-trivial crash situation occurs; no data are recorded by the EDR under normal driving conditions and no personal data (e.g., name, gender, age, and crash location) are recorded. However, other parties, such as law enforcement, could combine the EDR data with the type of personally identifying data routinely acquired during a crash investigation.

To read data recorded by an EDR, special equipment is required, and access to the vehicle or the EDR is needed. In addition to the vehicle manufacturer, other parties, such as law enforcement, that have the special equipment, can read the information if they have access to the vehicle or the EDR.

Some state laws restrict the retrieval or downloading of data stored by EDRs installed in a vehicle for the express purpose of retrieving data after an accident or crash event without the owner's consent.

Volkswagen will not access the EDR and/or similar data or give it to others - unless the vehicle owner (or lessee if the vehicle has been leased) agrees, or;

- upon the official request by the police;
- upon the order of a court of law or a government agency; or
- for the defense of a lawsuit through the judicial discovery process.

Volkswagen may also use the data for research about vehicle operation and safety performance or provide the data to a third party for research purposes without identifying the specific vehicle or information about the identity of its owner or lessee.

Your vehicle is also equipped with a number of electronic control modules for various vehicle systems, such as engine management, emission control, airbags, and safety belts.

These electronic control modules record data during normal vehicle operation that may be needed by trained technicians for diagnostic and repair purposes. The recording capability of these modules is limited to data (no sound is recorded). Only a small amount of data is actually recorded over a very limited period of time, or stored when a system fault is detected by a control module. Some of the data stored may relate to vehicle speed, direction, or braking, as well as restraint system use and performance in the event of a crash. Stored data can also only be read and downloaded with special equipment that is directly connected to the vehicle.

## Using the mobile phone without a vehicle integrated antenna - some important things to know

 Read and follow the introductory information and safety information first ⇒ [▲ Introduction to the subject](#)

Mobile or cellular telephones send and receive radio waves, sometimes called radio frequency energy (RF energy), both when they are being used and when they are in stand-by mode. Current scientific literature indicates that radio waves that exceed a certain level can have effects on the human body. Limits and guidelines have been established by governmental authorities and international committees in an effort to keep the electromagnetic radiation from mobile phones at levels tha

will not cause health problems. However, there is no scientifically based proof that wireless phones are absolutely safe.

Therefore some experts recommend a precautionary approach regarding the use of mobile phones by taking measures that lower the personal exposure to electromagnetic fields.

When using a cellular telephone inside a motor vehicle without a proper connection to an integrated vehicle telephone antenna, personal exposure to electromagnetic fields will be higher than when using the cellular telephone while properly connected to an integrated or other outside vehicle telephone antenna.

Your vehicle may be equipped with an optional hands-free system that will permit many of the features of compatible Bluetooth® enabled cellular telephones to be used for greater convenience and consistent with the laws of an increasing number of states and localities that prohibit the use of cellular telephones without some kind of hands-free device.

The hands-free system in your vehicle can be used with certain mobile phones that are connected by wire and hardware connector or via compatible Bluetooth® enabled phones with a cradle that is designed to fit your cellular telephone. The special cradle offers several advantages: The phone cradle must be safely secured to the base plate. Your phone is firmly attached to the instrument panel and is within reach at all times. Placing the phone in its cradle permits it to be charged, but more importantly connects the mobile phone to the vehicle's outside antenna. A cellular telephone that is properly connected to the integrated or other outside vehicle telephone antenna will lower the personal exposure to electromagnetic fields. You should also experience a better quality of service. Although a cellular telephone can be used inside your vehicle without a cradle, the phone will not be securely attached to the vehicle, will also not be charged through the cradle wiring and more importantly will not be connected to the vehicle's integrated telephone antenna. The mobile phone will also not be recharged. You might also experience more dropped calls and an overall impaired quality of the connection.

Therefore we strongly recommend that you use your cellular telephone in your vehicle only when it is properly attached to an appropriate cradle mounted on a base plate on the instrument panel.

Because of the large number and variety of cellular telephones on the market and the frequency with which new models are introduced, Volkswagen does not offer cradles for cellular telephones. Please check with the manufacturer of the cellular telephone that you plan to use.

#### WARNING

A mobile phone on the seat, instrument panel or in other places can be thrown around the inside of the vehicle during a sudden braking maneuver, a crash or other accident and injure vehicle occupants.

- Never place or attach accessories or other objects (such as cup holders, telephone brackets, note pads, navigation systems, large, heavy or bulky objects) on the doors, on the windshield, over or near the area marked AIRBAG on the steering wheel, instrument panel, backrests or between these areas and the occupant. Such objects could cause serious injury in a collision, especially if an airbag inflates.

#### WARNING

Using a mobile phone or CB radio inside the vehicle without a properly installed and separate outside antenna can be dangerous to your health and that of your passengers because the electromagnetic radiation energy that mobile phones and CB radios emit may be above established limits. This also applies if the outside antenna is not installed properly.

- Always keep the mobile phone antenna at least 8 inches (20 cm) away from pacemakers. Heart specialists advise that mobile phones can adversely affect the way of pacemakers work.
- Never carry a mobile phone that is switched on in the breast pocket directly over the pacemaker.
- If you suspect there may be interference with a pacemaker or other medical device, switch the mobile phone off immediately.

## Consumer Information

### Introduction to the subject

In this chapter you will find information on the following subjects:

⇒ *Operating your vehicle outside of the United States and Canada*

⇒ *Radio antenna and reception*

⇒ *Volkswagen service information*

#### WARNING

Improper vehicle care and use, as well as improper changes to the vehicle, increase the risk of accidents and injuries.

- Obey all applicable legal requirements.
- Read your Owner's Manual and heed all WARNINGS.


#### NOTE

Improper handling of the vehicle can result in damage to the vehicle.

- Obey all applicable legal requirements.

- Perform service according to the specifications in ⇒ *Booklet Warranty and Maintenance*.
- Read your Owner's Manual and heed all WARNINGS.

## Operating your vehicle outside of the United States and Canada

 Read and follow the introductory information and safety information first ⇒ [Introduction to the subject](#)

Government regulations in the United States and Canada require that automobiles meet specific emission regulations and safety standards. Therefore, vehicles built for the U.S. and Canada differ from vehicles sold in other countries.

If you plan to take your vehicle outside the continental limits of the United States or Canada, there is the possibility that:


- Unleaded fuels for vehicles with catalytic converters may not be available.
- Ultra Low Sulfur Diesel (ULSD) fuel No. 2 that your diesel engine requires may not be available.
- Fuel may have a considerably lower octane rating and may cause engine damage.
- Service may be inadequate due to lack of proper service facilities, tools or testing equipment.
- Replacement parts may not be readily available.
- DVD navigation systems for vehicles built for the United States and Canada will not necessarily work in Europe, and may not work in other countries outside of North America.

### NOTE

Volkswagen is not responsible for mechanical damage that may result from substandard fuel or service or the unavailability of Genuine Volkswagen parts.

- Volkswagen is not responsible if the vehicle does not meet the respective legal requirements in other countries and continents.

## Radio antenna and reception

 Read and follow the introductory information and safety information first ⇒ [Introduction to the subject](#)

If the vehicle has a factory-installed radio or navigation system, the radio antenna may be located at different places in the vehicle:

- On the inside of the rear window with the rear window defroster,
- On the inside of the rear side windows,
- On the inside of the windshield,
- On the vehicle roof.


Antennas on the insides of windows are thin wires.

### NOTE

Antennas installed on the insides of windows can be damaged by abrasive objects or by corrosive or acidic cleaning agents or other chemicals. Do not place any stickers on the windshield-integrated antenna and never clean the antenna with corrosive or acidic cleaning agents or other chemicals.

-  If electrical devices are operated close to the integrated windshield antenna, interference with AM radio reception may occur.

## Volkswagen service information

 Read and follow the introductory information and safety information first ⇒ [Introduction to the subject](#)

Volkswagen service information is published as soon as possible after model introduction.

To order service information contact:

Volkswagen Technical Literature Ordering Center

<http://www.vw.techliterature.com>

### WARNING

Improperly performed repairs and modifications can cause vehicle damage and malfunctions, and can impair the efficiency of driver assistance systems and the airbag system. This can lead to accidents and severe personal injuries.

- Have repairs and vehicle modifications performed by an authorized Volkswagen dealer or an authorized Volkswagen Service Facility.

## Declaration of Compliance, Telecommunications and Electronic Systems

Radio Frequency Devices and Radio communication Equipment User Manual Notice.

### Radio-based equipment

- Mobile phone package.
- Electronic immobilizer.
- HomeLink Universal remote control.
- Remote control vehicle key.
- Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS).
- Keyless Access locking and starting system.
- Park Distance Control (PDC) system.
- Adaptive Cruise Control system (ACC)
- Forward Collision Warning system (Front Assist)
- Lane Change System (Side Assist)

These devices comply with:

#### FCC Part 15.19

These devices comply with **Part 15 of the FCC Rules**. Operation is subject to the following 2 conditions:

- (1) This device may not cause harmful interference, and
- (2) this device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

#### FCC Part 15.21

CAUTION:

Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment.

These devices comply with **RSS-210 of Industry Canada**.

Operation is subject to the following 2 conditions:

- (1) this device may not cause interference, and
- (2) this device must accept any interference, including interference that may cause undesired operation of the device.

The manufacturer is not responsible for any radio or TV interference caused by unauthorized modifications to this equipment.

## Reporting Safety Defects

If you believe that your vehicle has a defect which could cause a crash or could cause injury or death, you should immediately inform the National Highway Traffic Safety Administration (NHTSA) in addition to notifying Volkswagen of America, Inc. 3800 Hamlin Road, Auburn Hills, MI 48326.

If NHTSA receives similar complaints, it may open an investigation, and if it finds that a safety defect exists in a group of vehicles, it may order a recall and remedy campaign. However, NHTSA cannot become involved in individual problems between you, your dealer, or Volkswagen of America, Inc.

To contact NHTSA, you may call the Vehicle Safety Hotline toll-free at 1-888-327-4236 (TTY: 1-800-424-9153);

go to <http://www.nhtsa.gov>;

or write to:

Administrator

NHTSA

1200 New Jersey Avenue, SE.

Washington, D.C. 20590

You can also obtain other information about motor vehicle safety from <http://www.safercar.gov>.

## Engine control and emission control system

### Introduction to the subject

In this chapter you will find information on the following subjects:

⇒ *Indicator lights*

⇒ *Catalytic Converter*

⇒ *Diesel particulate filter*

#### WARNING

The vehicle exhaust system and the catalytic converter or diesel particulate filter get very hot. This can cause a fire and serious personal injury.



- Never park where parts of the hot exhaust system and catalytic converter could ignite flammable materials, such as brush, leaves, dry grass, spilled fuel, etc.
- Never apply additional undercoating or rustproofing on or near the exhaust manifold, exhaust pipes, catalytic converter, diesel particulate filter, or heat shields.




#### WARNING



California Proposition 65 Warning



- Engine exhaust, some of its constituents, and certain vehicle components contain or emit chemicals known to the State of California to cause cancer and birth defects and reproductive harm. In addition, certain fluids contained in vehicles and certain products of component wear contain or emit chemicals known to the State of California to cause cancer and birth defects and reproductive harm.

## Indicator lights

 Read and follow the introductory information and safety information first ⇒  *Introduction to the subject*

Lights up	Possible cause	Proper response
	Engine control malfunction (Electronic Power Control).	Have engine checked immediately by an authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility.
	Glow plug preheating before diesel engine start-up.	⇒ <i>Starting and stopping the engine</i>
	Engine control/monitoring system malfunction (engine Malfunction Indicator Light - MIL).	Ease off the accelerator. Carefully drive to the nearest authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility. Have engine checked.  Drive about 15 minutes in Drive <b>(D)</b> (automatic transmission) at a speed of at least 45 mph (70 km/h).

Lights up	Possible cause	Proper response
	Diesel particulate filter clogged with soot.	There may be a noticeable smell.  Obey applicable speed limits ⇒  .
		See an authorized Volkswagen dealer or an authorized Volkswagen Service Facility if the indicator light is still on.

Flashes	Possible cause	Proper response
	Engine control malfunction (diesel engine).	Have engine checked immediately by an authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility.  Ease off the accelerator. Carefully drive to the nearest authorized
	Misfire, which can damage the catalytic converter.	Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility. Have engine checked.

When the ignition is switched on, several warning and indicator lights come on briefly for a function check. They go out after a few seconds.

#### WARNING


Obey all applicable legal requirements when cleaning the diesel particulate filter.

- Clean diesel particulate filter as recommended only when visibility, weather, road, and traffic conditions permit.
- Do not put others at risk.



#### NOTE

Failure to heed warning lights or text WARNINGS can result in vehicle damage.



As long as the indicator lights , **EPC**, or  are on, expect engine malfunctions, increased fuel consumption and loss of engine efficiency.


## Catalytic Converter

 Read and follow the introductory information and safety information first ⇒  *Introduction to the subject*


The catalytic converter provides exhaust gas after-treatment to help reduce pollutants in the exhaust gas. To help ensure long service life of the exhaust system an gasoline engine catalytic converter:

- Only use unleaded fuel.
- Never run the fuel tank completely dry.
- Do not exceed the correct oil level ⇒ *Engine oil*.
- Do not tow the vehicle to start it, but use a jump-start instead ⇒ *Jump-starting*.

If you experience misfires, loss of power or the engine is not running smoothly while driving, reduce speed immediately and have the vehicle checked by an authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility. Otherwise, gasoline could reach the exhaust system and get into the atmosphere. The catalytic converter could also be damaged by overheating!


 Under certain engine conditions, you may smell a sulfur odor. This is not an indication of a malfunctioning emission control system. This depends upon the sulfur content of the diesel fuel.

## Diesel particulate filter

 Read and follow the introductory information and safety information first ⇒  *Introduction to the subject*


The diesel particulate filter helps take soot particles out of the exhaust. The soot particles are collected and periodically burned in the filter at high temperatures (**regeneration**). The resulting heat can cause the temperature inside the engine compartment to increase.

Regeneration can create noises, slight smells, and, regardless of the outside temperature, cause the radiator fan to start – even after the engine has been turned off.

Volkswagen recommends frequently driving longer distances to help clean the filter. On vehicles with automatic transmissions, the engine speed may also increase slightly. The indicator light  will not come on.

To lengthen the life of the exhaust system and the diesel particulate filter:


- Use only Ultra Low Sulfur Diesel (ULSD) fuel No. 2 ⇒ *Fuel*.
- Never refuel with gasoline or fuel oil or bio-diesel that does not comply with the special requirements for diesel fuel ⇒ *Diesel fuel*.
- Never drive until the fuel tank is completely empty.
- Do not exceed the correct oil level ⇒ *Engine oil*.
- Do not tow the vehicle to start, but use a jump-start instead ⇒ *Jump-starting*.

On vehicles with automatic transmissions, increase the engine speed slightly while driving to automatically start cleaning the diesel particulate filter. This helps to minimize clogging of the filter. The indicator light  will not come on.

#### WARNING

Obey all applicable legal requirements when cleaning (regenerating) the diesel particulate filter.

- Clean the diesel particulate filter as recommended only when visibility, weather, road, and traffic conditions permit.
- Do not put others at risk.

 Under certain engine conditions, you may smell a sulfur odor. This is not an indication of a malfunctioning emission control system. This depends upon the sulfur content of the diesel fuel.

# Do it yourself

## Practical tips

### Frequently asked questions

If you suspect a malfunction or vehicle damage, read and follow the following advice **before** contacting an authorized Volkswagen dealer or an authorized Volkswagen Service Facility. You may also find helpful information under Characteristics and Checklist in the index.

Description	Possible causes among others	Possible remedy
Engine does not start.	Vehicle battery dead.	– Perform jump-start ⇒ <a href="#">Jump-starting</a> .
		– Charge vehicle battery ⇒ <a href="#">12 Volt vehicle battery</a> .
	The wrong remote control vehicle key is used.	Use a valid remote control vehicle key ⇒ <a href="#">Vehicle key set</a> .
	Fuel level too low.	Refuel ⇒ <a href="#">Refueling</a> .
Vehicle cannot be locked or unlocked using remote control vehicle key.	AdBlue fill level too low.	Refill AdBlue ⇒ <a href="#">Selective catalytic reduction (AdBlue®)</a> .
	– Battery in remote control vehicle key dead.	– Replace battery ⇒ <a href="#">Vehicle key set</a> .
	– Too far away from vehicle.	– Move closer to vehicle.
Vehicle cannot be locked or unlocked using remote control vehicle key.	(out of range).	– Synchronize remote control vehicle key ⇒ <a href="#">Vehicle key set</a> .
	– Buttons have been pressed too many times.	– Lock or unlock vehicle manually ⇒ <a href="#">Emergency closing and opening</a> .
Unusual noises.	Cold engine, brake-assistance systems, electronic parking brake.	Check the Noises entry in the keyword index.
Odd driving behavior.	Assistance systems activated.	Check the Assistance systems entry in the keyword index.
	Convenience settings are stored.	Correct convenience settings ⇒ <a href="#">Seat functions</a> .
Driver seat and outer mirrors move when vehicle is unlocked.	Memory-seat settings are stored.	– Reassign seat setting ⇒ <a href="#">Seat functions</a> .
		– Clear memory-seat memory ⇒ <a href="#">Seat functions</a> .
Front seats cannot be adjusted with power controls.	Vehicle battery dead.	Charge vehicle battery ⇒ <a href="#">12 Volt vehicle battery</a> .
	Fuse blown.	Check fuse and replace if necessary ⇒ <a href="#">Fuses</a> .
	Equipment differs depending on vehicle.	No direct corrective action possible because this depends on the equipment. Contact an authorized Volkswagen dealer or an authorized Volkswagen Service Facility for assistance ⇒ <a href="#">Vehicle tool kit</a> .
No jack in vehicle or no collapsible spare tire or tire mobility set in vehicle.	Vehicle has mobility tires.	



Description	Possible causes among others	Possible remedy
Features do not work as described in this Manual.	Settings were changed in the Volkswagen Information System or Infotainment System.  – Headlights incorrectly adjusted.	Check and reset to factory settings if necessary or ⇒ <a href="#">System settings (CAR)</a> .  – Adjust headlight range ⇒ <a href="#">Lights</a> .
Headlights do not light up the road as they should.	– Light bulbs burned out.  – Low beams not switched on.  Vehicle battery charge too low.	– Change light bulbs ⇒ <a href="#">Replacing light bulbs</a> .  – Switch on low beams ⇒ <a href="#">Lights</a>  Charge vehicle battery ⇒ <a href="#">12 Volt vehicle battery</a> .
Electrical appliances do not work.	Remaining fuel level too low.  Fuse blown.  – Short hauls.  – Jumpy accelerator pedal.  Electrical loads switched on.	Refuel ⇒ <a href="#">Refueling</a> .  Check fuse and replace if necessary ⇒ <a href="#">Fuses</a> .  – Avoid traveling short distances  – Drive defensively.  – Accelerate smoothly.  Switch off unnecessary loads.
Fuel consumption higher than indicated.	Engine control malfunctioning.  Tire pressure too low.  Driving in the mountains.  Towing a trailer or roof rack.  Driving with heavy payload.  Driving at high engine speed.	Have the malfunction corrected. ⇒ <a href="#">Engine control and emission control system</a>  Adjust tire pressure ⇒ <a href="#">Tires and wheels</a> .  No direct corrective action possible.  – Check use.  – Remove if not in use.  No direct corrective action possible.  Select a higher gear.

## Lift points for the vehicle

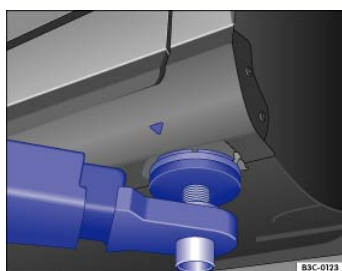


Fig. 196 Front lift point for workshop hoist or floor jack.

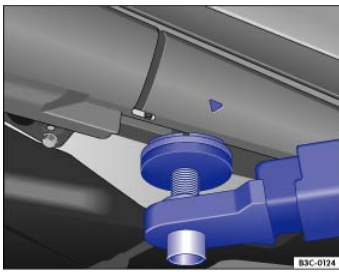


Fig. 197 Rear lift point for workshop hoist or floor jack.

The vehicle may only be raised at the lift points shown in illustrations and ⇒ Fig. 197. If the vehicle is lifted at different points, vehicle damage ⇒ ⓘ and serious injuries may occur ⇒ ⚠.

Workshop hoists that use fluid cushions (receiving platforms) must not be used for lifting the vehicle.

There are many precautions that have to be followed when lifting a vehicle on a workshop hoist or floor jack. Do not try to lift a vehicle on a workshop hoist or floor jack unless you have the training, knowledge, and experience to be able to do so safely.

Information about lifting the vehicle with the vehicle jack ⇒ [Lifting the vehicle with the vehicle jack](#) .

### ⚠ WARNING

Improperly lifting your vehicle with a workshop hoist or floor jack can cause the vehicle to fall off the hoist or jack and cause serious personal injury.

- Always read and heed the operating instructions from the floor jack manufacturer and legal regulations if necessary before using the floor jack to lift the vehicle.
- Never let anyone stay in the vehicle when it is being lifted or when it is off the ground.
- Always lift your vehicle only at the designated lift points shown in the illustrations ⇒ Fig. 196 and ⇒ Fig. 197. Not using the designated lift points can cause the vehicle to fall off the floor jack when heavy parts such as the engine or transmission are removed.
- Always make sure that the vehicle's lift points lie as flat as possible and centered on the carrier plates of the floor jack.
- Never start the engine when you have raised the vehicle on the floor jack. The engine vibrations and vehicle movements could knock the vehicle off the floor jack.
- If you must work under a vehicle raised on a floor jack, always make sure that the vehicle is safely supported on safety stands intended for that purpose that are strong enough to support the weight of the vehicle.
- Never use the floor jack as a ladder or step ladder.
- Always make sure that the weight of the vehicle is not heavier than the lifting capacity of the floor jack and safety stands being used.

### ⓘ NOTE

- To help prevent serious vehicle damage, never lift the vehicle by the engine oil pan, transmission housing, or by the front or rear axles or suspension.
- To help prevent damage to the underbody or chassis, always insert a **rubber pad** between the hoist and the lifting points. In addition make sure the lifting arms have enough clearance.
- The lifting arms should not touch side sills or other parts of the vehicle.

## In an emergency

### 📖 Introduction to the subject

In this chapter you will find information on the following subjects:

⇒ [Protecting yourself and the vehicle](#)

### ⚠ WARNING

A vehicle breakdown in traffic is dangerous and creates a great risk for you, your passengers, and others.

- Always stop the vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so and move the vehicle a safe distance off the road where it is safe to park and, if necessary lock all doors in an emergency. Turn on the emergency flasher and set up another warning device about 25 yards (25 meters) behind the vehicle to warn approaching traffic.
- Never leave children, disabled persons, or anyone who cannot help themselves alone in the vehicle when locking the doors. This could result in people being trapped in the vehicle in an emergency. Depending on the time of year, people trapped in the vehicle can be exposed to very high or very low temperatures.

## Protecting yourself and the vehicle



Fig. 198 In the center of the instrument panel: Switch for emergency flashers.

Read and follow the introductory information and safety information first ⇒ [▲ Introduction to the subject](#)

Obey all applicable legal requirements regarding protecting a broken-down vehicle. For example, turning on the emergency flashers and wearing a safety vest are mandatory in many countries.

## Checklist

**For your own safety and that of your passengers, carry out the following steps in the order listed** ⇒ [▲](#) :

- ✓ Park the vehicle at safe distance from traffic and on a suitable surface .
- ✓ Switch on emergency flashers by pressing the switch .
- ✓ Apply the electronic parking brake Braking and parking to help prevent the vehicle from moving.
- ✓ Shift the transmission into Park (P) .
- ✓ Stop the engine and remove the key from the ignition switch .
- ✓ Have all passengers exit and go to a safe location away from moving traffic, such as behind a guard rail.
- ✓ Take all vehicle keys with you when leaving your vehicle.
- ✓ Set up a warning triangle or other warning device in order to warn other motorists and cyclists.
- ✓ Let the engine cool down and get expert assistance if necessary.

If the emergency flashers are on, use the turn signal lever to indicate a direction or lane change, for example when the vehicle is being towed. This temporarily interrupts the emergency flashers.

Switch on the emergency flashers when:

- Traffic suddenly slows down or stops in front of you to warn those approaching from behind.
- In any emergency situation.
- If the vehicle breaks down.
- When being towed.

Always obey traffic laws that govern the use of emergency flashers where you are driving.

If the emergency flashers are not working, a different method – as permitted by law – must be used to warning other motorists and cyclists to the breakdown.

### WARNING

Disregarding the safety-related checklist may lead to accidents and serious injuries.

- Always review and follow the checklist. Follow accepted safety practices and use common sense.

### WARNING

The vehicle exhaust system and the catalytic converter or diesel particulate filter get very hot and can cause a fire and serious personal injury.

- Never park where parts of the hot exhaust system or catalytic converter could ignite flammable materials, such as dry grass, brush, leaves, spilled fuel, etc.



The vehicle battery will be drained if the emergency flashers are on for a long time – even if the ignition is switched off.

## Emergency closing and opening

### Introduction to the subject

In this chapter you will find information on the following subjects:

⇒ [Manually unlocking and locking the driver door](#)

⇒ [Manually locking the passenger doors](#)

⇒ *Opening the trunk lid from inside the luggage compartment*

⇒ *Emergency fuel filler flap release*

⇒ *Emergency closing of the power sunroof*

⇒ *Emergency release for the selector lever lock*

⇒ *Emergency closing or opening*

The doors and the trunk lid can be manually locked and, in some cases, unlocked if necessary, for instance because the power locking system or the remote control vehicle key malfunctions.

Emergency closing of the power sunroof is not possible with means in the vehicle. Contact an authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility for assistance.

#### **⚠ WARNING**

Serious injuries can result if the emergency closing and opening procedures are used carelessly.

- Never leave children, disabled persons, or anyone who cannot help themselves in the vehicle. The doors can be locked with the remote control key. This could result in people being trapped in the vehicle in an emergency.
- A closed vehicle can become very hot or very cold, depending on the season. Particularly in the summer, heat buildup in the passenger and luggage compartment of a parked vehicle can result in temperatures in the vehicle that are much higher than the outside temperatures. Temperatures can quickly reach levels that can cause unconsciousness and death, particularly to small children.

#### **⚠ WARNING**

Careless opening and closing of doors, the trunk lid, and the power sunroof is dangerous and can cause serious personal injury.

- Open or close doors, trunk lid, and power sunroof only when no one is in the way.

#### **ⓘ NOTE**

To help prevent vehicle damage, carefully remove and properly reinstall parts after emergency locking or unlocking.

### Manually unlocking and locking the driver door

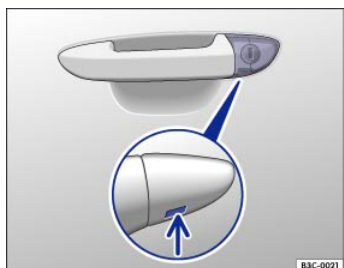




Fig. 199 Door handle on driver door: Concealed lock cylinder.

 Read and follow the introductory information and safety information first ⇒  *Introduction to the subject*

When locking the vehicle manually all doors are locked. When the vehicle is unlocked manually, only the driver door is unlocked. Note the instructions for the anti-theft alarm system ⇒ *Power locking system*.

- Take the emergency key out of the remote control vehicle key ⇒ *Vehicle key set*.
- Insert the emergency key from below into the opening of the cover cap on the driver door ⇒ Fig. 199 (arrow) and lift the cover cap off. Grasping the door handle and pulling slightly makes it easier to remove the cap.
- Insert the emergency key into the lock cylinder and unlock or lock the door.
- Reinsert the cover cap from top to bottom and press until it clicks into place. Grasping the door handle and pulling slightly makes it easier to install the cap.

#### Special considerations when unlocking:

- If the vehicle is equipped with an anti-theft alarm system, the system remains activated for the unlocked vehicle. But no alarm is triggered at first ⇒ *Power locking system*.
- Open the driver door; the alarm will sound if the ignition is not switched on within about 15 seconds.
- Switch on the ignition. The electronic immobilizer recognizes a valid remote control vehicle key when the ignition is switched on and deactivates the anti-theft alarm system.



The driver door can be unlocked separately from the inside the vehicle by pulling the door handle to open the door ⇒ *Power locking system*.



The anti-theft alarm system is not activated when the vehicle is locked with the emergency key ⇒ *Power locking system*.

### Manually locking the passenger doors

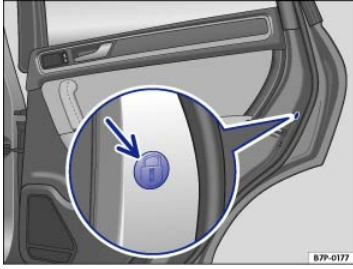


Fig. 200 On the front side of the right rear door: Emergency lock, covered by a rubber seal.



Fig. 201 Locking the vehicle using the emergency key.

Read and follow the introductory information and safety information first ⇒ *Introduction to the subject*

The passenger door and rear doors can each be locked manually. This will **not** activate the anti-theft alarm system.

- Open the door.
- Remove the rubber seal on the front side of the door. The seal is marked with a lock ⇒ *Fig. 200*.
- Take the emergency key out of the remote control vehicle key ⇒ *Vehicle key set*.
- Insert the emergency key into the vertical slit and turn the key away from the vehicle ⇒ *Fig. 201*.
- Re-insert the rubber seal and completely close the door.
- Make sure that the door is locked.
- Repeat the procedure for other doors if necessary.
- Have the vehicle checked immediately by an authorized Volkswagen dealer or an authorized Volkswagen Service Facility.



Doors can be unlocked separately from the inside the vehicle by pulling the door handle once. If necessary, pull the door handle again ⇒ *Power locking system*.

### Opening the trunk lid from inside the luggage compartment



Fig. 202 Inside the luggage compartment: Remove the cover plate in the trunk lid.

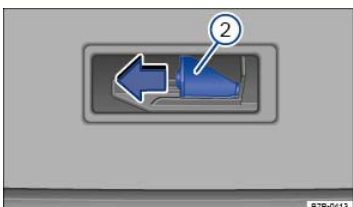



Fig. 203 Inside the luggage compartment: Release lever in the trunk lid.

 Read and follow the introductory information and safety information first ⇒ [Introduction to the subject](#)


- If necessary, fold the rear seat bench backrest forward ⇒ [Seat functions](#).
- Remove luggage in order to reach the trunk lid from the inside.
- Remove the rectangular cover in the inside trim of the trunk lid by inserting a small screwdriver in the opening ⇒ [Fig. 202①](#).
- Use a small screwdriver to unlock the trunk lid, by push the release lever in direction of the arrow ⇒ [Fig. 203②](#).
- Open the trunk lid, using more force than usual.

## Emergency fuel filler flap release

 Read and follow the introductory information and safety information first ⇒ [Introduction to the subject](#)

There is no emergency release for the fuel filler flap. Contact an authorized Volkswagen dealer or an authorized Volkswagen Service Facility for assistance.

## Emergency closing of the power sunroof

 Read and follow the introductory information and safety information first ⇒ [Introduction to the subject](#)

If your power sunroof will not close properly, do not try to close it yourself, doing so can cause serious and expensive damage that will not be covered by any Volkswagen Limited Warranty. Special knowledge and tools are required to close the power sunroof if it will not close on its own. To help prevent damage to the sunroof, have an authorized Volkswagen dealer or an authorized Volkswagen Service Facility help you close and repair the power sunroof.

## Emergency release for the selector lever lock



Fig. 204 Removing the selector gate cover.

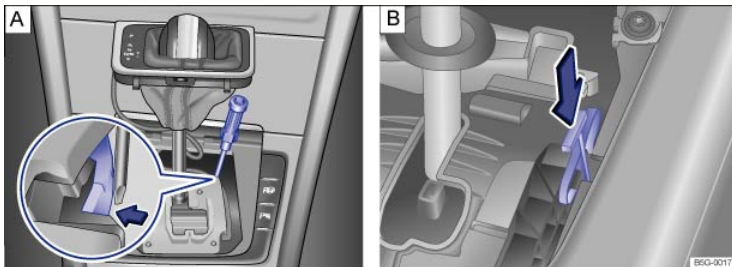



Fig. 205 Releasing the selector lever lock (Versions A and B).

 Read and follow the introductory information and safety information first ⇒ [Introduction to the subject](#)

If the power supply fails (due to a dead vehicle battery, for example) and the vehicle has to be pushed or towed, the emergency release must be used to move the selector lever to Neutral (N). You will need the screwdriver from the vehicle tool kit to release the selector lever ⇒ [Vehicle tool kit](#).

The emergency release is located under the selector gate cover on the right side when viewed in the driving direction.


### Preparations

- Set the electronic parking brake. If the electronic parking brake cannot be set (in case of a dead battery), you must find another way to help prevent the vehicle from moving.
- Switch off the ignition.

### Removing the selector gate cover


- Using your hands, pull upward on the cover around the selector lever sleeve ⇒ [Fig. 204](#).
- Slip the cover up and over the selector lever ⇒ [▲](#).

### Emergency release for the selector lever (Version A)

- With the screwdriver from the vehicle tool kit, carefully push the release lever ⇒ [Fig. 205](#)  in the direction of the arrow and hold it in this position.

- Press the release button in the selector lever handle and shift the selector lever to Neutral **(N)**.
- Carefully press the selector gate cover back in place, making sure that the electrical wiring stays in the correct position and is not pinched or damaged.

#### Emergency release for the selector lever (Version B)

- Using the flat blade of the screwdriver from the vehicle tool kit, carefully push down on the middle of the release lever → Fig. 205  in the direction of the arrow and hold it in this position.
- Press the release button in the selector lever handle and shift the selector lever to Neutral **(N)**.
- Carefully press the selector gate cover back in place, making sure that the electrical wiring stays in the correct position and is not pinched or damaged.

#### WARNING

Never shift the transmission out of Park **(P)** without first setting the electronic parking brake. Otherwise, the vehicle can start to roll unexpectedly, especially on hills or inclines, and cause an accident and serious injuries.

#### NOTE

Even with the selector lever is in Neutral **(N)**, the automatic transmission will be damaged if the vehicle is towed (or you let it coast) for an extended period or at high speed with the engine shut off.

### Emergency closing or opening

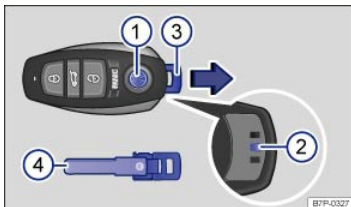







Fig. 206 Releasing and removing the emergency key from the remote control vehicle key with alarm button.

 Read and follow the introductory information and safety information first →  [Introduction to the subject](#)

If you can't get the vehicle key out of the ignition because the vehicle battery is dead or for some other reason, follow these steps:

- Press and hold the button → Fig. 206  with one hand.
- Press the locking tab  on the bottom of the emergency key  with the other hand while pulling the emergency key out in the direction indicated by the arrow.

Lock the vehicle manually and contact an authorized Volkswagen dealer or an Authorized Volkswagen Service Facility for assistance.

Please see the vehicle key set section in your Owner's Manual for further instruction if needed.

### Vehicle tool kit

#### Introduction to the subject

In this chapter you will find information on the following subjects:

⇒ [Storage](#)

⇒ [Contents](#)

⇒ [Folding chocks](#)

When securing the vehicle after a breakdown, always obey all applicable legal requirements.

#### WARNING

Loose tools and other items in the vehicle tool kit and tire mobility set and a loose collapsible spare tire may be thrown through the passenger compartment if you brake suddenly or steer sharply or are involved in an accident. This can cause severe injuries.


- Always make sure the vehicle tool kit, tire mobility set, and collapsible spare tire are securely stowed in the luggage compartment.

#### WARNING

Improper or damaged vehicle tools can lead to accidents and injury.

- Never work with tool that are damaged or not right for the job.

## Storage


 Read and follow the introductory information and safety information first ⇒ [Introduction to the subject](#)

The vehicle tool kit, the collapsible spare tire, and the tire mobility set with folding chocks are stowed under the luggage compartment floor panel.

The tire mobility set is in the foam organizer insert on the right side together with the vehicle tool kit.

- Lift up the luggage compartment floor panel and hook it to the top of the luggage compartment or remove the reversible luggage compartment floor panel ⇒ [Luggage compartment](#).

- Undo the retaining strap to take out the vehicle tool kit.

 Completely retract the jack after use. Otherwise it will not fit in its compartment and cannot be stowed safely.

## Contents

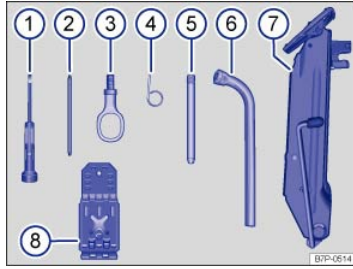



Fig. 207 Contents of the vehicle tool kit.

 Read and follow the introductory information and safety information first ⇒ [Introduction to the subject](#)

The contents of the vehicle tool kit depend on the vehicle configuration. The following describes the maximum contents.

**Contents of the vehicle tool kit ⇒ Fig. 207 :**

- ① Screwdriver with removable blade.
- ② Torx bit. The Torx bit is removable and can be inserted in the screwdriver handle instead of the screwdriver blade.
- ③ Screw-in towing eyes.
- ④ Hubcap puller clips for removing wheel bolt caps.
- ⑤ Pin for changing a wheel.
- ⑥ Lug wrench.
- ⑦ Jack. Prior to storing the jack in the tool box, make sure to completely crank the jack down to its original position. Next the crank lever must be braced against the side of the jack.
- ⑧ Folding chocks ⇒ [Folding chocks](#).

## Folding chocks

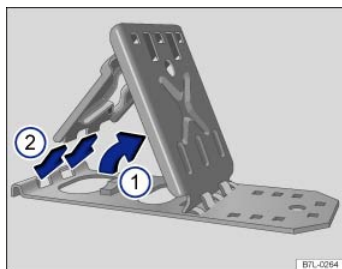



Fig. 208 Setting up folding chock.

 Read and follow the introductory information and safety information first ⇒ [Introduction to the subject](#)

The folding chocks are with the vehicle tool kit.

**Setting up folding chocks**

- Raise the support plate ⇒ [Fig. 208①](#).
- Insert both lugs of the securing plate completely in the elongated holes of the base plate ②.



## Proper use

The folding chock can be used to block the wheel diagonal to the wheel which is to be changed.

The folding chock must be placed directly in front of and behind the wheel and may be used only on firm surfaces.

### ⚠ WARNING

Improper setup or improper use of the folding chocks can cause accidents and injuries.

- Never use damaged folding chocks.
- Never use folding chocks to secure the vehicle on slopes.

## Wheel trim

### 📖 Introduction to the subject

In this chapter you will find information on the following subjects:

⇒ *Wheel bolt caps*

### ⚠ WARNING

Unsuitable wheel covers and improper installation of wheel covers can cause accidents and severe injuries.

- Improperly installed wheel covers can come loose while driving and endanger other motorists and cyclists.
- Do not use damaged wheel covers.
- Always make sure that the flow of air for brake system cooling is not blocked or reduced before installing wheel covers. This applies to both factory installed wheel covers and aftermarket wheel covers. Insufficient air supply may significantly increase stopping distance.

### ℹ NOTE

To help prevent damage to the vehicle, be careful when removing wheel covers and be sure to install them properly.

## Wheel bolt caps



Fig. 209 Pulling cover caps off wheel bolts.

📖 Read and follow the introductory information and safety information first ⇒ ⚠ *Introduction to the subject*

- Take the wire clip out of the vehicle tool kit ⇒ *Vehicle tool kit*.
- Insert the wire clip through the opening of the cover cap ⇒ *Fig. 209* and pull off in the direction of the arrow.

The caps are designed to protect the wheel bolts and should be installed again after the wheel change.

## Changing a wheel

### 📖 Introduction to the subject

In this chapter you will find information on the following subjects:

⇒ *Preparations for changing a wheel*

⇒ *Wheel bolts*

⇒ *Lifting the vehicle with the vehicle jack*

⇒ *Lifting the vehicle with the vehicle jack (R Line)*

⇒ *Changing a wheel*

⇒ *After changing a wheel*

Some vehicle designs and models are not delivered with a jack and lug wrench. In such cases, Volkswagen recommends having tires and wheels changed by an authorized Volkswagen dealer or an authorized Volkswagen Service Facility.

Change a wheel by yourself only if the vehicle is parked in a safe location, you are familiar with safety procedures and the technical steps, and you have proper tools available. Otherwise, get expert assistance.

The vehicle jack can only be safely used to change the wheel on a vehicle that has only one flat or damaged tire. The vehicle will not have the support it needs from 3 fully inflated tires. The vehicle can fall off the jack. If more than one tire on the vehicle is flat or damaged, do not lift the vehicle with the vehicle jack. Instead, get expert assistance.

## WARNING

Changing a wheel, especially on the side of the road, can be dangerous. To help reduce the risk of serious personal injury:

- Always stop the vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so. Move the vehicle a safe distance off the road where it is safe to change the wheel.
- Always make sure that all passengers, especially children, are in a safe place outside the vehicle and away from the vehicle and traffic (such as behind a guard rail).
- Turn on the emergency flasher and set up another warning device about 25 yards (25 meters) behind the vehicle to warn approaching traffic.
- Change a wheel by yourself only if you are familiar with the necessary steps. Otherwise, get expert assistance.
- Always switch the engine off, firmly apply the parking brake, and shift the transmission into Park (P) (automatic transmission) or any gear (manual only) to help prevent the vehicle from moving suddenly and slipping off the jack.
- Always make sure that the ground is level and firm. If necessary, place the jack on a large and sturdy board or on a similar ground support.
- Always block the wheel diagonally opposite the wheel being changed with chocks or similar things.
- If you are towing a trailer, always unhitch it from your vehicle before starting to change the wheel. Always apply the trailer brakes firmly and make sure the trailer cannot move unintentionally.
- Always use proper and undamaged tools when changing a tire.
- Once a wheel is lifted off the ground, having the transmission in Park (P) or in gear will not prevent sudden vehicle movement.
- Always use a jack that has been approved by the manufacturer for your vehicle. Never use other jacks, even if they have been approved for use on other Volkswagen models.
- To reduce the risk of losing control, crashes, and serious personal injuries, never loosen the screws on rims with threaded rim rings.
- After changing a wheel, have the wheel bolt tightening torque checked with an accurate torque wrench.

## Preparations for changing a wheel

 Read and follow the introductory information and safety information first ⇒ [Introduction to the subject](#)

## Checklist

**Getting ready to change a wheel. Follow these steps in the order listed here ⇒  :**

- ✓ If you have a flat tire, move as far away from traffic as possible. Park the vehicle on a flat, level surface where no part of the hot catalytic converter and exhaust system can come into contact with flammable materials under the vehicle, such as dry grass, brush, spilled fuel, etc.
- ✓ Apply the electronic parking brake to help prevent the vehicle from moving Braking and parking.
- ✓ Shift the transmission into Park (P) Shifting.
- ✓ Stop the engine and remove the key from the ignition switch Starting and stopping the engine.
- ✓ Have all passengers exit and go to a safe place, such as behind a guard rail.
- ✓ Block the diagonally opposite wheel with chocks or other suitable things.
- ✓ If towing a trailer: Unhitch the trailer from the vehicle and park the trailer properly.
- ✓ If the luggage compartment is loaded: Remove the luggage.
- ✓ Take the collapsible spare tire and the vehicle tool kit out of the luggage compartment.
- ✓ Take off the wheel bolt caps Wheel trim.

## WARNING

Disregarding the safety-related checklist may lead to accidents and serious personal injuries.

- Always review and follow the checklist. Follow accepted safety practices and use common sense.

## Wheel bolts



Fig. 210 Changing a wheel: Loosening wheel bolts.

Read and follow the introductory information and safety information first ⇒ [Introduction to the subject](#)

Loosen the wheel bolts only with the lug wrench that was supplied with the vehicle.

Loosen the wheel bolts only about 1 turn before lifting the vehicle with the jack.

If a wheel bolt does not come loose, carefully push the end of the lug wrench with your foot. Make sure you are standing firmly on the ground and hold on to the vehicle for support.

#### Loosening the wheel bolts

- Push the lug wrench over the wheel bolt all the way ⇒ [Fig. 210](#).
- Holding the lug wrench at the end, loosen the wheel bolt by turning it counterclockwise about 1 complete turn (360°) ⇒ .

#### Important information regarding wheel bolts

The design of rims and wheel bolts is matched to the factory-installed wheels. If different wheels are installed, wheel bolts with the right length and bolt head shape must be used. The attachment of the wheels and function of the brake system depend on this.

It may not be possible to use wheel bolts from different vehicles of the same model.

#### Wheel bolt tightening torque

Correctly tightened bolts for steel and alloy wheel rims should have a torque of **133 ft-lbs. (180 Nm)**. After changing a wheel, have the wheel bolt tightening torque checked right away with an accurate torque wrench.

**Before you check** the tightening torque, replace corroded and difficult-to-turn wheel bolts and clean the threads in the wheel hub.

Never grease or oil the wheel bolts and the threads in the wheel hubs. The bolts can come loose while driving if greased or oiled, even if tightened to the required torque.

### WARNING

Improperly tightened wheel bolts can come loose while driving and cause you to lose control over the vehicle, resulting in accidents and serious injuries.

- Only use wheel bolts that belong your vehicle and to the wheel being installed.
- Never use different wheel bolts.
- Wheel bolts and wheel hub threads must always be clean, easy-to-turn and free of oil and grease.
- Only use the lug wrench that is supplied with the vehicle to loosen the wheel bolts.
- Loosen the wheel bolts only about one turn before lifting the vehicle with the jack.
- Never grease or oil the wheel bolts and the threads in the wheel hubs. The bolts can come loose while driving if greased or oiled, even if tightened to the required torque.
- Never loosen bolted connections on wheel rims with bolted rim rings.
- If the wheel bolts are not tightened to the proper torque, the wheel can come off the vehicle when it is moving. Extremely high torque can damage the wheel bolts and/or their threads.

#### Lifting the vehicle with the vehicle jack

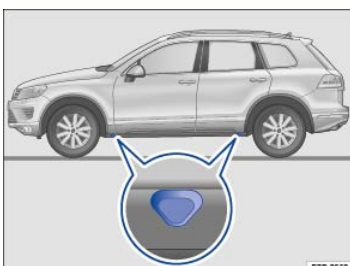


Fig. 211 Lift points for the jack.

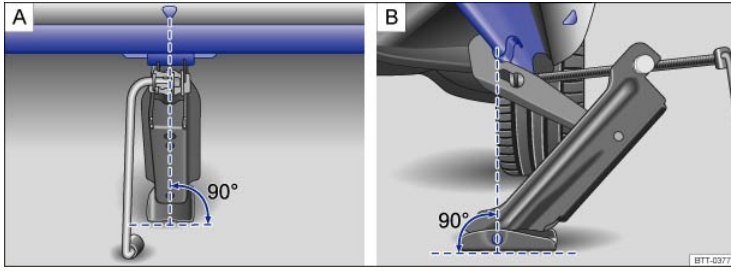


Fig. 212 Jack in position at the left rear lift point.

Read and follow the introductory information and safety information first ⇒ [Introduction to the subject](#)

The standard vehicle jack cannot be safely used to raise the vehicle when the side steps, extended door sills or similar enhancements have been installed in the area of the lower side sills ⇒ [▲](#).

The jack must be positioned at one of the 4 lift points marked on the vehicle body (2 on each side as shown in ⇒ [Fig. 211](#)). You must use the lift point closest to the wheel being changed ⇒ [▲](#).

The vehicle may only be lifted by a jack positioned at 1 of the 4 jack lift points.

Do not jack up the vehicle until all the wheel bolts on the wheel being changed have been loosened ⇒ [Wheel bolts](#).

## Checklist

**For your own safety and that of your passengers, carry out the following steps in the order listed ⇒ [▲](#) :**

- ✓ Find a level spot on firm ground for lifting the vehicle.
- ✓ Switch off the engine, shift the transmission into Park (P) Shifting. Then apply the parking brake to help prevent the vehicle from moving Braking and parking
- ✓ If towing a trailer: Unhitch the trailer from the vehicle and park the trailer properly.
- ✓ Straighten the steering wheel so that the front wheels point straight forward.
- ✓ Block the diagonally opposite wheel with chocks or other suitable things.
- ✓ Loosen the wheel bolts of the wheel to be changed [Wheel bolts](#).
- ✓ Find the jack lift point on the vehicle frame that is closest to the wheel to be changed.
- ✓ Crank up the jack so that it still just fits underneath the lift point.
- ✓ Position the jack so that its base is directly underneath the lift point , making sure that the entire base of the jack rests securely on the ground.
- ✓ Align the jack and wind up the jack claw at the same time, until the claw cradles the vertical rib underneath the vehicle A / B.
- ✓ Continue cranking up the jack until the wheel is just a little off the ground.

### WARNING

Using the wrong jack to raise a vehicle with side steps, extended door sills, additional decorative trim or other enhancements in the area of the lower side sills can cause the vehicle to fall off the jack and result in serious personal injury.

- Never use the standard jack supplied with unmodified vehicles to raise the vehicle. The side step can interfere with the jack when raising the vehicle.
- Always use the scissor vehicle jack supplied with the authorized side step package when the vehicle must be jacked up, for example, to change a tire.

### WARNING

Improper use of your vehicle jack can cause the vehicle to fall off the jack leading to serious personal injury. To help reduce the risk of serious personal injury:

- Use only jacks approved by Volkswagen for the vehicle. Other jacks might slip, even those approved for other Volkswagen models, but not for your vehicle.
- Always set up the jack on firm and level ground. The vehicle may slip off the jack if the jack is resting on soft or sloping ground. If necessary, place a sturdy board under the jack.
- On a hard, slippery surface (such as a tiled floor), use an anti-skid rubber mat or something similar to prevent the jack from slipping.
- Position the jack only at the described vehicle lift points. Before you raise your vehicle, always make sure the jack claw properly grips the rib under the sill so that the jack does not slip off when you are raising the vehicle ⇒ [Fig. 212](#).
- Never have any part of your body (such as your arm or leg) under the vehicle when it is supported by the jack. Never let other persons have any part of their body under the vehicle, either!
- If you must work under a vehicle raised on a floor jack, always make sure that the vehicle is safely supported on safety stands intended for that purpose that are strong enough to support the weight of the vehicle.

- Never lift the vehicle when it is tilted or inclined to one side or the engine is running.
- Never lift the vehicle when more than one tire is flat or damaged.
- Do not start the engine while the vehicle is supported by a jack. Engine vibrations may cause the vehicle to slip off the jack.

## ⚠ WARNING

Disregarding the safety-related checklist may lead to accidents and serious injuries.

- Always review and follow the checklist. Follow accepted safety practices and use common sense.

### Lifting the vehicle with the vehicle jack (R Line)

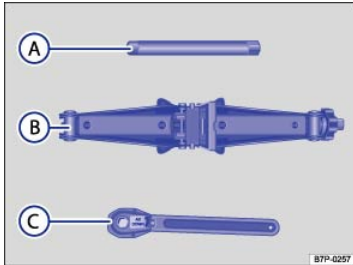


Fig. 213 Scissor jack components.

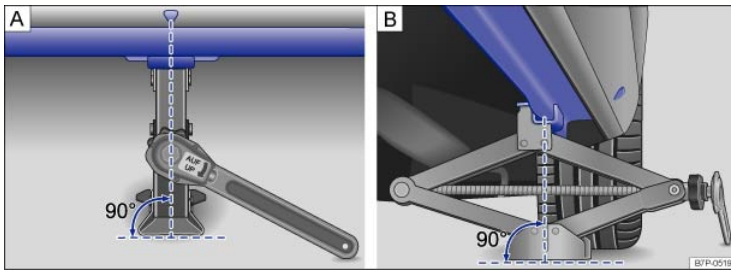


Fig. 214 Jack in position at the left rear lift point.

📖 Read and follow the introductory information and safety information first ⇒ ⚠ *Introduction to the subject*

The standard vehicle jack cannot be safely used to raise the vehicle when the side steps, extended door sills or similar enhancements have been installed in the area of the lower side sills

Use only the scissor jack if your vehicle has side steps, extended door sills additional decorative trim or other enhancements in the area of the lower side sill. Raise the vehicle only at the appropriate jack points for the vehicle jack.

Always use the scissor vehicle jack supplied with the authorized side step package when the vehicle must be jacked up, for example, to change a tire. This scissor jack is also available for purchase from authorized Volkswagen dealers if your vehicle is equipped with authorized accessory side steps.

The jack must be positioned at one of the 4 lift points marked on the vehicle body (2 on each side as shown in ⇒ Fig. 211). You must use the lift point closest to the wheel being changed ⇒ ⚠.

Do not jack up the vehicle until all the wheel bolts on the wheel being changed have been loosened ⇒ *Wheel bolts*.

### Checklist

**For your own safety and that of your passengers, carry out the following steps in the order listed ⇒ ⚠ :**

- ✓ Find a level spot on firm ground for lifting the vehicle.
- ✓ Switch off the engine, shift the transmission into Park (P) Shifting. Then apply the parking brake to help prevent the vehicle from moving Braking and parking
- ✓ If towing a trailer: Unhitch the trailer from the vehicle and park the trailer properly.
- ✓ Straighten the steering wheel so that the front wheels point straight forward.
- ✓ Block the diagonally opposite wheel with chocks or other suitable things.
- ✓ Loosen the wheel bolts of the wheel to be changed *Wheel bolts*.
- ✓ Remove the scissors jack and tools from the vehicle.
- ✓ Inset the extension (A) into the scissors jack (B) Attach the crank (C) to the extension (A).
- ✓ Find the jack lift point on the vehicle frame that is closest to the wheel to be changed.
- ✓ Crank up the jack so that it still just fits underneath the lift point.
- ✓ Position the jack so that its base is directly underneath the lift point , making sure that the entire base of the jack rests securely on the ground.

- ✓ Align the jack and wind up the jack claw at the same time, until the claw cradles the rib underneath the vehicle A or B.
- ✓ Continue cranking up the jack until the wheel is just a little off the ground.

#### ⚠ WARNING

Using the wrong jack to raise a vehicle with side steps, extended door sills, additional decorative trim or other enhancements in the area of the lower side sills can cause the vehicle to fall off the jack and result in serious personal injury.

- Never use the standard jack supplied with unmodified vehicles to raise the vehicle. The side step can interfere with the jack when raising the vehicle.
- Always use the scissor vehicle jack supplied with the authorized side step package when the vehicle must be jacked up, for example, to change a tire.

#### ⚠ WARNING

Improper use of your vehicle jack can cause the vehicle to fall off the jack leading to serious personal injury. To help reduce the risk of serious personal injury:

- Use only jacks approved by Volkswagen for the vehicle. Other jacks might slip, even those approved for other Volkswagen models, but not for your vehicle.
- Always set up the jack on firm and level ground. The vehicle may slip off the jack if the jack is resting on soft or sloping ground. If necessary, place a sturdy board under the jack.
- On a hard, slippery surface (such as a tiled floor), use an anti-skid rubber mat or something similar to prevent the jack from slipping.
- Position the jack only at the described vehicle lift points. Before you raise your vehicle, always make sure the jack claw properly grips the rib under the sill so that the jack does not slip off when you are raising the vehicle ⇒ *Fig. 214*.
- Never have any part of your body (such as your arm or leg) under the vehicle when it is supported by the jack. Never let other persons have any part of their body under the vehicle, either!
- If you must work under a vehicle raised on a floor jack, always make sure that the vehicle is safely supported on safety stands intended for that purpose that are strong enough to support the weight of the vehicle.
- Never lift the vehicle when it is tilted or inclined to one side or the engine is running.
- Never lift the vehicle when more than one tire is flat or damaged.
- Do not start the engine while the vehicle is supported by a jack. Engine vibrations may cause the vehicle to slip off the jack.

#### ⚠ WARNING

Disregarding the safety-related checklist may lead to accidents and serious injuries.

- Always review and follow the checklist. Follow accepted safety practices and use common sense.

## Changing a wheel



Fig. 215 Changing a wheel: Mounting pin in wheel bolt hole closest to the top.

📖 Read and follow the introductory information and safety information first ⇒ ⚠ *Introduction to the subject*

### Removing the wheel

- Review the checklist ⇒ *Preparations for changing a wheel* .
- Loosen the wheel bolts ⇒ *Wheel bolts* .
- Lift the vehicle ⇒ *Lifting the vehicle with the vehicle jack* .
- Unscrew the topmost loosened wheel bolt using the hexagonal socket in the screwdriver handle ⇒ *Fig. 207* place it on a clean surface.
- Screw the mounting pin in the vehicle tool kit into the empty hole by hand ⇒ *Fig. 215* .
- Remove the remaining wheel bolts using the hexagonal socket in the screwdriver handle ⇒ *Fig. 207* and place them on a clean surface.
- Remove the wheel.

### Mounting spare tire or collapsible spare tire

If the tire is a unidirectional tire, be sure to install it in the proper rolling direction ⇒ *Unidirectional tires* .

- Put the spare tire or collapsible spare tire into place on the vehicle.
- Screw in 4 wheel bolts clockwise and tighten them *slightly* using the hexagonal socket in the screwdriver handle.
- Unscrew the mounting pin and screw in the last wheel bolt.
- Lower the vehicle with the jack.
- Use the lug wrench to firmly tighten all wheel bolts (turn clockwise) ⇒ ▲. Do not tighten them in sequence! Tighten any wheel bolt to begin, then tighten the wheel bolt diagonally opposite the first bolt, and so forth.
- Install the wheel bolt caps, center wheel hubcap, or wheel cover, if any ⇒ *Wheel trim*.

#### ⚠ WARNING

Wheel bolts that are tightened or installed improperly can come loose, causing loss of vehicle control, a crash, and serious personal injury.

- Always keep wheel bolts and threads in the wheel hub clean and free of oil and grease. The wheel bolts must turn easily and must be tightened with the right torque.
- Use the hexagonal socket in the screwdriver handle only to turn the wheel bolts when they are loose, never to loosen them or tighten them firmly.

#### ⚠ WARNING

Improper use of a collapsible spare tire can cause loss of vehicle control, a crash or other accident, and serious personal injury.

- Never use a collapsible spare tire if it is damaged or worn down to the wear indicators.
- Never drive faster than 50 mph (80 km/h) with a collapsible spare tire. Avoid full-throttle acceleration, heavy braking, and fast cornering!
- Never drive more than 125 miles (200 km) with a 16" collapsible spare wheel that is installed on the front axle (drive axle).
- Replace the collapsible spare with a normal wheel and tire as soon as possible. Collapsible spare tires are designed for brief use only.

## After changing a wheel

📖 Read and follow the introductory information and safety information first ⇒ ▲ *Introduction to the subject*

- Clean the tools in the vehicle tool kit if necessary and stow them in the foam insert in the luggage compartment ⇒ *Vehicle tool kit*.
- Securely store the collapsible spare tire or the tire you took off the vehicle in the luggage compartment.
- Have the wheel bolt tightening torque immediately checked with a torque wrench ⇒ *Wheel bolt tightening torque*.
- Have the damaged wheel replaced as soon as possible.



If factory-installed wheels and/or tires are replaced, make sure that the tires are equipped with sensors that are compatible with the factory-installed Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS) and with the wheels ⇒ *Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS)* and ⇒ *New and replacement tires*.



If new tires are not identical to those that were removed and require different cold tire inflation pressure, the tire inflation pressure values must be reprogrammed for the TPMS. Please see your authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility ⇒ *Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS)*.

## Tire mobility set

### 📖 Introduction to the subject

In this chapter you will find information on the following subjects:

⇒ *Contents of the tire mobility set*

⇒ *Preparations*

⇒ *Sealing and inflating the tire*

⇒ *Check after 10 minutes of driving*

Tire damage caused by foreign objects or punctures up to about **3/16 in (4 mm)** in diameter can be reliably sealed using the tire mobility set. **The foreign object (screw or nail, for example) must not be removed from the tire!**

After the sealant is filled into the tire, drive for about 10 minutes and check tire pressure again.

Never use the tire mobility set to fill a tire unless you

- have parked vehicle at a safe spot,

- are familiar with all the necessary procedures and safety precautions, and
- have the correct tire mobility set.

Otherwise, get expert assistance.

**Tire sealant must not be used:**

- If the wheel rim is damaged.
- At outside temperatures below -4 °F (-20 °C).
- If the cut or puncture damage of the tire is greater than 3/16 in (4 mm) in diameter.
- If you were driving with very low tire pressure or a flat tire.
- If the tire inflation cylinder has passed its expiration date.

#### WARNING


Using the tire mobility set on the side of the road can be dangerous. To help reduce the risk of serious personal injury:

- Always stop the vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so and move the vehicle a safe distance off the road where it is safe to use the tire mobility set.
- Make sure that the ground is level and firm.
- All passengers and especially children must stay a safe distance away from you while you are working and keep out of the area you are working in.
- Turn on the emergency flasher and set up another warning device about 25 yards (25 meters) behind the vehicle to warn approaching traffic.
- Use the tire mobility set only if you are familiar with the necessary steps. Otherwise, get expert assistance.
- Use the tire mobility set only in emergencies and only until you can get professional help.
- Immediately replace a tire repaired with the tire mobility set.
- Sealant is harmful and must immediately be removed in case of skin contact.
- Always store the tire mobility set out of reach of children.
- Never use a vehicle jack, even if the jack is approved for use with your vehicle.
- Always switch off the engine, engage the electronic parking brake, and shift the transmission into Park **(P)** to reduce the risk that the vehicle will move unexpectedly.

#### WARNING

Improper use of the tire mobility set can cause a temporary tire to fail and lead to loss of vehicle control and serious personal injuries.

- Always remember that a tire filled with sealant does not handle as well as an undamaged tire without sealant.
- Never drive faster than 50 mph (80 km/h) with a sealed tire.
- Never use the tire mobility set if the outside temperature is below -4 °F (-20 °C).
- Never drive with a tire that has cuts or punctures, especially when they are larger than 3/16 in (4 mm).
- Use the tire mobility set only for emergencies until you can get professional help.
- If the tire cannot be inflated to at least 36 psi (2.5 bar), do not drive the vehicle. Contact the nearest authorized Volkswagen dealer, authorized Volkswagen Service Facility, or other qualified workshop.
- If the tire inflation pressure drops below 26 psi (1.8 bar) after driving for 10 minutes, do not drive the vehicle any farther. Contact the nearest authorized Volkswagen dealer, authorized Volkswagen Service Facility, or other qualified workshop.
- Always replace a tire repaired with the tire mobility set immediately. Do not drive a tire that has been repaired with the tire mobility set longer or farther than is absolutely necessary.
- Avoid full throttle acceleration, hard, braking, and fast cornering.
- Drive at slow speed for 10 minutes. Then get out and check the air pressure and condition of the sealed tire.

 Obey all legal requirements when disposing of used or expired sealant.



New tire inflation cylinders are available from authorized Volkswagen dealers and authorized Volkswagen Service Facilities.



Read the separate user manual of the manufacturer of the tire mobility set.

## Contents of the tire mobility set



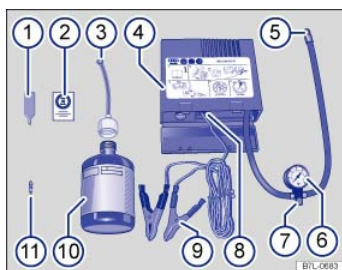


Fig. 216 Basic diagram: Contents of the tire mobility set.

Read and follow the introductory information and safety information first ⇒ [▲ Introduction to the subject](#)

The tire mobility set is stored in the luggage compartment under the floor panel. It contains the following ⇒ Fig. 216:

- ① Valve core wrench
- ② Label with speed instruction max. 80 km/h or max. 50 mph
- ③ Filling hose with sealing plug
- ④ Air compressor
- ⑤ Tire inflation hose
- ⑥ Tire pressure gauge<sup>1)</sup>
- ⑦ Air release valve<sup>2)</sup>
- ⑧ ON and OFF switch
- ⑨ 12 Volt clips
- ⑩ Tire inflation bottle with sealant
- ⑪ Replacement valve core

The **valve core wrench** ① has a slit on the lower end which fits the valve core. This is the only way to unscrew the valve core from the tire valve and to screw it in again. This also applies for the replacement valve core ⑪.

<sup>1)</sup> May also be integrated in the compressor.

<sup>2)</sup> Instead of this, a button may be included in the compressor.

## Preparations

Read and follow the introductory information and safety information first ⇒ [▲ Introduction to the subject](#)

## Checklist

**Carry out the following steps in the order listed before starting to inflate a tire** ⇒ [▲](#) :

- ✓ If you have a flat tire, move it as far away from traffic as possible. Park the vehicle on a flat, level surface at a safe spot.
- ✓ Apply the electronic parking brake Braking and parking.
- ✓ Automatic transmission: Shift the transmission into Park (P) Shifting.
- ✓ Stop the engine and remove the key from the ignition switch Starting and stopping the engine.
- ✓ Have all passengers exit and go to a safe place, such as behind the guard rail.
- ✓ Switch on emergency flashers and put up the warning triangle In an emergency. Observe all legal requirements.
- ✓ Check whether a repair with the tire mobility set is possible Tire sealant must not be used:.
- ✓ If towing a trailer: Unhitch the trailer from the vehicle and park the trailer properly.
- ✓ If the luggage compartment is loaded: Remove the luggage.
- ✓ Remove the tire mobility set from the luggage compartment.
- ✓ Affix the label ② from the tire mobility set on the dashboard in the driver's field of vision.
- ✓ The foreign object (screw or nail, for example) should not be removed from the tire!

### WARNING

Disregarding the safety-related checklist may lead to accidents and serious injuries.

- Always review and follow the checklist. Follow accepted safety practices and use common sense.

## Sealing and inflating the tire

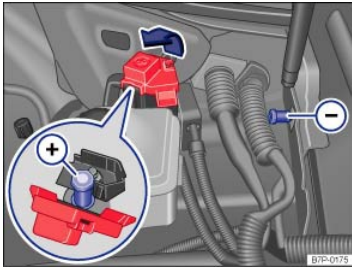


Fig. 217 In the engine compartment: Compressor connection terminals.

Read and follow the introductory information and safety information first ⇒ [Introduction to the subject](#)

### Sealing the tire

- Unscrew the valve cap from the tire valve.
- Unscrew the valve core from the tire valve using the valve core wrench ⇒ [Fig. 216①](#) and place it on a clean surface.
- Vigorously shake the tire inflation cylinder ⇒ [Fig. 216⑩](#) a few times back and forth.
- Tightly screw the filling hose ⇒ [Fig. 216③](#) to the tire inflation bottle (turn clockwise). The foil on the seal is automatically pierced.
- Remove the sealing plug from the filling hose ⇒ [Fig. 216③](#) and slide the open end onto the tire valve.
- Hold the cylinder with the bottom pointing up and fill the **entire** contents of the tire inflation cylinder into the tire.
- Detach the empty tire inflation cylinder from the valve.
- Using the valve core wrench ⇒ [Fig. 216①](#) screw the valve core back into the tire valve.

### Inflating the tire

- Screw the tire inflation hose ⇒ [Fig. 216⑤](#) of the air compressor tightly to the tire valve.
- Check whether the air release valve ⇒ [Fig. 216⑦](#) is screwed on tightly.
- Open the engine hood ⇒ [Working in the engine compartment](#).
- Attach the cable clips ⇒ [Fig. 216⑨](#) **only** to the jump-start terminals in the engine compartment ⇒ [Fig. 217](#). The red clip on the compressor cable is connected to the positive ⊕ terminal; the black clip is connected to the negative ⊖ terminal.
- Start the vehicle engine and let it run.
- Switch the air compressor on using the ON / OFF switch ⇒ [Fig. 216⑧](#),
- Let the air compressor run until a pressure of 36 – 44 psi (250 - 300 kPa) is reached ⇒ **Maximum run time 8 minutes** ⇒ .
- Switch off the air compressor.
- If an air pressure of 36 – 44 psi (250 - 300 kPa) **cannot be reached**, unscrew the tire inflation hose from the tire valve.
- Drive about 30 feet (10 meters) backwards or forwards so that the sealant can be distributed inside the tire.
- Connect the tire inflation hose of the air compressor again to the tire valve and repeat the inflation process.
- If the required tire pressure still cannot be reached, the tire is too badly damaged. The tire cannot be sealed using the tire mobility set. Do not drive the vehicle. Get professional assistance ⇒ .
- Disconnect the air compressor and unscrew the tire inflation hose from the tire valve.
- If a tire pressure of 36 – 44 psi (250 – 300 kPa) is reached, continue driving right away and drive at a speed of not more than 50 mph (80 km/h).
- Check tire pressure after **10 minutes** of driving ⇒ [Check after 10 minutes of driving](#).

### WARNING


The tire inflation hose and air compressor can get hot during inflation.

- Protect hands and skin from hot parts.
- Do not place the hot tire inflation hose or hot air compressor on flammable material.
- Let the equipment cool off almost completely before stowing it.
- If the tire cannot be inflated to at least 36 psi (250 kPa), the damage is too great to be repaired with the tire mobility set. The sealant is not able to seal the tire. Do not drive the vehicle. Get professional assistance.

### NOTE

Do not let the compressor run for more than 8 minutes to help prevent overheating and damage. Let the compressor cool down for a few minutes before switching it on again. Let it cool down almost completely before stowing it in the repair kit.

## Check after 10 minutes of driving

 Read and follow the introductory information and safety information first ⇒ [▲ Introduction to the subject](#)

Connect the tire inflation hose ⇒ [Fig. 216⑤](#) again and read the tire pressure on the tire pressure gauge ⑥.

26 psi (180 kPa) and less:

- **Stop!** The tire cannot be sealed sufficiently using the tire mobility set.
- Get professional assistance ⇒ [▲](#).

27 psi (190 kPa) and more:

- Correct the tire pressure again to the proper value ⇒ [Tires and wheels](#).
- Carefully drive on to the next service center at a speed of not more than 50 mph (80 km/h).
- Have the damaged tire replaced.

### WARNING

Driving with a tire that cannot be sealed is dangerous and can cause accidents and severe injuries.

- Do not continue driving if the tire pressure is 26 psi (180 kPa) or less.
- Get professional assistance.

## Fuses

### Introduction to the subject

In this chapter you will find information on the following subjects:

⇒ [Fuses in the vehicle](#)

⇒ [Replacing blown fuses](#)

Due to ongoing development of the vehicle, configuration-dependent allocation of fuses and the combined fuse protection of multiple loads using one fuse, an up-to-date overview of the fuse location per load is not possible at the time of printing. Detailed information regarding fuse box layout is available from authorized Volkswagen dealers and authorized Volkswagen Service Facilities.

In general, one fuse can protect several loads. One load can also be protected by several fuses.

Find out why the fuse blew and correct the problem before replacing a blown fuse. If a newly replaced fuse blows again after a short time, the electrical system should be checked by an authorized Volkswagen dealer or an authorized Volkswagen Service Facility.

### WARNING

High voltage systems in the engine compartment can cause electrical shocks, severe burns, and even death!

- Never touch ignition cables. Never touch other components of the high-voltage electronic ignition system.
- Avoid short circuits in the electrical system.

### WARNING

Using the wrong fuse, using a blown fuse that has been repaired, and using metal objects in place of fuses to complete the electrical connection in the circuit can cause fires and serious personal injury.

- Never replace a fuse with one that has a higher amp rating. Replace a blown fuse only with a fuse of the same amperage (same color and same imprint) and same overall size.
- Never repair fuses.
- Never replace fuses with a metal strip, a paper clip, or a similar object.

### NOTE

- To help prevent damage to the electrical system, switch off all lights and accessories, switch off the ignition, and remove the key from the ignition switch before replacing a fuse.
- If a fuse is replaced with a fuse with higher amperage, this can also cause damage at different locations in the electrical system.
- Open fuse boxes must be protected from dirt and moisture. Dirt and moisture in fuse boxes can cause damage to the electrical system.

## Fuses in the vehicle

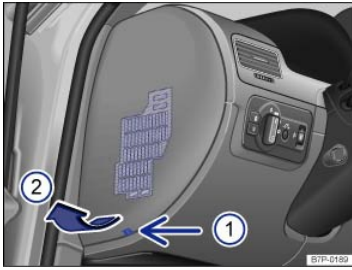


Fig. 218 On the left side of the instrument panel: Remove the fuse box cover.

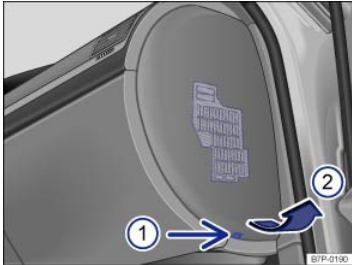




Fig. 219 On the right side of the instrument panel: Remove the fuse box cover.

 Read and follow the introductory information and safety information first ⇒  *Introduction to the subject*

Replace a blown fuse only with a fuse of the same amperage (same color and same imprint) and same overall size.

### Fuse color coding

Color	Current strength in amps
Purple	3
Light brown	5
Brown	7,5
Red	10
Blue	15
Yellow	20
White or clear	25
Green	30
Orange	40

### Opening the fuse box in the instrument panel

- Insert a flat object, such as the screwdriver in the vehicle tool kit, into the opening ⇒ Fig. 218① or ⇒ Fig. 219① and carefully pry off the cover in the direction of the arrow ②.

#### NOTE

- To help prevent vehicle damage, be careful when removing fuse box covers and be sure to reinstall them properly.
- Open fuse boxes must be protected from dirt and moisture. Dirt and moisture in fuse boxes can cause damage to the electrical system.



The vehicle contains other fuses in addition to those mentioned in this chapter. Have these fuses replaced by an authorized Volkswagen dealer or an authorized Volkswagen Service Facility.

## Replacing blown fuses

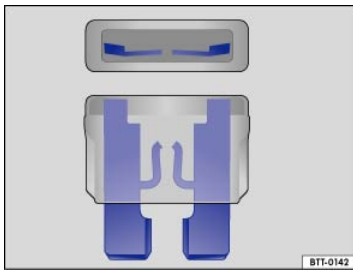


Fig. 220 Illustration of a blown fuse.

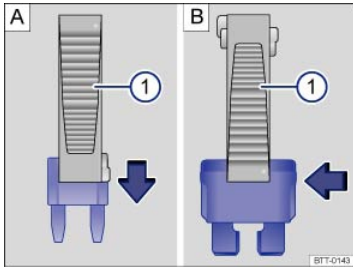


Fig. 221 Removing or inserting a fuse.

Read and follow the introductory information and safety information first ⇒ [Introduction to the subject](#)

#### Preparations

- Switch off the headlights, the ignition, and all electrical consumers.
- Open the appropriate fuse box ⇒ [Fuses in the vehicle](#).

#### Identifying blown fuses

A blown fuse can be recognized by the burned metal strip ⇒ [Fig. 220](#).

Shine a flashlight on the fuse. This makes it easier to recognize a blown fuse.

#### Replacing the fuse

- If needed, remove the plastic tweezers ⇒ [Fig. 221](#) from the fuse box cover.
- For *small fuses*, slide the tweezers onto the fuse from the top ⇒ [Fig. 221 A](#).
- For *larger fuses*, slide the tweezers onto the fuse from the side ⇒ [Fig. 221 B](#).
- Pull out the blown fuse.
- If the fuse is blown, replace the fuse with a new fuse of the *same* amperage (same color and same imprint) and *same* overall size ⇒ .
- If necessary, replace the plastic tweezers in the fuse box cover.
- Replace the cover.

#### NOTE

If a fuse is replaced with a fuse with higher amperage, then damage can occur at various places in the electrical system.

### Replacing light bulbs

#### Introduction to the subject

In this chapter you will find information on the following subjects:

⇒ [Indicator lights](#)

Changing a light bulb requires a certain amount of skill. Therefore, Volkswagen recommends having the light bulb changed by an authorized Volkswagen dealer or an authorized Volkswagen Service Facility. Special training and knowledge are generally required when other vehicle parts must be disassembled to replace a bulb or when HID – High Intensity Discharge (Xenon) headlights must be replaced.

You should always keep a box in the vehicle with all the replacement bulbs required for traffic safety. Replacement bulbs are available from your authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility. The laws of some countries explicitly require you to have replacement bulbs in the vehicle.

Driving with outside lights that do not work may be against the law.

To obtain the Volkswagen service information necessary to change light bulbs yourself, see ⇒ [Volkswagen service information](#).

#### Additional light bulb specifications

Some factory-installed light bulbs in the headlights or the rear lights may have different specifications than conventional light bulbs. Specifications are on the glass bulb or on the metal base.

#### WARNING

Crashes and other accidents can happen when you cannot see the road ahead and when you cannot be seen by other motorists.

#### WARNING


Improper replacement of burned out headlights and other light bulbs can cause serious personal injury.




- Stop! Always read and heed the WARNINGS before doing any work in the engine compartment ⇒ [Working in the engine compartment](#). The engine compartment of any motor vehicle is a potentially dangerous area, and work in this area can lead to serious personal injury.
- HID – High Intensity Discharge (Xenon) get power from a high-voltage source that can cause severe personal injury and even death if handled improperly.
- H7 bulbs and HID – High Intensity Discharge (Xenon) are under high pressure and can explode if handled improperly.
- Always let a burned out light bulb cool down before replacing it.
- Never replace a light bulb unless you are familiar with all of the necessary procedures. In particular, never remove a headlight unless you know exactly how to carry out the job and have the correct tools and light bulbs.
- If you are uncertain about what to do, have the work performed by an authorized Volkswagen dealer, an authorized Volkswagen Service Facility, or another qualified workshop. Serious personal injury may result from improperly performed work.
- We strongly recommend that you always have HID - High Intensity Discharge (Xenon) lamps and H7 bulbs replaced by a qualified technician.
- Do not touch the glass of light bulbs with your bare hands. Fingerprints left on the bulb evaporate due to the heat when the bulb is switched on and cause the reflector to cloud.
- There are sharp edges on and around the headlight housing in the engine compartment and the taillight housing. Wear hand protection if you replace bulbs.

#### NOTE

After replacing a headlight bulb or other light bulb, always make sure that the rubber covers or plastic caps have been properly and securely reinstalled to help prevent water from getting into the electrical connections and headlight housing and damaging the electrical system.

## Indicator lights

 Read and follow the introductory information and safety information first ⇒ [Introduction to the subject](#)

Lights up	Possible cause	Proper response
	Headlight not working.	See an authorized Volkswagen dealer, an authorized Volkswagen Service Facility, or other qualified workshop to replace the light bulb that isn't working.
	One or more brake lights burned out.	See an authorized Volkswagen dealer, an authorized Volkswagen Service Facility, or other qualified workshop to replace the light bulb that isn't working.
	License plate light not working.	See an authorized Volkswagen dealer, an authorized Volkswagen Service Facility, or other qualified workshop to replace the light bulb that isn't working.

When the ignition is switched on, several warning and indicator lights come on briefly for a function check. They go out after a few seconds.

#### WARNING



Failure to heed warning lights and instrument cluster text messages can cause the vehicle to break down in traffic and result in a collision and serious personal injury.

- Never ignore warning lights or text WARNINGS.

- Always stop the vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so.

## NOTE

Failure to heed warning lights or text WARNINGS can result in vehicle damage.

-  Failure of a single LED within a taillight is not indicated. However, the  indicator light will come on if all LEDs fail.

## Jump-starting

### Introduction to the subject

In this chapter you will find information on the following subjects:

⇒ *Positive and negative jump-starting terminals*

⇒ *Using jumper cables*

If your engine does not start because the vehicle battery is dead, your vehicle's battery can be connected to the battery of another vehicle to start your engine (jump-starting).

You must use **jumper cables that meet recognized industrial standards** (check information provided by the jumper cable manufacturer). For vehicles with **gasoline engines**, the cross-section of the jumper cable wire must be at least 0.038 in<sup>2</sup> (25 mm<sup>2</sup>), or about 3 ga. (AWG). For vehicles with **diesel engines**, the cross-section must be at least 0.054 in<sup>2</sup> (35 mm<sup>2</sup>), or about 2 ga. (AWG).

On vehicles that do not have a battery in the engine compartment, connect the jumper cables only to the jump-start terminals in the engine compartment.

## WARNING

Working on the batteries or the electrical system in your vehicle can cause serious acid burns, fires, or electrical shock.

- Always keep children away from battery acid and vehicle batteries in general.
- Sulfuric battery acid is very corrosive and can cause blindness and damage to unprotected skin. Never let battery acid or lead particles contact your eyes, skin, and clothing.
- Never lean over a vehicle battery. Always wear protective gloves and eye protection. To reduce your risk of injury, never tilt the batteries; acid could spill out through the vents and burn you.
- A highly explosive mixture of gases is given off when the battery is being charged.
- Always avoid fires, sparks, open flame, and smoking. Never create sparks or electrostatic charges when handling cables and electrical equipment. Never short-circuit the battery terminals. High-energy sparks can cause serious personal injury.
- If you get battery acid in your eyes or on your skin, immediately rinse with cold water for several minutes and get medical attention immediately. If you swallow any battery acid, get medical attention immediately.

## WARNING

Improper use of jumper cables when jump-starting a vehicle with a dead battery can cause the battery to explode, leading to serious personal injury. To help reduce the risk of battery explosion:

- All work on the batteries or the electrical system in your vehicle can cause serious acid burns, fires, or electrical shocks. Always read and heed the following WARNINGS and safety precautions before working on the batteries or the electrical system ⇒ *12 Volt vehicle battery*.
- Always make sure that the battery providing starting assistance (the booster battery) has the same voltage as the dead battery (12 V) and about the same amperage capacity (see battery label).
- Never jump-start a vehicle with a thawed or frozen battery. The battery can explode. A dead battery can freeze at temperatures around +32 °F (0 °C).
- A battery that is frozen or was frozen, but has since thawed, must be replaced.
- When the vehicle battery is jump-started, it gives off hydrogen gas, which is highly explosive! Always keep fire, sparks, open flame, and smoking materials far away from vehicle batteries. Never use a cellular telephone while connecting or disconnecting jumper cables.
- Jump-start batteries only in well-ventilated areas. Batteries give off highly explosive hydrogen gas during jump-starting.
- Always route the jumper cables so that they cannot get caught in any moving parts in the engine compartment.
- Never short out the battery terminals by connecting the positive terminal (+) and negative (-) terminals with each other.
- Never connect the negative cable from the other vehicle directly to the negative terminal of the dead battery, as this may cause the hydrogen gas given off by the dead battery to explode.
- Never attach the negative cable from the vehicle providing starting assistance to any part of the fuel system or to the brake hoses or brake lines.
- Never allow the non-insulated parts of the battery clamps to touch.

- Never allow the jumper cable attached to the positive battery terminal to contact metal parts of the vehicle.
- Always follow the instructions of the jumper cable manufacturer.

#### NOTE

To help prevent extensive damage to the vehicle electrical system, read and heed the following:

- Connecting jumper cables improperly can cause a short circuit and do expensive damage to the vehicle's electrical system.
- Do not let the vehicles touch each other while the jumper cables are connected. If they do, electrical current may flow between the vehicles when the positive (+) terminals are connected, causing electrical system damage.

### Positive and negative jump-starting terminals

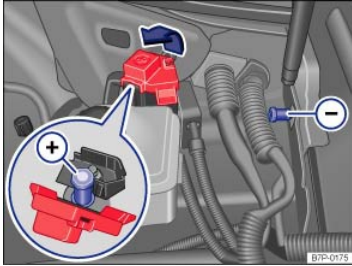


Fig. 222 In the engine compartment: Positive jump-start terminal ⊕ and negative jump-start terminal ⊖.

Read and follow the introductory information and safety information first ⇒ [Introduction to the subject](#)

The jump-starting terminals are in the engine compartment ⇒ Fig. 222. The vehicle can only jump-start other vehicles or be jump-started itself by means of these terminals.

### Using jumper cables

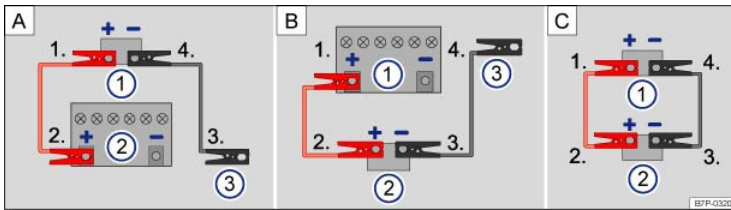


Fig. 223 The jumper cables are attached according to diagram A, B or C depending on how the vehicle is equipped.

Read and follow the introductory information and safety information first ⇒ [Introduction to the subject](#)

- ① Vehicle with the dead battery (vehicle being jump-started).
- ② Vehicle with the booster battery (vehicle providing starting assistance).
- ③ Suitable ground connection. A solid metal part bolted directly to the engine block or the engine block itself.

The dead battery must be properly connected to the vehicle's electrical system.

Make certain that the vehicles are not touching each other. Otherwise, electric current could flow as soon as the positive terminals (+) are connected. Use longer jumper cables if necessary.

The clamps on the jumper cables must have good contact to bare metal on the battery terminals.

If the engine does not start, stop the process after 10 seconds and repeat after about 1 minute.

The procedure for attaching and for removing the jumper cables is described below. Perform each of the following steps only in the order in which it is described.

#### Checklist

- Switch off the ignition in both vehicles.
- Open the hoods of both vehicles.
- Remove the cover from the positive terminal on your vehicle and, if necessary, the battery cover of the other vehicle.

#### Checklist

Diagram A applies where the vehicle with the dead battery has jump-start terminals ① and is being jump-started by a vehicle whose battery is in the engine compartment ② ⇒ [Introduction to the subject](#).



Attach one end of the red jumper cable to the positive jump-start terminal ⊕ of the vehicle with the dead battery ①.

Attach the other end of the red jumper cable to the positive terminal ⊕ of the booster battery ②.

Connect one end of the black jumper cable to a suitable ground connection ③ on the vehicle with the booster battery ②. A suitable ground connection is a solid metal part bolted directly to the engine block of the vehicle with the booster battery or this vehicle's engine block itself.

Attach the other end of the black jumper cable to the negative jump-start terminal ⊖ of the vehicle with the dead battery ①.

## Checklist

**Diagram B applies where the dead battery ① is in the engine compartment of the vehicle being jump-started, and the vehicle providing starting assistance has jump-start terminals ② ⇒ ▲ .**

Attach one end of the red jumper cable to the positive terminal ⊕ of the dead battery ①.

Attach the other end of the red jumper cable to the positive jump-start terminal ⊕ of the vehicle providing starting assistance ②.

Attach one end of the black jumper cable to the negative jump-start terminal ⊖ of the vehicle providing starting assistance ②.

Connect the other end of the black jumper cable to a suitable ground connection ③ on the vehicle with the dead battery ①. A suitable ground connection is a solid metal part bolted directly to the engine block of the vehicle with the dead battery or this vehicle's engine block itself.

## Checklist

**Diagram C applies where the vehicle with the dead battery has jump-start terminals ① and is being jump-started by a vehicle that also has jump-start terminals ② ⇒ ▲ .**

Attach one end of the red jumper cable to the positive jump-start terminal ⊕ of the vehicle with the dead battery ①.

Attach the other end of the red jumper cable to the positive jump-start terminal ⊕ of the vehicle providing starting assistance ②.

Attach one end of the black jumper cable to the negative jump-start terminal ⊖ of the vehicle providing starting assistance ②.

Attach the other end of the black jumper cable to the negative jump-start terminal ⊖ of the vehicle with the dead battery ①.

## Checklist

Start the engine of the vehicle with the good battery that is providing help and let it run at idle speed.

Turn the ignition of the vehicle with the dead battery. If the engine starts, wait 2 to 3 minutes until it runs smoothly before removing the jumper cables as described below . If the engine does not start within about 10 seconds, turn off the ignition and wait at least 1 minute; then try again.

## Checklist

Switch off the headlights (if they are on).

In the vehicle with the dead battery, switch on the heater fan and the rear window defroster. This helps to minimize voltage spikes when the cables are disconnected.

## Checklist

Before you remove the jumper cables, switch off the headlights (if they are on).

In the vehicle with the dead battery, switch on the heater fan and the rear window defroster. This helps to minimize voltage spikes when the jumper cables are disconnected.

With the engine running, remove the jumper cables in reverse order to the way they were connected. Specifically:

- Disconnect the black (–) cable from the vehicle with the **dead** battery.
- Disconnect the black (–) cable from the other vehicle (vehicle with the **good** battery).
- Disconnect the red (+) cable from the other vehicle (vehicle with the **good** battery).
- Disconnect the red (+) cable from the vehicle with the **dead** battery.

Turn off the heater fan and the rear window defroster on the vehicle with the dead battery.

Snap the cap of the positive jump-start terminal back on, reinstall covers, and close engine hoods.

## ⚠ WARNING

Improper use of jumper cables when jump-starting a vehicle with a dead battery can cause the battery to explode, leading to serious personal injury. To help reduce the risk of battery explosion:

- All work on the batteries or the electrical system in your vehicle can cause serious acid burns, fires, or electrical shocks. Always read and heed the following WARNINGS and safety precautions before working on the batteries or the electrical system ⇒ *12 Volt vehicle battery* .
- Always wear proper eye protection. Never lean over the vehicle batteries.
- Attach the jumper cables in the correct order: first the positive cable, then the negative cable.
- Never connect the negative cable from the vehicle providing starting assistance to parts of the fuel system or to the brake hoses or brake lines.
- Never allow the non-insulated parts of the battery clamps to touch.
- Never allow the jumper cable attached to the positive battery terminal to contact metal parts of the vehicle.
- Specialized knowledge and tools are required to access the vehicle battery. For this reason, have an authorized Volkswagen dealer or an authorized Volkswagen Service Facility check the electrolyte level of the vehicle battery.

- Avoid electrostatic discharge in the vicinity of the vehicle battery. Sparks may cause the hydrogen gas escaping from the vehicle battery to ignite.
- Never jump-start a vehicle with a battery that is damaged or frozen or that was frozen and has thawed. The battery can explode. Replace the battery instead.
- Always follow the instructions of the jumper cable manufacturer.
- Always make sure that the battery providing starting assistance has the same voltage as the dead battery (12 V) and about the same capacity (see battery label).
- Batteries give off explosive hydrogen gas. Always keep fire, sparks, open flame and smoking materials away from batteries.
- Never connect the negative cable from the other vehicle directly to the negative terminal of the dead battery. The hydrogen gas from the battery is explosive.
- Never short out the battery terminals by connecting the positive (+) and negative (-) terminals with each other.

#### NOTE

Checking the electrolyte level

- The 12 Volt vehicle battery is located under the left front seat. Specialized knowledge and tools are required to access the vehicle battery. For this reason, have an authorized Volkswagen dealer or an authorized Volkswagen Service Facility check the electrolyte level of the vehicle battery.

## Towing

### Introduction to the subject

In this chapter you will find information on the following subjects:

⇒ *Towing on a commercial tow truck*

⇒ *Tips on towing*

⇒ *Installing the front towing eye*

⇒ *Installing the rear towing eye*

⇒ *Driving tips while towing*


Observe legal requirements when towing.

Your vehicle is equipped with a trailer package.

#### For technical reasons:

- **A vehicle with a dead battery must never be towed; Jump-start the vehicle instead.**
- **It is not possible to tow-start or push-start your vehicle; Jump-start the vehicle instead.**

Vehicles with Keyless Access may only be towed with the ignition on.

Towing the vehicle when the engine is turned off and the ignition is turned on drains the vehicle battery. Depending on the charge level of the vehicle battery, it is possible that even after just a few minutes, electrical devices such as the emergency flashers may not have the power necessary to function. The steering wheel might lock in vehicles with Keyless Access ⇒ .

#### WARNING

Never tow a vehicle without any electrical power.

- Never remove the remote control vehicle key from the ignition switch while the vehicle is moving. The electronic steering column lock could suddenly engage, and you would not be able to steer or control the vehicle. You can lose control of the vehicle, crash, and seriously injure yourself and others.
- If the vehicle loses power while it is being towed, stop towing the vehicle immediately and contact your authorized Volkswagen dealer or authorized Volkswagen Service Facility for assistance.

#### WARNING

Towing a vehicle changes the way it handles and brakes. To help reduce the risk of an accident and serious personal injury, note the following:

- The driver of the vehicle that is being towed:
  - Since the brake booster also does not work when the engine is stopped, you will need to press harder on the brake pedal to slow down or stop. Always be warning so as not to rear-end towing vehicle.
  - Will have to use considerable more force to turn the steering wheel because the power steering is not working.

- The driver of the vehicle that is doing the towing:
  - Must accelerate gradually and gently and avoid jerking movements.
  - Must not brake hard or steer sharply.
  - Must brake earlier and more gently than in normal driving.

#### WARNING

Never let the vehicle be towed unless its electrical system is working and the ignition is switched on. Otherwise, the steering column lock may engage, causing loss of control, a crash, and serious personal injuries.

#### NOTE


- Be careful not to damage the paint when installing and removing the towing eye and the cover for the threaded hole behind the bumper.
- Unburned fuel can get into the catalytic converter during towing and damage it.

#### NOTE

The vehicle may be damaged if it is towed with a tow rope or a tow bar.

- Never let the vehicle be towed with a tow rope or a tow bar unless it is absolutely necessary.
- If the vehicle breaks down, it can only be towed by a special tow truck.

## Towing on a commercial tow truck

 Read and follow the introductory information and safety information first ⇒ [Introduction to the subject](#)


To help avoid damaging the vehicle, have it towed only by a professional towing company. Read and heed the following information:

### General information

Never let the vehicle be towed at speeds above 30 mph (50 km/h).

Never let the vehicle be towed for more than 30 miles (50 km).

### Towing automatic transmission vehicles

- Release the parking brake.
- Shift the transmission into Neutral **(N)**.
- Tow the vehicle only with its front wheels off the ground ⇒ .

### Special towing instructions for vehicles with all-wheel drive (4MOTION)

- To help prevent unnecessary damage, vehicles with all-wheel drive (4MOTION) must be transported on a flat-bed truck.
- To load the vehicle on the flat bed, use the towing eye found in the vehicle tool kit and attach it to the front anchorage ⇒ [Vehicle tool kit](#), ⇒ [Installing the front towing eye](#).

### When not to tow your vehicle

- If the front and rear wheels cannot turn.
- If the vehicle battery is dead (because the steering is locked and the electronic parking brake and the electronic steering column lock cannot be released if engaged).
- If you have to tow an automatic transmission vehicle more than 30 miles (50 km).

#### WARNING

It is not safe for children or other persons to ride in a vehicle that is being towed.


- Never let children or anyone else remain in the vehicle while it is being towed.

#### NOTE

The drive axle rotates while the vehicle is being towed with its rear wheels off the ground. This can damage the automatic transmission.

- Never tow automatic transmission vehicle with the rear wheels off the ground.

## Tips on towing

 Read and follow the introductory information and safety information first ⇒ [Introduction to the subject](#)

### Towing eye; tow rope or tow bar

A towing eye is included in your vehicle's tool kit. This can be inserted in a threaded hole in the front bumper and used when your vehicle is being towed by another vehicle. On most vehicles, there is another threaded hole in the rear bumper, so you can use the towing eye to tow other vehicles as well. Towing a vehicle with a tow bar is safer and easier on both vehicles than using a tow rope. A tow rope should be used only if a tow bar is not available.

The tow rope should be flexible enough to help protect both vehicles from damage. Use a synthetic fiber rope or similar rope.

Attach the tow rope or tow bar only to the towing eye included in the vehicle tool kit for this purpose, or to a trailer hitch.

### Towing manual transmission vehicles

Check whether your vehicle can be towed at all; see below *When not to tow your vehicle*.

If yes, note the following for the towed vehicle:

- Shift the gearshift lever to Neutral ⇒ *Shifting*.
- Do not tow faster than 30 mph (50 km/h).
- Do not tow more than 30 miles (50 km).

### Towing automatic transmission vehicles

Check whether your vehicle can be towed at all; see below *When not to tow your vehicle*.

If yes, note the following for the towed vehicle:

- Put the transmission in Neutral (**N**).
- Do not tow faster than 30 mph (50 km/h).
- Do not tow more than 30 miles (50 km).
- When a commercial tow truck is being used, the vehicle must only be towed with the front wheels lifted off the ground.
- Follow the special instructions for towing vehicles with all-wheel drive (4MOTION).

### Towing vehicles with all-wheel drive (4MOTION)

Vehicles with all-wheel drive (4MOTION) should be towed with a tow bar or a tow rope. If the vehicle is towed with the front or rear axles lifted off the ground, the engine must be switched off. Otherwise the powertrain may be damaged.

### When not to tow your vehicle

In the following situations, the vehicle cannot be towed and must be transported on a flatbed truck or trailer:

- If transmission fluid has leaked out of the transmission.
- If there is little or no oil in the transmission because of damage to your vehicle, it must be moved with the drive wheels off the ground.
- If the front and rear wheels cannot turn.
- When the vehicle battery is dead, since the steering may remain disabled, and it may not be possible to release the electronic steering column lock and the electronic parking brake.
- If you have to tow an automatic transmission vehicle more than 30 miles (50 km).

### Towing other vehicles

- Obey all legal requirements.
- Read and heed all towing information in the owner's manual for the other vehicle.



A vehicle can be towed only if the electronic parking brake and the electronic steering column lock can be released. In case of a power loss or malfunctions of the electrical system, the engine may have to be jump-started in order to release the electronic parking brake and the electronic steering column lock.

## Installing the front towing eye

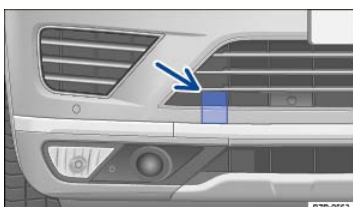


Fig. 224 In right front bumper: Removing the cover.

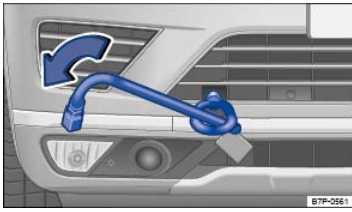


Fig. 225 In right front bumper: Screwing in towing eye.

Read and follow the introductory information and safety information first ⇒ [Introduction to the subject](#)

Holes for the towing eyes are in the front bumper at the right and at the left.

Always keep the towing eye in the vehicle and stow it securely.

Read and follow the notes about towing ⇒ [Tips on towing](#).

#### Installing the front towing eye

- Take the towing eye, the lug wrench, and the screwdriver out of the vehicle tool kit in the luggage compartment ⇒ [Vehicle tool kit](#).
- Push the outboard edge of the cover ⇒ [Fig. 224](#).
- Reach behind the cover, pull it off, and let it hang from the vehicle.
- Screw the towing eye **counterclockwise** into the threaded hole as far as it will go ⇒ [Fig. 225](#) (arrow) ⇒ . Use the lug wrench to turn and tighten the towing eye.
- When towing is complete, unscrew the towing eye **clockwise** to remove it and replace the cover.
- Clean the towing eye and lug wrench if necessary and put them back in the vehicle tool kit in the luggage compartment.

#### NOTE

Always make sure the towing eye is screwed all the way into threaded hole so that it is secure. Otherwise, it could be ripped out while your vehicle is being towed.

#### Installing the rear towing eye

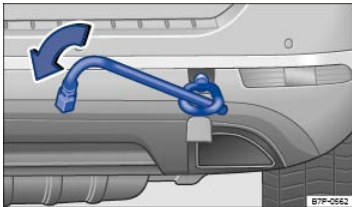


Fig. 226 In right rear bumper: Screwing in towing eye.

Read and follow the introductory information and safety information first ⇒ [Introduction to the subject](#)

Holes for the screw-in towing eyes are in the rear bumper at the right and at the left.

Follow towing instructions ⇒ [Tips on towing](#).


#### Installing the rear towing eye

- Take the towing eye, the lug wrench, and the screwdriver out of the vehicle tool kit in the luggage compartment ⇒ [Vehicle tool kit](#).
- Push the outboard edge of the cover.
- Reach behind the cover, pull it off, and let it hang from the vehicle.
- Screw the towing eye **counterclockwise** into the threaded hole as far as it will go ⇒ [Fig. 226](#) (arrow) ⇒ . Use the lug wrench to turn and tighten the towing eye.
- When towing is complete, unscrew the towing eye **clockwise** to remove it and replace the cover.
- Clean the towing eye and lug wrench if necessary and put them back in the vehicle tool kit in the luggage compartment.

#### NOTE

Always make sure the towing eye is screwed all the way into threaded hole so that it is secure. Otherwise, it could be ripped out while your vehicle is being towed.

#### Driving tips while towing

 Read and follow the introductory information and safety information first ⇒ [Introduction to the subject](#)

Towing requires some experience, especially when using a towing rope. Both drivers must be familiar with the techniques required for towing. Inexperienced drivers should not try to tow a vehicle or to drive a vehicle that is being towed.

Do not pull too hard with the towing vehicle, and avoid jerking the tow rope. When towing on an unpaved road, there is always a risk of overloading and damaging the attachment points.

If your vehicle is being towed, it can still signal turns even if the emergency flashers are activated, as long as the ignition is switched on. Use the turn signal in the normal way. The emergency flashers go off as long as the turn signal is blinking. As soon as the turn signal lever returns to its neutral position, the emergency flashers are automatically activated again.

**As driver of the towed vehicle:**

- If your vehicle is the one being towed, the ignition switch must be switched on to keep the steering wheel from locking. Also make sure that the turn signals, horn, windshield wipers, and windshield washers work properly.
- Since power steering does not work when the engine is switched off, more effort is needed to steer the vehicle.
- Since the brake booster also does not work when the engine is stopped, you will need to press harder on the brake pedal to slow down or stop. Do not hit the towing vehicle.
- Read and heed the information and WARNINGS in the towing vehicle's owner's manual.

**As driver of the towing vehicle**

- Drive especially carefully and accelerate gently. Avoid sudden driving maneuvers.
- Brake earlier than usual and with light pedal pressure.
- Read and heed the information and WARNINGS in the owner's manual of the vehicle being towed.

## Abbreviations used

Abbreviation	Meaning
A2DP	Advanced Audio Distribution Profile for cross-manufacturer Bluetooth audio signal transmission compatibility.
ABS	Anti-lock Brake System.
AFS	Adaptive Front Lighting System.
AKI	Anti-Knock Index.
ANSI	American National Standards Institute.
AM	AM (amplitude modulation).
ASL	Automatic Shift Lock.
ASR	Anti-Slip Regulation.
ATA	Anti-Theft Alarm system.
BAS	Brake Assist System.
cc	Cubic centimeter unit of volume for specifying engine displacement.
ccm	Cubic centimeters. Unit of measure for engine displacement.
CID	Cubic inch displacement, unit of volume for specifying engine displacement.
CO <sub>2</sub>	Carbon dioxide.
cm	Centimeter – metric unit of measure for length.
DIN	Deutsches Institut für Normung (German Institute for Standardization).
DPF	Diesel Particulate Filter.
DRL	Daytime Running Lights.
DTMF	Dual Tone Multiple Frequency.
EDL	Electronic Differential Lock.
EN	European Norm.
EON	Enhanced Other Network (support for other radio networks).
EPC	Engine control (Electronic Power Control).
ESC	Electronic Stability Control.
ETC	Electronic Toll Collection system.

Abbreviation	Meaning
FSI	Fuel Stratified Injection.
g/mi	Generated carbon monoxide amount in grams per mile driven.
GAWR	Gross Axle Weight Rating.
GVWR	Gross Vehicle Weight Rating.
GSM	Global System for Mobile Communications.
HDD	Media Center (Hard Disk Drive).
HFP	Hands-Free-Profile (mobile phone operation).
HID	High Intensity Discharge headlights (HID).
hp	Horsepower, engine power rating.
IMEI	International Mobile Station Equipment Identity (unique serial number for identification of GSM terminal devices).
kg	Kilogram – metric unit for weight.
kN	Kilonewton, tractive force.
kp	Kilopond, a measure of force.
kPa	Kilopascal, unit of measure for tire pressure.
kW	Kilowatt, engine rating.
LED	Light Emitting Diode.
m	Meter – metric unit of measure for length.
MDI	Media Device Interface.
MFI	Multi-Function Indicator.
MP3	Audio file compression format.
Nm	Newton meter, engine torque unit.
OPS	Optical Parking System.
PDC	Park Distance Control.
PIN	Personal identification number.
RDS	Radio Data System (enables additional functions).
RON	Research Octane Number, measurement of anti-knock resistance of gasoline.



Abbreviation	Meaning
rpm	Engine revolutions per minute (engine speed).
rSAP	Remote SIM Access Profile (via Bluetooth).
SAE	Society of Automotive Engineers.
SIM	Subscriber Identity Module.
SMS	Short Message Service.
TIN	Tire Identification Number.
TDI®	Turbocharged Direct Injection (Turbocharged diesel engine with direct fuel injection).
TMC	Traffic Message Channel (for dynamic navigation).
TP	Traffic Program (radio traffic bulletins).
UTQG	Uniform Tire Grading Quality.
VBR	Variable bit rate.
WMA	Audio file compression format.